



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Educ. T 918. 86. 515

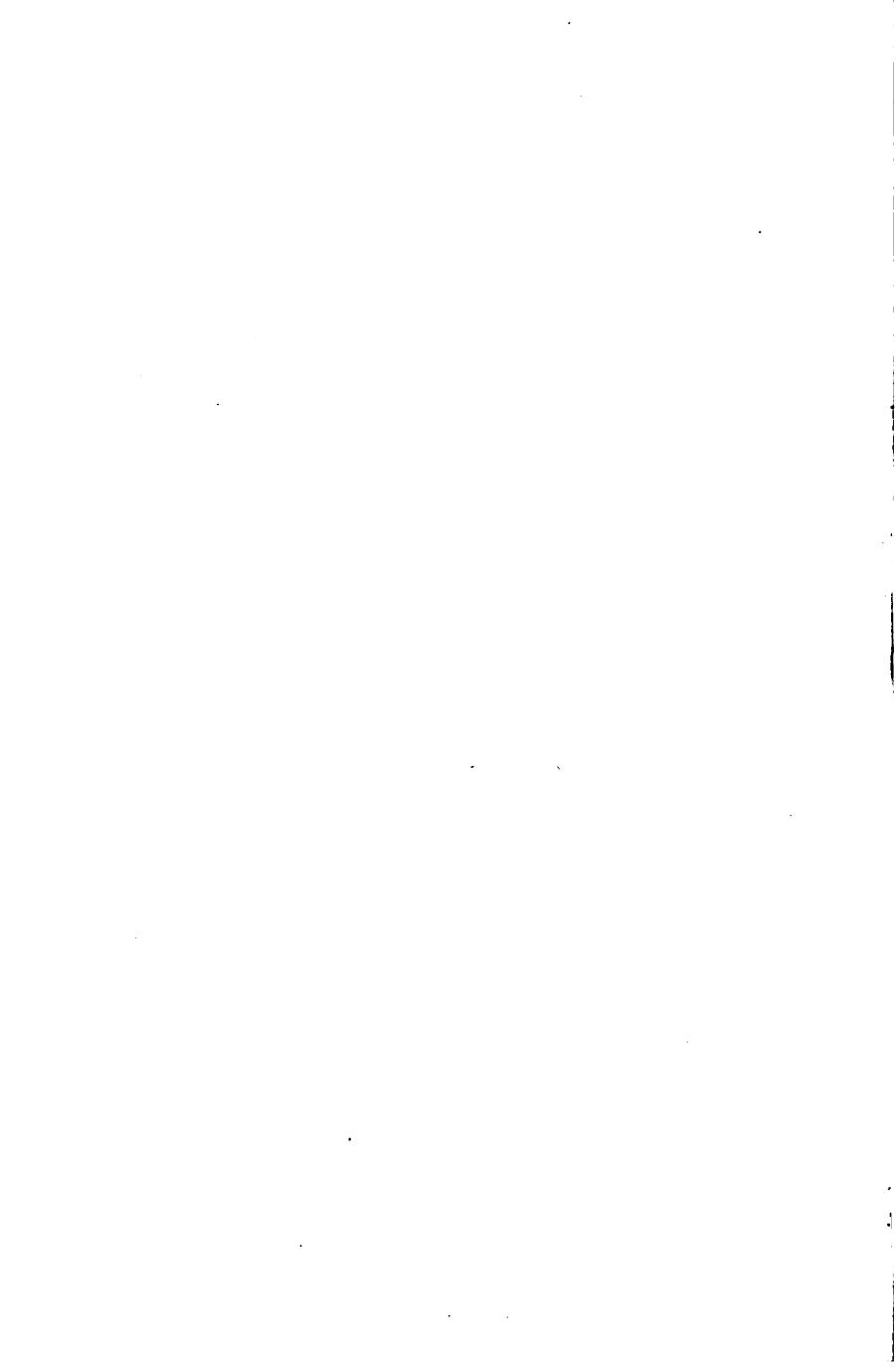
**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**



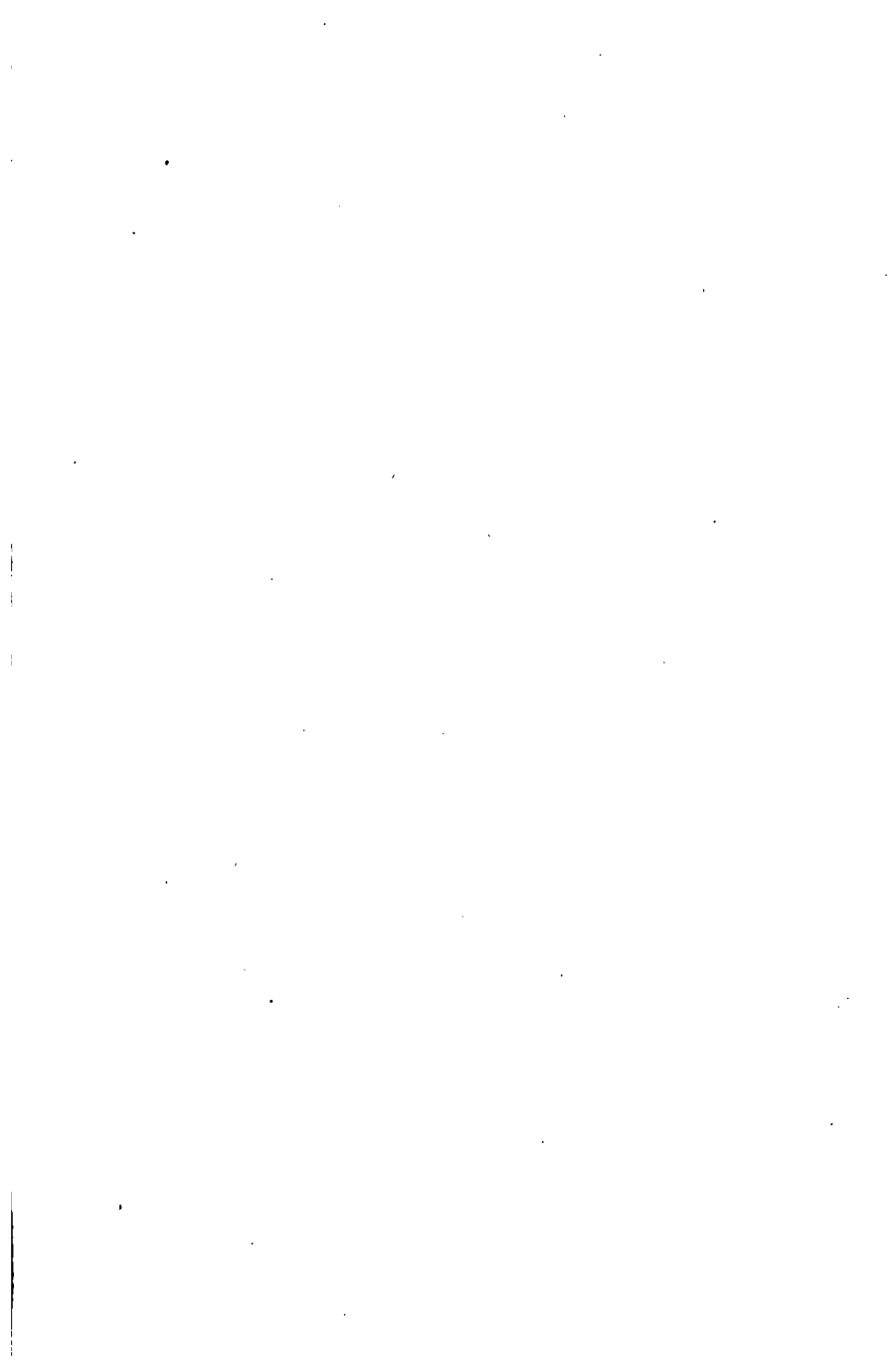
**GIFT OF THE  
GRADUATE SCHOOL  
OF EDUCATION**

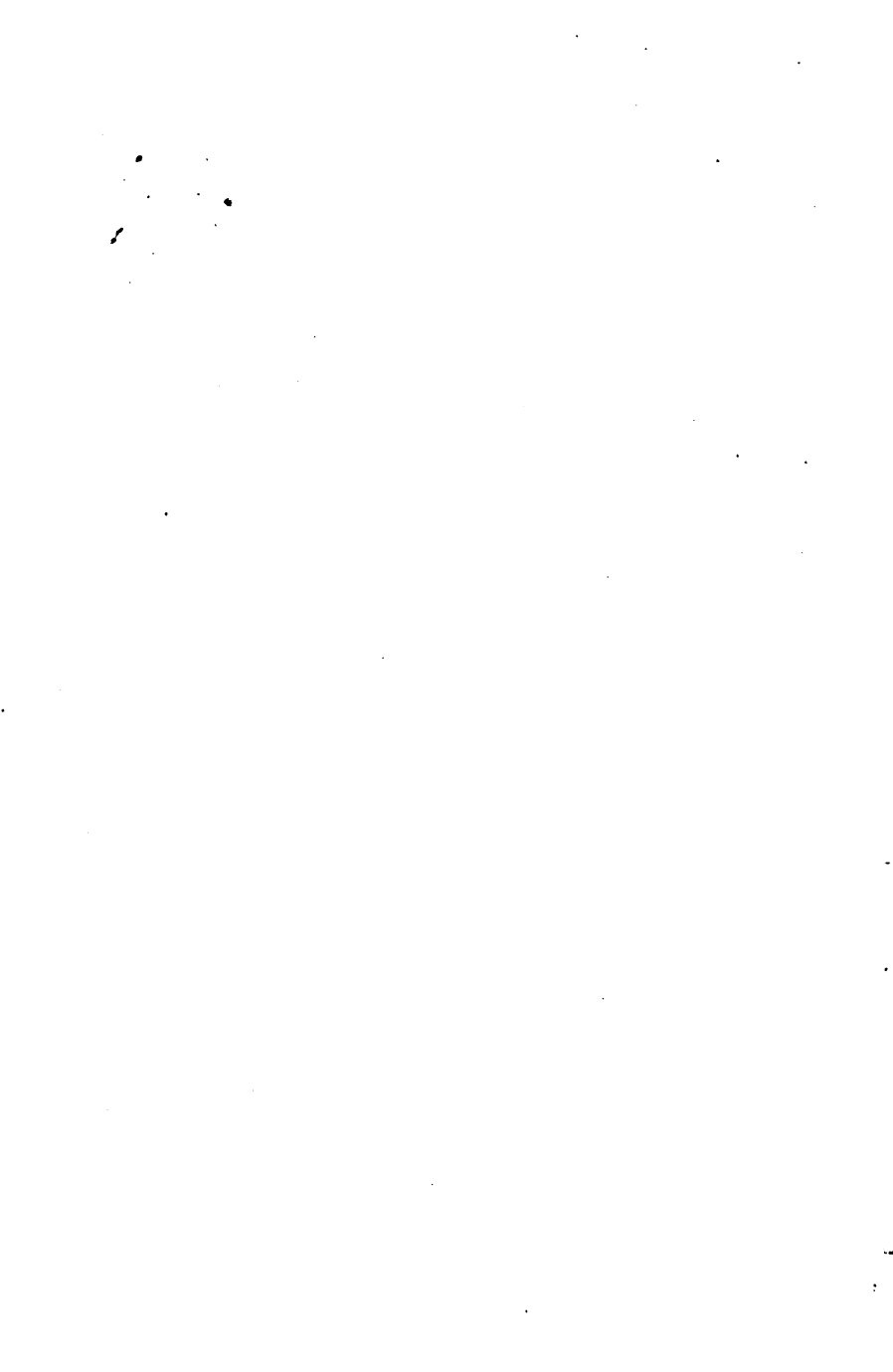
3 2044 097 057 756

Karl P. Harrington.  
1886.









# FIRST STEPS IN LATIN:

A

## COMPLETE COURSE IN LATIN FOR ONE YEAR,

BASED ON

*MATERIAL DRAWN FROM CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES,  
WITH EXERCISES FOR SIGHT-READING, AND A  
COURSE OF ELEMENTARY LATIN READING.*

BY

R. F. LEIGHTON, PH.D. (Lips.),

AUTHOR OF CRITICAL HISTORY OF CICERO'S EPISTULÆ AD FAMILIARES, HISTORY  
OF ROME, LATIN LESSONS, GREEK LESSONS, ETC.

---

BOSTON:  
PUBLISHED BY GINN & COMPANY.

1886.

Edge + 918.86.515

HEARST COLLEGE LIBRARY  
CITY OF THE  
STATE OF NEW YORK DEPT. OF EDUCATION

Sept 16, 1929

*Copyright, 1885,*  
By R. F. LEIGHTON.

## PREFACE.

---

THE aim of this book is to furnish pupils who have given little or no attention to the study of English grammar *a complete course in Latin for one year.*

The book opens with a short and easy review of English grammar. In the lessons, the changes in the forms, uses, and relations of words are explained and illustrated, so far as is practicable, from English, before introducing the Latin forms and constructions. In order to avoid or to lessen the bewilderment usually produced in the mind of the young beginner by the use of a complete Latin grammar, everything not essential to the structure of a simple sentence has, at first, been carefully excluded. In short, no effort has been spared to smooth the way for the beginner, and to prepare him for the intelligent reading of Cæsar or of any of the less difficult Latin authors.

Much care and study have been expended on the order and arrangement of the lessons, especially in the earlier part, aiming mainly at two things: First, to introduce very early in the course the simple verb-forms, which are easier than the nouns and open the way to a wide range of expression; and, secondly, to give not bare words and their inflections, but sentences *from the start*, with both questions and answers, in natural and easy succession. The vocabularies at the head of each lesson and the exercises for translation, both Latin and English, will afford abundant material for drill on the *forms*. The teacher, however, will find it an excellent oral exercise to combine these words into new sentences (both Latin and English), requiring the pupil to give the translation. The first associations with any language, especially when learned by the young, should be such as to make it as nearly as possible a living tongue; the scientific study of it should follow, not go before, some elementary knowledge of what it is in actual speech. I do not wish to be understood as advocating the neglect of syntax

or of etymology, but simply as urging that the time often given to parsing and memorizing and repeating formulas, which my experience has taught me help but little in the mastery of the language, can be much more profitably employed in the oral work just mentioned. The aim, of course, is to teach the pupil to read and write Latin; but may not this be accomplished more expeditiously and pleasantly by making the language *alive*,—by teaching pupils to *speak, write, and read Latin* as they are taught to speak, write, and read a modern language? A German university student, if the classics be his specialty, learns not only to read and write Latin, but even to speak it. If Latin is to maintain its present high place in our courses of study, it must offer something better than mere mental training or grammatical drill; it must introduce the student to the priceless treasures of art and literature which the Romans gathered from the ancient world, and which, transfusing with their own genius, they transmitted to coming ages. This work can be done in no way better than by teaching Latin as a *living language*. Is it not time that some one of our colleges or universities should offer opportunities for students to acquire a *speaking knowledge* of the Latin language?

For those who prefer the English method of pronunciation, a few simple rules have been given. The so-called Roman method, which is a very near approach to the ancient pronunciation, is now adopted by many of our leading colleges and high schools. Great pains have been taken in these lessons to teach the euphonic changes that occur in verbs in the formation of the perfect and participial stems. A thorough knowledge of the *phonetic value of the letters of the Roman alphabet* will help the student through most of these difficulties. This is quite aside from the question of pronunciation, which must, after all, be governed by the prevailing usage. The quantity of syllables, except final syllables that are short, and the final *o* of the first person present indicative of verbs, has been carefully marked, in order to secure accuracy of pronunciation; and, if a serious attempt is made to pronounce according to the Roman method, the pupil's ear should be trained to it from the start.

In enumerating the principal parts of verbs, I have ventured to deviate so far from common usage as to substitute in place of the so-called supine the *neuter of the perfect participle*. The supine in

-um, called by many grammarians one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs, in fact, to only about 250 Latin verbs; then, again, those verbs that are invariably intransitive have the perfect participle in the neuter gender only. This part, then, called in the dictionaries the supine in -um, must, in most cases, be the neuter of the perfect participle; and I have ventured, in the enumeration of the principal parts of the verb, to give it this name, and also to substitute, as Vanicek and other grammarians have done, in place of *supine stem*, the more correct term *participial stem*. The retention of the *neuter* of the perfect participle, in enumerating the principal parts of the verb, instead of the masculine, is of importance from the fact just mentioned in regard to intransitive verbs, and also because it can be made to conform easily to the present usage of our dictionaries.

The words in the short vocabularies at the beginning of the lessons, as well as the examples to illustrate the rules of syntax, are mostly drawn from the first five chapters of Cæsar's Gallic War. These vocabularies should be thoroughly committed to memory. The practice of selecting examples from authors of different periods and modes of expression tends, as it seems to me, rather to perplex young pupils than to give them definite ideas of the structure and formation of a Latin sentence. No effort is made in these vocabularies to teach the derivation of words; but, in the general vocabulary at the close of the book, the prefixes, stems, and endings of the words have been carefully indicated. In the chapter on the formation of words, attention is mainly confined to the formation of those words that the pupil can easily understand, and that can be made of service to him while studying these lessons.

Exercises for sight-reading have been introduced early in the course. The lesson read at sight can be assigned as the regular lesson of the next day, and made to serve as the basis for additional drill in syntax and etymology. On the third day, the pupil should be required to translate the same lesson, as a review exercise, into clear and accurate English, absolutely disregarding the literal construction of the words and sentences. These exercises will also afford ample means for practice in pronouncing Latin, which is best acquired in reading connected sentences, as is the case in a modern language. But in order to read Latin easily and

well, the oral practice, which I have mentioned, will be found a valuable and almost indispensable aid.

My aim has been to introduce the pupil, by the aid of easy examples, to the correct use of words and to the chief principles of syntax. When these examples have been studied, and the rules to be derived from them are thoroughly understood, the exercises that follow, both Latin and English, will be found sufficient to fix these principles in the memory. It is important, in fact indispensable to thoroughness, for the pupil to keep up the work of composition. If the exercises to be turned into Latin are too numerous, then a part of them can be omitted until the review; but some writing in Latin should be done every day.

The book may seem to some teachers to be too large for beginners. But I have endeavored to keep in view the needs of young pupils, and have thought it better to give too much explanation rather than not enough. Then, again, the numerous examples; the explanatory notes; the frequent illustration of Latin idioms by reference to English; the manner in which the paradigms are displayed; and the adjustment of the type, by which the pupil can learn not only the leading topics of the page, but also the relative importance of the various rules, remarks, and observations, have all necessarily added to the size of the book, but they will all, it is hoped, be found helpful to the pupil.

My acknowledgments are due to several of our best teachers, who have generously aided me by their counsel in the plan and in the numerous details of the book. The entire work, while going through the press, has received, in addition, the valuable revision and oversight of GEORGE W. COLLORD, Professor of Latin in the COLLEGIATE AND POLYTECHNIC INSTITUTE, Brooklyn; of CASKIE HARRISON, sometime Professor of Ancient Languages in the UNIVERSITY OF THE SOUTH, now one of the Principals of the BROOKLYN LATIN SCHOOL, to whom I am especially indebted for many valuable suggestions in the revision of the chapters on syntax; D. A. KENNEDY, DEARBORN-MORGAN SCHOOL, Orange, N. J.; and of Miss C. T. DAVIS, Professor of Latin in the PACKER COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

R. F. L.

BROOKLYN, N.Y.,  
September, 1885.



# CONTENTS.



LESSONS.	PAGES.
INTRO- DUCTORY { Review of English Grammar .....	1-20
{ Synopsis for Review .....	20
{ Origin of Latin Language .....	21
I. Alphabet; Classification of Letters .....	23-27
II. Pronunciation; Syllabication; Quantity; Accent .....	27-36
VII.-VIII. Latin Verb and Conjugation .....	36-41
IX.-X. First Conjugation .....	41-45
XI. Latin Nouns and Declension .....	46-50
XII. First Declension .....	51-53
XIII. Subject and Predicate; Agreement of Verbs and Subject- Nominative .....	53-55
XIV. Subject and Object; Direct Object .....	55-57
XV.-XVII. Second Declension; Appositive and Genitive with Nouns; Dative with Transitive Verbs .....	57-64
XVIII. Prepositions .....	64-65
XIX.-XX. Adjectives; First and Second Declension; Agreement of Adjectives .....	66-71
XXI.-XXII. First Conjugation; Active Voice; Imperative Mode; Questions; Vocative .....	71-76
XXIII.-XXXI. Third Declension; Rules of Position; Rules of Gender .....	76-97
XXXI. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, and Instrument .....	97-99
XXXII. Subject and Copula; Predicate Noun; Predicate Adjec- tive .....	99-102
XXXIII. Indicative of <i>sum</i> ; Predicate Genitive .....	102-104
XXXIV.-XXXV. Adjectives of the Third Declension .....	105-110
XXXVI.-XXXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives; Ablative with Com- paratives; Genitive and Dative with Adjectives; Irregular and Defective Comparison .....	110-118
XXXIX. Uses of Adverbs; First Conjugation; Voices of Verbs .....	119-122
XL. Formation, Classification, and Comparison of Adverbs .....	122-125
XLI. First Conjugation, <i>continued</i> .....	126-129

LESSONS.	PAGES.
XLII. Second Conjugation; Ablative of Agent .....	129-132
XLIII.-XLV. Second Conjugation, <i>continued</i> ; Stems .....	132-139
XLVI. Fourth Declension .....	140-141
XLVII. Fifth Declension .....	142-143
XLVIII.-LI. Third Conjugation; Laws of Euphony; Ablative of Accompaniment; Two Accusatives .....	144-157
LII.-LV. Fourth Conjugation; Two Accusatives of the Same Person and Thing; Subjective, Possessive, and Objective Genitive; Dative with Intransitive Verbs; Accusative and Ablative of Time .....	157-167
LVI. Verbs in <i>-io</i> .....	168
LVII. Uses of the Dative: Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage, Dative of Possessor, Dative of Apparent Agent, Dative of Reference, and Dative of Purpose or End .....	169-171
LVIII. Prepositions; Dative with Compounds .....	171-174
LIX. Classes of Conjunctions .....	175-177
LX. Genitives in <i>-ius</i> ; Imperative Mode, Active Voice .....	177-180
LXI. Numerals; Accusative of Time and Space; Ablative of Difference .....	180-185
LXII. Imperative Passive of the Four Conjugations; Place Where .....	186-189
LXIII. Classification of Sentences; Analysis of Simple Sentences .....	189-192
LXIV.-LXIX. Pronouns: Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, Demonstrative; Partitive Genitive; Determinatives; Relatives; Agreement of Relatives, Interrogatives, and Indefinites .....	192-209
LXX. Uses of the Ablative: Ablative Proper; Instrumental Ablative; Locative; Separation, Cause, etc.; Perfect Participles denoting <i>parentage</i> , etc. ....	209-211
LXXI. Reading Latin at Sight .....	211-212
LXXII. Infinitive Mode; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	213-216
LXXIII. Infinitive and Subject-Accusative; Complementary Infinitive; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	216-219
LXXIV. Participles; Ablative Absolute; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	219-225
LXXV. Gerund and Gerundive; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	225-230
LXXVI. Inflection and Syntax of Supines; Exercises for Sight-Reading .....	231-233

LESSONS.	PAGES.
LXXVII. Locative : Names of Places ; Place from which ; Place in which, etc. ....	234-239
LXXVIII.-LXXXIII. Subjunctive Mode ; Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> ; Dative of Possessor ; Subjunctive of <i>amo</i> . . . . .	239-250
LXXXII. Subjunctive in Independent Sentences : Optative, Hortatory Deliberative, Potential, Concessive . . . . .	248-250
LXXXIII.-LXXXIV. Deponent Verbs of First Conjugation ; Ablative with Deponents . . . . .	250-255
LXXXIV. Deponent Verbs of the Four Conjugations ; Semi-Deponents . . . . .	253-256
LXXXV. Periphrastic Conjugations ; Dative of Agent . . . . .	256-259
LXXXVI. Table of the Four Conjugations . . . . .	259-268
LXXXVII. Genitive and Ablative of Quality ; Exercises for Sight-Reading . . . . .	268-270
LXXXVIII.-XCIII. Irregular Verbs : <i>possum</i> , <i>prōsum</i> ; <i>vōlo</i> , <i>nōlo</i> , <i>mālo</i> ; <i>fēro</i> ; Ablative of Specification ; Ablative of Difference ; <i>eo</i> ; <i>ēdo</i> ; Ablative and Genitive of Price ; <i>fiō</i> . . . . .	270-285
XCIII. Defective Verbs ; Instrumental Ablative ; Ablative of Measure ; Ablative of Distance ; Ablative of Material ; <i>opus</i> and <i>usus</i> ; <i>praeditus</i> ; Ablative of Manner ; Ablative of Accompaniment ; Ablative of Characteristic ; Tabular View of the Uses of the Ablative . . . . .	285-290
XCIV. Impersonal Verbs ; Genitive with Verbs . . . . .	291-296
XCV. Classification of Dependent Clauses ; Exercises for Sight-Reading . . . . .	296-299
XCVI. Tenses in Dependent Clauses, Primary and Secondary ; Sequence in Consecutive Clauses (322. Obs.) ; after Perfect Infinitive (350. 2) . . . . .	299-305
XCVII. Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses :	
1. Final Clauses ; Object Clauses ; Verbs of <i>Hindering</i> , Verbs of <i>Fearing</i> , etc. . . . .	306-309
2. Consecutive Clauses and their Uses ; Exception in the Sequence of Tenses (see 322. Obs.) ; Relative Clauses of Result . . . . .	309-314
3. Conditional Sentences and their Classification ; Rules for Sequence of Tenses not Applicable (319. Obs.) ; Uses of <i>dum</i> , <i>mōdo</i> , and <i>dummōdo</i> in Conditional Clauses ; Disguised Conditions . . . . .	314-320

LESSONS.	PAGES.
4. Comparative Clauses with Indicative and Subjunctive,	320-321
5. Concessive Clauses .....	321-323
6. Causal Clauses .....	323-325
7. Temporal Clauses: Contemporaneous Action with <b>dum</b> , <b>dñec, quoad</b> ; Subsequent Action with <b>antēquam</b> and <b>priusquam</b> ; Construction of <b>cum</b> : (1) <b>cum</b> <b>inversum</b> , (2) Iterative use of <b>cum</b> , (3) <b>cum</b> His- torical, (4) Causal and Concessive <b>cum</b> .....	325-332
8. Substantive Clauses and their Classification .....	333-337
9. Interrogative Clauses: Rhetorical Questions, Direct Questions, Double Questions, Indirect Questions, De- pendent Double Questions, Questions and Answers, 337-341	
XCVIII. Indirect Discourse; Infinitive in Indirect Discourse; Tenses in Indirect Discourse; Sequence of Tenses after other Modes; Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or a Participle; Reflexive Pronouns; Pro- nouns in Indirect Discourse; Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse; Interrogative Sentences in Indirect Discourse; Imperative Sentences in Indirect Discourse .....	342-355
XCIX. Relative Clauses: Simple Relative Clauses; Relative Clauses introducing <i>purpose, result, condition, cause,</i> <i>concession</i> ; Indefinite Relative; Relative Clauses in Indirect Discourse .....	355-358
Intermediate (or Parenthetic) Clauses; Attraction of Mode .....	358-359
Partial Indirect Discourse .....	359-362
<hr/>	
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES .....	363-369
SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX .....	370-381
FABLES .....	382-383
LIFE OF CÆSAR .....	383-388
THE HELVETIAN WAR, FROM "WOODFORD'S EPITOME OF CÆSAR,"	388-397
NOTES .....	398-418
SKETCH OF CÆSAR'S LIFE .....	402-406
INDEX .....	419-431
<hr/>	
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY .....	1-57
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY .....	58-76

# INTRODUCTION.

---

## LESSON I.

### PARTS OF SPEECH IN ENGLISH.

#### NOUNS.—PRONOUNS.—ADJECTIVES.

**OBSERVATION.** In the study of English grammar, one of the first things the pupil has to do is to classify and name the various words that he meets in his exercises. He does this in the same manner that one might pick out, sort, and group objects of any kind: viz., by noting the points in which they resemble one another. For example, we may, from certain resemblances in form and structure, select all trees of a certain kind, and call them *maples*; from other resemblances, we should get another class, called *oaks*; and still another class, called *beeches*. Then we may study each class, as the *oak*, and learn all that is perhaps necessary to know of the numerous individuals that compose the class. In the same manner, we may study and classify words. Noticing the various ways the different words are used in sentences, we sort them out, or group them, into eight classes, which are called **PARTS OF SPEECH**. Those words that *name* objects are called **NOUNS**, from the Latin word **nomen**, which means *a name*. But we soon learn that we cannot talk or say anything about the noun without using another kind of word, called **VERB**, from the Latin **verbum**, *a word*. When a noun and a verb are combined so as to express a thought, i.e. so as to make sense, then a sentence (Lat. **sententia**) is formed; as,—

Trees *grow*.    Boys *run*.    Time *flies*.

#### PRONOUNS.

*Charles went to Rome with his mother, and he came back without her.* In this sentence we make use of three little words, called **PRONOUNS**. They are *his*, *he*, and *her*. Without these words, we should be compelled to repeat the nouns, and to say: *Charles went to Rome with Charles's mother, and Charles came back without Charles's mother.*

1. A Noun is the name of anything, as, a person, place, or thing; as, *boy, house, man, tree, city.*

2. A Pronoun is a word used for a noun; as, —

*Can you tell me who wrote the line?*

Obs. We have stated that the words of our language may be divided into eight classes, or parts, of speech. When we examine these parts of speech, we shall soon find it necessary to divide some of the classes into other classes. For example, the word *city* may mean any city, i.e. it is a name *common* to the whole class; while the word *Boston* is a *proper*, or *particular*, name of an individual of this class. We may, therefore, subdivide nouns into *common* and *proper*. If we notice the use of nouns further, we shall see that they undergo certain changes in *form*, *meaning*, and *use*; for example, *the tree grows*, and *the trees grow*. Here we notice the word *tree* changes its *form* by assuming *s*; this change, or modification, in the form and meaning of the noun, *tree*, is called **NUMBER**. The word *tree*, denoting one, is in the *singular number*; and the word *trees*, denoting more than one, is in the *plural number*. Let us now examine the following words: —

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. The <i>lion</i> is strong.               | 5. We praise the <i>author</i> .        |
| 2. The <i>li<del>o</del>ness</i> is strong. | 6. I, the <i>author</i> , have written. |
| 3. The <i>author</i> writes.                | 7. <i>Author</i> , hear thou.           |
| 4. The <i>author's</i> book is read.        | 8. We call the <i>author</i> .          |

Obs. In Ex. 1 the pupil will notice that the word *lion* denotes a *male*, in Ex. 2 this word has been changed, or modified, in *form*, and now denotes a *female*. This modification of the noun to denote *sex* is called **GENDER**. There are three genders, — *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.

The changes that we have noted so far, affect the *meaning* of the noun; there are two other changes of nouns seen in Exs. 3–8, which affect the *uses* and *relations* of the words. In Ex. 3 the author is represented as doing an act, viz., *writing*; in Ex. 4, as *possessing a book*; and in Ex. 5, as *receiving an action*. These *uses* of nouns are called **CASES**. The use of the noun in Ex. 3, as subject, is called the **NOMINATIVE CASE**; its use in Ex. 4, to denote possession, is called **POSSESSIVE CASE**; its use in Exs. 5 and 8, as object, is called **OBJECTIVE CASE**. The possessive is the only case of the noun that is indicated by a change in form.

In Exs. 6–8 the word *author* has three different uses. In Ex. 6 it denotes the *speaker*, in Ex. 7 the person *spoken to*, and in Exs. 5 and 8 the person *spoken of*. This change in the use of nouns is called **PERSON**. There are three persons, — the *first person*, as in

Ex. 6; the *second person*, denoting the one spoken to, as in Ex. 7; and the *third person*, denoting the one spoken of, as in Ex. 8.

#### MODIFICATION.

*These changes in the form, meaning, and use of words, are called MODIFICATIONS.*

#### Nouns.

**3.** A Noun, or Substantive, is the name of anything, as, a person, place, or thing; as, *man, book, Boston.*

1. A Proper Noun is the particular name of a person or place; as, *Brooklyn, Cicero.*

2. A Common Noun is a name common to all members of a class of objects; as, *city, river.*

Obs. There are two classes of common nouns, *collective* and *abstract*, that it may be well for the pupil to note:—

1. A collective noun is the name of a multitude of objects taken as a whole; as, *army, crowd, mob, legion, jury, multitude.*

2. An abstract noun is the name of a quality considered as taken away, or *abstracted*, from the object to which it belongs; as, *beauty, virtue, prudence, mildness.*

**4.** Nouns are modified to express Number, Gender, Person, and Case.

#### NUMBER.

1. There are two Numbers: the *singular*, which denotes one thing; as, *man, boy.*

2. The *plural*, which denotes more than one; as, *men, boys.*

#### GENDER.

3. There are three Genders: the *masculine*, which denotes the male sex; as, *lion, man.*

4. The *feminine*, which denotes the female sex; as, *lioness, woman.*

5. The *neuter*, which denotes neither male nor female; as, *book.*

#### PERSON.

**6.** There are three Persons:

(1) The *first person*, which denotes the one speaking; as,  
*We Americans hurry too much.*

(2) The *second person*, which denotes the one spoken to ; as,  
*John*, bring me the book.

(3) The *third person*, which denotes the one spoken of ; as,  
The *boy* has gone to school.

#### CASE.

7. Case is the modification of a noun or pronoun to show its relation to other words. There are four cases : —

(1) The Nominative, which usually denotes the subject, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* ; as,

*John* speaks.

(2) The Possessive, which denotes possession, and answers the question *whose?* ; as,

*John's* book. *Boys'* slates.

(3) The Objective, which denotes the relation of the direct object, or of a preposition ; as,

The man strikes the *boy*.

His wealth was gained by *industry*.

(4) The Independent, or Case Absolute, which denotes that the noun or pronoun has no dependence on any other word. Its most common uses are —

a. As the case of address ; as,

The fault, *dear Brutus*, is not in our stars, but in ourselves.

b. With a participle, forming a contracted clause ; as,

*The sun having risen*, we departed on our journey :  
*i.e.* = *when the sun had risen*, etc.

c. By pleonasm, as when a noun introduces the subject of a remark, and then is left independent of the rest of the sentence ; as,

The Pilgrim *fathers*, where are they ?



---

### *Pronouns.*

**5.** A pronoun (Lat. *pro*, *for*, and *nomen*, *name*) is a word used for a noun ; as, *he*, *they*.

1. A Personal Pronoun is one that denotes by its form the speaker, the one spoken to, or the one spoken of. The first person, as *I*, *we*, is the speaker ; the second person, *you*, *thou*, is the one spoken to ; the third person, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, is that spoken of.

2. A Relative Pronoun is one that relates to some preceding word or words, called the *antecedent*, and connects clauses ; as, *who*, *which*, *that*.

3. An Interrogative Pronoun is used to ask questions ; as,  
*Who* is that? *Which* book have you? *What* man is that?

4. An Adjective Pronoun is one that may be used both as an adjective or as a noun ; as, *this*, *that*, *each*, *all*.

### *Adjectives.*

Obs. The noun does not always stand alone ; other words may be added to it to explain or modify it ; as, *swift messengers* come. Here the word *swift* names some quality possessed by messengers, and is said to *modify* messengers. It is called an *adjective* (Lat. *ad*, *to*, and *jacere*, *to throw*).

**6.** An adjective is a word used to modify a noun or pronoun ; as, *dear friend*, *red book*, *they all remained*.

1. The modification of the adjective to show different degrees of quality is called *comparison*. There are three degrees of comparison : —

a. The Positive, which expresses the simple quality ; as, *dear*, *good*, *bad*.

b. The Comparative, which expresses a greater or less degree of the quality ; as, *dearer*, *better*, *worse*.

c. The Superlative, which expresses the greatest or least degree of the quality ; as, *dearest*, *best*, *worst*.

2. Adjectives are compared in three ways : (1) Regularly, *i.e.* by adding *-er* to the positive to form the comparative, and *-est* to the positive to form the superlative ; as, *high*, *higher*, *highest*. (2) By use of the adverbs *more* and *most*, or *less* and *least*, with the positive of adjectives of more than two

syllables ; as, *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful.* (3). Irregularly ; as, *good, better, best.*

Obs. The adjectives *a, an, and the* are usually called Articles.

### EXERCISES.

Mention the parts of speech and the cases of the nouns and pronouns in the following sentences :—

1. Birds fly. 2. The lion was caged. 3. The industrious boy was praised. 4. These industrious boys are praised. 5. The river flows rapidly. 6. The boy's slate is on the desk. 7. The boys are in school. 8. She plays very nicely. 9. He writes more rapidly than I do. 10. The gate of the palace opens. 11. The house that you saw is sold. 12. Tell me what you did. 13. This is the man who called on you. 14. There is no terror, Cassius, in your threats. 15. The treaty being concluded, the council was dissolved.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Write a common noun. Write the plural of this noun. Write the possessive singular and plural. Write the singular of six nouns ; the plural of the same. Make a rule for forming the plural of nouns. Write the possessive case of each noun. Make a rule for forming the possessive case. Write the possessive plural. Write a pronoun. What is a pronoun ? Show how pronouns are used. Write all the personal pronouns. Write a noun and prefix an adjective ; compare this adjective. In how many ways may adjectives be compared ? What class of adjectives are usually compared by *more* and *most* ?

## LESSON II.

### PARTS OF SPEECH IN ENGLISH.

#### VERBS AND THEIR MODIFICATIONS.

Obs. If we say *the boy strikes*, the word *strikes* expresses the act done by the boy, — or is, as it is called, a **VERB**. Some other word, however, is necessary in order to complete the meaning ; adding the word *book*, we have *the boy strikes the book*, the book being the object that receives the action, which passes over from

the doer. Verbs that represent the action as passing over from the *subject*, or doer of the action, to the *object*, or receiver of the action, are called **TRANSITIVE VERBS** (Lat. **trans**, *across*, and **eo**, *go*). In the sentence, *the boy sleeps*, the action does not pass over to an object; but the verb *sleeps* expresses only being or state, and is called an **INTRANSITIVE VERB**.

*The boy called his companion.* Here *called* represents the action as having taken place in past time; and, as *tense* means *time*, the verb is said to be in past time, or *past tense*. Notice further that the past tense of *called* is formed by adding *-ed* to *call*. All verbs that form their past tense (and perfect participle) in this way are called **REGULAR VERBS** (Lat. **regula**, *rule*, these parts being formed according to a uniform rule).

**7. A verb is a word that asserts action, being, or state of being; as, *sleep, am, strike.***

**8. Verbs are classified, according to their meaning, as—**

1. Transitive Verbs, which require an object; as,

*The man strikes the table.*

2. Intransitive Verbs, which do not require an object; as,

*The horse runs.*

**9. Verbs are classified, according to their form, as regular and irregular.**

1. A Regular Verb is one that forms its past tense and past participle by adding *-d* or *-ed* to the present; as, *love, loved, loved.*

2. An Irregular Verb is one that does not form its past tense and past participle by adding *-d* or *-ed* to the present; as, *teach, taught, taught.*

**10. Some verbs are found only in the third person singular. They have no personal subject, and are therefore called Impersonal Verbs; as, *it rains.***

**11. Defective Verbs want certain parts; as, *can, ought, shall.***

**12. An Auxiliary Verb (Lat. **auxilium**, *aid*) is one used to aid in the conjugation of other verbs; as *shall* in the sentence,**

*The man shall tell his story.*

## *Modifications of Verbs.*

### MODE.

OBS. 1. When I say *the man strikes*, I assert striking as a *fact*. *The man may strike*; in this sentence I do not assert the action as a fact, but as *possible*. Again, *if the man strike, he will be sorry*; I now assert the action, not as an actual fact, but as a *condition* of the man's being sorry. I can also say, *man, strike!* but I do not assert that the man does actually strike, but simply *command* him to strike. The action expressed by the verb *strike* has been asserted in *four* different ways, or *modes*. The first is called the INDICATIVE MODE; the second, the POTENTIAL-MODE; the third, the SUBJUNCTIVE MODE; the fourth, the IMPERATIVE MODE. There is another form of the verb, which expresses action, but cannot *assert* it of a subject; as, *he wishes to strike*. *To strike* expresses the action in a general way, without confining or limiting it to a subject; it is, therefore, called the INFINITIVE MODE, *i.e. without limit, unlimited*.

### VOICE.

OBS. 2. *The man struck the boy*. In this sentence the verb *struck* shows that the subject, *man*, is the *actor*; if we change the sentence, still expressing the same idea, to *the boy was struck by the man*, then the verb, *was struck*, shows that the subject is no longer the *actor*, but is acted upon, or receives the action. This change in the form of the verb is called VOICE. The first form is called ACTIVE VOICE; and the second, the PASSIVE VOICE.

**13.** Verbs are modified to express voice, mode, tense, number, and person.

1. Voice is that modification of a *transitive verb* which shows whether the subject acts or is acted upon. There are two voices:—

*a.* The Active Voice, which shows that the subject does the action; as,

The man *strikes*.

*b.* The Passive Voice, which shows that the subject suffers the action; as,

The man *is struck*.

2. Mode (Lat. *modus*, *manner*) denotes the manner of asserting the action or being. There are five modes:—

*a.* The Indicative, which asserts the action (or being) as a fact, or inquires after a fact; as,

He *came*.    *Did* he *come*?

b. The Potential, which asserts power, possibility, or necessity of the action or being; as,

*He may come. He must come.*

c. The Subjunctive, which asserts the action or being as a mere condition, supposition, uncertainty, or wish; as,

*If you had come, this would not have happened.*

Obs. The Subjunctive mode has but few forms now in common use, in which it differs from the forms of the Indicative and Potential; as,

*If I were in your place. If he be loved. If he love.*

d. The Imperative, which asserts the action or being as a command or entreaty; as,

*Come thou.*

e. The Infinitive (*infinitivus, unlimited*), which expresses the action or being in a general way, without asserting it of any person or thing; as,

*He wishes to go.*

That is, it is *unlimited* (hence its name) as to number and person. The verb in the other modes is called *finite*, that is, *limited* in number and person. *He wishes to go. To go* does duty here as a *verb*, expressing action, and as a *verbal noun*, the object of *wishes*.

#### TENSE.

Obs. In the sentences *I strike, I struck, I shall strike*, the *mode*, or *manner*, of asserting the action is the same, but the *time* is different. *I strike* expresses the action as present; *I struck*, as past; and *I shall strike*, as future. The first form is called PRESENT TIME, or PRESENT TENSE, as *tense* means *time*; the second, the PAST TENSE; the third, the FUTURE TENSE. There are also three other forms of the verb, asserting the action as completed in the present, the past, or the future: (1) *I have struck*; (2) *I had struck*; (3) *I shall have struck*. The first, *have struck*, represents the action as completed at the present time, and is called the PERFECT TENSE, or the PRESENT PERFECT; the second, *had struck*, represents the action as completed in past time, and is called the PLUPERFECT TENSE, or PAST PERFECT; the third, *shall have struck*, represents the action as to be completed before some other future action, and is called the FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

3. Tense expresses the time of the action or being ; the time may be *present*, *past*, or *future*. There are six tenses :—

a. The Present expresses action or being as present ; as,

*He runs.*

b. The Imperfect expresses action or being as going on in past time ; as,

*He was running.*

c. The Future expresses action or being as yet to come ; as,

*He will run.*

d. The Perfect expresses action or being as completed in present time ; as,

*He has run.*

e. The Past Tense (aorist, or historical perfect) expresses action or being as ended in past time ; as,

*He ran.*

f. The Pluperfect expresses action as ended before some other past action or being ; as,

*He had run.*

g. The Future Perfect expresses action or being to be completed before some other future action ; as,

*He shall have run.*

#### PERSON.

If we change the subject in the first sentence to *thou*, or to *he*, we must then change the verb *strike* to *strikest*, or to *strikes*. These changes are made for the sake of *agreement* between the subject and the verb,—the verb ending in *-est* agrees with *thou* in the second person, and the verb ending in *-s* agrees with *he* in the third person. Both of these subjects are singular number ; if the subject is plural, the verb must be plural ; as, *the men strike*. Hence, verbs agree with their subjects in *number* and *person*.

4. Number and Person of a verb are those modifications which show its agreement with the number and person of the subject ; as,

*The boy runs.    The boys run.*

## PARTICIPLES.

OBS. In the sentence *the sun rising causes the day*, the word *rising*, while not directly asserting the action of *rising* of the sun, still assumes such an action; *causes* directly asserts the action. We may also say, *the rising sun causes the day*, but here *rising* has become an adjective, modifying *sun*. Hence, the participle may be defined as *that form of the verb which partakes of the nature of an adjective, and expresses the action as assumed*.

**14.** The Participle is a form of the verb that partakes of the nature of the verb and adjective. There are three participles : —

1. The Present, which represents the action or being as going on at the time denoted by the verb ; as,

The river, *flowing* from the mountains, waters the plain.

2. The Past, which represents the action or being as completed at the time denoted by the verb ; as,

The soldier, *covered* with wounds, fell.

3. The Perfect, which represents the action or being as completed previous to the time denoted by the verb ; as,

*Having climbed* to the top of the hill, we saw the beautiful landscape.

## EXERCISES.

Name the mode, tense, and voice, of each of the following verbs : —

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. They sing.              | 13. They are chosen.          |
| 2. They have sung.         | 14. They were ruled.          |
| 3. I do fight.             | 15. He has been struck.       |
| 4. I have sung.            | 16. We are blamed.            |
| 5. They were calling.      | 17. You were being praised.   |
| 6. They will call.         | 18. You will be blamed.       |
| 7. They had called.        | 19. The boy is called.        |
| 8. They called.            | 20. The girl has been called. |
| 9. They have called.       | 21. The king was wounded.     |
| 10. They are calling.      | 22. They will be punished.    |
| 11. They had fought.       | 23. They had been punished.   |
| 12. They will have fought. | 24. He has been praised.      |

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a verb? Write a sentence containing a transitive verb. How are verbs classified? Mention the modifications of verbs. Write a verb in the indicative mode. What is a participle? Define the word. How many modes are there? How many tenses? Define tense.

## LESSON III.

## PARTS OF SPEECH IN ENGLISH.

## ADVERBS.—PREPOSITIONS.—CONJUNCTIONS.—INTERJECTIONS.

*Adverbs.*

**OBS.** A noun and a verb are both necessary in order to form a sentence. We have learned that modifying words are often added to nouns to explain or to express the idea more clearly. Words are often added to the verb for the same purpose. If we say, *the boy reads*, we express the fact in a general way; but, if we wish to speak of the *manner* of reading, then we say, *the boy reads badly*, adding the word *badly*; if, of the *time*, we add the word *now*: *the boy reads now*; of the *place*, we add the word *here*: *the boy reads here*. We may join words to these modifiers, and say, *the boy reads very badly*, that is, *very* modifies *badly*; we may join a word to an adjective, as, that book is *very good*. These words that we join with *verbs*, *adjectives*, or *adverbs*, to modify their meaning, are called **ADVERBS** (Lat. **ad**, *to*, and **verbum**, *a word, or verb*).

**15.** An Adverb is a word used to modify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs; as, *he speaks plainly; it is remarkably cold weather; he strikes very hard.*

## COMPARISON.

1. Adverbs are compared in the same way as adjectives; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
sweetly	more sweetly	most sweetly
soon	sooner	soonest
well	better	best



## CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

2. Adverbs may express *time, place, manner, cause, or degree.*

a. Adverbs of Time answer the question, *when?* ; as, *lately, yesterday.*

b. Adverbs of Place answer the question, *where?* ; as, *there, here.*

c. Adverbs of Manner answer the question, *in what way?* ; as, *excellently, well.*

d. Adverbs of Cause answer the question, *why?* ; as, *why.*

e. Adverbs of Degree answer the question, *in what degree?* ; as, *too, very.*

*Prepositions.*

OBS. Adverbs modify verbs, as, *the horse stands there* ; but we may wish to express the idea with more distinctness than is possible even with the use of an adverb, as, *the horse stands in his stall.* These words, *in his stall*, standing for the adverb *there*, are called a *phrase*, and the word *in*, that shows the relation between *stands* and *stall*, is called a PREPOSITION.

16. A Preposition (Lat. *prae*, *before*, and *pono*, *place*) shows the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word ; as, *he came to town ; to die for one's country.*

*Conjunctions.*

OBS. In the sentence *John and James read*, the two words, *John* and *James*, are united by the word *and*. In the sentence *a brave and prudent man acts discretely* ; here the two adjectives are connected by *and*. Again, in the sentence *the man works in summer and in winter* ; here the two phrases, *in summer* and *in winter*, are connected by *and*. *The earth is round, and no one doubts it*, is composed of two sentences, or *clauses*, connected by *and*. The words that connect other words or sentences are called CONJUNCTIONS (Lat. *con*, *together*, and *jungo*, *join*).

17. A Conjunction is a word used to connect words, phrases, or clauses.

Conjunctions are—

a. Co-ordinate, when they connect words, phrases, or clauses of the same rank ; as, *and, but, or, nor.*

b. Subordinate, when they connect clauses of different rank; as, *if, because, when.*

### *Interjections.*

**18.** An Interjection is a word used to express sudden emotion or feeling; as, *alas! Oh!*

### EXERCISES.

Mention the parts of speech in the following sentences: —

1. This book was given to me. 2. These birds fly very swiftly. 3. The child likes to play. 4. The brave soldiers fell in battle. 5. We saw a beautiful landscape. 6. The gallant soldier fell, covered with wounds. 7. I saw the sun sinking behind the hills. 8. The Delta of the Mississippi was once at St. Louis. 9. They made Victoria queen. 10. Alas! how many changes have occurred. 11. Mary and Elizabeth lived and reigned in England. 12. Give me the book. 13. If he give me the book, I shall rejoice. 14. If I were in your place, I would go.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a preposition? What is a phrase? Write a sentence containing an adverb; expand this into a phrase. Write two nouns connected by *and*; by *but*. In the sentence, *the earth is round, and no one doubts it*, **and** is a co-ordinate conjunction; but in the sentence, *the sea, when it had spent its fury, became calm*, **when** is a subordinate conjunction.



## LESSON IV.

### FORMS OF THE ENGLISH VERB.

**19.** The conjugation of the English verb in Latin form, *i.e.* the names of the tenses are those used in conjugating a Latin verb, is as follows: —

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

PRESENT TENSE.	PERFECT TENSE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I love. 2. Thou lovest. 3. He, she, or it loves. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We love. 2. Ye or you love. 3. They love.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I have loved. 2. Thou hast loved. 3. He, she, or it has loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We have loved. 2. Ye or you have loved. 3. They have loved.
<i>Progressive Form.</i>	AORIST.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I am loving. 2. Thou art loving. 3. He, she, or it is loving. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We are loving. 2. Ye or you are loving. 3. They are loving.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I loved. 2. Thou lovedst. 3. He, she, or it loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We loved. 2. Ye or you loved. 3. They loved.
<i>Emphatic Form.</i>	<i>Emphatic Form.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I do love. 2. Thou dost love. 3. He, she, or it does love. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We do love. 2. Ye or you do love. 3. They do love.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I did love. 2. Thou didst love. 3. He, she, or it did love. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We did love. 2. Ye or you did love. 3. They did love.
IMPERFECT TENSE.	PLUPERFECT TENSE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I was loving. 2. Thou wast loving. 3. He, she, or it was loving. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We were loving. 2. Ye or you were loving. 3. They were loving.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I had loved. 2. Thou hadst loved. 3. He, she, or it had loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We had loved. 2. Ye or you had loved. 3. They had loved.
FUTURE TENSE.	FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall love. 2. Thou wilt love. 3. He, she, or it will love. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall love. 2. Ye or you will love. 3. They will love.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall have loved. 2. Thou wilt have loved. 3. He, she, it will have loved. <i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall have loved. 2. Ye or you will have loved. 3. They will have loved.

<i>Imperative Mode.</i>	
PRESENT TENSE.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. —	<i>Plur.</i> 1. —
2. Love (you or thou).	2. Love (ye).
3. —	3. —
<i>Infinitive Mode.</i>	
PRESENT TENSE, To love.	PERFECT TENSE, To have loved.
<i>Participles.</i>	
PRESENT, Loving.	PAST, Loved. PAST PERFECT, Having loved.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Indicative Mode.</i>	
PRESENT TENSE.	FUTURE TENSE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I am being loved.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall be loved.
2. Thou art being loved.	2. Thou wilt be loved.
3. He, she, or it is being loved.	3. He, she, or it will be loved.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We are being loved.	<i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall be loved.
2. Ye or you are being loved.	2. Ye or you will be loved.
3. They are being loved.	3. They will be loved.
OR,	PERFECT TENSE.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I am loved.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I have
2. Thou art loved.	2. Thou hast
3. He, she, or it is loved.	3. He, she, or it has
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We are loved.	<i>Plur.</i> 1. We have
2. Ye or you are loved.	2. Ye or you have
3. They are loved.	3. They have
IMPERFECT TENSE.	HISTORICAL PERFECT.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I was	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I was loved.
2. Thou wast	2. Thou wast loved.
3. He, she, or it was	3. He, she, or it was loved.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We were	<i>Plur.</i> 1. We were loved.
2. Ye or you were	2. Ye or you were loved.
3. They were	3. They were loved.

<b>PLUPERFECT TENSE.</b>		<b>FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.</b>	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. I had been loved.	2. Thou hadst been loved.	<i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall have been loved.	2. Thou wilt have been loved.
3. He, she, or it has been loved.		3. He, she, or it will have been loved.	
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We had been loved.	2. Ye or you had been loved.	<i>Plur.</i> 1. Weshall have been loved.	2. Ye or you will have been loved.
3. They had been loved.		3. They will have been loved.	
<b><i>Imperative Mode.</i></b>			
<b>PRESENT TENSE.</b>			
<i>Sing.</i> 1. —	2. Be (you or thou) loved.	<i>Plur.</i> 1. —	2. Be (ye or you) loved.
3. —		3. —	
<b><i>Infinitive Mode.</i></b>			
<b>PRES. TENSE, To be loved.    PRES. PERF. TENSE, To have been loved.</b>			
<b><i>Participles.</i></b>			
<b>PRESENT, Being loved.</b>		<b>PAST, Been loved.</b>	
<b>PAST PERFECT, Having been loved.</b>			

1. Conjugation is the regular arrangement of all the forms of a verb.

NOTE. Conjugate in the same manner the verbs *hear, teach, rule, choose, run, see*.



## LESSON V.

### THE SENTENCE.

**20.** A Sentence is the expression of a thought in words; as, *iron melts*.

**21.** Every sentence has two parts:—

1. The Subject,<sup>1</sup> or that about which something is said; as,  
*Birds fly.*

2. The Predicate, or that which is said about the subject ;  
as,                      The leaves *tremble*.

**EXAMPLES.**

Subject.	Predicate.
Birds	fly.
Boys	study.
Birds	twitter.

3. The Subject is always a noun, or some word used as a noun. The subject is sometimes modified by a word, or group of words, and the combination is then called the *modified*, or *logical subject* ; as,

*The cold wind* blows.

4. The Predicate is always a verb, or contains a verb. The predicate may be modified by other words, and the combination is then called the *modified*, or *logical predicate* ; as,

The leaves *fall quietly*.

5. The verb may be intransitive, and then the subject and verb make complete sense, and the predicate contains nothing but the verb ; as,

*Time flies*.

6. The verb may be transitive, and then an object is required to complete the sentence, and the verb and object together make up the predicate ; as,

The man *strikes the table*.

7. The verb may be *copulative*,<sup>2</sup> and then a *complement* is required to complete the sentence. The verb and complement together make up the predicate ; as,

The man *is old*.

8. The analysis of a sentence is the separation of it into its parts.

**EXAMPLE. — Time flies.**

Obs. This is a sentence, because it expresses a thought. *Time* is the subject, because it is that about which something is said ; *flies* is the predicate, because it says something of the subject.

The following method of analysis will be found useful for young pupils. The subject is marked s.; the predicate is marked (1) v.i., *i.e.* Verb Intransitive; (2) v.t. and o., *i.e.* Verb Transitive and Object; (3) v.c. and c., *i.e.* Verb Copulative and Complement:—

s.	v.i.	
Soldiers	fight.	
s.	v.t.	o.
Cæsar	conquers	the Germans.
s.	v.c.	c.
The river	is	deep.

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences:—

1. The enemy crossed the river.
2. Columbus discovered America.
3. The flowers bloom.
4. The flowers are beautiful.
5. Gold is yellow.
6. A shepherd watches sheep.
7. Study pays.
8. The boy learns his lesson.
9. The sun shines bright.
10. The lady is tall.
11. Ripe fruit is healthful.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The subject of a sentence may be found by asking *who?* or *what?* with the verb; as, *birds fly*. Who or what fly? Ans. *birds*. The predicate may be found by asking *what?* about the subject; as, *birds fly*. What about birds? Ans. They *fly*,—*fly* is the predicate.

2. *Copulative* means the same as **copula**, a link, coupler. It joins, or links, the subject with the complement; as, *snow is white*,—*snow* is the subject, *is* is the copula, and *white* the complement. There are several other copulative verbs besides *to be*; as, *become*, *seem*, *appear*. The adjective standing in the predicate is called the *predicate adjective*, and the noun is called the *predicate noun*.

Define simple sentence. Of what is a sentence composed? Define subject. What must the subject be? What is meant by copula? Classify verbs according to their meaning. Define object. What is a transitive verb?

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

<b>The Noun</b>	{	<i>Uses</i> . . . . .	{ Subject. Object. Complement. Principal Word in a Phrase.
		<i>Classes</i> . . . . .	{ Common. Proper. <i>Number</i> : Singular; Plural. <i>Gender</i> : Masculine; Fem.; Neuter.
		<i>Modifications</i>	{ <i>Person</i> : First; Second; Third. <i>Case</i> : Nominative; Possessive; Objective.
<b>The Pronoun</b>	{	<i>Uses</i> . . . . .	{ Same as those of Nouns. Personal.
		<i>Classes</i> . . . . .	{ Relative. Interrogative. Adjective.
		<i>Modifications</i>	{ Same as those of Nouns.
<b>Verb</b> . . .	{	<i>Uses</i> . . . . .	{ Predicate.
		<i>Classes</i> . . . . .	{ <i>Form</i> : Regular; Irregular. <i>Meaning</i> : Transitive; Intransitive.
			{ <i>Voice</i> : Active; Passive. <i>Mode</i> : Indicative (Potential); Subjunctive; Infinitive.
		<i>Modifications</i>	{ <i>Tense</i> : Present; Imperfect; Future; Perfect; Aorist; Pluperfect; Future Perfect. <i>Person</i> : First; Second; Third. <i>Number</i> : Singular; Plural.
<b>Adjective</b>	{	<i>Uses</i> . . . . .	{ Modifier; Complement.
		<i>Modification</i> .	{ <i>Comparison</i> { Positive Degree. Comparative Degree. Superlative Degree.
<b>Adverb</b> . .	{	<i>Classes</i> . . . . .	{ Time; Place; Manner; Degree; Cause.
		<i>Modifications</i>	{ Positive Degree. Comparative Degree. Superlative Degree.
<b>Conjunctions</b>	{	<i>Classes</i> . . . . .	{ Co-ordinate. Subordinate.

## SIMPLE SENTENCE.

<b>Parts</b> . . .	{	Subject. Predicate. Complement.	<b>Meaning</b> {	Declarative. Interrogative. Imperative. Exclamatory.



## LATIN LANGUAGE.

---

**Origin of Latin.**—The Latin language was spoken at Rome and in the adjoining district, the plain of Latium, from which latter it derives its name. It is closely related to the tongues spoken by the Samnites, Sabines, and other kindred races, to which the general name of *Sabellian* has been given. These Sabellian tribes, on first entering Italy, settled along the mountain ridges, from which they descended to the plains like streams that flood and fertilize the valleys. The Latins, who settled near the Tiber, belonged to the oldest of these successive migrations; then came the Sabines, the Aequians, Hernicans, and Volscians, who at first pressed hard on the Latins, and hemmed them into the narrow plain between the Tiber and the Alban hills, but in course of time coalesced with them and formed one nation.

**How Related.**—The Latin, as well as the Greek, Sanskrit, Teutonic, Celtic, and Zend, are all sister languages, and together help to form the Indo-European family. The original language from which these sprang was spoken by the progenitors of all these peoples, who once lived together somewhere in Central Asia, and by successive migrations peopled India and Europe, whence the name *Indo-European*. The name Aryan (pronounced *är-yan*) is often applied to this parent language, and to the groups that have descended from it.

**Where Spoken.**—The conquests of the Romans caused the Latin language to spread, not only over Italy and Sicily, but over the greater part of France and Spain.

***Origin of the Romance Languages.***—With the decay of Roman power, German tribes invaded and settled the provinces where Latin had been spoken; and from the consequent intermingling of tongues the various modern languages—Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Provençal, Wallachian, and Rhæto-Romanic (or Roumansch)—arose. The English language, although in its origin and its most essential words a Teutonic tongue, being the successor of the Anglo-Saxon, has borrowed at different times nearly half its words directly or indirectly from the Latin.

***Golden Age of Latin.***—The earliest Latin writings that have been preserved were composed about two hundred years before Christ. The language ceased to be spoken in the sixth century of our era. The best writers, as Cæsar, Cicero, Sallust, Vergil, Horace, and Livy, flourished in a period—called the Golden Age of Latin Literature—of about one hundred years immediately preceding and following the Christian era.

***Periods of Roman Literature.***—Roman literature may be divided into the following periods:—

- I. The PRE-HISTORIC PERIOD, to Livius Andronicus, B.C. 240.
- II. The ARCHAIC PERIOD, from Livius Andronicus to Cicero, B.C. 240–70.
- III. The GOLDEN AGE, B.C. 70 to A.D. 14.
  1. The *Ciceronian Period*.
  2. The *Augustan Period*.
- IV. The SILVER AGE, A.D. 14–117.
- V. The PERIOD OF POSITIVE DECLINE (*Brass and Iron Ages*), A.D. 117 to the sixth century.

# FIRST STEPS IN LATIN.



## LESSON I.

### THE ALPHABET.

**1.** The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *w*.

**2.** Letters are divided, according to the position of the vocal organs at the time of utterance, into vowels and consonants.

**3.** The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The vowels may be long, short, or common, *i.e.* sometimes long and sometimes short. They are marked as follows:—

1. Long . . . . .	ā ē ī ō ū
2. Short . . . . .	ă ɛ ĭ ɔ ŭ
3. Common . . . . .	ǣ ǣ ĭ ǫ ŭ

**4.** Diphthongs (meaning “double sound”) are the union of two vowels in one syllable. The most common diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*; the less common are *eu, ei, ui*.

**5.** The consonants *p, b, t, d, c (k, q), g*, are called mutes; and *m, n* (nasals), *r, l* (liquids), *h, j, f, v* (spirants), *s* (sibilant), semi-vowels.

**6.** The double consonants are *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) and *z* (*ts* or *ds*); *j* and *v* are consonant forms of *i* and *u*.

CLASSIFICATION OF LETTERS.<sup>1</sup>I. *Vowels.*

7. Vowels are produced when the vocal organs are open, so as to allow an uninterrupted flow of vocal sound; when the vocal sound is interrupted, consonants are produced, but no sharp line separates the least open vowels from the most open consonants.

8. The vowels may be divided according to their quality into—

- |                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| 1. <b>Open</b> . . . . .   | a     |
| 2. <b>Medial</b> . . . . . | e o   |
| 3. <b>Close</b> . . . . .  | i y u |

9. The open vowel is pronounced like *a* in *father*, the mouth being fully open. Starting with this sound, and by gradually contracting the vocal organs, the medial vowels, the close vowels, and the more open consonants (like *i* or *j* = *y*, *v* = *w*) are produced; and at last the closure of the vocal organs becomes complete when the mutes are uttered.

10. *e* is a medial vowel between open *a* and close *i*; *o* is medial between open *a* and close *u*; *y* occurs in Greek words only.

OBSERVATION 1. The vowel *i* and the consonant *i* (often written *j*) were not distinguished in form by the Romans. But *i*, combined with a vowel in the same syllable, was a consonant, and was sounded like *y*; as, **mājor** (**mā-yor**). It is now usually written *j*.

OBS. 2. The vowel *u* and the consonant *u* = *v*, are often interchanged; as: **mōn-ui**, *I have admonished*; **amā-vi**, *I have loved*; the ending *-ui* in **mōnui** becomes *-vi* in **amāvi**.

II. *Consonants.*

11. Consonants are divided, according to the organs of speech by which they are chiefly uttered, into—

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| 1. <b>Labials</b> (or lip-letters) . . .    | p, b, m, f, v.  |
| 2. <b>Dentals</b> (or teeth-letters) . . .  | t, d, n, s.     |
| 3. <b>Linguals</b> (or tongue-letters) . .  | r, l.           |
| 4. <b>Palatals</b> (or palate-letters) . .  | i, or j = y.    |
| 5. <b>Gutturals</b> (or throat-letters) . . | c k q, g, n, h. |

**12.** Consonants are divided, according to the degree of breathing required in their utterance, into —

1. **Smooth** . . . . . p, t, c (k, qu).
2. **Middle** . . . . . b, d, g.
3. **Rough** . . . . . f (ph), th, ch.

**13.** The following table shows the consonants according to the two classifications mentioned: —

	Labials.	Dentals.	Gutturals.
Smooth mutes . . . .	p	t	c (k, qu)
Middle mutes . . . .	b	d	g
Rough mutes . . . .	f (ph), v	th	ch

**14.** Consonants may also be classified, according to the manner in which they are uttered; as, —

1. **Surds**<sup>2</sup> . . . . . p, t, k, c, qu.
2. **Sonants** . . . . . b, d, g.

**15.** The following table shows the classification of consonants: —

	Mutes.		Semi-Vowels.			
	Surds.	Sonants.	Nasals.	Liquids.	Spirants.	Sibilants.
Labial . . . .	p	b	m	...	f, v	...
Dental . . . .	t	d	n	...	...	s, z
Lingual . . . .	...	...	...	r, l	...	...
Palatal . . . .	...	...	...	...	i, or j=y	...
Guttural . . . .	c k q	g	n <sup>3</sup>	...	h	...

OBS. 1. *k* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words.

OBS. 2. *q* is used only before *u*.

#### EUPHONIC CHANGES.<sup>4</sup>

**16.** In Latin words, vowels and consonants are often changed in order to secure an easier utterance. These changes are called *euphonic changes*.

### I. Vowel Changes.

**17.** Vowels are in general changed in the direction from the strongest to the weakest, *i.e.* following the vowel scale on page 24, from *a* to *i* on one side, or from *a* to *u* on the other, but sometimes across from *o* to *e*. Thus : —

1. *a* changed to *i*; as, **conficio** from **con** and **facio**.
2. *i* changed to *o*; as, **virginis** and **virgo**.
3. *e* changed to *i*; as, **obsideo**, from **ob** and **sedeo**.
4. *a* changed to *e*; as, **confectum** from **con** and **factum**.
5. *o* changed to *u*; as, **corporis**<sup>5</sup> from **corpus**.

### II. Consonant Changes.

**18.** A guttural (*c, g, q, or h*) before *s* unites with it, forming *x*; as, —

1. **ducs** = **dux** (gen. **duc-is**).
2. **regs** = **rex** (gen. **reg-is**).
3. **coqusi** = **cocsi** = **coxi**.
4. **vehsi** = **vexi**.

**19.** *s* between two vowels is generally changed to *r*; as, —

1. **corpōris** from **corpus**.
2. **eram** and **ero** from stem **es-**.

**20.** *d* and *t* before *s* are dropped or changed to *s*; as, —

1. **pēs** for **peds** (gen. **pēdis**).
2. **possum** for **potsum**.

This change, by which two consonants become *alike*, is called *assimilation* (from **ad**, *to*, and **similis**, *like*, a change that makes a consonant *like* the following consonant). Assimilation is partial when the consonant is adapted to the following letter, but does not become identical with it; as, —

3. **scribsi** = **scripsi**.
4. **regsi** = **recsi** = **rex**.

**21.** Assimilation is very common in the final consonant of prepositions compounded with other words; as, —

**affēro**, compounded of **ad** and **fēro**.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The pupil should omit the study of the classification of the letters for the present; the explanation will be found convenient for reference, and when the verb is taken up the attention of the pupil will be called to this subject as explaining most of the vowel and consonant changes.

2. The distinction between a surd and a sonant is the same as that between *p* and *b* as heard in *pad* and *bad*.

3. Before a guttural, as in *ink*.

4. See p. 183.

5. 102. 3. c.

Write the alphabet. How many letters has the Latin alphabet? How many vowels are there? Write the long vowels. Write the diphthongs. What diphthongs are seldom used?

## LESSON II.

## PRONUNCIATION.

**22.** The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. In the United States general usage favors one of two ways, which may be called the *Roman* (or *Phonetic*) and the *English*. Whatever method of pronunciation may be adopted, the pupil should be made thoroughly familiar with the leading features of the Roman method, which is a near approximation to the ancient pronunciation.

## ROMAN METHOD.

**23.** By the Roman method every letter has always the same sound. Each simple vowel is either long or short; a short vowel has the same sound as the corresponding long vowel, but occupies only half as much time in utterance.

I. *Sounds of the Vowels.*

**ā** as in *āh*, like *a* in *father*.

**ǎ** as in *ǎh*, like *a* in *idea*.

**ē** as in *prey*.

**ě** as in *met*.

**ī** as in *machine*.

**ȳ** as in *sit*.

**ō** as in *holy*.

**ō** as in *obey*.

**ū** as *oo* in *moon*.

**ū** as in *full*.

**y** has a sound between that of *i* and *u*, like the French *u*, or German *ü*.

## II. Sounds of the Diphthongs.<sup>1</sup>

**ae** like **ay** (*yes*), or **ai** in *aisle*.

**oe** like **oi** in *coin*.

**au** like **ow** in *how*.

**eu** like **ew** in *few*.

**ei** like **ei** in *eight*.

**ui** like **we** in *we*.

## III. Sounds of the Consonants.

**c** is always hard, like **c** in *come*.

**g** is always hard, like **g** in *gun*.

**j** is like **y** in *yet*.

**s** is always sharp, like **s** in *sea*.

**t** is always like **t** in *time*.

**v** is like **w** in *we*.

**qu** is like **qu** in *quart*.

**ch** has the sound of **k**.

**th** is like **th** in *thin*.

**ph** is like **f**.

**bs** and **bt** are like **ps**, **pt**.

**gu** and **su**, when making a syllable with the following vowel, like **gw**, **sw**.

**24.** The double consonants are : *x* = *cs* (*ks*), *z* = *dz*. The letters not mentioned have the same sound as in English.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce the following words :—

1. *ā'-lā,<sup>2</sup> wing ; rā'-pā, turnip ; fā'-mēs, hunger ; rē'-mex, rower ; ā-rē'-nā, sand ; frē'-nā, bridle.* 2. *tā-bel'-lā, tablet ; ĭ-tēr, journey ; mī-nī'ster, servant ; dō'-lōr, pain ; hū'-mē-rūs, shoulder ; ā'-nū-lūs, finger ring ; suā'-dē-ō, I advise.* 3. *prae-sī'-dī-ŭm, guard ; nau'-tā, sailor ; poe'-nā, punishment ; sae'-pē, often.* 4. *lae-tī'-tī-ā, joy ; prē'-tī-ŭm, price ; pā-tī-en'-tī-ā, patience ; coe'-lūm, heaven ; cā'-pūt, head ; ō'-cū-lūs, eye ; jū'-dex, judge ; vir'-go, maid ; mā'-chī-nā, machine ; pul'-chēr, beautiful.*

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Diphthongs occupy twice as much time in utterance as the short vowels.

2. The words will be accented and syllabicated until the subjects of accentuation and syllabication have been explained.



How is Latin generally pronounced in this country? How is long *a* pronounced? Why is a knowledge of the Roman method important? When does *n* have the sound of *ng*? What consonants have the same sound as in English? Are any letters silent?

### LESSON III.

#### SYLLABICATION.

**25.** A Latin word is divided into as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

Obs. The English words *mile*, *accurate*, *separate*, *abate*, would, as Latin words, be syllabicated as follows: **mī-le**, **ac-cu-rā'-te**, **se-pa-rā'-te**, **a-bā'-te**.

**26.** A single consonant between two vowels is joined to the second vowel.

#### EXAMPLES.

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. fā'-ber, <i>artisan</i> .  | 3. rē-gi'-na, <i>queen</i> . |
| 2. lau'-do, <i>I praise</i> . | 4. dō'-mī-nus, <i>lord</i> . |

**27.** When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first syllable, and the second to the second syllable.

#### EXAMPLES.

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. an'-nus, <i>year</i> . | 3. pen'-na, <i>feather</i> . |
| 2. bel'-lum, <i>war</i> . | 4. mit'-to, <i>I send</i> .  |

**28.** Two or more consonants not doubled between two vowels belong to the following vowel, but *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, in connection with another consonant, are joined to the preceding vowel.

#### EXAMPLES.

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. lī'-brī, <i>books</i> .      | 5. am'-bo, <i>both</i> .     |
| 2. fau'-stus, <i>lucky</i> .    | 6. lin'-gua, <i>tongue</i> . |
| 3. frā'-trēs, <i>brothers</i> . | 7. an'-guis, <i>snake</i> .  |
| 4. hō'-spēs, <i>guest</i> .     | 8. ma'-gnus, <i>great</i> .  |

**29.** The parts of compounds are treated as separate words.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **ab'-est** (**ab**, away, **est**, he is), *he is away.*
2. **in-u'-ti-lis** (**in**, not, **utilis**, useful), *useless.*
3. **ob-ī'-re** (**ob** and **ire**), *to go.*

**30.** The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*, or *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penultimate*, or *penult*; and the one before the penult, the *antepenultimate*, or *antepenult*.

**EXAMPLES.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>an-ten'-nā</b> , <i>sail-yard.</i>     | 4. <b>in-fā'-mi-ā</b> , <i>infamy.</i>   |
| 2. <b>fē-ne'-strā</b> , <i>window.</i>       | 5. <b>mā'-lā</b> , <i>apples.</i>        |
| 3. <b>im-pē-dī-men'-tā</b> , <i>baggage.</i> | 6. <b>dī-sci'-pū-lūs</b> , <i>pupil.</i> |

**OBS.** In the foregoing words point out the *ultimate*, the *penult*, and the *antepenult*.

**EXERCISES.**

Syllabicate and pronounce the following words: —

1. **scrī'ba**, *clerk*; **in'sūla**, *island*; **sāl**, *salt*; **rā'nā**, *frog*; **ārā'trā**, *plough*. 2. **ma'ppā**, *napkin*; **disci'pūlūs**, *scholar*; **ar'mā**, *arms*; **al'tērā**, *another*; **pēs**, *foot*; **hābē'na**, *thong*; **bellum**, *war*; **sānītās**, *health*; **pā'riēs**, *a wall*; **dō'lōr**, *pain*; **māgi'ster**, *master*. 3. **vul'nūs**, *wound*; **consuētū'dō**, *custom*; **suā'vis**, *sweet*; **hae'dūs**, *kid*; **prē'tiūm**, *price*; **cicā'trix**, *scar*; **laetī'tiā**, *joy*; **re'gnūm**,<sup>1</sup> *kingdom*; **pū'ēr**, *boy*; **injū'riā**, *injury*; **dī'xit**,<sup>2</sup> *he said*; **mā'gnus**, *great*; **a'mnis**,<sup>3</sup> *river*; **ad'eō**,<sup>4</sup> *I go to*; **lī'ttērā**, *letter*.

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

1. The combination *gn* can begin a syllable.
2. *x* is treated in syllabication as a single consonant.
3. The combination *mn* can begin a syllable.
4. Compounded of **ad**, *to*, and **eō**, *I go*.

What is a syllable? How is the quantity of a syllable determined? How can the number of syllables in Latin be found? Why does *b* belong to the first syllable in **abest**? What is the last syllable called? The last but one? Write three Latin words, and syllabicate each.



## LESSON IV.

## QUANTITY.

**31.** The quantity of syllables is the relative time occupied in pronouncing them. A syllable containing a long or short vowel is said to be long or short *by nature*, because the Romans so pronounced it. The quantity of such syllables must be learned by observation and practice.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *ā'ră*, altar.

2. *proe'lium*, battle.

3. *rā'nă*, frog.

4. *ă'ră'tră*, plough.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the italicized syllables contain *long vowels* or *diphthongs*, and are therefore long. The syllables not italicized contain *short vowels*, and are therefore short.

**32.** The following rules of quantity decide the length of most syllables not long or short *by nature*. A syllable is long in quantity —

1. If it contains a diphthong.
2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, or *z*, or any two consonants except a mute followed by *l* or *r*.
3. A syllable formed by contraction is long.

**33.** A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the letter *h*.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>lin</i> gua, tongue.        | 5. <i>jū</i> stus, just.     |
| 2. <i>an</i> nus, year.           | 6. <i>bel</i> lum, war.      |
| 3. <i>ar</i> vum, ploughed field. | 7. <i>du</i> x, leader.      |
| 4. <i>lau</i> do, I praise.       | 8. <i>pro</i> elium, battle. |

OBS. In each of the foregoing examples the italicized vowel is followed by two consonants, or by a double consonant; the vowel may be long (as in Ex. 5) or short (as in Exs. 1, 2), but the syllable in each case is long. When a short vowel is so placed, it is said to be long *by position*. In Exs. 2, 5 the quantity of the syllable and of the vowel is the same, *i.e.* long or short. Exs. 4, 8 contain a diphthong, and are long. The *i* in **proelium** is short, according to 33.

## 34. A syllable may therefore be —

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Long by nature . . . . .    | as, āra.                     |
| 2. Short by nature . . . . .   | “ rǎna.                      |
| 3. Long by position . . . . .  | “ an nus, gǎza. <sup>1</sup> |
| 4. Short by position . . . . . | “ via, trǎho.                |

35. In a syllable long by position merely, the vowel is pronounced short; as, —

- |                          |
|--------------------------|
| 1. lǎx, like oo in moon. |
| 2. nǔx, like u in full   |

36. But *nf*, *ns*, and *j* make both the preceding vowel and syllable long.

NOTE. In the following lessons the quantity of every syllable not determined by the preceding rules will be marked as indicated in Lesson I.; excepting final syllables, which will be marked only when they are long, or until rules have been given by which their quantity may be determined. Thus, in āra, the absence of any mark over the final *a* indicates that it is short.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *x*, though a double consonant, is treated as a single consonant in syllabication.

What is meant by a vowel being short *by nature*? When is a vowel short by nature? When long? What is the difference between the length or quantity of a vowel, and the length or quantity of a syllable?

In *jūstus* the italicized vowel and syllable are both long; in *an nus* the italicized syllable is long, but the vowel is short. The vowel is said to be long *by position*. Remember, then, that the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable. Is the vowel in *rex* long by nature? Is the vowel in *dux* long by nature?

## LESSON V.

### ACCENT.

**37.** Accent is a special stress of the voice placed upon a syllable in pronouncing it.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *va-ga'-ry*.    2. *in-fer'*.    3. *dis'-mal*.    4. *de-riv'-ing*.

**38.** The accent of Latin words is determined by the following rules:—

1. In words of two syllables the accent is always on the first.
2. In words of more than two syllables the penult, if long, is accented; if short, the antepenult is accented.<sup>1</sup>

#### EXAMPLES.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>an'nus</i> , year.                 | 5. <i>dē'vōro</i> , I devour.                 |
| 2. <i>stel'la</i> , star.                | 6. <i>pō'pūlus</i> , people.                  |
| 3. <i>in'sūla</i> , <sup>2</sup> island. | 7. <i>impērā'tor</i> , commander.             |
| 4. <i>matrō'na</i> , married woman.      | 8. <i>ingē'nium</i> , <sup>2</sup> character. |

#### EXERCISES.

Spell, syllabicate, and pronounce the following words:—

1. *rēgīna*, queen; *āquīla*, eagle; *insūla*, island.    2. *dōmīnus*, lord; *bellum*, war; *annus*, year; *āmīcus*, friend.  
 3. *jūdex*, judge; *puērī*, boys; *virgīnēs*, maidens; *ānīmālia*, animals; *flūmen*, river; *cīvītās*, state.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The accent, as affected by an enclitic, will be explained later.
2. Notice that the penult is short.

What is accent? Write a word with the accent on the penult. How do you accent Latin words of two syllables? Of three syllables? Is the last syllable of a Latin word ever accented? Does the *quantity* of the *syllable* or of the *vowel* determine the place of accent? (*Ans.* The quantity of the syllable; the vowel may be short, but the syllable long.) When can a short penult take the accent?

## LESSON VI.

## THE ENGLISH METHOD.

**39.** For those who prefer to retain the English pronunciation, the following rules are given. The pupil should notice that the long or short vowel-sounds indicated in these rules are wholly independent of the real quantity of the vowel.

1. In monosyllables the vowel has —

*a.* The long sound, if it ends the syllable; as, **si**, **me**, **spe**.  
*b.* The short sound, if followed by a consonant; as, **āb**, **cum**, **hōc**, **hās**. Except **post**, monosyllables in *es*, and (in plural cases) *os*, where it has the long sound; as, **rēs**, **hōs**, **ēs**.

2. An accented penult has —

*a.* The long vowel-sound before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*), or before a vowel or diphthong; as, **pā'ter**, **lib-er-ā'lis**, **dē'us**, **sa'cra**, **pa'tris**.

*b.* The short vowel-sound before two consonants (except a mute followed by *l* or *r*) or *x*; as, **reg'num**, **rex'i**.

3. An accented antepenult has —

*a.* The long vowel-sound before a vowel; as, **ē'adem**, **hī'e-mis**, **fū'e-rat**.

*b.* The short vowel-sound before a consonant; as, **in'su-la**, **i-tin'e-ris**.

**EXCEPTIONS.** (*a*) *u* before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) has the long sound: **jū've-nis**, **lū'ri-dus**, **pu'tri-dus**; but before *bl* the short sound, as in **res-pub'li-ca**.

(b) *a, e, o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by two vowels, the first of which is *e, i*, or *y*, have the long sound; as, *impe'ri-um, do'ce-o, a'cri-a*.

4. In all unaccented syllables the vowel-sound is —

*a*. Long, if followed by a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*): as *do-lo'ris*; but final syllables ending in a consonant are short, in a vowel, long; as, *con-sul* (except *es*, and in plural cases *os* at the end of the word).

*b*. Short before *x*, or any two consonants; as, *bel-lo'rum, rex-is'set*.

EXCEPTION. Final *a* is sounded as in the last syllable of *America*, as *men'sa*; and the vowel-sounds in *tibi* and *sibi* are as in the English *lily*.

NOTE. Compounds generally follow the same rules; but if the first part ends in a consonant, the vowel-sound is short: as, *ob'it, red'it, ab-e'rat, prae-ter'e-a, trans'i-tur* (except *post* and its compounds, and final syllables in *as* and *os* of plural cases: as, *post-quam, hos'ce*).

5. Diphthongs follow the same rules as the vowels which represent them in English; thus, —

*a*. *æ* and *æ* have the sound of *e*; that is, long in *cæ'lum, a-mœ'-nus*, short in *hæs'i-to, a-mœn'i-tas*.

*b*. In poetry *ei* may be regarded as a diphthong, as in *dein'de*, having the sound of *i* in mind; *eu, au, oi*, have, when diphthongs, the same sound as in *feud, author, coin*, as *Orpheus, Oileus, aurum*; *ui* is a diphthong, having the long sound of *i* in *huic, cui, hui*; *u*, in connection with other vowels or diphthongs, sometimes has the sound of *w* after *g* or *s*, as *qui, lin'gua, sua'deo, quæ'ro*.

*c*. In such words as *Gāius, Pompēius, Aquilēia*, *i* is sounded like *y*; as, *Gā-yus, Pom-pē-yus*, etc.

6. Consonants have generally the same power as in English; thus, —

*a*. Before *e, i, y*, and the diphthongs *æ, eu, æ*, *c* has the sound of *s*, and *g* of *j*; *ch* has always the sound of *k*, as in *chemist*; *c, s, t* often have the sound of *sh* before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *eu* when preceded by an accented syllable, and *x* of *ksh*, as *socius, censui, ratio, caduceus, anxius*.

NOTE. It is to be understood that in these examples the rule is only *permissive*, and that usage varies considerably among the best authorities. In general, when the word, or the combination of letters, is *distinctly foreign to us*, it may be better to retain the pure consonant sound, as in *men-ti-ſ'tur, Min'cius, ca-du'ce-us, Ly'si-as, Mœ'si-a, ax-i-o'ma, noc'ti-um*.

It is very common, in English pronunciation, to slur or suppress the more difficult consonant-sounds, particularly in such cases as *cn*, *gn*, *ps*, *pt*, *tm*, or *x*, at the beginning of a word, as in **Cnidus**, **gnotus**, **pseudopteris**, **Tmolus**, **xylon**. But in an accurate pronunciation of these as *Latin or Greek words*, the full consonant-sound will be retained.

Finally, there can be no correct rule to authorize the slipshod and slovenly habit of enunciation which is frequently allowed. To cultivate a *clear and vigorous utterance of unfamiliar words* is one of the incidental benefits of careful instruction in a foreign tongue.

## LESSON VII.

### LATIN VERBS.

**40.** Verbs in Latin, as in English, assert *action*, *being*, or *state of being*.

**41.** Verbs are also classified, according to their meaning, into —

1. *Transitive verbs*, which require an object; as, —

He *beats* the slave.

2. *Intransitive verbs*, which do not require an object; as, —

The man *runs*.

**42.** Verbs have also *voice*, *mode*, *tense*, *number*, and *person*.

**43.** Verbs have two voices : —

1. The *active voice*, which shows that the subject does the action; as, —

The *father* loves his son.

2. The *passive voice*, which shows that the subject suffers the action; as, —

The *son* is loved by his father.

**44.** There are four modes: the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, *imperative*, and *infinitive*. The indicative, imperative, and infinitive have, in general, the same use in Latin as in English. The use of the subjunctive can be learned best in connection with the syntax of the verb.



**45.** Verbs have six tenses<sup>1</sup>: three for *incomplete action* and three for *completed action*.

**I. Tenses for Incomplete Action.**

1. PRESENT . . . . . *I write, I am writing.*
2. IMPERFECT . . . . . *I was writing, I wrote.*
3. FUTURE . . . . . *I shall write, I will write.*

**II. Tenses for Completed Action.**

1. PERFECT . . . . . *I have written, I wrote.*
2. PLUPERFECT . . . . . *I had written.*
3. FUTURE PERFECT . . . . . *I shall have written.*

Obs. The *indicative mood* has all six tenses; the *subjunctive* has the present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect; the *imperative* has the present and future only; and the *infinitive* has the present, perfect, future, and future perfect.

**46.** Tenses are also distinguished as,—

**I. Principal, or Primary Tenses.**

1. PRESENT. . . . . *I write.*
2. PERFECT DEFINITE . . . . . *I have written.*
3. FUTURE . . . . . *I shall write.*

**II. Historical, or Secondary Tenses.**

1. IMPERFECT . . . . . *I was writing.*
2. AORIST, or HISTORICAL PERFECT . *I wrote.*
3. PLUPERFECT . . . . . *I had written.*

**47.** The present, future, pluperfect, and future perfect<sup>2</sup> tenses have, in general, the same use in Latin as in English.

**48.** The imperfect tense expresses an action as going on in past time, *i.e.* a continued, repeated, or customary past action; as,—

*I was writing.      I used to write.*

**49.** The perfect tense has two uses, distinguished as perfect definite and aorist, or historical perfect, corresponding to the perfect and past tenses in English; as,—

*I have written* (definite).

*I wrote* (aorist, or historical perfect).

**50.** Verbs, like nouns, have two *numbers*, singular and plural; and three *persons*, first, second, and third.

**51.** The voice, mode, tense, number, and person of a Latin verb is indicated by the endings; as,—

*āmat*, he loves.      *āmābat*, he was loving.

**52.** The various verbal forms that have voice, mood, tense, number, and person, make up the *finite*<sup>3</sup> verb. Besides these, there are three other forms derived from verbs, and partaking of their signification. These are:—

1. The *participle*, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective. A Latin verb has four participles: two in the active, the present and the future; and two in the passive, the perfect and the gerundive; as,—

*Active.*

PRESENT . . . . . *āmāns*, loving.  
FUTURE . . . . . *āmātūrus*, about to love.

*Passive.*

PERFECT . . . . . *āmātus*, loved.  
GERUNDIVE . . . . . *āmandus*, deserving to be loved.

2. The *gerund*, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing*; as,—

*āmandī*, of loving.

3. The *supine*, which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension. It has two forms, one in *-um*, the other in *-u*; as,—

*āmātum*, to love.      *āmātū*, to be loved.

**53.** The principal parts of a verb are, the *present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *perfect indicative*, and the *perfect participle*. These are called the *principal parts*, because all the other parts of the verb are formed from them.

Obs. The supine in *-um*, called by many grammarians one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs, in fact, to only about two hundred Latin verbs; then, again, those verbs that are invariably intransitive have the perfect participle in the neuter gender only. This part, then, called in the dictionaries the supine in *-um*, must,

in most cases, be the neuter of the perfect participle; and I have ventured, in the enumeration of the principal parts of the verb, to give it this name, and also to substitute, in place of *supine stem*, the more correct term *participial stem*.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The six tenses are found only in the indicative mood.
2. The imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called the *preterite tenses*.

3. A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a *finite verb*.

How many tenses in Latin? Define the word *tense*. Define *voice* as used in grammar. (*Ans.* Voice is a modification which shows whether the subject acts or is acted upon.) Define *mode*. Mention the primary tenses. How are voice, mode, tense, etc., expressed in English? (*Ans.* By the use of *auxiliaries*, or *helping words*.) How in Latin?



## LESSON VIII.

### CONJUGATION OF THE LATIN VERB.

**Obs.** In English, the mode, tense, number, and person of verbs are indicated chiefly by certain words prefixed to the verb, but in some cases by the endings of the verbs; as, Present, *he writes*; Future, *he will write*; Imperfect, *he was writing*. In Latin, these forms are always denoted by the endings of the verb; as, *āmat*, *he loves*; *āmābit*, *he will love*; *āmābat*, *he was loving*. Each of these Latin words shows its person by its ending, which is, therefore, called the *personal ending*; hence, with Latin verbs, the *personal pronouns* may be, and generally are, omitted. The changing of these endings to denote some modification of meaning, or to show some relation to other words, is called **CONJUGATION**.

**54.** In order to determine how to conjugate a Latin verb, it is necessary to know the Present Infinitive.

### EXAMPLES.

PRESENT.	INFINITIVE.
1. <i>āmo</i> , <i>I love</i> ;	<i>āmāre</i> , <i>to love</i> .
2. <i>mōneo</i> , <i>I advise</i> ;	<i>mōnēre</i> , <i>to advise</i> .
3. <i>rēgo</i> , <i>I rule</i> ;	<i>rēgēre</i> , <i>to rule</i> .
4. <i>audio</i> , <i>I hear</i> ;	<i>audīre</i> , <i>to hear</i> .

Obs. The pupil will notice that the infinitive in Latin is formed not as in English, by placing the preposition *to* before the simple form of the verb, but by adding *-re*. Each of these verbs has, also, a characteristic vowel before the infinitive ending, which in *āmo* is *-ā*, in *mōneo* is *-ē*, in *rēgo* is *-ē*, and in *audio* is *-ī*.

55. Accordingly, Latin verbs are divided into four classes, called *Conjugations*, distinguished from one another by the characteristic vowel before the ending *-re* of the present infinitive active, as follows:—

Conjugation.	Characteristic Vowels.	Infinitive Endings.
I.	ā	ā-re
II.	ē	ē-re
III.	ē	ē-re
IV.	ī	ī-re

1. The vowel before *-re* is called the *stem-characteristic*; thus, the stem of verbs of the first conjugation ends in *ā*, the second in *ē*, the third in *ē*, the fourth in *ī*.

2. Besides the present stem, there is often a simpler form that forms the basis of the entire conjugation, called the *verb-stem*. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the verb-stem is generally the same as the present stem; in the third conjugation *reg-* is the verb-stem, and *rēgē-* the present stem; as,

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
Verb-stem . .	āmā-	mōnē-	rēg-, minu-	audi-
Infinitive . .	āmā-re, to love.	mōnē-re, to advise.	rēg-ē-re, to rule. minu-ē-re, to lessen.	audi-re, to hear.

3. The verb-stems of the first, second, and fourth conjugations end in the vowels *ā*, *ē*, *ī*; the verb-stem of the third conjugation ends in a consonant or in *u*; hence the distinction of *vowel* and *consonant* conjugations.

Tell to which conjugation each of the following verbs belongs : —

PRESENT INDICATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
1. <i>laudo, I praise; <sup>1</sup></i>	<i>laudāre, to praise.</i>
2. <i>dēleo, I destroy;</i>	<i>dēlēre, to destroy.</i>
3. <i>tēgo, I cover;</i>	<i>tēgere, to cover.</i>
4. <i>mūnio, I fortify;</i>	<i>mūnīre, to fortify.</i>
5. <i>audio, I hear;</i>	<i>audīre, to hear.</i>
6. <i>hābeo, I have;</i>	<i>hābēre, to have.</i>
7. <i>haurio, I drain;</i>	<i>haurīre, to drain.</i>
8. <i>nūmēro, I count;</i>	<i>nūmērāre, to count.</i>
9. <i>fūgio, I flee;</i>	<i>fūgere, to flee.</i>
10. <i>erro, I wander;</i>	<i>errāre, to wander.</i>
11. <i>mōveo, I move;</i>	<i>mōvēre, to move.</i>

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Notice that the pronoun *I* is supplied in translating.

How many conjugations are there? How is each distinguished? What is meant by the conjugation of a verb? How does the Latin verb express tense? person? number?



## LESSON IX.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

**56.** All verbs whose characteristic vowel before the ending *-re* in the Present Infinitive is *-ā-* belong to the first conjugation.

#### *Present Tense.*

**57.** The Present Tense is formed by adding personal endings to the Present Stem.<sup>1</sup>

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Present Stem + o <sup>2</sup>	āmo	<i>I love.</i>
2	“ “ + s	āmās	<i>Thou lovest.</i>
3	“ “ + t	āmāt	<i>He loves.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mus	āmāmus	<i>We love.</i>
2	“ “ + tis	āmātis	<i>You love.</i>
3	“ “ + nt	āmānt	<i>They love.</i>

Obs. 1. Note that the vowel in the ending of the third person singular is shortened; short vowels in final syllables are generally not marked.

Obs. 2. In English we indicate the *person* and *number* of the verb chiefly by means of pronouns standing before the verb; as,

<i>Sing.</i> 1. <i>I love.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> 1. <i>We love.</i>
2. <i>Thou lovest.</i>	2. <i>You love.</i>
3. <i>He loves.</i>	3. <i>They love.</i>

The verb changes its ending in but two forms; with these exceptions it would be impossible to tell the person or number of this verb unless a pronoun was used with it. In Latin the endings of the verbs were originally pronouns, and they are changed, as the pronouns in English are, to indicate the person and number of the verb; as,

<i>love-we</i>	<i>love-he</i>	<i>love-thou</i>
āmā-mus	āmā-t	āmā-s

## VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INFINITIVE.
laudo, <i>praise.</i> <sup>3</sup>	laudā. <sup>4</sup>	laudāre.
porto, <i>carry.</i>	portā.	portāre.
pugno, <i>fight.</i>	pugnā.	pugnāre.
voco, <i>call.</i>	vocā.	vocāre.
dono, <i>give.</i>	dōnā.	dōnāre.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

- |                         |                          |              |            |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. laudat. <sup>5</sup> | 3. pūnamus. <sup>6</sup> | 5. dōnātis.  | 7. dōnās.  |
| 2. vōcant.              | 4. portas.               | 6. laudāmus. | 8. pūnant. |

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The endings were originally personal pronouns: **laudas** means *not love*, but *thou lovest*. The pronoun, when used as the subject of the verb, need not, therefore, be expressed. Note, further, that the endings show the number and person of the subject, but not the gender.

Obs. This is true, in general, only when the verb is of the *first* or *second* person. With the *third* person, a definite subject should be expressed, unless implied in what precedes or follows.

2. Note that the Present Indicative = *present stem* + *personal endings*, and that **āmā + o = āmo**; also, that it has lost the *m* (which appears in **sum, inquam**). The *o* stands for *m* and the preceding vowel; as, **āmo = āma-o-m**.

3. Read, *I praise*, etc.

4. The stem is **laudā**, and by adding the personal ending we get **lauda-o**, which is contracted into **laudo**.

5. Remember that the present tense in English has three forms: —

1. **laudo**, *I praise, I am praising, I do praise.*
2. **laudās**, *thou praisest, thou art praising, thou dost praise.*
3. **laudāt**, *he praises, he is praising, he does praise.*

6. Observe that no separate Latin word is required for the pronouns *I, thou, he, we, they*, etc.; thus, **pūgnāmus**, *we fight*, contains the pronoun *we*, and is a complete sentence in one word, *i.e.* contains a subject and predicate; as,

**pūgnā-mus**  
*fight-we*

**pūgnā**, signifying *fight*, is the stem, and **-mus**, signifying *we*, the personal ending.

How is the first conjugation distinguished? What is meant by the characteristic vowel? How is the stem found? What are the personal endings? What do these endings show? Does the present tense denote completed or incomplete action? Ans. The present stem, and the tenses formed from it, — present, imperfect, and future, — denote incomplete action.

## LESSON X.

FIRST CONJUGATION (*continued*).*Imperfect and Future Tenses.*

**58.** The Imperfect and Future Tenses are formed, like the Present, by adding the endings to the Present Stem.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

IMPERFECT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Present Stem + bam	āmābam	<i>I was loving.</i>
2	“ “ + bas	āmābās	<i>Thou wert loving.</i>
3	“ “ + bat	āmābat	<i>He was loving.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bāmus	āmābāmus	<i>We were loving.</i>
2	“ “ + bātis	āmābātis	<i>You were loving.</i>
3	“ “ + bant	āmābant	<i>They were loving.</i>
FUTURE.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Present Stem + bo	āmābo	<i>I shall love.</i>
2	“ “ + bis	āmābis	<i>Thou wilt love.</i>
3	“ “ + bit	āmābit	<i>He will love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bīmus	āmābīmus	<i>We shall love.</i>
2	“ “ + bītis	āmābītis	<i>You will love.</i>
3	“ “ + bunt	āmābunt	<i>They will love.</i>

1. Analysis of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Active :—

1. Present ind. = Pres. stem + Personal endings.
2. Imperf. ind. = Pres. stem + Tense-sign (*-ba-*) + Personal endings.
3. Future ind. = Pres. stem + Tense-sign (*-bi-*) + Personal endings.



Obs. The future, like the present, has lost the *m* in the first person singular: **āmābo** = **amābom** as the present **amo** = **amom** (cf. **sum**).

## VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRESENT STEM.
1. <b>rōgo</b> , <i>ask</i> .	<b>rogā-</b> .
2. <b>āro</b> , <i>plough</i> .	<b>ārā-</b> .
3. <b>pāro</b> , <i>prepare</i> .	<b>pārā-</b> .
4. <b>narro</b> , <i>narrate</i> .	<b>narrā-</b> .

## EXERCISES.

Analyze ; translate into English :—

1. <b>rōgat</b> .	6. <b>pūgnābātis</b> .
2. <b>narrant</b> .	7. <b>dōnābimus</b> .
3. <b>rōgābis</b> . <sup>1</sup>	8. <b>pārābit</b> .
4. <b>portābant</b> . <sup>2</sup>	9. <b>ārabunt</b> .
5. <b>laudābāmus</b> .	10. <b>vōcābis</b> .

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. In translating the second person singular, as well as the second person plural, *you* is commonly used ; as, **āmās**, *you love*, and **āmātis**, *you love* ; but **āmās** is used of one person, and **āmātis** of more than one.

2. Observe that, in the conjugation of the imperfect and future, the stem and personal endings are the same as in the present ; that between these there is a tense-sign, **-ba-** in the imperfect and **-bi-** in the future. The elements of the verb then, in the imperfect and future tenses, are : 1st. The Stem ; 2d. The Tense-sign ; 3d. The Personal Endings ; as,

**laudā-bā-mus**  
*praising-were-we*

**laudā-** being the stem ; **-ba-**, *were*, the tense-sign ; and **-mus**, *we*, the personal ending.

What is tense ? How many divisions of time ? What is mode ? How many modes ? How is the present tense formed ? How the future ? Write the inflection in the imperfect ; in the future.

## LESSON XI.

### LATIN NOUNS.

#### INFLECTION.

**59.** The meaning of Latin nouns is altered by Inflection; that is, by changing the form of the word, generally the endings, to denote some modification of its meaning, or to show its relation to other words. The Inflection of nouns, of pronouns, and of adjectives, is called *Declension*. The Inflection of verbs is called *Conjugation*.

#### *Stem and Suffix.*

**60.** The body of the word, to which the suffix is attached, is called the *stem*; as,

**militis**: *milit-* is the stem, and *-is* the termination.

When the stem ends in a vowel and the suffix begins with a vowel, contraction takes place, and the final vowel of the stem sometimes disappears; as,

**mensae**: the stem is *mensā-*, and the suffix *-is*, which unite to form **mensae**, the *s* being dropped.

1. Each case-form, therefore, contains two distinct parts: the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word; and the *case-suffix*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word; as, in

**militis**, *of a soldier*: the general idea, *soldier*, is expressed by the stem **milit-**; the relation *of*, by the suffix *-is*.

**Obs.** It may be found convenient to divide inflected words not only into stem and termination, but into *base* and *termination*, the *base*<sup>1</sup> being the part of the word that remains unchanged by inflection; as, **servus** (which stands for **servos**), *a slave*, gen. **servi**, *of a slave*. **servō-** is the stem, **-i** is the termination, or case-suffix; the **o** is dropped before **i** to form **servi**, *of a slave*; but **serv-**, to which the case-endings are added, remains unchanged by inflection, and may be called the *base*.

*Modifications of Nouns.*

**61.** In Latin, as in English, nouns have Gender, Number, Person, and Case.

## GENDER.

**62.** The gender of English nouns is determined by their meaning.<sup>2</sup> Gender of Latin nouns is determined either by their *meaning* or by their *endings*. When determined by their meaning, it is called *Natural Gender*; when by their endings, *Grammatical Gender*.

**63.** Rules for gender according to meaning:—

1. Names of male beings are masculine; as,

**Romulus**, *Romulus*; **agricōla**, *farmer*; **equus**, *horse*.

2. Names of females are feminine; as,

**Cornēlia**, *Cornelia*; **mūlier**, *woman*; **puella**, *girl*.

3. Some nouns without *natural gender* have their gender determined by their meaning; as:

(1) Rivers, winds, months, and mountains are masculine; as,

**Tībēris**, *the Tiber*; **Aquīlo**, *north wind*; **Aprīlis**, *April*.

(2) Cities, countries, towns, islands, trees, poems, and gems are feminine; as,

**Aegyptus**, *Egypt*; **Corīnthus**, *Corinth*.

(3) Indeclinable nouns are neuter; as,

**fas**, *divine right*; **nīhil**, *nothing*.

## NUMBER AND PERSON.

**64.** Latin nouns have two numbers, *singular* and *plural*; and three persons, *first*, *second*, and *third*.

## CASES.

**65.** In Latin<sup>3</sup> the same noun may have six different forms to express its relation to other words; these forms are called the *six cases of the noun*. The names of the cases are:—

1. The Nominative, the case of the subject of the sentence. It answers the question *who?* or *what?*; as,

**The boy reads.** Who reads? — *The boy.*

**The fire burns.** What burns? — *The fire.*

*Boy* and *fire* are, therefore, in the nominative case.

2. The Genitive, usually translated into English by the possessive case, or by the preposition *of*. It answers the question *whose?* *of whom?* *of what?*; as,

**The man's coat.** Whose coat? — *The man's.*

**The heat of the fire.** Of what? — *Of the fire.*

*Man's* and *of the fire* are genitives.

3. The Dative, usually translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*. It answers the question *to* or *for whom* or *what?*; as,

*The teacher gives a book to the boy.* To whom? — *To the boy.*

*To the boy* is, therefore, in the dative.

4. The Accusative, the object of a transitive verb, and of many Latin prepositions. It names the object, *whom?* or *what?*; as,

*The man strikes the boy.* Strikes whom? — *The boy.*

*The child fears the fire.* Fears what? — *The fire.*

*Boy* and *fire* are accusative.

5. The Vocative, or the case used in addressing a person or thing; as,

**O boy! O fire!**

*The fault, dear Brutus, is not in our stars.*

*Boy, fire,* and *Brutus* are in the vocative case.

6. The Ablative, usually translated by *from*, *with*, *by*, *in*, or *at*; as,

*The boy strikes the ball with the bat.* With what? — *With the bat.*

Then *with the bat* is the ablative.

Obs. 1. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called the *oblique cases*.

Obs. 2. A seventh case, the Locative, denoting the place *where*, is found in a few words.

**GENERAL VIEW OF THE CASES AND THEIR ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.**

Latin Case.	Relation to Other Words.	Corresponding Case in English.	Answers what Question.
Nominative.	Subject.	Nominative.	<i>who?</i> or <i>what?</i>
Genitive.	Possessive, or <i>of</i> .	Possession, or <i>of</i> with objective.	<i>whose?</i> <i>of whom?</i> or <i>of what?</i>
Dative.	Indirect Object.	Objective, with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .	<i>To</i> or <i>for</i> — <i>whom?</i> or <i>what?</i>
Accusative.	Direct Object.	Objective.	<i>whom?</i> or <i>what?</i>
Vocative.	Case of Address.	Independent.	Used in addressing person or thing.
Ablative.	Adverbial.	Objective, with <i>with</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>from</i> , or <i>by</i> .	<i>With</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>at</i> — <i>whom?</i> or <i>what?</i>

**DECLENSION.**

**66.** Latin nouns have five Declensions, which are distinguished by the final letters of the stem, or by the terminations of the genitive singular; as,

Declension.	Genitive Ending.	Characteristic.
I.	ae	$\bar{a}$ = <i>a</i> -stems. <sup>4</sup>
II.	$\bar{i}$	$\bar{o}$ = <i>o</i> -stems.
III.	is	$\bar{i}$ or a consonant
IV.	$\bar{u}s$ ( <i>uis</i> )	= consonant or <i>i</i> -stems.
V.	$\bar{e}i$	$\bar{u}$ = <i>u</i> -stems.
		$\bar{e}$ = <i>e</i> -stems.

**Obs.** The method of distinguishing the declension by the ending of the genitive singular had better be adopted at first, because it is used in dictionaries and vocabularies to designate the declen-

sion, and because the use of the stem is confusing to young pupils. The plan of cutting off *-rum* or *-um* from the genitive plural in order to find the stem, and so determine the declension, presupposes that the pupil is already able to decline the word.

### 1. General Rules of Declension : —

- (1) Neuter nouns of all declensions have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike; the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are also alike, and always end in *ā*.
- (2) The nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are alike in all nouns of the third, fourth, and fifth declensions.
- (3) The nominative and vocative are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the second declension.
- (4) The dative and ablative plural are always alike.
- (5) The genitive plural always ends in *-um*.

### EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences. State the Latin case to be used to represent each noun : —

1. The sailor has a cottage.    2. The cottage of the sailor has a table.    3. Galba sees the gates of Rome.    4. Titus wounded the man with an arrow.    5. Titus gave the book to his friend.    6. The sailors of Galba wound the sailors of Titus with arrows.    7. The soldiers of Cæsar defend the towers with stones.    8. Cæsar sees the walls of Rome.    9. The leaders of the people give peace to the city.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The base is the same as the stem with the final vowel removed; the endings, therefore, contain the final vowel of the stem and the suffixes, both being obscured by contraction. If the stem ends in a consonant, then the stem and base are the same, and the endings are the simple case-endings; as, **reg-is**. *Reg-* is both the stem and the base to which the case-endings may be attached unchanged.

2. Note that gender in English denotes *sex*, — masculine nouns denoting *males*, feminine nouns *females*, and neuter nouns *neither male nor female*. In Latin, this natural distinction of gender is applied only

to *males* and *females*; the gender of all other nouns depends on artificial distinctions, and is determined by special rules.

3. English nouns have few changes of forms. The possessive case is the only one that always has a special form.

4. The final vowel of the stem is called the *stem-letter*, or *stem-characteristic*.

Define inflection. How many cases have nouns? How is the gender of Latin nouns determined? What is meant by grammatical gender? Name the cases. What is inflection? How does inflection differ from declension? What parts of speech are declined? What are the properties of Latin nouns? Define the word "properties." How many declensions have Latin nouns? Explain the meaning of *stem*; of *base*.

## LESSON XII.

### NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION.

67. Nouns of the First Declension end in *-ā* and *-ē*,<sup>1</sup> feminine; *-ās* and *-ēs*,<sup>1</sup> masculine.

Nouns in *-ā*<sup>2</sup> are thus declined:—

#### PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.	Case Endings.	
			Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>mensa</i> , <sup>3</sup> <i>a table</i> . <sup>4</sup>	<i>mensae</i> , <i>tables</i> .	<i>-a</i>	<i>-ae</i>
GEN.	<i>mensae</i> , <i>of a table</i> .	<i>mensārum</i> , <i>of tables</i> .	<i>-ae</i>	<i>-ārum</i>
DAT.	<i>mensae</i> , <i>to, for a table</i> .	<i>mensīs</i> , <i>to, for tables</i> .	<i>-ae</i>	<i>-īs</i>
ACC.	<i>mensam</i> , <i>a table</i> .	<i>mensās</i> , <i>tables</i> .	<i>-am</i>	<i>-ās</i>
VOC.	<i>mensa</i> , <i>O table</i> .	<i>mensae</i> , <i>O tables</i> .	<i>-a</i>	<i>-ae</i>
ABL. {	<i>mensā</i> , <i>with, from, or by a table</i> .	<i>mensīs</i> , <i>with, from, or by tables</i> .	<i>-ā</i>	<i>-īs</i>

#### VOCABULARY.<sup>5</sup>

*āqua*, -ae,<sup>6</sup> F.,<sup>7</sup> *water*.

*puella*, -ae, F., *girl*.

*insūla*, -ae, F., *island*.

*porta*, -ae, F., *gate*.

*nauta*, -ae, M., *sailor*.

*āgrīcōla*, -ae, M., *farmer*.

*victōria*, -ae, F., *victory*.

*umbra*, -ae, F., *shade*.

## EXERCISES.

Decline the following words like **mensa**. Give the meaning,<sup>8</sup> the case, the stem, the gender, the number, and the case-endings of each:—

- |               |                 |            |
|---------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. insŭlae.   | 4. puellīs.     | 7. puella. |
| 2. agrīcōlae. | 5. puellae.     | 8. nautae. |
| 3. nautārum.  | 6. āgrīcōlārum. | 9. aquae.  |

**68.** The declension of the following Greek nouns is inserted for convenience of reference; they should be omitted for the present:—

Cases.		cōmētēs, m., <i>comet.</i>	ēpitōmē, f., <i>epitome.</i>	Aenēās, m., <i>Aeneas.</i>
Singular.	NOM.	cōmētēs	ēpitōmē	Aenēās
	GEN.	cōmētae	ēpitōmēs	Aenēae
	DAT.	cōmētae	ēpitōmae	Aenēae
	ACC.	cōmētēn	ēpitōmēn	Aenēān (-am)
	VOC.	cōmētā	ēpitōmē	Aenēā
	ABL.	cōmētā	ēpitōmē	Aenēā
Plural.	NOM.	cōmētae	ēpitōmae	
	GEN.	cōmētārum	ēpitōmārum	
	DAT.	cōmētīs	ēpitōmīs	
	ACC.	cōmētās	ēpitōmās	
	VOC.	cōmētae	ēpitōmae	
	ABL.	cōmētīs	ēpitōmīs	

SYN. **Porta** is the *gate* of a city; **janua**, the *door* (street-door) of a house; **valvae**, *folding-doors* in a temple and fine buildings.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

- Nouns in *-ē*, *-ās*, and *-ēs* are Greek words, mostly proper names.
- All nouns in *-ā* are feminine unless they denote males; as, **nauta**, a sailor, is masculine by signification. (See 63.)
- The base of **mensa** is *mens-*, and to this the case-endings are added to form the cases. The stem of **mensa** is *mensā-*; the final *-ā-* of the stem disappears in the dative and ablative plural.



4. As there is no article in Latin, **mensa** may mean *table*, *a table*, or *the table*, according to the sense required.

5. The pupil should learn the vocabularies so well that he can give at once the English when the Latin is pronounced, or the Latin when the English is pronounced.

6. The ending *-ae* is the case-ending of the genitive. (See 61.)

7. In the vocabularies, **m.** indicates the *masculine gender*; **f.**, the *feminine*; and **n.**, the *neuter*.

8. In translating the exercises, give all possible meanings of each form. For example, **insulae** may be genitive or dative singular, or nominative or vocative plural: *of an island*, *to or for an island*, *ye islands*, or *O islands*.

How do you distinguish nouns of the first declension? How the gender? How do you find the stem? (This can be found by taking away the case-ending of the genitive plural, *-rum*.) How do you accent **agrīcōlae**? What is the quantity of the penult of **puella**? How many numbers have Latin nouns? How many cases? Name them. How many genders?



## LESSON XIII.

### SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **agrīcōla vōcat**, *the farmer calls*.
2. **agrīcōlae vōcant**, *the farmers call*.
3. **puellae laudant**, *the girls praise*.

**Obs.** In the sentence **the farmer calls**, *farmer* is the subject, and is in the nominative case; *calls* is the predicate. Study the other examples, and note (1) if the subject is singular, the verb is singular; (2) if the subject is plural, the verb must also be plural; and (3) that the subject and the predicate agree in person as well as in number. Hence the following rules:—

#### SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE.

**69. RULE I.**—**The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case.**

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB.

**70. RULE II.** — A finite verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

**71. Model for parsing nouns : —**

**agricōla vōcat**, *the farmer calls* : **agricōla** is a masculine noun, masculine by signification (64)<sup>1</sup>; first declension, because it has -ae in the genitive singular; stem, *agricōlā*; declined, sing. *agricōla*, *agricōlae*, *agricōlae*, *agricōlam*, *agricōla*, *agricōlā*, plural *agricōlae*, *agricōlārū*, *agricōlis*, *agricōlās*, *agricōlae*, *agricōlis*. It is nominative singular, and is the subject of **vōcat**, according to Rule I.: *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.*

**72. Model for parsing verbs : —**

**agricōla vōcat**, *the farmer calls* : **vōcat** is a transitive verb of the first conjugation, indicative mode, present tense, third person singular, to agree with the subject **agricōla**, according to Rule II.: *A finite verb agrees with the subject-nominative in number and person.*

VOCABULARY.

<b>rēgīna</b> , -ae, F., <i>queen</i> .	<b>pūgno</b> , -āre, <i>fight</i> .
<b>scrība</b> , -ae, M., <i>clerk</i> .	<b>cōn-firmo</b> , -āre, <i>establish</i> .
<b>dēlecto</b> , <sup>2</sup> -āre, <i>delight</i> .	<b>porto</b> , -āre, <i>carry</i> .
<b>occūpo</b> , -āre, <i>take possession of, seize</i> .	<b>dōno</b> , -āre, <i>give</i> .

EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English : —

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. <i>rēgīna laudat</i> . <sup>3</sup> | 4. <i>Laudās</i> . <sup>4</sup> |
| 2. <i>scrībae portant</i> .            | 5. <i>Laudāmus</i> .            |
| 3. <i>puellae laudant</i> .            | 6. <i>Rēgīnae dōnant</i> .      |

Translate into Latin : —

1. We fight, they fight, he fights.    2. The<sup>5</sup> sailor calls.  
 3. The queen praises.    4. The queens praise.    5. We praise.  
 6. They establish.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. These figures refer to sections in this book.
2. Give the infinitive of each verb.
3. When the subject of the verb is expressed, the pronoun, although contained in the verb, is not needed in English; thus, **rēgina laudat**, *the queen praises*, not *the queen she praises*.
4. The subject of **laudās** is implied in the ending of the verb.
5. Remember that the article is not to be translated.
6. As to the order of words in the Latin sentences, the subject usually stands first, but the predicate may be placed before the subject for the sake of emphasis.

What is a transitive verb? Define subject; predicate. What part of speech must the subject always be? Why is the *u* in **puella** short?

## LESSON XIV.

## SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **agricōla nautās vōcat**, *the farmer calls the sailors*.
2. **rēgina puellās laudat**, *the queen praises the girls*.
3. **amicitiām cōfirmat**, *he establishes friendship*.

OBS. In the sentence **the farmer calls the sailors**, *farmer* is the subject, *calls* the predicate, and *sailors*, which completes the meaning of the verb by telling *whom* or *what* the farmer calls, is the direct object. Notice that this object in English is in the *objective case*, and follows the verb *calls*; the direct object in Latin is in the *accusative case*, and precedes the verb. Hence the following rule:—

## DIRECT OBJECT.

**73. RULE III.**—The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

*a.* Many verbs that are transitive in Latin are translated into English by a verb and preposition; as, **pēcūniam postūlat**, *he asks for (demands) money*.

**74. Model for parsing the object : —**

**agricōla nautās vōcat**, *the farmer calls the sailors*: **nautās** is a masculine noun of the first declension, masculine by signification, and first declension because it has *-ae* in the genitive singular; stem, *nautā-*; declined, sing. *nauta*, *nautae*, *nautae*, *nautam*, *nauta*, *nautā*, plural *nautae*, *nautārum*, *nautīs*, *nautās*, *nautae*, *nautīs*. It is in the accusative plural, the object of **vōcat**, according to Rule III.: *The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.*

**VOCABULARY.**

**filia**,<sup>1</sup> *-ae*, F., *daughter*.

**pēcūnia**, *-ae*, F., *money*.

**āmīcītia**, *-ae*, F., *friendship*.

**ēpistūla**, *-ae*, F., *letter*.

**pāro**,<sup>2</sup> *prepare*.

**āro**, *plough*.

**do**,<sup>3</sup> *give*.

**exspecto**, *expect*.

**EXERCISES.**

Analyze the following sentences ; parse each word ; translate into English : —

1. **Agrīcōlae**<sup>4</sup> **nautam vōcant**.    2. **Vōcāmus**.    3. **Rēgīna** **filiam**<sup>5</sup> **āmat**.    4. **Rēgīna** **āmīcītiā cōnfirmat**.    5. **Laudāmus**.
6. **Puella** **ēpistulam exspectābat**.

Translate into Latin : —

1. The queen calls.    2. The queen calls her<sup>6</sup> daughter.
3. They establish friendship.    4. They praise, they call, they prepare.    5. The queen praises.    6. We praise.
7. The girls are expecting<sup>7</sup> letters.

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

1. A few words of the first declension have the dative and ablative plural in **-ābus** ; as, **filia**, *a daughter* ; **dea**, *a goddess*.

2. Write the infinitive.

3. The infinitive of **do** is **dāre** ; short *a* before *-re*.

4. See 63.

5. Render *her daughter*. The pronouns *his*, *her*, *their*, are seldom expressed in Latin, when no confusion could arise from their omission. In translating, they are to be supplied from the context.

6. Not to be translated.

7. Remember that the indicative has three forms in English.

Which cases of the first declension are alike in the singular? Which in the plural? Write the ablative singular of *filia*. How many ways can you translate *vōcant*? Name the stem of *vōcant*. Is *vōcant* a complete sentence? why? What is a sentence? What is the case of the direct object in Latin? What tenses express incomplete action? Where does the direct object usually stand?

## LESSON XV.

### NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

**75.** Nouns of the Second Declension end in *-er*, *-ir*, *-us*, and *-os*, masculine; *-um* and *-on*, neuter.

a. Those in *-os* or *-on* are Greek words, chiefly proper nouns.

1. Nouns in *-us* are declined as follows:—

#### PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>dōminus</i> , a lord.	<i>dōminī</i> , lords.
GEN.	<i>dōminī</i> , of a lord.	<i>dōminōrum</i> , of lords.
DAT.	<i>dōminō</i> , to or for a lord.	<i>dōminīs</i> , to or for lords.
ACC.	<i>dōminum</i> , a lord.	<i>dōminōs</i> , lords.
VOC.	<i>dōmine</i> , O lord.	<i>dōminī</i> , O lords.
ABL. {	<i>dōminō</i> , with, from, or by a lord.	<i>dōminīs</i> , with, from, or by lords.

2. The stem of nouns of the second declension ends in *-ō-*; thus the stem of *dōminus* is *dōminō-*.

3. The characteristic *-o-* becomes *-u-* in the nominative of nouns in *-us* or *-um*; it disappears in the endings *-i* and *-īs* (for *-o-i* and *-o-īs*). The nominative singular of *dōminus* was originally *dōmīnos*.

4. The case-endings are as follows :—

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	-us	-ī
GEN.	-ī	-ōrum
DAT.	-ō	-īs
ACC.	-um	-ōs
VOC.	-e	-ī
ABL.	-ō	-īs

5. The genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* ends in a single *-ī*: as, *filius*, gen. *fili*; *Hōrātius*, gen. *Hōrāti*. The vocative of proper names in *-ius* contract *-ie* into *-ī* without change of accent: as, *Hōrāti*, *O Horatius*; also, *filius* has *fili* in the vocative.

6. Nearly all nouns in *-us* are *masculine*; but the names of *trees*, *plants*, etc., are *feminine* by the general rule (63. 3 (2)).

#### VOCABULARY.

*servus*, -ī, M., *slave*.

*amicus*, -ī, M., *friend*.

*oculus*, -ī, M., *eye*.

*Gallus*, -ī, M., *a Gaul*.

*expugno*, *storm*, *capture*.

*filius*, -ī, M., *son*.

*hortus*, -ī, M., *garden*.

*postulo*, *demand*.

*Rōmānus*, -ī, M., *a Roman*.

*pugno*, *fight*.

#### EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English :—

S. O. V. T.

1. Rēgīna amicum amat.

2. Amici servos vocabunt.

3. Servos laudabimus.

4. Amicos amabatis.

5. Amici amicos amant.

6. Servi pugnant.

## LESSON XVI.

## NOUNS. — SECOND DECLENSION.

76. Nouns in *-er*, *-ir*, are declined as follows : —

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>māgister, a master.</i>	<i>māgistrī, masters.</i>
GEN.	<i>māgistrī, of a master.</i>	<i>māgistrōrum, of masters.</i>
DAT.	<i>māgistrō, to or for a master.</i>	<i>māgistrīs, to or for masters.</i>
ACC.	<i>māgistrum, a master.</i>	<i>māgistrōs, masters.</i>
VOC.	<i>māgister, O master.</i>	<i>māgistrī, O masters.</i>
ABL. }	<i>māgistrō, with, from, or by a master.</i>	<i>māgistrīs, with, from, or by masters.</i>
NOM.	<i>puer, a boy.</i>	<i>puērī, boys.</i>
GEN.	<i>puērī, of a boy.</i>	<i>puērōrum, of boys.</i>
DAT.	<i>puērō, to or for a boy.</i>	<i>puērīs, to or for boys.</i>
ACC.	<i>puērū, boy.</i>	<i>puērōs, boys.</i>
VOC.	<i>puer, O boy.</i>	<i>puērī, O boys.</i>
ABL. }	<i>puērō, with, from, or by a boy.</i>	<i>puērīs, with, from, or by boys.</i>

1. *deus, a god* (stem *deo-*), is declined as follows : —

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>deus</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī</i>
GEN.	<i>deī</i>	<i>deōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>deō</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs</i>
ACC.	<i>deum</i>	<i>deōs</i>
VOC.	<i>deus</i>	<i>deī, diī, dī</i>
ABL.	<i>deō</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, dīs</i>

2. The endings of the nominative and vocative singular are wanting in nouns in *-er*; thus, *puer* is for *puērus*; the *e* in *puer* belongs to the stem, and is not dropped. Most other nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in *-ro-*,

preceded by another consonant, drop *us* and insert *e* in the nominative; as, *āger*, stem *agro-*. The *-us* of the nominative and vocative has been dropped, and *e* inserted. The following nouns retain *e* in all the cases: viz., *puer*, *boy*; *sōcer*, *father-in-law*; *gēner*, *son-in-law*; *vesper*, *evening*; *libērī* (used only in plural), *children*; and a few others.

### *The Genitive and the Appositive.*

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *Labiēnus lēgātus*, *Labienus*, the lieutenant.
2. *Fīlia<sup>1</sup> rēgīnae*, the daughter of the queen, or the queen's daughter.
3. *Fīlia āmīcī*, the daughter of the friend, or the friend's daughter.

Obs. In the first example, observe that the noun *lieutenant* denotes the same person or thing as *Labienus*; it modifies *Labienus* by telling *what* Labienus is meant. It has the same case and the same number, and is said to be in *apposition* (a modifier in *near position*).

In the second example, *of the queen*, or *queen's*, limits *daughter* by telling *what* or *whose* daughter is spoken of, and is, therefore, a modifier of it. The three examples represent two kinds of noun modifiers, — the *possessive* and the *explanatory*; or, in Latin, the *genitive* and the *explanatory*. In Latin, note that the limiting word in the first example is in the same case as the word it limits; that it denotes the same person or thing as the noun, or name, preceding. In the second and third examples note: (1) that the limiting word is in the genitive; (2) that it denotes a different person or thing from that denoted by the limited noun; and (3) that the relation of this genitive to the limited noun is expressed in English either by *of* or by the *possessive*. Notice, finally, that the genitive stands after the noun which it limits. It may, however, be placed before the noun for the sake of emphasis; as, *rēgīnae fīlia*, the *QUEEN'S daughter*. Hence the following rules:—

#### APPOSITIVE.

**77. RULE IV.**—A noun used to describe another noun or pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case.

1. This construction is called *apposition*, and the limiting noun an *appositive*.



## GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

**78. RULE V.**—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun, and denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive.

## VOCABULARY.

**āger, āgrī, M.,** *field.*

**gēner, gēnērī, M.,** *son-in-law.*

**vir, virī, M.,** *man.*

**liber, librī, M.,** *book.*

**narro, narrate, tell.**

**vīcus, -ī, M.,** *village.*

**campus, -ī, field.**

**fāber, fabrī, M.,** *smith.*

**ēnuntio, report.**

**pōpūlus, -ī, M.,** *people.*

**vasto, lay waste.**

**schōla, -ae, F.,** *school.*

**SYN.** *Ager* is a *field* in general; *arvum*, the *ploughed field*; and *campus*, the *enclosed field*, or *plain*.

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English:—

1. *Servī agrum ārābunt.* 2. *Puērī vōcant.* 3. *Virī laudant.* 4. *Fīliam<sup>1</sup> rēgīnae laudant.* 5. *Gēner ārat.* 6. *Māgistrī vōcant.* 7. *Fīlium<sup>2</sup> vōcat.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. We are ploughing<sup>3</sup> the field.<sup>4</sup> 2. They call the boys. 3. They praise the man's sons. 4. They were praising the men. 5. The queen's daughter is calling.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. What is the dative plural?
2. Form the genitive and vocative.
3. How many forms has the indicative present?
4. Notice the order of the Latin words.

What endings do nouns in *-r* drop? Is the vowel *u* in **puer** long or short? Which syllable of **Hōrātius** is accented? Of **Hōrātī**?

## LESSON XVII.

## NOUNS.—SECOND DECLENSION.

79. Nouns in *-um* are declined as follows:—

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	bellum, <i>war.</i>	bellā, <i>wars.</i>
GEN.	bellī, <i>of war.</i>	bellōrum, <i>of wars.</i>
DAT.	bellō, <i>to or for war.</i>	bellis, <i>to or for wars.</i>
ACC.	bellum, <i>war.</i>	bellā, <i>wars.</i>
VOC.	bellum, <i>O war.</i>	bellā, <i>O wars.</i>
ABL.	bellō, <i>with, from, or by war.</i>	bellis, <i>with, from, or by wars.</i>

1. Like **bellum**, decline:—

1. **templum**, *temple.*

3. **exemplum**, *example.*

2. **dōnum**, *gift.*

4. **oppidum**, *town.*

*Dative Case after Transitive Verbs.*

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Librum puērō dat**, *he gives the book to the boy.*

2. **Galba Belgīs insīdiās pārat**, *Galba prepares snares for the Belgians.*

OBS. In the sentence, *he gives the book to the boy*, or *he gives the boy the book*, note that the verb *gives* is transitive, and that it is followed by the direct object, *book*, in the accusative, and an indirect object, *boy*, in the dative. Hence the following rule:—

## INDIRECT OBJECT.

**80. RULE VI.**—The indirect object of an action is put in the dative.

1. After many transitive verbs the dative of the indirect object is used, together with the accusative of the direct.

2. The indirect object is also used after some intransitive and passive verbs. But some verbs, transitive in English, are intransitive in Latin; and some, intransitive in English, are transitive in Latin.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>littēra</b> , -ae, F., <i>letter (of alphabet).</i>	<b>festīno</b> , <i>hasten.</i>
<b>littērae</b> (pl.), -ārum, F., <i>letter, epistle.</i>	<b>via</b> , -ae, F., <i>way, road.</i>
<b>insīdiae</b> (pl.), -ārum, <i>snares, ambush.</i>	<b>castrum</b> , -ī, N., <i>fort; pl. camp.</i>
<b>oppīdum</b> , -ī, N., <i>town.</i>	<b>Belgae</b> , -ārum, M., <i>Belgian.</i>
<b>rōsa</b> , -ae, F., <i>rose.</i>	<b>jugum</b> , -ī, N., <i>yoke.</i>
<b>matrōna</b> , -ae, F., <i>married woman.</i>	<b>monstro</b> , <i>show.</i>
<b>consīlium</b> , -ī, N., <i>counsel, plan.</i>	<b>porta</b> , -ae, F., <i>gate.</i>
<b>auxīlium</b> , -ī, N., <i>aid.</i>	<b>dōno</b> , <i>give.</i>
	<b>im-plōro</b> , <i>implore.</i>

SYN. **Puērī**, *children*, as a class; **libērī**, *children*, with reference to their parents.

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences; parse each word; translate into English. —

1. Agrīcōla viam nautīs monstrat. 2. Matrōna rōsās filiābus dant. 3. Fīlia<sup>1</sup> rēgīnae puellīs librōs dōnābit.<sup>2</sup> 4. Tītus Lābiēnus lēgātus consīlia Gallōrum ēnūnciat. 5. Rōmānīs consīlia Belgārum ēnūnciābit. 6. Rōmānī oppīda expugnābunt.

Translate into Latin: —

1. He gave the book to the boy. 2. Labienus was storming the town. 3. We report the plans of the Gauls. 4. We report the plans of the Gauls to the Romans. 5. They show the way to the men.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Fīlia** is the subject, which is modified by **rēgīnae**; **dōnābit** is the simple predicate, modified by the direct object **librōs**, and the indirect object **puellīs**.

2. Note the order of the words : the indirect object usually precedes the direct.

What nouns of the second declension are neuter ? What is the difference in the manner of declining *māgister* and *puer* ? What cases are alike in neuter nouns ?

## LESSON XVIII.

### PREPOSITIONS.

**81.** Latin Prepositions are used either with the Accusative or with the Ablative.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *in Galliam*, into Gaul.
2. *in Galliā*, in Gaul.
3. *cum viris*, with (in company with) the men.
4. *ex* (or *ē*) *prōvinciā*, from (out of) the province.
5. *per oppida*, through the towns.

Obs. Note that the preposition *in*, with the accusative, means *into* ; with the ablative, it means *in*. *per* means *through*, and is followed by the accusative ; *cum* is followed by the ablative, and means *with* (in company with).

#### VOCABULARY.

*cum*, prep. w. abl., with.

*dē*, prep. w. abl., from, concerning, for.

*ē*,<sup>1</sup> *ex*, prep. w. abl., from, out of.

*ā*,<sup>1</sup> *ab*, prep. w. abl., from, away from.

*ad*, prep. w. acc., to, towards.

*frumentum*, -i, N., grain.

*ōra*, -ae, F., coast, shore.

*prōvincia*, -ae, F., province.

*sine*, prep. w. abl., without.

*Gallia*, -ae, F., Gaul.

*in*, prep. w. acc., into ; w. abl., in or on.

*ambulo*, walk.

*habito*, dwell in.

*porto*, carry.

*comporto*, collect.

## EXERCISES.

Analyze the following sentences ; parse each word ; translate into English : —

1. Frūmentum in prōvinciam<sup>2</sup> portant. 2. In oppidō hābitābat. 3. Māgister cum puērīs in agrō ambūlat. 4. Vir ab insūlae ōrā ambūlat. 5. Cum Belgīs āmicītiā cōnfīrmant. 6. Frūmenta ex agrīs comportant. 7. Auxīlium ā virīs implōrant. 8. Rōmānī agrōs vastābunt.

Translate into Latin : —

1. They dwell in the town. 2. In the province. 3. Into the province. 4. He conveys grain from the fields. 5. In the town. 6. Into the town. 7. He conveys the grain into the town. 8. He walks in the field with (his)<sup>3</sup> son. 9. They walk away from the shore. 10. With the Gauls. 11. He establishes friendship with the Romans.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant ; **ab** and **ex** before either a vowel or a consonant.

2. A preposition with its noun is a *phrase* ; when the phrase limits a verb, as it does in this case, it is called an *adverbial phrase* ; when it limits a noun, it is an *adjective phrase*. No special model is necessary for parsing nouns with prepositions.

Obs. Observe the distinction between the prepositions **in** and **ex**, and **ad** and **ab**. **in** (with the accusative) and **ex** denote motion *to* and *from* the *inside* of a place ; **ad** and **ab** (or **a**) denote motion *to* and *from* the *outside* of a place. Thus, **vēnit in Itāliā**, when one comes *into* Italy ; **ex Itāliā**, when one comes *out of* Italy ; but **ad Itāliā**, *to* Italy, when there is no notion of entering into Italy conveyed ; just so **ab Itāliā**, *away from* Italy, when it is simply expressed that he came away from Italy.

3. Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

Which cases do prepositions govern ? Mention a preposition that governs the accusative. What kind of a phrase is a preposition and its noun ?

## LESSON XIX.

## ADJECTIVES.—FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

**82.** Adjectives are words used to describe nouns; and as nouns are of different genders, adjectives are declined to agree with the genders of the noun.

1. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have one form for the masculine gender, another for the feminine, and a third for the neuter. Thus :—

The *masculine* is declined like **dōmīnus**.

The *feminine* is declined like **mensa**.

The *neuter* is declined like **bellum**.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **vīr bōnus**, a good man.
3. **vīrī bōnī**, good men.
2. **rēgīna bōna**, a good queen.
4. **vīrōs bōnōs**, good men.
5. **templum magnum**, a great temple.

Obs. In these examples, note that the adjectives are all in the same *gender, number, and case* as the nouns. Hence the following rule:—

## AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

**83. RULE VII.—Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.**

1. Declension of adjectives of the first and second declensions (stems ending in -ō- or -ā-) is as follows :—

## PARADIGM.—bōnus, good.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	bōnus	bōna	bōnum	bōnī	bōnae	bōna
GEN.	bōnī	bōnae	bōnī	bōnōrum	bōnārum	bōnōrum
DAT.	bōnō	bōnae	bōnō	bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs
ACC.	bōnum	bōnam	bōnum	bōnōs	bōnās	bōna
VOC.	bōne	bōna	bōnum	bōnī	bōnae	bōna
ABL.	bōnō	bōnā	bōnō	bōnīs	bōnīs	bōnīs

2. Decline together **mūrus altus**, a high wall.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<b>mūrus altus</b> , a high wall.	<b>mūrī altī</b> , high walls.
GEN.	<b>mūrī altī</b> , of a high wall.	<b>mūrōrum altōrum</b> , of high walls.
DAT.	<b>mūrō altō</b> , to or for a high wall.	<b>mūrīs altīs</b> , to or for high walls.
ACC.	<b>mūrum altum</b> , a high wall.	<b>mūrōs altōs</b> , high walls.
VOC.	<b>mūre alte</b> , O high wall.	<b>mūrī altī</b> , O high walls.
ABL.	<b>mūrō altō</b> , with, from, or by a high wall.	<b>mūrīs altīs</b> , with, from, or by high walls.

3. Adjectives usually stand *after* their nouns, but an emphatic adjective may stand *before* the noun.

4. Adjectives are often used as nouns, especially in the plural masculine or neuter : as, **bōnī**, good men ; **multa** (neut. plur.), many things ; **omnia**, all things.

## 84. Model for parsing an adjective : —

**rēginam bōnam laudo**, I praise the good queen : **bōnam** is an adjective of the first and second declensions ; stems, *bonō-* and *bonā-* ; declined, singular *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*, etc. ; plural *bōnī*, *bōnae*, *bōnā*, etc. It is in the accusative feminine singular, and agrees with **rēginam**, according to Rule VII. : *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

## VOCABULARY.

**multus**, -a, -um, many.

**nōvus**, -a, -um, new.

**cārus**, -a, -um, dear.

**altus**, -a, -um, high or deep.

**māgnus**, -a, -um, large.

**flūvius**, -ī, M., river.

**rāpīdus**, -a, -um, swift.

**discīpūlus**, -ī, M., pupil.

**mūrus**, -ī, M., wall.

**lacrima**, -ae, F., tear.

**Rhēnus**, -ī, M., Rhine (river).

**rīpa**, -ae, F., bank.

**lātus**, -a, -um, broad.

**vērus**, -a, -um, true.

SYN. **Mūrus** denotes any wall ; **pāries** (gen. *-ētis*), wall of a house ; **moenia** (gen. *-ōrum*), wall of a city to protect from the enemy.

**85.** Decline together the following, making the adjective agree with the noun in gender, number, and case.

1. **oppidum munitum**, a fortified town.
2. **puer bonus**, a good child.

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Multis cum lacrimis. 2. In<sup>1</sup> provinciam magnam.
3. Per multos agros. 4. Cum servis bonis. 5. Trans<sup>2</sup> Rhenum pugnat.
6. Importamus frumentum in Galliam.
7. Magister bonus dat librum novum carō discipulo.<sup>3</sup> 8. Ad ripam Rheni.

Translate into Latin : —

1. Of the high walls. 2. Across the broad river. 3. The master gives the book to the good boy.
4. With many men. 5. With good slaves. 6. Across the broad rivers.
7. The good girl loves the queen.

SYN. **Magister** (*māgis, greater*) is a master of a school, of a feast, etc.; **dōminus**, master of a family, or of slaves.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Note the meaning of **in**, followed by the accusative.
2. The preposition **trans** is followed by the accusative, and means *across*.
3. The pupil is expected to analyze the sentences, to point out the modifiers of the subject and of the predicate, and to parse each word.

What is an adjective? Of what declensions are adjectives? The rule for the agreement of adjectives?



### LESSON XX.

#### ADJECTIVES.—FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

**86.** Besides adjectives in *-us, -a, -um*, there are others of three terminations in *-er, -a, -um*. They are declined as follows : —



PARADIGM. — *niger, black.*

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACC.	nigrum	nigrum	nigrum	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
VOC.	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

## tēner, tender.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	tēner	tēnēra	tēnērum	tēnērī	tēnērae	tēnēra
GEN.	tēnērī	tēnērae	tēnērī	tēnērōrum	tēnērārum	tēnērōrum
DAT.	tēnērō	tēnērae	tēnērō	tēnērīs	tēnērīs	tēnērīs
ACC.	tēnērum	tēnēram	tēnērum	tēnērōs	tēnērās	tēnēra
VOC.	tēner	tēnēra	tēnērum	tēnērī	tēnērae	tēnēra
ABL.	tēnērō	tēnērā	tēnērō	tēnērīs	tēnērīs	tēnērīs

1. *niger* is declined in the masculine like *māgister*, and drops the *e*; *tēner* is declined in the masculine like *puer*, and keeps the *e*. Both are declined in the feminine like *mensa*, and in the neuter like *bellum*.

2. Most adjectives in *-er* drop the *e* in inflection; *i.e.*, are declined like *niger*. The following retain the *e*, and are declined like *tēner*: —

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <i>mīser</i> , wretched. | 4. <i>lācer</i> , torn.        |
| 2. <i>asper</i> , rough.    | 5. <i>līber</i> , free.        |
| 3. <i>tēner</i> , tender.   | 6. <i>prosper</i> , fortunate. |

And the compounds of *-ger* and *-fer*.

**87.** Decline together, making the Adjective agree with the Noun in gender, number, and case: —

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>puer aeger</i> , a sick boy.           | 2. <i>vir līber</i> , a free man. |
| 3. <i>puella pulchra</i> , a beautiful girl. |                                   |

## VOCABULARY.

<b>aeger</b> , -gra, -grum, <i>sick</i> .	<b>pōpulus</b> , -ī, M., <i>people</i> .
<b>miser</b> , -ēra, -ērum, <i>wretched</i> .	<b>meus</b> , -a, -um (voc. M. <b>mī</b> ), <i>my</i> .
<b>noster</b> , -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> .	<b>pēricŭlum</b> , -ī, N., <i>danger</i> .
<b>asper</b> , -ēra, -ērum, <i>rough</i> .	<b>lōcus</b> , <sup>2</sup> -ī, M., <i>place</i> .
<b>Rōmānus</b> , <sup>1</sup> -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	<b>castra</b> , -ōrum (pl.), N., <i>camp</i> .
<b>Rhōdānus</b> , -ī, M., <i>Rhone (river)</i> .	<b>mātrīmōnium</b> , -ī, N., <i>marriage</i> .
<b>occūpo</b> , <i>seize</i> .	<b>lūdus</b> , -ī, M., <i>school</i> .

SYN. **Miser** (opp. **beātus**, *fortunate*), said of one who feels himself *unfortunate*; **infēlix** (opp. **fēlix**), of one for whom nothing goes according to his wish.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Magnō cum<sup>3</sup> pēricŭlō.
2. Ex Galliā.
3. In Galliam.
4. In Galliā.
5. Trans Rhōdānum in Galliam.
6. In aspēris locis castra lāta conlōcat.
7. Rōmānī libēra Gallōrum<sup>4</sup> op-pida occūpant.
8. Puellae bōnae rēginam pulchram āmant.

Translate into Latin:—

1. In great danger.
2. With great danger.
3. In company with the beautiful girl.
4. The beautiful girl loves the queen.
5. Out of Gaul into Italy.
6. Into the free town.
7. The Roman people seize the towns.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. In the Latin expression for *Roman people* the adjective **Rōmānus** always follows the noun.

2. **lōcus** is masculine in the singular, but is both masculine and neuter in the plural, and is thus declined: nom. **lōcī**, *passages in books*, and **lōca**, *places*; gen. **lōcōrum**; dat. **lōcīs**; acc. **lōcōs** and **lōca**; voc. **lōcī** and **lōca**; abl. **lōcīs**.

3. **cum** stands between the adjective and the noun.

4. The genitive of the possessor (**190**) usually stands between the noun and the adjective limiting the noun.

With what cases are Latin prepositions used? When is **in** used with the accusative? What is the gender of nouns of the second declension? How does **vīrī aegrī** differ in meaning from **aegrī vīrī**?

What is the meaning of **castra** in the singular? (See General Vocab.) What is the regular position of an adjective? What is the stem of **tēner**? Is *-a* final in the first declension ever long? When? What is the regular position of the genitive? Give the reasons for the accent of the following words: **āmīcī**, **servōrum**, **tēnēra**, **Rhōdānus**.

## LESSON XXI.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT.

**88.** The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses denote completed action, and are formed by adding the endings to the perfect stem.

**89.** The Perfect Stem of a verb of the First Conjugation is formed by adding *-vī* to the present stem; as,

## EXAMPLES.

Pres. Infln.	Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Perf. Ind.
āmāre pūgnāre	āmā- pūgnā-	āmāvī- pūgnāvī-	āmāvī pūgnāvī

Obs. The *i* in the perfect is undoubtedly a part of the stem; and, as there is nothing to be gained by considering *amāv-* the perfect stem, the correct form is here given.

## PERFECT TENSE.

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem	āmāvī	<i>I have loved.</i>	<i>I loved, or I did love.</i>
2	“ “ + <i>sti</i>	āmāvistī	<i>Thou hast loved.</i>	<i>Thou lovedst.</i>
3	“ “ + <i>t</i>	āmāvit	<i>He has loved.</i>	<i>He loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + <i>mus</i>	āmāvimus	<i>We have loved.</i>	<i>We loved.</i>
2	“ “ + <i>stis</i>	āmāvistis	<i>You have loved.</i>	<i>You loved.</i>
3	“ “ { + <i>runt</i> or <i>re</i>	āmāvērunt/ or āmāvēre	<i>They have loved.</i>	<i>They loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ram	ămăvēram	<i>I had loved.</i>
2	" " + rās	ămăvērās	<i>Thou hadst loved.</i>
3	" " + rat	ămăvērat	<i>He had loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rāmus	ămăvērāmus	<i>We had loved.</i>
2	" " + rātis	ămăvērātis	<i>You had loved.</i>
3	" " + rant	ămăvērant	<i>They had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ro	ămăvēro	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
2	" " + ris	ămăvēris	<i>Thou wilt have loved.</i>
3	" " + rit	ămăvērit	<i>He will have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rimus	ămăvērimus	<i>We shall have loved.</i>
2	" " + rītis	ămăvērītis	<i>You will have loved.</i>
3	" " + rint	ămăvērint	<i>They will have loved.</i>

Obs. The characteristic vowel of the stem is shortened in the first person plural of the perfect, and in the third person plural it is changed to *ē*; in the pluperfect and future perfect it is changed to *ē*. Final consonants are usually less distinctly pronounced, and for this reason are oftener dropped. In this way **ămăvērunt** is shortened to **ămăvēre**,—in this form *v* is never dropped.

1. Analysis of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active of all Conjugations:—

1. Perfect = Perf. stem + Personal endings.
2. Pluperfect = " " + Tense sign *-ra-* + Personal endings.
3. Fut. perfect = " " + Tense sign *-ri-* + Personal endings.

2. In the tenses formed from the perfect stem, *v* between two vowels is often suppressed, and the second vowel is merged in the first (except *ie*); as,

## EXAMPLES.

PLUPERFECT . . . ămăvēram = ămăeram = ămāram  
 FUTURE PERFECT . . . ămăvēro = ămăero = ămāro  
 PERFECT, 3d per. plur. . ămăvērunt = ămăerunt = ămārunt  
 PERFECT, 2d per. plur. . ămăvistī = ămăistī = ămăstī

3. The synopsis of the verb consists of the different forms, arranged according to the stems (see p. 261). The synopsis of the Indicative Mode is as follows :—

PRESENT STEM, <i>amā-</i> .			PERFECT STEM, <i>amāvī-</i> .		
PRES.	IMPERF.	FUT.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
IND. . . <i>āmo</i>	<i>āmābam</i>	<i>āmābo</i>	<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmāvēram</i>	<i>āmāvēro</i>

## VOCABULARY.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.
<i>vōcō</i>	<i>vōcāre</i>	<i>vōcāvī</i> , <i>call</i> .
<i>occūpo</i>	<i>occūpāre</i>	<i>occūpāvī</i> , <i>seize, occupy</i> .
<i>vasto</i>	<i>vastāre</i>	<i>vastāvī</i> , <i>lay waste, devastate</i> .
<i>vōlo</i>	<i>volāre</i>	<i>volāvī</i> , <i>fly</i> .
<i>vulnēro</i>	<i>vulnērare</i>	<i>vulnērāvī</i> , <i>wound</i> .
<i>rōgo</i>	<i>rōgāre</i>	<i>rōgāvī</i> , <i>ask</i> .
<i>dō</i>	<i>dāre</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>dēdī</i> , <i>give</i> .
<i>hiēmo</i>	<i>hiēmāre</i>	<i>hiēmāvī</i> , <i>pass the winter</i> .

*in mātīmōnium dāre*, to give in marriage.

SYN. *Vōco*, *call*, and to *address* with the appropriate title; *nōmīno*, *call*, or mention by name.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs :—

1. *Vōcāverat*. 2. *Pugnāverit*. 3. *Pugnābit*. 4. *Rogāverātis*. 5. *Vōcāverimus*. 6. *Laudāverit*. 7. *Vastāvit*.<sup>2</sup> 8. *Gallī oppidum occūpāverant*. 9. *Amīcītiā cūm Rōmānīs cōfirmāverit*. 10. *Circum*<sup>3</sup> *Rōmam hiēmāverant*. 11. *Casius Titō*<sup>4</sup> *filiā in mātīmōnium dedit*.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They had called. 2. We have called. 3. Ye were calling. 4. They will call. 5. They call, or are calling. 6. They did fight. 7. They fought. 8. They have fought. 9. They had fought. 10. We praise the boy. 11. We praised the boy. 12. We have praised the boy. 13. We had praised. 14. We shall have praised.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **do** is irregular ; it has *a* short before *-re*, and the perfect is **dēdī**.
2. Translate the perfect both ways ; as, *he has laid waste, and he laid waste.*
3. The preposition **circum** means *around*, and is followed by the accusative, as are also **trans**, *across*, **inter**, *between*, *among*, and **propter**, *on account of*.
4. Note the two objects of **dēdīt**.

OBS. Note that the pluperfect and future perfect have, in addition to the personal endings, a tense sign, *-ra, -ri* ; as,

**amāvē-ra-nt**, *loved-had-they*,

the perfect stem being **amāvī-** ; the pluperfect tense sign *-ra*, *had* ; the personal ending *-nt*, *they*.

What kind of time does the perfect denote ? What are the divisions of time ? How is the present stem found ? The perfect stem ? Decline **fīlia**.



## LESSON XXII.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## IMPERATIVE MODE.—QUESTIONS.

90. Simple sentences are, in Latin as in English :—

1. DECLARATIVE ; as, **puer laudat**, *the boy praises*.
2. INTERROGATIVE ; as, **puerne<sup>1</sup> laudat**, *does the boy praise ?*
3. IMPERATIVE ; as, **laudāte**, *praise ye*.
4. EXCLAMATORY ; as, **quam fortiter pūgnat**, *how bravely he fights !*

91. In Latin, questions are asked by means of Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs, or Particles, and are not distinguished by the order of the words, as they are in English.

1. In simple questions, expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, an Interrogative Particle is used, indicating what answer is expected.

a. Questions with the syllable *-ne* appended (enclitic) ask for information, without indicating what answer is expected.

b. Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*.

c. Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*.

2. For questions with Interrogative Pronouns, see 245.

**92.** The Imperative Mode is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties.

**PRESENT.**

Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem	<i>amā</i>	<i>Love, or love thou.</i>
3	—	—	—
<i>Plur.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem + <i>te</i>	<i>amāte</i>	<i>Love, or love ye.</i>
3	—	—	—

**FUTURE.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem + <i>to</i>	<i>amāto</i>	<i>Thou shalt love.</i>
3	“ “ + <i>to</i>	<i>amāto</i>	<i>He shall love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	—	—	—
2	Pres. stem + <i>tōte</i>	<i>amātōte</i>	<i>Ye shall love.</i>
3	“ “ + <i>nto</i>	<i>amanto</i>	<i>They shall love.</i>

**VOCATIVE.**

**93. RULE VIII.**—The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

**VOCABULARY.**

*arma, -ōrum* (pl.), N., *arms*.

*proelium, -ī*, N., *battle*.

*Galba, -ae*, M., *Galba*.

*porta, -ae*, F., *gate*.

*aedificium, -ī*, N., *building*.

*vīr, vīrī*, M., *man*.

*insīdiae, -ārum* (pl.), F., *snares*.

*rōsa, -ae*, F., *rose*.

*narro, tell, narrate*.

*cōpia, -ae*, F., *abundance*.

*copiae* (pl.), F., *forces*.

*Tītus, -ī*, M., *Tītus*.

*nātūra, -ae*, F., *nature*.

*nēgōtium, -ī*, N., *business*.

SYN. **Vir**, a man, a distinguished man, a husband; **hōmo, -inis**, a man, a human being, includes both sexes (opposed to **vir** = a fellow).

### EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Vastāte prōvinciam. 2. Vītā, Tīte, proelium. 3. Vōcā puērōs. 4. Mātrōnane<sup>1</sup> puellam vōcat? Vōcat. 5. Nōnne Galba insīdiās pārat? 6. Num poēta rēgīnae<sup>2</sup> rōsam dat? 7. Mātūrāte, vīrī.<sup>3</sup> 8. Mātūrā, Cassī.<sup>4</sup> 9. Dāte, vīrī, Rōmānīs arma.

Translate into Latin:—

1. Call. 2. Call (ye). 3. Call the men. 4. Does the sailor call? Yes. 5. Does the farmer plough? 6. Tell the story. 7. Call the men, Cassius. 8. Hasten, men. 9. Haste (ye). 10. Call the men from<sup>5</sup> the fields. 11. Praise (ye). 12. Praise the pupils.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **-ne** is an enclitic, *i.e.* it seems to *lean on* the word before it. The most common enclitics are **-que** (*and*), **-ve**, and **-ne**, used in asking questions, and also **cum**, *with*, when used with pronouns; as,—

**puērī puellaeque adsunt**, the boys, and girls too, are here.

**-que** is the enclitic; in English, *too* is the enclitic. The **-ne** appended to **mātrōna** in Ex. 4 throws the accent on the penult; as, **mā-trō-na'ne**.

2. Dative case.

3. See Rule VIII.

4. See 75. 5.

5. Use the preposition.

From what stem is the imperative formed? Does the imperative denote completed action? Give the personal endings of the imperative. Note that the imperative has no first person. How many tenses has the imperative?



## LESSON XXIII.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**94.** Nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-is* belong to the Third Declension.

*a.* The nominative endings are various: *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t,* and *x*; and nouns of all three genders belong to this declension.

**95.** Nouns of the Third Declension may be divided into two classes:—

1. Nouns whose stem ends in a consonant.
2. Nouns whose stem ends in the vowel *i*.

**96.** Nouns whose stem ends in a consonant increase in the genitive; that is, the genitive has more syllables than the nominative; as, *jūdex, jūdic-is*.

**97.** Nouns whose stem ends in a vowel do not increase in the genitive; as, *turris, turris*. See 110 and 113.

**98.** Consonant stems are divided, like the consonants, into—

1. Labial stems . . . . . *p, b, v, m.*
2. Dental stems . . . . . *t, d, s, n.*
3. Lingual stems . . . . . *r, l.*
4. Guttural stems . . . . . *c, g.*

**99.** The sign of the Nominative Singular is *s*, which, however, is dropped after *l, n, r, s*, or combines with *c* or *g* of the stem to form *x = c* or *g + s*; *t* or *d* disappears before *s*; as, st. *milit- + s = militis = milis* (with change of vowel) = *miles*. The nominative of neuter nouns is the same as the stem (with sometimes changed vowel, see 100. 2).

## I. Consonant Stems.

100. Stems ending in a Labial: *p, b, v, m*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<b>prīnceps</b> , <i>m., a chief.</i>	<b>prīncīpēs</b> , <i>chiefs.</i>
GEN.	<b>prīncīpis</b> , <i>of a chief.</i>	<b>prīncīpum</b> , <i>of chiefs.</i>
DAT.	<b>prīncīpī</b> , <i>to or for a chief.</i>	<b>prīncīpibus</b> , <i>to or for chiefs.</i>
ACC.	<b>prīncipem</b> , <i>a chief.</i>	<b>prīncīpēs</b> , <i>chiefs.</i>
VOC.	<b>prīnceps</b> , <i>O chief.</i>	<b>prīncīpēs</b> , <i>O chiefs.</i>
ABL. {	<b>prīncīpe</b> , <i>with, from, or by a chief.</i>	<b>prīncīpibus</b> , <i>with, from, or by chiefs.</i>

Cases.		trabs, <i>F., a beam.</i>	hiems, <i>F., winter.</i>	Case-Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	trabs	hiēms	-s
	GEN.	trābis	hiēmīs	-īs
	DAT.	trābī	hiēmī	-ī
	ACC.	trābem	hiēmēm	-ēm
	VOC.	trabs	hiēms	-s
	ABL.	trābe	hiēme	-e
Plural.	NOM.	trābēs	hiēmēs	-ēs
	GEN.	trābum	hiēmum	-um
	DAT.	trābibus	hiēmibus	-ibus
	ACC.	trābēs	hiēmēs	-ēs
	VOC.	trābēs	hiēmēs	-ēs
	ABL.	trābibus	hiēmibus	-ibus

1. Note that the stems are **prīncīp-**, **trāb-**, **hiēm-**.
2. In forming the nominative, the vowel before the final consonant of the stem is often changed. The most common changes are :—

- (1) From *i* to *e*; as **prīnceps**, from stem **prīncīp-**.
- (2) From *i* to *u*; as **cāput**, from stem **cāpīt-**.
- (3) From *i* to *o*; as **virgo**, from stem **virgīn-**.
- (4) From *o* to *u*; as **corpus**, from stem **corpor-** (which stands for **corpos-**).
- (5) From *e* to *u*; as **opus**, from stem **ōpēr-**.

3. The case-endings of **prīnceps** appear distinct and separate from the stem.

4. The genitive ending *-is* is short.

## VOCABULARY.

**inter**, prep. w. acc., *between*,  
*among*.

**verbum**, -ī, N., *word*.

**prīnceps**, **prīncīpis**, M., *chief*,  
*leader*.

**Cassius**, -ī, M., *Cassius*.

**sub**, prep. w. acc. or abl., *under*.

**conjūro**, **conjūrāre**, **conjūrāvī**,  
*plot*, *conspire*.

**Dīvitiācus**, -ī, M., *Divitiacus*.

**fābūla**, -ae, F., *story*, *fable*.

**ēlōquentia**, -ae, F., *eloquence*.

SYN. **Prīnceps** (**prīmus cāpio**), the *foremost*, whose example others follow, — the first in *rank* and *authority*; **prīmus**, the first in *time* and *order* (often interchangeable).

101. Decline together the following: —

1. **prīnceps māgnus**, a great chief.
2. **trabs longa**, a long beam.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs: —

1. Ad prīncīpem Galliae.    2. Cum prīncīpe Galliae.
3. Prīncīpēs circum Rōmam hiēmāvērunt.    4. Tītus prīncīpēs laudat.
5. Cum prīncīpībus.    6. Vir prīncīpēs vōcat.

Translate into Latin: —

1. With<sup>1</sup> the chiefs.    2. He praises the chiefs.    3. The chiefs have passed the winter around Rome.
4. To Divitiacus, the chief<sup>2</sup> of the Gauls.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. In company with = **cum**.
2. Appositive.

How are nouns of the third declension classified? How is the nominative formed from the stem? How is the stem formed? Of what genders are nouns of the third declension?

## LESSON XXIV.

## NOUNS.—THIRD DECLENSION.

102. Stems ending in Dentals: *t, d, s, n*.1. Stems in *t, d*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>pēs, m., a foot.</i>	<i>pēdēs, feet.</i>
GEN.	<i>pēdis, of a foot.</i>	<i>pēdum, of feet.</i>
DAT.	<i>pēdī, to or for a foot.</i>	<i>pēdibus, to or for feet.</i>
ACC.	<i>pēdem, foot.</i>	<i>pēdēs, feet.</i>
VOC.	<i>pēs, O foot.</i>	<i>pēdēs, O feet.</i>
ABL.	<i>pēde, with, from, or by a foot.</i>	<i>pēdibus, with, from, or by feet.</i>
NOM.	<i>mīles, m., a soldier.</i>	<i>mīlitēs, soldiers.</i>
GEN.	<i>mīlitis, of a soldier.</i>	<i>mīlitum, of soldiers.</i>
DAT.	<i>mīlitī, to or for a soldier.</i>	<i>mīlitibus, to or for soldiers.</i>
ACC.	<i>mīlitem, soldier.</i>	<i>mīlitēs, soldiers.</i>
VOC.	<i>mīles, O soldier.</i>	<i>mīlitēs, O soldiers.</i>
ABL. {	<i>mīlite, with, from, or by a soldier.</i>	<i>mīlitibus, with, from, or by soldiers.</i>

2. Stems in *s (r)*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>flōs, m., flower.</i>	<i>flōrēs, flowers.</i>
GEN.	<i>flōris, a flower.</i>	<i>flōrum, of flowers.</i>
DAT.	<i>flōrī, to or for a flower.</i>	<i>flōribus, to or for flowers.</i>
ACC.	<i>flōrem, flower.</i>	<i>flōrēs, flowers.</i>
VOC.	<i>flōs, O flower.</i>	<i>flōrēs, O flowers.</i>
ABL. {	<i>flōre, with, from, or by a flower.</i>	<i>flōribus, with, from, or by flowers.</i>

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		opus, N., work.	corpus, N., body.	gēnus, N., kind.	fulgur, N., lightning.
Singular.	NOM.	ōpus	corpus	gēnus	fulgur
	GEN.	ōpēris	corpōris	gēnēris	fulgūris
	DAT.	ōperī	corporī	gēnerī	fulgūrī
	ACC.	ōpus	corpus	gēnus	fulgur
	VOC.	ōpus	corpus	gēnus	fulgur
	ABL.	ōpēre	corpōre	gēnēre	fulgūre
Plural.	NOM.	ōpēra	corpōra	gēnēra	fulgūra
	GEN.	ōpērum	corpōrum	gēnērum	fulgūrum
	DAT.	ōpēribus	corpōribus	gēnēribus	fulgūribus
	ACC.	ōpēra	corpōra	gēnēra	fulgūra
	VOC.	ōpēra	corpōra	gēnēra	fulgūra
	ABL.	ōpēribus	corpōribus	gēnēribus	fulgūribus

3. Stems in *n*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		rēgio, F., region.	virgo, F., virgin.	nomen, N., name.
Singular.	NOM.	rēgiō	virgo	nōmen
	GEN.	rēgiōnis	virginis	nōminis
	DAT.	rēgiōnī	virginī	nōminī
	ACC.	rēgiōnem	virginem	nōmen
	VOC.	rēgio	virgo	nōmen
	ABL.	rēgiōne	virgine	nōmine
Plural.	NOM.	rēgiōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
	GEN.	rēgiōnum	virginum	nōminum
	DAT.	rēgiōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus
	ACC.	rēgiōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
	VOC.	rēgiōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
	ABL.	rēgiōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus

a. The stems are **pēd-**, **mīlīt-**, **flōr-**, **ōpēr-**, **corpōr-**, **gēnēr-**, **fulgūr-**, **rēgiōn-**, **virgīn-**, **nōmīn-**; in some instances the vowel is variable.

b. Note that the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*; as, **pēs** for **pēds**, **mīles** for **mīlits** (with change of vowel).

c. Note that *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels; as, **flōs**, **flōris** (for **flōsis**); **hōnos**, later form **hōnor**, **hōnōris** (for **honōsis**).

d. In the nominative and vocative singular, the case-ending *s* is sometimes dropped; as, **fulgur**, **rēgiō**, **virgo**, **nōmen**. Nominatives in *o* have also lost the final *n* of the stem; the stem of **rēgiō** is **rēgiōn-**.

#### VOCABULARY.

**cāput**, **cāpītis**, N., *head*.

**causa**, -ae, F., *cause, reason*.

**flūmen**, **flūmīnis**, N., *river*.

**lēgātiō**, **lēgātiōnis**, F., *embassy*.

**Jūra**, -ae, M., *the Jura*.

**virtūs**, **virtūtis**, F., *valor*.

**ob**, prep. w. acc., *on account of*.

**longus**, -a, -um, *long*.

SYN. **Pōpulus** (originally the patricians) came to include the whole people; **plebs**, the plebeians, a part of the people without political rights, until political equality was established by the Licinian law, B.C. 367; **Quīrītēs**, the Roman people in their civil capacity.

#### 103. Decline together the following: —

1. **caput māgnum**, a large head.

2. **mīles bōnus**, a good soldier.

3. **mīles ācer**, a spirited soldier.

#### EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs: —

1. **Mīlītēs laudant**. 2. **Rēgīna virtūtem mīlītum laudat**.  
3. **Virgīnēs carmen longum cantant**. 4. **Ad flūmen Rhōdānum**. 5. **Mīlītēs ob cūpīditātem glōriae pūgnant**. 6. **Prīncipes mōrēs vīrīs<sup>1</sup> dābat**.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Note that the ending *-is* is long in plural cases of the second declension.

How is the stem of nouns of the third declension found? What cases are alike in neuter nouns? The stems of Latin words often appear in English words derived from the Latin; as, *princip-al* (*princip-*, stem of **prīnceps**).

## LESSON XXV.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

104. Stems ending in a Lingual: *r, l*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	victor, <i>m., a conqueror.</i>	victōrēs, <i>conquerors.</i>
GEN.	victōris, <i>of a conqueror.</i>	victōrum, <i>of conquerors.</i>
DAT.	victōri, <i>to or for a conqueror.</i>	victōribus, <i>to or for conquerors.</i>
ACC.	victōrem, <i>conqueror.</i>	victōrēs, <i>conquerors.</i>
VOC.	victor, <i>O conqueror.</i>	victōrēs, <i>O conquerors.</i>
ABL. {	victōre, <i>with, from, or by a conqueror.</i>	victōribus, <i>with, from, or by conquerors.</i>

1. In the nominative and vocative singular of **victor**, *s* is not added.

2. Most nouns in *-er* are declined like **anser**, but those in *-ter*, and a few others, are declined like **pāter** : —

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		sol, <i>m., sun.</i>	consul, <i>m., consul.</i>	pater, <i>m., father.</i>	anser, <i>m., goose.</i>
Singular.	NOM.	sōl	cōnsul	pāter	ānsēr
	GEN.	sōlis	cōnsūlis	patris	ansēris
	DAT.	sōli	cōnsūli	patri	ansēri
	ACC.	sōlem	cōnsūlem	patrem	ansērem
	VOC.	sōl	cōnsul	pāter	anser
	ABL.	sōle	cōnsūle	patre	ansēre
Plural.	NOM.	sōlēs	cōnsulēs	patrēs	ansērēs
	GEN.	—	cōnsūlum	patrum	ansērum
	DAT.	sōlibus	cōnsūlibus	patribus	ansēribus
	ACC.	sōlēs	cōnsulēs	patrēs	ansērēs
	VOC.	sōlēs	cōnsulēs	patrēs	ansērēs
	ABL.	sōlibus	cōnsūlibus	patribus	ansēribus

## VOCABULARY.

<b>cōsul, cōsūlis</b> , M., <i>consul</i> .	<b>sōror, sōrōris</b> , F., <i>sister</i> .
<b>agger, aggeris</b> , M., <i>mound</i> .	<b>impērātor, -tōris</b> , M., <i>commander</i> .
<b>frāter, frātris</b> , M., <i>brother</i> .	<b>ōrātor, ōrātōris</b> , M., <i>orator</i> .
<b>Caesar, Caesāris</b> , M., <i>Cæsar</i> .	<b>victor, victōris</b> , M., <i>victor</i> .

**105.** Decline together the following :—

1. **cōsul dēsignātus**, *consul elect*.
2. **tīmor magnus**, *great fear*.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce ; translate ; decline each noun, and give the stem ; parse the verbs :—

1. Cōsul ōrātōrem laudat.
2. Consul ōrātōris ēlōquentiam laudāvit.
3. Frāter sōrōrem āmat.
4. Fratrem libērāvit.
5. Caesar sōrōrem in mātīmōnium dēdit (*gave*).
6. Caesar cōsul cōsūlem Tītum accūsāvērat.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They have praised the orator.
2. They praise the orator's eloquence.
3. The brothers love (their) sisters.
4. They have liberated the consul.
5. To Cæsar, the consul.
6. They accuse Cæsar, the consul.
7. The judge praises the king.
8. I praise the justice of the king.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

How is the nominative singular of most nouns formed ? (*Ans.* The nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem.) What exceptions ? (*Ans.* Neuters, and nouns whose stem ends in a lingual.) **pāter, māter, frāter** (gen. **patris, matris, fratris**), seem not to increase in the genitive. The stems are really **pāter-, māter-, frāter-**, and they are contracted to **pātr-, mātr-, frātr-**; *i.e.*, **pātris** stands for **pātēris**, etc.



## LESSON XXVI.

## NOUNS.—THIRD DECLENSION.

106. Stems ending in a Guttural: *c, g*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	jūdex, <i>m., a judge.</i>	jūdicēs, <i>judges.</i>
GEN.	jūdicis, <i>of a judge.</i>	jūdicum, <i>of judges.</i>
DAT.	jūdicī, <i>to or for a judge.</i>	jūdicibus, <i>to or for judges.</i>
ACC.	jūdicem, <i>judge.</i>	jūdicēs, <i>judges.</i>
VOC.	jūdex, <i>O judge.</i>	jūdicēs, <i>O judges.</i>
ABL. {	jūdice, <i>with, from, or by a judge.</i>	jūdicibus, <i>with, from, or by judges.</i>

Cases.		rēx, <i>m., king.</i>	rādix, <i>f., root.</i>	dux, <i>m. &amp; f., leader.</i>	lex, <i>f., law.</i>
Singular.	NOM.	rēx	rādix	dūx	lēx
	GEN.	rēgis	rādicis	dūcis	lēgis
	DAT.	rēgī	rādicī	dūcī	lēgī
	ACC.	rēgem	rādicem	dūcem	lēgem
	VOC.	rēx	rādix	dūx	lex
	ABL.	rēge	rādice	dūce	lēge
Plural.	NOM.	rēgēs	rādicēs	dūces	lēgēs
	GEN.	rēgum	rādicum	dūcum	lēgum
	DAT.	rēgibus	rādicibus	dūcibus	lēgibus
	ACC.	rēgēs	rādicēs	dūcēs	lēgēs
	VOC.	rēgēs	rādicēs	dūcēs	lēgēs
	ABL.	rēgibus	rādicibus	dūcibus	lēgibus

1. Note that the stems are jūdīc-, rēg-, rādīc-, dūc-, and lēg-; jūdīc- has a variable vowel.

2. The case-endings are the same as those given in 100.

3. The *s* of the nominative and vocative singular unites with *c* or *g* of the stem to form *x*; as, rēgs = rēx. See 32. 2.

## FINAL SYLLABLES.

4. Hitherto long final syllables have been marked ; the quantity of final syllables will hereafter be marked only when not determined by the following rules :—

- a. Most monosyllables are long.
- b. Final *i*, *o*, and *u* are long ; *a*, *e*, and *y*, short. Final *a* is long in the ablative singular of the first declension.
- c. Final *as*, *es*, and *os* are long ; *is*, *us*, and *ys*, short.

5. In the increments of nouns *a* and *o* are generally long ; *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, short.

Exc. *-is* is long in plural cases.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>vōx</b> , <b>vōcis</b> , F., <i>voice</i> .	<b>gēnus</b> , <b>gēneris</b> , N., <i>kind</i> .
<b>sīne</b> , prep. w. abl., <i>without</i> .	<b>glōria</b> , -ae, F., <i>glory</i> .
<b>rēx</b> , <b>rēgis</b> , M., <i>king</i> .	<b>nōvus</b> , -a, -um, <i>new</i> .
<b>rādix</b> , <b>rādīcis</b> , F., <i>root</i> .	<b>rēgūla</b> , -ae, F., <i>rule</i> .

107. Decline together the following :—

1. **flūmen lātum**, *a broad river*.
2. **pāter vester**, *your father*.

SYN. **Flūmen** (**fluo**, *to flow*), properly *a stream*, with the idea of *flowing* ; **flūvius**, general word for *a river* ; **amnis**, *a broad, deep river* ; **rīvus**, *a brook*.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce ; translate ; decline each noun, and give its stem ; parse the verbs :—

1. **Rēgēs pugnāvērunt**. 2. **Rēgem vōcāvistī**. 3. **Rēgīna jūdicem bōnum laudābat**. 4. **Jūdex puērō librum dōnat**. 5. **Sīne rēge**. 6. **Ad rēgem**. 7. **Multa gēnera frūmentī importābimus**. 8. **Prīncipēs Gallōrum pūgnāvērunt**. 9. **Rōmūlus frātre[m] libērāvit**. 10. **Rōmūlus nōmen nōvae urbī dat**.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What nouns belong to the third declension? What is meant by the stem of a word? How may the stem of nouns of the third declension be found? (*Ans.* 1st. The stem of nouns ending in a consonant is found by dropping *-is* of the genitive singular; 2d. The stem of nouns ending in a vowel is found by dropping *-s* of the genitive singular; 3d. The stem of monosyllabic nouns ending in two consonants is found by dropping *-is* for the singular, and *-s* only for the plural: *as*, *urbs*, *st. urb-* (sing.), *urbi-* (plural). See 113.) What becomes of the *s* that is added to the stem to form the nominative in *dūx* (gen. *dūc-is*)? of the *d* in the stem of *lāpis* (gen. *lāpid-is*)? What is the ending of the genitive singular of nouns of the third declension?

## LESSON XXVII.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**108.** Vowel stems of the Third Declension end in *-i*; *as*, *turris*, stem *turri-*. Nouns of this class include the following: —

1. Nouns in *-is* and *-es* not increasing in the genitive.
2. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.
3. Monosyllables with stems ending in two consonants.
4. Most nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>turris</i> , <i>m.</i> , a tower.	<i>turrēs</i> , towers.
GEN.	<i>turris</i> , of a tower.	<i>turrium</i> , of towers.
DAT.	<i>turri</i> , to or for a tower.	<i>turribus</i> , to or for towers.
ACC.	<i>turrem</i> , or <i>-im</i> , a tower.	<i>turrēs</i> , or <i>-īs</i> , towers.
Voc.	<i>turris</i> , O tower.	<i>turrēs</i> , O towers.
ABL. }	<i>turre</i> , <i>-ī</i> , with, from, or by a tower.	<i>turribus</i> , with, from, or by towers.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		ignis, M., <i>fire.</i>	hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	nūbēs, F., <i>cloud.</i>	Case- Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	ignis	hostis	nūbēs	-is, -ēs
	GEN.	ignis	hostis	nūbis	-is
	DAT.	ignī	hostī	nūbī	-ī
	ACC.	ignem	hostem	nūbem	-em, -im
	VOC.	ignis	hostis	nubis	-is
	ABL.	igne, -ī	hoste	nūbe	-e, -ī
Plural.	NOM.	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs	-ēs
	GEN.	ignium	hostium	nūbium	-ium
	DAT.	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus	-ibus
	ACC.	ignēs, -īs	hostēs	nūbēs, -īs	-ēs, -īs
	VOC.	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs	-ēs
	ABL.	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus	-ibus

1. Only five or six nouns in common use have *-im* in the accusative singular; and about as many have *-em* or *-im*.

2. All stems in *-ī-* have *-ium* in the genitive plural; the accusative plural is often written *-īs* instead of *-ēs*.

**109.** Decline together the following:—

1. ignis clārus, a bright fire.
2. collis asper, a rugged hill.

## VOCABULARY.

cānis, cānis, M. and F., <i>dog.</i>	inter, prep. w. acc., <i>between,</i>
hostis, hostis, M. and F., <i>enemy.</i>	among.
supĕro, -āre, -āvī, <i>conquers.</i>	finis, finis, M., <i>limit; pl., territory.</i>
prō, prep. w. abl., <i>before, for,</i>	nūmĕrus, -ī, M., <i>number.</i>
<i>instead of.</i>	latro, latrāre, latrāvī, <i>bark.</i>

SYN. **Hostis** is a foreign enemy in war; **inimicus**, a private, personal enemy; **adversarius**, any opponent.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Cānis<sup>1</sup> latrat.
2. Nōnne hostēs agrōs vastant?
3. Caesar hostēs supĕrābat.
4. Rēx turrēs oppugnābit.

5. *Militēs prō libertātē pūgnant.* 6. *Inter finēs Gallōrum.*  
 7. *In hostium nūmērō.* 8. *Cānēs pūgnant.* 9. *Caesar turrim oppūgnābat.*

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *Cānis* forms the genitive plural in *-um*, as *cānum*; so also *pānis*, *bread*; and *jūvēnis*, *a youth*.

Do nouns having *i*-stems increase in the genitive? What is meant by increasing in the genitive? How do such nouns form the nominative from the stem? What vowel change is common? In what does the genitive plural usually end?

## LESSON XXVIII.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**110.** Neuters ending in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar* are declined as follows:—

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		<i>māre, sea.</i>	<i>ānīmal, an animal.</i>	<i>calcar, spur.</i>	Case-Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	<i>māre</i>	<i>ānīmal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>-e</i>
	GEN.	<i>māris</i>	<i>ānīmālis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	<i>-is</i>
	DAT.	<i>marī</i>	<i>ānīmālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
	ACC.	<i>māre</i>	<i>ānīmal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>-e</i>
	VOC.	<i>māre</i>	<i>ānīmal</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>-e</i>
	ABL.	<i>mārī</i>	<i>ānīmālī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
Plural.	NOM.	<i>māria</i>	<i>ānīmālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>-ia</i>
	GEN.	<i>mārium</i>	<i>ānīmālium</i>	<i>calcārium</i>	<i>-ium</i>
	DAT.	<i>mārībus</i>	<i>ānīmālībus</i>	<i>calcārībus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
	ACC.	<i>māria</i>	<i>ānīmālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>-ia</i>
	VOC.	<i>māria</i>	<i>ānīmālia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>-ia</i>
	ABL.	<i>mārībus</i>	<i>ānīmālībus</i>	<i>calcārībus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

1. The stem of **māre** ends in *-i-*, which is changed in the nominative to *e*. The stem of **ānīmal** ends in *-āli-*, the *i* being dropped, and the *a* shortened in the nominative singular; as, stem **ānīmāli-**, nominative **ānīmāl**. **ānīmāl** stands for **ānīmāle**, the final *e* being lost, and does not, therefore, *increase* in the genitive.

### 111. Rules for Position : —

1. Adjectives and genitives generally follow their nouns.
2. Adverbs and oblique cases, with or without prepositions, generally immediately precede the verb.
3. The indirect object generally precedes the direct object.
4. When a noun with an adjective is limited by a noun in the genitive, the adjective stands first, and the genitive between it and its noun; as, **magnum rēgīnae pōcūlum**, *the large cup of the queen*; or, *the queen's large cup*.
5. The rules may be reversed for the sake of emphasis; then the emphatic place for the *verb* is at the beginning;  
     for the *object*, at the end of a sentence;  
     for the *genitive*, before the noun it limits;  
     for the *adjective*, before the noun;  
     for the *adverb*, at a distance from the verb;  
     for the *indirect object*, after the direct.

### VOCABULARY.

**tōlēro, tōlērare, tōlēravī**, bear,  
*endure.*

**ānīmal, ānīmālis**, N., animal.

**crēmo, -āre, -āvi**, burn.

**custōs, custōdis**, M., guard.

**frīgus, frīgōris**, N., cold, frost.

**tempus, tempōris**, N., time.

**jūs, jūris**, N., right, law.

**collis, collis**, M., hill.

**vectīgal, vectīgālis**, N., tax,  
*revenue.*

**nōmen, nōmīnis**, N., name.

### 112. Decline together the following : —

1. **nāvis longa** (lit., *a long ship*), *a ship of war*.
2. **vectīgal magnum**, *a large revenue*.
3. **māre māgnum**, *a great sea*.

## EXERCISES.

Pronounce; translate; decline each noun, and give its stem; parse the verbs:—

1. Nautae mǎre ămant. 2. Dux hostium finēs rēgis vastăverat. 3. Rēx jūra vīris dăbat. 4. Propter frīgōra.  
5. In (on) colle. 6. Mīles vulnus tōlérat. 7. Bōnōs hōmīnēs laudămus.

## LESSON XXIX.

## NOUNS. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**113.** Many nouns in *-s* and *-x*, generally preceded by a consonant, were originally *i*-stems. These are:—

1. Nouns of one syllable, with stems ending in two consonants.
2. Nouns of two or more syllables ending in *-ns* or *-rs*.
3. Note that these nouns are declined in the singular like consonant stems, and in the plural like vowel stems.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		urbs, F., city.	nox, F., night.	mūs, M., mouse.	arx, F., citadel.
Singular.	NOM.	urbs	nox	mūs	arx
	GEN.	urbis	noctis	mūris	arcis
	DAT.	urbī	noctī	mūrī	arcī
	ACC.	urbem	noctem	mūrem	arcem
	VOC.	urbs	nox	mūs	arx
	ABL.	urbe	nocte	mūre	arce
Plural.	NOM.	urbēs	noctēs	mūrēs	arcēs
	GEN.	urbium	noctium	mūrium	arcium
	DAT.	urbībus	noctībus	mūrībus	arcībus
	ACC.	urbēs, -īs	noctēs, -īs	mūrēs, -īs	arcēs
	VOC.	urbēs	noctēs	mūrēs	arcēs
	ABL.	urbībus	noctībus	mūrībus	arcībus

**Rules for the Oblique Cases of Nouns of the Third Declension.**

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

**114.** The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative. The accusative singular of masculine and feminine nouns generally ends in *-em*; but a few proper nouns in *-is*, denoting places or rivers, have the accusative in *-im*, and also *sītis*, *tussis*, and *vīs*; a few have either *-em* or *-im*, as *febris*, *turris*, *nāvis*.

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

**115.** The ablative singular commonly ends in *-e*; but

1. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar* have *-i* in the ablative.
2. Nouns that have *-im* in the accusative, and names of months in *-er* or *-is*, have *-ī* in the ablative.
3. Nouns that have *-em* or *-im* in the accusative have their ablative in *-e* or *-ī*: *ignis*, *fire*, *nāvis*, *vessel*, *turris*, *tower*, *cīvis*, *citizen*, *finis*, *end*, and a few others, have *-e* or *-ī*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

**116.** The genitive plural generally ends in *-um*; but

1. Nouns that have *-i* or both *-e* and *-i* in the ablative singular have *-ium* in the genitive plural.
2. Nouns in *-es* and *-is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, have *-ium* in the genitive plural.
3. Nouns of one syllable ending in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a consonant have *-ium* in the genitive plural.
4. Nouns of two or more syllables ending in *-ns* or *-rs*, and names of nations in *-ās* and *-īs*, generally have *-ium* in the genitive plural.

VOCABULARY.

**mons**, **montis**, M., *mountain*.  
**urbs**, **urbis**, F., *city*.  
**pars**, **partis**, F., *part*.  
**lītus**, **lītōris**, N., *shore*.

**sto**, **stāre**, **stētī**, *stand*.  
**lūx**, **lūcis**, F., *light*.  
**ante**, prep. w. acc., *before*.  
**servo**, **servāre**, **servāvī**, *preserve*.



**117.** Decline together the following : —

1. **sīnīstra pars**, *the left side.*
2. **rūpēs sīnīstra**, *a rock on the left.*
3. **ōpus complētum**, *a finished work.*

**Obs.** Note that, in nouns of the third declension, the stem is the same as the nominative; as, **cōnsul**, genitive **cōnsul-is**, or becomes the same after the vowel is modified; as, **nōmen**, genitive **nōmīn-is**; or that *s* is added to the stem to form the nominative; as, **hostis**, genitive **hosti-s**.

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. **Partem urbis occūpant.**
2. **Cōnsul in urbe hābitābat.**
3. **Rōmūlus nōmen nōvae urbī dat.**
4. **Frātrēs in lītore mārīs cum sōrōrībūs stant.**
5. **Ante lūcem.**
6. **De monte in flūmen.**
7. **In monte.**
8. **In pāce pārāmus bellum.**
9. **Mīlītēs arcem servābant.**

**Syn.** **Oppīdum** is a *fortified town, a fortress*; a *small city or town*; **urbs**, a *large city* (with reference to its buildings; especially to *Rome*); **cīvitas**, a *state*, (1) a *community living under the same laws*; (2) *right of citizenship*; **res publica**, a *commonwealth*.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is the genitive plural of **mons**, **urbs**, **pars**? Are these words declined in the singular like consonant stems? What three classes of nouns of the third declension? (*Ans.* 1st. Consonant stems; 2d. Vowel stems; 3d. Mixed stems.) What nouns have *-i* as the regular ending in the ablative singular? What nouns have *-e* or *-i*? In what does the nominative plural of masculine and feminine nouns end? (*Ans.* **-ēs**.) In what, the nominative plural of neuter nouns? (*Ans.* In **-a**, and those whose ablative singular ends in *-i* only, or in *-e* and *-i*, have **-ia**.) What nouns have **-ium** in the genitive plural? How is the nominative formed from the stem? What is the regular ending of the accusative singular? What nouns have **-im** in the accusative?

## LESSON XXX.

## THIRD DECLENSION.—RULES OF GENDER.

**118.** The rules for gender, when determined by the meaning, have been given under 63.

## EXAMPLES.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>Caesar</b> , M., <i>Cæsar</i> .  | 7. <b>hostis</b> , M. OR F., <i>enemy</i> .  |
| 2. <b>nauta</b> , M., <i>sailor</i> .  | 8. <b>civis</b> , M. OR F., <i>citizen</i> . |
| 3. <b>vir</b> , M., <i>man</i> .       | 9. <b>jūdex</b> , M. OR F., <i>judge</i> .   |
| 4. <b>Tullia</b> , F., <i>Tullia</i> . | 10. <b>Rōma</b> , F., <i>Rome</i> .          |
| 5. <b>mālier</b> , F., <i>woman</i> .  | 11. <b>Rhēnus</b> , M., <i>Rhine</i> .       |
| 6. <b>puella</b> , F., <i>girl</i> .   | 12. <b>Mārtius</b> , M., <i>March</i> .      |

Obs. Examine the foregoing words, and give the gender of each noun and the rule. Note that Exs. 7–9 designate either *males* or *females*, and that they are of the *common gender* (c.).

*Rules of Gender.*

**119.** The following are the rules for gender when determined by the endings of the nominative singular:—

1. Nouns of the third declension ending in *-o*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, *-ēs*, *-ēs* (increasing in the genitive to *-īdis* or *-ītis*) are masculine.

## EXAMPLES.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>sermo</b> , <i>-ōnis</i> , M., <i>speech</i> .  | 5. <b>pēs</b> , <i>pēdis</i> , M., <i>foot</i> .       |
| 2. <b>dōlor</b> , <i>-ōris</i> , M., <i>pain</i> .    | 6. <b>trāmes</b> , <i>-ītis</i> , M., <i>path</i> .    |
| 3. <b>flōs</b> , <i>flōris</i> , M., <i>flower</i> .  | 7. <b>ēques</b> , <i>-ītis</i> , M., <i>horseman</i> . |
| 4. <b>carcer</b> , <i>-ēris</i> , M., <i>prison</i> . | 8. <b>mīles</b> , <i>-ītis</i> , M., <i>soldier</i> .  |

2. Nouns of the third declension ending in *-ās* (gen. *-ātis*), *-ēs* (not increasing in the genitive), *-is*, *-ys*, *-x*, *-s* (preceded

by a consonant) ; also *-do*, *-go* (gen. *-inis*), *-io* (abstract<sup>1</sup> and collective<sup>2</sup>), and *-ūs* (gen. *-ūdis*, *-ūtis*), are feminine.

## EXAMPLES.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>aetās, -ātis</i> , F., <i>age</i> .     | 8. <i>pars, partis</i> , F., <i>part</i> .           |
| 2. <i>cīvītās, -ātis</i> , F., <i>state</i> . | 9. <i>trabs, trābis</i> , F., <i>a beam</i> .        |
| 3. <i>nūbēs, -is</i> , F., <i>cloud</i> .     | 10. <i>īmāgo, -inis</i> , F., <i>image</i> .         |
| 4. <i>nāvis, -is</i> , F., <i>ship</i> .      | 11. <i>multitūdō, -inis</i> , F., <i>multitude</i> . |
| 5. <i>chlāmys, -ydis</i> , F., <i>cloak</i> . | 12. <i>ōrātiō, -ōnis</i> , F., <i>speech</i> .       |
| 6. <i>pāx, pācis</i> , F., <i>peace</i> .     | 13. <i>lēgiō, -ōnis</i> , F., <i>legion</i> .        |
| 7. <i>urbs, urbis</i> , F., <i>city</i> .     | 14. <i>virtūs, -ūtis</i> , F., <i>virtue</i> .       |

3. Nouns of the third declension ending in *-a*, *-e*, *-ī*, *-y* ; *-c*, *-l*, *-t* ; *-ar*, *-ur*, *-us* (genitive *-ōris* or *-ēris*), and *-men* (genitive *-minis*), are neuter.

## EXAMPLES.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>poēma, -ātis</i> , N., <i>poem</i> .       | 8. <i>tempus, -ōris</i> , N., <i>time</i> .    |
| 2. <i>māre, -is</i> , N., <i>sea</i> .           | 9. <i>gēnus, -ēris</i> , N., <i>class</i> .    |
| 3. <i>lac, lactis</i> , N., <i>milk</i> .        | 10. <i>nōmen, -inis</i> , N., <i>name</i> .    |
| 4. <i>vectīgal, -ālis</i> , N., <i>revenue</i> . | 11. <i>agmen, -inis</i> , N., <i>army</i> .    |
| 5. <i>cāput, -itis</i> , N., <i>head</i> .       | 12. <i>lātus, -ēris</i> , N., <i>side</i> .    |
| 6. <i>calcar, -āris</i> , N., <i>spur</i> .      | 13. <i>rēte, rētis</i> , N., <i>net</i> .      |
| 7. <i>guttur, -ūris</i> , N., <i>throat</i> .    | 14. <i>ānīmal, -ālis</i> , N., <i>animal</i> . |

**120.** The following nouns in common use are exceptions to these rules : —

Exc. 1. *Arbor*, *a tree*, *cāro*, *flesh*, and *ordo*, *order*, are feminine ; *aequor*, *the sea*, *marmor*, *marble*, and *cor*, *cordis*, *the heart*, are neuter ; *ordo*, *rank*, is masculine ; *iter* is neuter.

Exc. 2. Latin nouns ending in *-nis* are masculine or doubtful ; as, *crīnis*, *hair*, *ignis*, *fire*, *pānis*, *bread*, are masculine. The following are masculine or feminine : *amnis*, *a river*, *cīnis*, *ashes*, *finis*, *end*, *clūnis*, *the haunch*, *cānis*, *a dog*, *fūnis*, *a rope* ; the plural *finēs*, *boundaries*, is always masculine.

Exc. 3. *Dens*, *a tooth*, *fons*, *a fountain*, *mons*, *a mountain*, and *pons*, *a bridge*, are masculine.

**121. Nouns Irregular in Declension.****PARADIGMS.**

Cases.		bōs, M. & F., ox.	vis, F., strength.	sus, M. & F., swine.	nix, F., snow.	sēnex, M., old man.	Jūpiter, M., Jupiter.
Singular.	NOM.	bōs	vīs	sūs	nix	sēnex	Jūpiter
	GEN.	bōvis	vīs (rare)	suis	nīvis	sēnis	Jōvis
	DAT.	bōvī	vī (rare)	suī	nīvī	sēnī	Jōvī
	ACC.	bōvem	vīm	suem	nivem	sēnem	Jōvem
	VOC.	bōs	vīs	sūs	nix	sēnex	Jūpiter
	ABL.	bōve	vī	sue	nīve	sēne	Jōve
Plural.	NOM.	bōvēs	vīrēs	suēs	nīvēs	sēnēs	
	GEN. {	bōvum	vīrium	suum	nīvium	sēnum	
	DAT. {	bōbus	vīribus	{ suibus subus	nīvibus	sēnibus	
	ACC.	bōvēs	vīrēs	suēs	nīvēs	sēnēs	
	VOC.	bōvēs	vīrēs	sues	nīvēs	sēnēs	
	ABL. {	bōbus	vīribus	{ suibus subus	nīvibus	sēnibus	

Cases.		īter, N., journey.	jūs-jūrandum, N., oath.	māterfāmilīās, mother of a family.
Singular.	NOM.	īter	jūs-jūrandum	māterfāmilīās
	GEN.	ītinēris	jūris-jūrandī	mātrīsfāmilīās
	DAT.	ītinērī	jūrī-jūrandō	mātrīsfāmilīās
	ACC.	īter	jūs-jūrandum	mātrēm-fāmilīās
	VOC.	īter	jūs-jūrandum	māterfāmilīās
	ABL.	ītinēre	jūrē-jūrandō	mātrēfāmilīās
Plural.	NOM.	ītinēra	jūrājūrandā	mātrēs-fāmilīās
	GEN.	ītinērum	—	mātrumfāmilīās
	DAT.	ītinērībus	—	mātribusfāmilīās
	ACC.	ītinēra	jūrājūrandā	mātrēs-fāmilīās
	VOC.	ītinēra	jūrājūrandā	mātrēs-fāmilīās
	ABL.	ītinērībus	—	mātribusfāmilīās

1. The locative case of nouns of the third declension ends like the dative, sometimes like the ablative; as, **Karthāgīnī**, or **Karthāgīne**, at Carthage; **rūrī**, in the country.

EXERCISES.

Determine by the foregoing rules the gender of the following nouns : —

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>consul</i> , -ālis, <i>consul</i> .         | 14. <i>civitas</i> , -ātis, <i>state</i> .     |
| 2. <i>sermō</i> , -ōnis, <i>discourse</i> .       | 15. <i>lēgatiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>embassy</i> .   |
| 3. <i>orātiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>speech</i> .         | 16. <i>lēx</i> , <i>lēgis</i> , <i>law</i> .   |
| 4. <i>dux</i> , <i>dūcis</i> , <i>leader</i> .    | 17. <i>virtūs</i> , -ūtis, <i>virtue</i> .     |
| 5. <i>multitudo</i> , -inis, <i>multitude</i> .   | 18. <i>frigus</i> , -ōris, <i>cold</i> .       |
| 6. <i>impērator</i> , -ōris, <i>commander</i> .   | 19. <i>onus</i> , -ēris, <i>load</i> .         |
| 7. <i>lēgio</i> , -ōnis, <i>legion</i> .          | 20. <i>vulnus</i> , -ēris, <i>wound</i> .      |
| 8. <i>obse</i> , -īdis, <i>hostage</i> .          | 21. <i>crūs</i> , <i>crūris</i> , <i>leg</i> . |
| 9. <i>pōtestās</i> , -ātis, <i>power</i> .        | 22. <i>custos</i> , -ōdis, <i>guard</i> .      |
| 10. <i>ānimal</i> , -ālis, <i>animal</i> .        | 23. <i>rādix</i> , -icis, <i>root</i> .        |
| 11. <i>turris</i> , -is, <i>tower</i> .           | 24. <i>princeps</i> , -ipis, <i>chief</i> .    |
| 12. <i>contentiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>contention</i> . | 25. <i>sēmen</i> , -inis, <i>seed</i> .        |
| 13. <i>crīmen</i> , -inis, <i>charge</i> .        | 26. <i>litus</i> , -ōris, <i>shore</i> .       |

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. An abstract noun is the name of a quality ; as, *valor*, *virtue*.
2. A collective noun denotes in the singular number, a collection of individuals ; as, *army*, *legion*.

How many ways of determining the gender of nouns ? What are they ? What nouns are masculine by signification ? What, by termination ? What nouns in common use are exceptions ? Give the rules for feminine nouns. What are the terminations of neuter nouns ?

LESSON XXXI.

ABLATIVE.

CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS, AND INSTRUMENT.

EXAMPLES.

1. *pallidus irā fuit*, *he was pale with anger*.
2. *magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesāre pētunt*, *with a flood of tears they seek aid from Cæsar*.
3. *Divitiācus Gallōrum ānimōs verbis confirmat*, *Divitiacus encourages the minds of the Gauls by (or, by means of) words*.

4. **ferrō dīmīcant frātrēs**, the brothers fight with the sword for their country.  
 5. **mīlītēs lāpīdibus pūgnant**, the soldiers fight with stones.

Obs. In the foregoing examples the nouns that denote the *cause* (**frā**), the *manner* (**flētū**), the *means* (**verbīs**), the *instrument* (**ferrō**, **lāpīdibus**), by which the action of the verb is performed, are in the ablative without a preposition, and are modifiers of the predicate. This usage is expressed by the following rule:—

#### ABLATIVE CASE.

**122. RULE IX.**—The cause, manner, means, and instrument are denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

**123.** Rule for position:—

Expressions of *manner*, *means*, and *instrument* are placed after the direct object; those of *cause* usually precede it; all precede the predicate.

#### VOCABULARY.

<b>pēdes</b> , <b>pēdītis</b> , M., <i>foot-soldier.</i>	<b>tīmīdus</b> , -a, -um, <i>timid, afraid.</i>
<b>lāpis</b> , <b>lāpīdis</b> , M., <i>stone.</i>	<b>passer</b> , <b>passēris</b> , M., <i>sparrow.</i>
<b>sāgitta</b> , -ae, F., <i>an arrow.</i>	<b>musca</b> , -ae, F., <i>fly.</i>
<b>vester</b> , -tra, -trum, <i>your.</i>	<b>dēvōro</b> , -āre, -āvi, <i>devour.</i>

SYN. **Consīlium**, *advice, counsel*; **concīlium**, *an assembly, a meeting* (of part of the people); **lex**, *a law* passed in a **cōmītia**, an assembly of the whole people, and regularly approved; **scītum** (**plēbiscītum**), *a law* passed in a **concīlium**.

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

- Caesar urbem crēmat.
- Pāter tuus urbēs Galliae igne crēmat.
- Regnum cōpiis concīliābat.
- Vīrōs igne crēmant.
- Hostium sāgittae rēgem vestrum vulnerant.
- Amāte, puērī, sōrōrēs.
- Consulēs oppīdis nōmīna dant.
- Mīlītēs consūlis laudant.
- Virgīnem tīmīdam vōcant.
- Passer magnō cum gaudiō<sup>1</sup> muscam dēvōrābat.
- Marcī filius Gallis signum tūbā dat.

Translate into Latin : —

1. He gives a name. 2. He gives a name to the city.
3. He gives a name to the new city. 4. The soldiers have called.
5. The soldiers have called the consul. 6. They have praised.
7. They have praised the eloquence of the consul. 8. The father calls (his) son.
9. The consul praised the soldier. 10. The consul praised the valor of the soldier.
11. They are fighting. 12. They are fighting with the sword.
13. The brothers are fighting with the sword. 14. To<sup>2</sup> the city.
15. Into the city. 16. Out of the city. 17. Away from the city.
18. With the chiefs. 19. They burn the city. 20. They burn the city with fire.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The ablative of manner commonly takes **cum** unless an adjective is used, then **cum** may be omitted.

2. Note that when there is motion towards a person or place (except names of towns), a preposition with the accusative is used; the dative is wrong.

What nouns end in *-i* in the ablative singular? In *-ium* in the genitive plural? What is the gender of **mons**? Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the second declension. What is the gender of **nauta**? Give the rule. The gender of nouns not provided for by the rules must be learned by practice; as, **jūs** (gen. **jūris**), *right*, and **iter** (gen. **itineris**), *journey, march*, are both neuter. Name the stems of **māre**, **mōs**, **ānīmal**, **iter**, **ignis**, **mons**, **rex**, **corpus**.



### LESSON XXXII.

#### SUBJECT AND COPULA.

##### EXAMPLES.

1. **rēgīna bōna**, *a good queen.*
2. **rēgīna bona est**, *the queen is good.*
3. **Tullia, filia rēgīnae, poētam laudat**, *Tullia, the daughter of the queen, praises the poet.*

4. *Tullia filia rēgīnae est, Tullia is the daughter of the queen.*
5. *puella amāta est, the girl is loved.*

OBS. In the foregoing examples, note that in Ex. 1 the adjective simply modifies the noun, without the intervention of a verb; in Ex. 2 the adjective is connected with the noun by means of the verb *est*. The first adjective is called an *attributive adjective*, the second is a *predicate adjective*, and is called the *complement*. In Ex. 3 note that the descriptive noun *filia* stands in the same part of the sentence as the subject which it modifies; it is called an *appositive*. In Ex. 4 the descriptive noun is used to form the predicate, and is called a *predicate noun*, or *complement*. Note that the predicate adjective agrees with its noun in *gender, number, and case*, the predicate noun agrees with the subject in *case*. Note the position of the predicate adjective; it may, however, precede the verb for the sake of emphasis. In Ex. 5 the verb *sum* helps to form the perfect tense of the verb, and is therefore called an *auxiliary verb*; hence, —

**124.** The verb *sum* is either an *auxiliary* or a *copulative verb*. It is an auxiliary verb when it helps to form some of the tenses of other verbs; it is copulative when it joins the subject to some other word which is used to describe the subject. The word thus used to describe the subject may be a noun or an adjective, and is called the *complement*. If the descriptive word is a noun, it is called a *predicate noun*; if it is an adjective, then it is called a *predicate adjective*.

#### PREDICATE NOUN.

**125. RULE X.**—A noun in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with it in *case*.

OBS. Note that a noun used to describe another noun or pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case. When the descriptive noun is in the same part of the sentence, it is called an *APPOSITIVE*; and when it stands in the predicate, usually after intransitive verbs of *to be, to become, to remain, etc.*, and with passive verbs of *naming, calling, choosing, appointing, etc.*, it is called a *PREDICATE NOMINATIVE*.

#### PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.

**126. RULE XI.**—A predicate adjective agrees with its subject in *gender, number, and case*.



**127. Partial Paradigm of *sum*, *I am*.**

Obs. The verb *sum*, *I am*, belongs to none of the four conjugations; it is both irregular and defective, *i.e.*, it wants certain parts. It is used in Latin, as in English, to help conjugate the passive voice of regular verbs.

**PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

PRESENT STEM, <i>es</i> -. PRESENT.      INFINITIVE.		PERFECT STEM, <i>ful</i> -. PERFECT.      FUTURE PART.	
<i>sum</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>ful</i>	<i>fütürus</i>

**INDICATIVE PRESENT.**

<i>Sing. 1 sūm, I am.</i>	<i>Plur. 1 sūmūs, we are.</i>
<i>2 es, thou art.</i>	<i>2 estis, you are.</i>
<i>3 est, he is.</i>	<i>3 sunt, they are.</i>

**VOCABULARY.<sup>5</sup>**

<i>testis, testis, M. &amp; F., witness.</i>	<i>bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj., warlike.</i>
<i>Ārar, Arāris, acc. Arārim, M., the Arar (now the Saone).</i>	<i>pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.</i>
<i>cōmes, -itis, M. &amp; F., a companion.</i>	<i>mūlier, mūliēris, F., woman.</i>
<i>cāsa, -ae, F., cottage.</i>	<i>ēquus, -i, M., horse.</i>

**128. Decline together the following : —**

- reliquae cōpiae (pl.), the remaining forces.*
- puella pulchra, a beautiful girl.*
- oppidum magnum, a large town.*

SYN. *Festino*, hasten impatiently, hurry; *prōpēro*, hasten with energy, but without hurry or impatience.

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English : —

- |                                  |                        |                                  |                                |  |  |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|--|
| s.                               | v.c.                   | c.                               | s.                             | v.c.                                     | c.   |
| 1. Puella est pulchra.           | 2. Equus est ānimal.   | 3. Oppidum est māgnūm.           | 4. Pōpūlus Rōmānus est testis. | 5. Flūmen est Arar. <sup>1</sup>         | 6. Amīci sūmus ( <i>we are</i> ).                      |
| 7. Caesar est impē-rātor.        | 8. Ariovistus est rēx. | 9. Virtūs est cōmes sāpien-tiae. | 10. Puella est nautae fīlia.   | 11. Est ( <i>it is</i> ) cāsa agrīcōlae. | 12. Est <sup>2</sup> ( <i>there is</i> ) parva insūla. |
| 13. Multa ānīmālia pulchra sunt. |                        |                                  |                                |  |  |

Translate into Latin :—

1. We are, they are, you are.
2. The fields are large.
3. The islands are small.
4. She is the daughter of the sailor.
5. We are Romans.
6. The cities are large.
7. There is a large town.
8. We are friends.
9. It is a large town.
10. The town is large.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. What is the rule for the gender of **Arar** ?

2. In English, when the subject is indefinite, we use the word *there* with some form of the verb *to be*; as, **insula est parva** may mean *the island is small, an island is small, (there) is a small island, (it) is a small island, or the island is a small (one).*

What is the present tense of **sum** ? Why is **sum** called a copula ? What is the noun or adjective after it called ? Why ? Note that the complement, if a noun, agrees with the subject in case ; if an adjective, in gender, number, and case. Note that the verb **sum** in all the foregoing examples is *copulative*.



## LESSON XXXIII.

### INDICATIVE OF *SUM*.—PREDICATE GENITIVE.

**129.** The verb **sum** is conjugated in the Indicative Mode as follows :—

#### PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Person.	Present.	Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<b>sum</b> , <i>I am.</i>	<b>fuī</b> , <i>I have been.</i>	<i>I was.</i>
2	<b>es</b> , <i>thou art.</i>	<b>fuīstī</b> , <i>thou hast been.</i>	<i>Thou wast.</i>
3	<b>est</b> , <i>he is.</i>	<b>fuit</b> , <i>he has been.</i>	<i>He was.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<b>sūmus</b> , <i>we are.</i>	<b>fuīmus</b> , <i>we have been.</i>	<i>We were.</i>
2	<b>estis</b> , <i>you are.</i>	<b>fuīstis</b> , <i>you have been.</i>	<i>You were.</i>
3	<b>sunt</b> , <i>they are.</i> }	<b>fuērunt</b> , } <i>they have been.</i>	<i>They were.</i>
		<b>fuēre</b> , }	

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Person.	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	ĕram, <i>I was.</i>	fuĕram, <i>I had been.</i>
2	ĕrās, <i>thou wast.</i>	fuĕrās, <i>thou hadst been.</i>
3	ĕrat, <i>he was.</i>	fuĕrat, <i>he had been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	ĕrāmus, <i>we were.</i>	fuĕrāmus, <i>we had been.</i>
2	ĕrātis, <i>you were.</i>	fuĕrātis, <i>you had been.</i>
3	ĕrant, <i>they were.</i>	fuĕrant, <i>they had been.</i>
	Future.	Future Perfect.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	ĕro, <i>I shall or will be.</i>	fuĕro, <i>I shall or will have been.</i>
2	ĕris, <i>thou wilt be.</i>	fuĕris, <i>thou wilt have been.</i>
3	ĕrit, <i>he will be.</i>	fuĕrit, <i>he will have been.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	ĕrimus, <i>we shall or will be.</i>	fuĕrimus, <i>we shall or will have been.</i>
2	ĕritis, <i>you will be.</i>	fuĕritis, <i>you will have been.</i>
3	ĕrunt, <i>they will be.</i>	fuĕrint, <i>they will have been.</i>

130. Predicate Genitive.

EXAMPLES.

1. **haec dŏmus Caesāris est**, *this house is Cæsar's property, or this is Cæsar's house.*
2. **haec hostium ĕrant**, *these things were the enemy's.*
3. **est sāpientis**, *it is the part of a wise man.*
4. **hŏc est praeceptōris**, *this is the business of the instructor.*

OBS. In the foregoing examples, note that the noun which the genitive limits is omitted; that these genitives all stand in the predicate after the verb **sum**, and that the word to be supplied is a general word suggested by the sense. In translating into English, we supply the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, etc. The idiom may be expressed in the following rule:—

PREDICATE GENITIVE.

**131. RULE XII.**—A noun in the predicate, denoting a different person or thing from the subject, is put in the genitive.

1. The predicate genitive occurs most frequently with **sum** and **fācio**, and the passives of **pūto**, **hābeo**, and **existimo**.

2. The genitive of Personal Pronouns is never used in this construction; the neuter of the corresponding Possessive Pronoun is used; as,

**EXAMPLE.**

**est tuum** (not **tuī**) **vīdēre**, *it is your duty to see.*

**VOCABULARY.**

**multitūdō**, -**inis**, F., *multitude.*

**orātiō**, -**ōnis**, F., *speech, oration.*

**miser**, -**era**, -**erum**, adj., *wretched.*

**supplicium**, -**i**, N., *punishment.*

**impērium**, -**i**, N., *power, sway.*

**tempus**, **tempōris**, N., *time.*

**mercātor**, -**ōris**, M., *merchant.*

**mors**, **mortis**, F., *death.*

**crēber**, **crēbra**, **crēbrum**, *frequent, numerous.*

**SYN.** **Prōvōco**, (1) *to call forth, summon*; (2) *to appeal to the people.* **Appello**, (1) *to address with the appropriate title*; (2) *to appeal to one magistrate from the decision of another.*

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English : —

1. Rēgīna ērat pulchra.
2. Vīri in proelio fuērant.
3. Ariovistus fuit rēx Germānōrum.
4. Erīmus<sup>1</sup> beātī.
5. Erītis mīsērī.
6. Puellae fuērunt pulchrae.
7. Erantne puellae in silvā?
8. Num Caesar consul ērit?
9. Cōpiaē Belgārum in prōvinciā sunt.
10. Sūmus in Galliā.

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

1. The pronoun is contained in the verb.

Give the rule for the gender of nouns in **-do**. For nouns in **-io**. What are the principal parts of **sum**? Give a synopsis of **sum** in the indicative. What is the rule for a noun in the genitive? The position? What is meant by a predicate genitive? On what does the predicate genitive depend?

## LESSON XXXIV.

## ADJECTIVES. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**132.** Adjectives of the Third Declension are declined like nouns, and may have —

1. A different form for each gender in the nominative singular.
2. Two forms, — one for the masculine and feminine, and another for the neuter.
3. The same forms for all three genders.

**133.** Adjectives of the Third Declension in *-er* have three endings in the nominative, and are declined like *acer*, *sharp*. The stem ends in *-i-*.

## PARADIGM.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīa
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrīum	ācrīum	ācrīum
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrībus	ācrībus	ācrībus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -īs	ācrēs, -īs	ācrīa
VOC.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācrīa
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrībus	ācrībus	ācrībus

**134.** Decline like *acer* the following : —

1. *cēler*, *cēlēris*, *cēlēre*, *swift*.
2. *ēquester*, *ēquestris*, *ēquestre*, *equestrian*.
3. *ālācer*, *ālācris*, *ālācre*, *lively*, *eager*.

1. *Cēler* is the only adjective of this class that keeps the *e* before the *r* in the oblique cases. *Cēler*, when used as an adjective, has the genitive plural in *-ium*; but as a noun, denoting military rank, it has *cēlērūm* in genitive plural, and *cēlēre* in ablative singular.

OBS. Note that adjectives ending in *-er* have *-i* in the ablative singular of all genders.

**135.** Adjectives of two endings have *-is* or *-or* in the nominative masculine and feminine, and *-e* or *-us* in the neuter. They are declined like *mītis*, *mīlde*, and *mītiōr*, *mīlder*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	mītis	mīte	mītēs	mitia
GEN.	mītis	mitis	mītium	mitium
DAT.	mītī	mitī	mītibus	mitibus
ACC.	mītem	mīte	mītēs, -is	mitia
VOC.	mītis	mīte	mītēs	mitia
ABL.	mītī	mitī	mītibus	mitibus

*mītiōr*, *mīlder* (comparative degree).

NOM.	mītiōr	mītius	mītiōres	mītiōra
GEN.	mītiōris	mitiōris	mītiōrum	mitiōrum
DAT.	mītiōrī	mitiōrī	mītiōribus	mitiōribus
ACC.	mītiōrem	mītius	mītiōrēs, -is	mitiōra
VOC.	mītiōr	mītius	mītiōrēs	mitiōra
ABL.	mītiōre, -ī <sup>1</sup>	mitiōre, -ī	mītiōribus	mitiōribus

Obs. Adjectives ending in *-is* are also *i*-stems, and have *-i* in the ablative of all genders. Note that comparatives have *two endings* in the nominative; and that the ablative singular ends in *-e* or *-i*, and the nominative plural in *-es* and *-a*, not *-ia*.

1. *Mītis* is declined like *ācris*, *ācre*; all comparatives of adjectives are declined like *mītiōr*, except *plūs*, *more*, which is declined as follows:—

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	—	plūris	plūrium	
DAT.	—	—	plūribus	
ACC.	—	plūs	plūrēs, -is	plūra
VOC.	—	—	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	—	plūre	plūribus	

## VOCABULARY.

**ūtīlis, ūtile, useful.****nāvālis, nāvāle, naval.****silvester, -tris, -tre, woody.****vōlūcer, vōlūcris, vōlūcre, winged.****omnis, omne, all.****immortālis, immortalē, immortal.****fortis, forte, brave.****Germānus, -ī, M., German.****ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, severe.**

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Puer est tristis. 2. Tīmor omnēs mīlītēs occūpāvit.
3. Lēgēs sunt ūtīlēs. 4. Iter est fācile. 5. Equī sunt cēlērēs.
6. Cum omnībus cōpiis. 7. Mīlītēs fortēs ērunt.
8. Dū immortalēs sunt. 9. Tempus brēve est. 10. Consul virtūtem mīlitis fortis laudat.

Translate into Latin : —

1. The boys were sad. 2. The journeys are difficult.
3. The soldiers were brave. 4. The gods are immortal.
5. The horse is swift. 6. The laws are severe. 7. The consul praises the brave soldiers.
8. The soldiers will be brave. 9. They will be brave.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Endings enclosed in brackets are rare.

Give the stem of **ācer**. How are adjectives of three endings declined? Give the ablative singular of **ācer**. How are adjectives of two endings declined? Give the ablative singular of **mītis**. The genitive plural. What is an adjective?



## LESSON XXXV.

## ADJECTIVES. — THIRD DECLENSION.

**136.** Adjectives of one ending in the nominative are strictly consonant stems, but they follow in part the declension of vowel stems; that is, they have *-i* or *-e* in the ablative singular, *-ia* in the neuter plural, and *-ium*

in the genitive plural. In other cases they follow the declension of consonant stems. They all end in *s*, *x*, *l*, or *r*, and are declined like *audāx*, *bold*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	audāx		audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	
DAT.	audācī		audācibus	
ACC.	audācem	audāx	audācēs(is)	audācia
VOC.	audāx		audācēs	audācia
ABL.	audācī or audāce		audācibus	

*ingēns, vast.*

NOM.	ingēns		ingentēs	ingentia
GEN.	ingentis		ingentium	
DAT.	ingentī		ingentibus	
ACC.	ingentem	ingēns	ingentēs, -īs	ingentia
VOC.	ingēns		ingentēs	ingentia
ABL.	ingentī or ingente		ingentibus	

1. Present Participles are declined like *āmans*, except in the ablative singular, where they have *-e*.

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		<i>fēlix, happy.</i>		<i>amans, loving.</i>		<i>prudens, prudent.</i>	
Singular.		M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
	NOM.	fēlix		āmāns		prūdēns	
	GEN.	fēlicis		āmantis		prudentis	
	DAT.	fēlicī		āmantī		prudentī	
	ACC.	fēlicem	fēlix	āmantem	āmāns	prudentem	prūdēns
	VOC.	fēlix		āmāns		prūdēns	
	ABL.	fēlicī, -e		āmante, -ī		prudentī, -e	
Plural.	NOM.	fēlices	fēlicia	āmantēs	āmantia	prudentēs	prudentia
	GEN.	fēlicium		āmantium		prudentium	
	DAT.	fēlicibus		āmantibus		prudentibus	
	ACC.	fēlicēs	fēlicia	āmantēs	āmantia	prudentēs	prudentia
	VOC.	fēlicēs	fēlicia	āmantēs	āmantia	prudentes	prudentia
	ABL.	fēlicibus		āmantibus		prudentibus	



## PARADIGMS.

Cases.		vētus, old.		iēns, going.		pār, equal.	
Singular.	NOM.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
		vētus		iēns		pār	
	GEN.	vētēris		euntis		pāris	
	DAT.	vētēri		euntī		pārī	
	ACC.	vēterem	vētus	euntem	iēns	pārem	pār
	VOC.	vētus		iēns		pār	
Plural.	ABL.	vētēre (-i)		eunte, -ī		pārī	
	NOM.	vētērēs	vētēra	euntēs	euntia	pārēs	pāria
	GEN.	vētērum		euntium		pārium	
	DAT.	vētēribus		euntibus		pāribus	
	ACC.	vētērēs, -is	vētēra	euntēs	euntia	pārēs	pāria
	VOC.	vētērēs	vētēra	euntēs	euntia	pārās	pāria
	ABL.	vētēribus		euntibus		pāribus	

*Rules for the Oblique Cases of Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

**137.** Most adjectives of the third declension have *-i* in the ablative singular, but consonant stems have *-i* when used as adjectives, *-e* when used as nouns. Participles in *-ns*, when used as such, or as nouns, regularly have *-e*; but as adjectives, *-ī*.

## GENITIVE AND NEUTER PLURAL.

**138.** The genitive plural commonly has *-ium*. Consonant stems have *-ium* when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or by a consonant; *-um*, when the stem-characteristic is preceded by a short vowel; as, *audāx*, gen. plur. *audācium*; *dīves*, gen. sing. *dīvītis*, gen. plur. *dīvītum*; so *vētus* (*vētēris*), *vētērum*; *ūber* (*ūbēris*), *ūbērum*; *caelebs*, *unmarried*, *caelībum*. The neuter plural has *-ia*; only *vētus* has *vētēra*.

Participles have *-ium*; as, *āmans*, *āmantium*.

**139.** Decline together the following:—

- puella fēlix*, a happy girl.
- māre ingēns*, a vast sea.
- dōnum ingēns*, a large gift.
- servus audāx*, a bold servant.

## VOCABULARY.

**fēlix**, gen. **fēlicis**, *happy*.**audāx**, gen. **audācis**, *bold, audacious*.**dīvēs**, gen. **dīvītis**, *rich*.**pār**, gen. **pāris**, *equal*.**pōtēns**, gen. **pōtentis**, *powerful*.**rēcēns**, gen. **rēcēntis**, *recent*.**ōriēns**, gen. **ōrientis**, *rising*.**mūlier**, **mūliēris**, *F., woman*.**flēns**, gen. **flēntis**, *weeping*.**vētus**, gen. **vētēris**, *old, ancient*.**grex**, gen. **grēgis**, *M., flock*.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. **Militēs** sunt **audācēs**.    2. **Rēgēs** sunt **pōtentēs**.  
 3. **Virī** **dīvītēs** sunt.    4. **Mūliērēs** **fēlicēs** ērant.    5. **Belgae**  
**spectant** in<sup>1</sup> **ōrientem** **sōlem**.    6. **Consīlium** **dūcis** **audāx** est.  
 7. **Mūliērēs** **flēntēs** **Caesārem** **implōrant**.

Translate into Latin : —

1. The soldier is brave.    2. The leaders are bold.    3. The  
 men are rich.    4. The weeping woman implores the consul.  
 5. The town is old.    6. The women are not happy.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *Towards*.

What adjectives have but one ending? Are they vowel or consonant stems? Do they increase in the genitive? In what does the ablative singular end? In what does the genitive plural end? Does the ablative always end in *-i*? Does the genitive plural always have *-ium*? Explain when they have *-i* in the ablative, and when *-e*.



## LESSON XXXVI.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

## ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES.

**140.** Adjectives are compared, in Latin as in English, in three ways: 1st. Regularly, *i.e.*, by adding peculiar terminations; 2d. By prefixing the adverbs **māgis** and **māxime**, *more* and *most*; and 3d. Irregularly.

**I. Regular Comparison.**

**141.** Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive, after the final vowel has been dropped, the following endings:—

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
-ior	-ior	-ius	-issimus	-issima	-issimum

**EXAMPLES.**

Positive.	Stem.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>dūrus,</b> <i>hard.</i>	<b>dūro-</b>	<b>dūrior,</b> <i>harder.</i>	<b>dūrissimus,</b> <i>hardest, very hard.</i>
<b>dulcis,</b> <i>sweet.</i>	<b>dulci-</b>	<b>dulcior,</b> <i>sweeter.</i>	<b>dulcissimus,</b> <i>sweetest.</i>
<b>prūdēns,</b> <i>sagacious.</i>	<b>prūdēt-</b>	<b>prūdēntior,</b> <i>more sagacious.</i>	<b>prūdētissimus,</b> <i>most sagacious.</i>
<b>fēlix,</b> <i>happy.</i>	<b>fēlic-</b>	<b>fēlicior,</b> <i>happier.</i>	<b>fēlicissimus,</b> <i>happiest.</i>

1. Note that the stems are **dūrō**, **dulcī**, **prūdēt**, **fēlic**; the final vowel disappears before the initial vowel of the suffix.

2. All superlatives are declined like **bōnus**, **bōna**, **bōnum**.

3. All comparatives, except **plūs**, are declined like **mēlior**, *better*.

**PARADIGM.**

Cases.	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	<b>mēlior</b>	<b>mēlius</b>	<b>mēliōrēs</b>	<b>mēliōra</b>
GEN.	<b>mēliōris</b>		<b>mēliōrum</b>	
DAT.	<b>mēliōrī</b>		<b>mēliōribus</b>	
ACC.	<b>mēliōrem</b>	<b>mēlius</b>	<b>mēliōrēs, -is</b>	<b>mēliōra</b>
VOC.	<b>mēlior</b>	<b>mēlius</b>	<b>mēliōrēs</b>	<b>mēliōra</b>
ABL.	<b>mēliōre, -ī</b>		<b>mēliōribus</b>	

Obs. Note that the ablative singular ends in *-e* or *-ī*; the neuter plural in *-a*; the accusative plural, masculine and feminine, in *-ēs* or *-is*; and the genitive plural in *-um*, not *-ium*.

## 142. The Construction with Comparatives.

### EXAMPLES.

1. **servus est fēlicior rēge**, *the slave is happier than the king.*
2. **servus est fēlicior quam<sup>1</sup> rēx**, *the slave is happier than the king.*

OBS. In the first example, note that the comparative is followed by the ablative; in the second example, **quam**, *than*, is used with the comparative, and the following word is in the same case as the noun preceding the adjective. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

### ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES.

**143. RULE XIII.**—The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when **quam**, *than*, is omitted.

1. Comparatives with **quam** are followed (by the nominative, or) by the case of the corresponding noun before them.

### EXAMPLES.

1. **fortiōrem vīdī nēmīnem quam Mārium**, *I have seen no braver man than Marius*; or
2. **Hibernia mīnor quam Brītannia existimātur**, *Ireland is considered smaller than Britain.*

## 144. Model for parsing comparatives and superlatives:—

**servus est fēlicior rēge**, *the servant is happier than the king*: **fēlicior** is an adjective in the comparative degree, from the positive **fēlix**; stem *fēlic-*, comp. *fēlicior*, super. *fēlicissimus*. **Fēlicior** is an adjective of the third declension, and is declined like **mēlior**, **mēlius**, etc. It is nominative singular masculine, and agrees with **servus**. Rule VIII.: *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

### VOCABULARY.

**rāpāx**, -ācis, *ravenous.*

**Cicērō**, **Cicērōnis**, M., *Cicero.*

**doctus**, -a, -um, *learned.*

**grāvis**, -e, *heavy, severe.*

**āer**, **āēris**, M., *the air.*

**clārus**, -a, -um, *clear, famous.*

**vēlōx**, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift.*

**mendāx**, -ācis, *lying.*

SYN. **Vulnēro**, *to wound by a cut or thrust*; **saucio**, *to wound in any way.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Vir fēlix ērat. 2. Vir fēlicior ērat. 3. Jūdēx sāpiēns est. 4. Jūdēx sāpientior ērat quam rēx. 5. Sūmus<sup>2</sup> pōtentēs. 6. Estis pōtentiōrēs. 7. Rēgēs sunt pōtentissimī. 8. Cīcērō ērat vir doctissimus. 9. Lūx est vėlōcior quam sōnītus. 10. Rōma clārissīma<sup>3</sup> urbs ērat. 11. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 12. Jūra est mons altissimus.

Translate into Latin : —

1. The men are happy. 2. We are happier. 3. The soldiers are brave. 4. The brave soldiers are powerful. 5. The soldiers are more powerful. 6. The journey was difficult. 7. Gold is heavier than silver. 8. The servants are very happy. 9. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 10. Cicero was a very renowned orator. 11. The soldiers are braver than the general.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Quam** is a conjunction, and is not inflected; it means *than*.
2. The subject is included in the verb.
3. The superlative is not always translated by *most*; it is sometimes best rendered by *very*. So the comparative may be translated in various ways; as, **audācior**, *bolder*, *rather bolder* (i.e. bolder than usual), *too bold*.

In how many ways are adjectives compared? Decline the comparative of **potens**, **altus**. To what declension of adjectives do superlatives belong? What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? By what case is the comparative degree followed?

## LESSON XXXVII.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

## GENITIVE AND DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

II. *Comparison by Adverbs.*

**145.** Adjectives ending in *-us* preceded by a vowel (except those in *-quus*) commonly form their comparative and superlative by means of the adverbs *māgis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*.

## EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Idōneus, <i>fit</i> .	māgis idōneus	māximē idōneus
dūbius, <i>doubtful</i> .	māgis dūbius	māximē dūbius
nōxius, <i>hurtful</i> .	māgis noxius	māximē nōxius

1. Adjectives in *-quus* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; as,  
antīquus, *ancient*, antīquior, antīquissimus.

**146.** Dative with Adjectives.

## EXAMPLES.

1. victōria Germānōrum pōpūlō Rōmānō periculōsa est, *the victory of the Germans is dangerous to the Roman people.*
2. puella erat mātři sīmīlis, *the girl was like her mother.*
3. castrīs Idōneus lōcus est, *the place is suitable for a camp.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note the adjectives *periculōsa*, *sīmīlis*, and *Idōneus*, and that each is construed with the dative. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**147. RULE XIV.**—The dative is used after many adjectives to denote the object to which the quality is directed.

1. The adjectives that take the dative are chiefly those signifying *useful*, *pleasant*, *friendly*, *fit*, *like*, *inclined*, *ready*,

*easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites ; also those signifying *near* ; many compounded with *con-* ; and verbals in *-bilis*.

2. *Similis* and *dissimilis* take also the genitive, especially of persons, when denoting *likeness* or *unlikeness* in CHARACTER.

• GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

**148. RULE XV.**—Many adjectives are followed by the genitive to complete their meaning.

1. The adjectives governing the genitive are those denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, mastery, participation, guilt*, and their opposites ; and verbals in *-ax*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *avidus laudis*, *desirous of praise*.
2. *memor virtutis*, *mindful of virtue*.
3. *belli peritus*, *skilled in war*.

VOCABULARY.

<i>cārus</i> , -a, -um, <i>dear</i> .	<i>Belgae</i> , -arum, m. pl., <i>the Belgians</i> .
<i>idōneus</i> , -a, -um, <i>suitable</i> .	<i>pēriculōsus</i> , -a, -um, <i>dangerous</i> .
<i>inimicus</i> , -a, -um, <i>unfriendly</i> , <i>hostile</i> .	<i>amicus</i> , -a, -um, <i>friendly</i> . <i>Graecus</i> , -a, -um, <i>Greek</i> .

SYN. *Animus*, *the mind, the soul* ; *mens*, *thought or intellectual faculty* ; *anima*, *the life, the vital principle*.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. *Māgister discipulis cārus est*. 2. *Locus māgis idōneus castris quam urbi fuit*. 3. *Belgae proximī sunt Germānis*.
4. *Filius patris<sup>1</sup> simillimus est*. 5. *Dux inimicus Dumnōrigi fuit*. 6. *Tullus Hostilius<sup>2</sup> proximō regī dissimilis fuit*.
7. *Homērus est vēterrīmus<sup>3</sup> omnium Graecōrum poētārum*.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. See Rule 147. 2.

2. Decline *Tullus Hostilius* together.

3. See 149. 1.

How are adjectives compared by means of adverbs ? What is an adverb ? Compare *beautifully*. What class of adjectives are followed by the dative ? Give the rule.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

III. *Irregular and Defective Comparison.*

**149.** Adjectives in *-er* form their comparative regularly, but their superlative is formed by adding *-rimus* to the nominative.

## EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>ācer, sharp.</i>	<i>ācrior</i>	<i>ācerrimus</i>
<i>miser, wretched.</i>	<i>misērior</i>	<i>misērrimus</i>
<i>cēler, swift.</i>	<i>cēlērior</i>	<i>cēlerrimus</i>
<i>pulcher, beautiful.</i>	<i>pulchrior</i>	<i>pulcherrimus</i>
<i>nīger, black.</i>	<i>nīgrior</i>	<i>nīgerrimus</i>

- Also *vētus, old* (gen. *vētēris*) has the super. *vēterrīmus*.
- The following six adjectives in *-ilis*, declined like *mītis*,<sup>1</sup> form their superlative by adding *-līmus* to the stem, after dropping the final vowel:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>fācilis, easy.</i>	<i>fācīlior</i>	<i>fācillīmus</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult.</i>	<i>difficīlior</i>	<i>difficillīmus</i>
<i>sīmilis, similar.</i>	<i>sīmilior</i>	<i>sīmillīmus</i>
<i>dissīmilis, unlike.</i>	<i>dissīmilior</i>	<i>dissīmillīmus</i>
<i>grācilis, slender.</i>	<i>grācīlior</i>	<i>grācillīmus</i>
<i>hūmilis, low.</i>	<i>hūmilior</i>	<i>hūmillīmus</i>

- Compound adjectives ending in *-dīcus*, *-fīcus*, *-vōlus*, form their comparatives in *-entior*, and their superlatives in *-entissīmus* (as if from positives ending in *-ens*)<sup>1</sup>; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>mālēdicus, slanderous.</i>	<i>mālēdicentior</i>	<i>mālēdicentissīmus</i>
<i>bēnēficus, beneficent.</i>	<i>bēnēficientior</i>	<i>bēnēficientissīmus</i>
<i>bēnēvōlus, benevolent.</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentior</i>	<i>bēnēvōlentissīmus</i>

NOTE. These comparatives and superlatives are formed as from the participles *dicēns, saying*, *fāciēns, doing*, *vōlēns, wishing*.



4. The following adjectives, in common use, are compared irregularly : —

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bōnus, <i>good</i> .	mēlior, <i>better</i> .	optīmus, <i>best</i> .
mālus, <i>bad</i> .	pējor, <i>worse</i> .	pessīmus, <i>worst</i> .
māgnus, <i>great</i> .	mājor, <i>greater</i> .	māxīmus, <i>greatest</i> .
parvus, <i>small</i> .	minor, <i>less</i> .	minīmus, <i>least</i> .
multus, <i>much</i> .	plūs (neut.), <i>more</i> .	plūrimus, <i>most</i> .
dīves, } <i>rich</i> .	divitior, } <i>richer</i> .	divitissimus, } <i>richest</i> .
dīs, }	ditior, }	ditissimus, }

### 150. Defective Comparison.

1. Seven adjectives have no positive ; they are —

1. cītērior, cītīmus, *hither, hithermost*.
2. dētērior, dēterrīmus, *worse*.
3. intērior, intīmus, *inner, innermost*.
4. ōcior, ōcissīmus, *swifter*.
5. prior, prīmus, *former, first*.
6. prōpior, proxīmus, *nearer, next*.
7. ultērior, ultīmus, *farther, farthest*.

2. The following are irregular in the superlative<sup>1</sup> : —

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.	Meaning.
extērus	extērior	extrēmus and extīmus	<i>outward</i> .
infērus	infērior	infīmus and īmus	<i>lower</i> .
sūpērus	sūpērior	suprēmus and summus	<i>upper</i> .
postērus	postērior	postrēmus and postūmus	<i>next</i> .

3. The following adjectives are irregular : —

jūvēnis, <sup>1</sup> <i>young</i> .	{ jūnior mīnor nātū }	mīnīmus nātū
sēnex, <i>old</i> .	{ sēnior major nātū }	māxīmus nātū

151. Compare the following : —

- |                           |                             |                                |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. cēler, <i>swift</i> .  | 4. mīser, <i>wretched</i> . | 8. lātus, <i>broad</i> .       |
| 2. audāx, <i>bold</i> .   | 5. āmans, <i>loving</i> .   | 9. dīlīgens, <i>diligent</i> . |
| 3. fortis, <i>brave</i> . | 6. sāpiens, <i>wise</i> .   | 10. bōnus, <i>good</i> .       |
|                           | 7. altus, <i>high</i> .     |                                |

Obs. 1. The comparative may be translated in various ways; as, **audācior**, *bolder, rather bold, too bold*.

Obs. 2. The superlative **audācissimus** may mean *boldest* or *very bold*.

Obs. 3. The superlative with **quam** denotes the highest degree possible; as, **quam plūrimī**, *as many as possible*; **quam maximum**, *as large as possible*.

Obs. 4. **Per** in composition with adjectives has the force of *very*; as, **permāgnus**, *very great*.

### VOCABULARY.

<b>prīmus</b> , -a, -um, <i>first</i> .	<b>sūpērior</b> , <b>sūpērius</b> , <i>higher, upper</i> .
<b>sōl</b> , <b>sōlis</b> , M., <i>sun</i> .	<b>Hōrātius</b> , -ī, M., <i>Horace</i> .
<b>terra</b> , -ae, F., <i>earth</i> .	<b>Lābiēnus</b> , -ī, M., <i>Labienus</i> .
<b>lūna</b> , -ae, F., <i>moon</i> .	<b>Vergīlius</b> , -ī, M., <i>Vergil</i> .
<b>prōpior</b> , <b>prōpius</b> , <i>nearer</i> .	<b>Hōmērus</b> , -ī, M., <i>Homer</i> .
<b>cītērior</b> , <b>cītērius</b> , <i>hither</i> .	<b>scientia</b> , -ae, F., <i>knowledge, skill</i> .

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Nostrae filiae pulcherrimae sunt. 2. Iter per prōvinciam est facilius. 3. Itinēra erant difficillima. 4. Sol māior est quam terra. 5. Lūna mīnor est quam terra. 6. Rēgēs cum proximis civitātibus pācem confirmant. 7. Oppidum est in cītēriōre Galliā. 8. Lābiēnus summum montem<sup>2</sup> occūpāvit. 9. Hōrātius ērat bōnus poēta, Vergīlius mēlior, Hōmērus optīmus.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. These words are added for convenience of reference; they can be omitted for the present.

2. The *summit* of the mountain.

How do adjectives ending in *-er* form their comparatives? How may superlatives be translated? What adjectives form their superlatives like **facīlis**? What is meant by comparison of adjectives? How many degrees of comparison are there? How is each formed? How declined?

## LESSON XXXIX.

## USE OF ADVERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE PASSIVE.

## EXAMPLE.

**mīles fortīter pūgnat**, *the soldier fights bravely.*

Obs. In the foregoing sentence, note that *the soldier fights* expresses a fact in a general way. We may add a word, and say *the soldier fights bravely*; we may add a word to *bravely*, and say *the soldiers fight very bravely*. Here *very* modifies *bravely*; *very bravely* modifies the predicate. Such words as *very* and *bravely* are called **ADVERBS** (**ad**, *to*, and **verbum**, *word*, or *verb*). This use of adverbs is expressed in the following rule:—

## USE OF ADVERBS.

**152. RULE XVI.**—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

**153.** Rule of position:—

The adverb generally precedes the word it limits; but **fērē** usually stands between the adjective and the noun; as, **omnēs fērē hōmīnes**, *almost all men*.

*Voices of Verbs.*

**154.** Transitive verbs have two *voices*, the Active and the Passive.

1. The *active voice* shows that the subject is the actor.
2. The *passive voice* shows that the subject is acted upon.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **māgister laudat**, *the teacher praises.*
2. **discipūlus laudātur**, *the pupil is praised.*
3. **discipūlus laudātus est**, *the pupil has been praised.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples the form of the verb shows whether the subject is the actor, or the thing acted upon. These different forms of the verb are called *voice*. The passive form in English is compounded, and may be resolved into some form of the verb *to be*, and the *complement*, which is the perfect participle of a transitive verb.

**155.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses, Indicative Mode, Passive Voice, are formed by adding the verbal endings to the present stem. They are inflected as follows:—

**PARTIAL PARADIGM.**

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + or	āmōr	<i>I am loved.</i>
2	“ “ + ris or re	āmāris, -re	<i>Thou art loved.</i>
3	“ “ + tur	āmātur	<i>He is loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mur	āmāmur	<i>We are loved.</i>
2	“ “ + minī	āmāminī	<i>You are loved.</i>
3	“ “ + ntur	āmantur	<i>They are loved.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bar	āmābar	<i>I was being loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bāris, -re	āmābāris, -re	<i>Thou wast being loved.</i>
3	“ “ + bātur	āmābātur	<i>He was being loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bāmur	āmābāmur	<i>We were being loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bāminī	āmābāminī	<i>You were being loved.</i>
3	“ “ + bantur	āmābantur	<i>They were being loved.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bor	āmābor	<i>I shall be loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bēris, -re	āmābēris, -re	<i>Thou shalt be loved.</i>
3	“ “ + bītur	āmābītur	<i>He shall be loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bīmur	āmābīmur	<i>We shall be loved.</i>
2	“ “ + bīminī	āmābīminī	<i>You shall be loved.</i>
3	“ “ + buntur	āmābuntur	<i>They shall be loved.</i>

**156.** Analysis of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive:—

1. Notice that the passive voice of these tenses differs from the same tenses in the active voice only in the endings; as,

a. Pres. Act. = pres. st. + personal endings; as, *āmā + mus*, *we love*. Pres. Pass. = pres. st. + personal endings + passive sign; as, *āmā-mu-r*, *we are loved*.

*b.* Imperf. Act. = pres. st. + tense sign (-*ba-*) + personal endings; as, **āmā-bā-mus**, *we were loving*. Imperf. Pass. = pres. st. + personal endings + passive sign; as, **āmā-bā-mu-r**, *we were loved*.

*c.* Future Act. = pres. st. + tense sign (-*bi-*) + personal endings; as, **āmā-bī-mus**, *we shall love*. Future Pass. = pres. st. + personal endings + passive sign; as, **āmā-bī-mu-r**, *we shall be loved*. The second person singular future has -*bě-* instead of -*bī-*; as, **āmā-bě-ris** or -*re*.

Obs. 1. The passive voice is a reflexive form, made by adding the reflexive stem -*sē-* (-*srā-*) to the active; the *s* changes to *r*, except in the second person singular; as,

<i>Sing.</i> 1 amo-s(e) = amo-r	<i>Plur.</i> 1 ama-mu(s)-s(e) = amā-mu-r
2 ama-si-s(e) = amā-ri-s	2 —
3 ama-tu-s(e) = amā-tu-r	3 ama-ntu-s(e) = amā-ntu-r

Obs. 2. **Amor** is for **āmā-or**, same as **āmo** is for **āmā-o**.

Obs. 3. The distinction in meaning between the tenses denoting INCOMPLETE action and those denoting COMPLETED action is often obscured in English on account of the want of special forms to express incomplete action in the passive; as, **bellum pārātur** means, not *the war is prepared*, but *the war is preparing, is being prepared*. The perfect **bellum pārātum est** means *war has been prepared*, and so *war is prepared* (or aorist, *war was prepared*). Notice the imperfect **bellum pārābatur**, *war was preparing, not war was prepared*.

#### VOCABULARY.

<b>culpo, culpāre, culpāvi, culpātum</b> , blame.	<b>ācrīter</b> , adv., <i>sharply, fiercely</i> .
<b>ōnus, ōnēris</b> , N., <i>burden</i> .	<b>grāvīter</b> , adv., <i>heavily, severely</i> .
<b>porto, āre, āvi, ātum</b> , carry.	<b>cēlērīter</b> , adv., <i>quickly</i> .
	<b>audacter</b> , adv., <i>boldly</i> .

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Laudābītur.
2. Ōnus portātur.
3. Nōn vōcābēris.
4. Vōcābāris.
5. Vulnērābīmīnī.
6. Puērī culpantur.
7. Culpābāmur.
8. Mīlītēs audacter pūgnant.
9. Mīlītēs castra dīlīgenter servant.
10. Caesar Dumnōrīgēm grāvīter accūsāvit.
11. Mīlītēs fortīter pūgnābant.
12. Germānī Helvētīōs fācile sūpērābunt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. We are blamed. 2. They are praised. 3. You were being praised. 4. They will be praised. 5. The girls are called. 6. The boy is calling. 7. The men fight bravely. 8. They will be carried. 9. We were being called. 10. They will be called. 11. He is (being) praised. 12. He was being praised. 13. They blame the Romans severely. 14. They are blamed severely by the Romans.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is meant by *voice* in grammar? How many voices? Give the meaning of the present passive in Latin. What verbs only can be in the passive voice?



### LESSON XL.

#### ADVERBS.

#### FORMATION, CLASSIFICATION, AND COMPARISON.

##### I. *Formation of Adverbs.*

##### EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb.
1. <i>cārus</i> , dear.	<i>cāro-</i>	<i>cārē</i> , dearly.
2. <i>dignus</i> , worthy.	<i>digno-</i>	<i>dignē</i> , worthily.
3. <i>pulcher</i> , beautiful.	<i>pulchro-</i>	<i>pulchrē</i> , beautifully.
4. <i>miser</i> , wretched.	<i>misēro-</i>	<i>misērē</i> , wretchedly.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the adjectives are all of the first and second declensions; that the adverbs are formed by changing -o-, the characteristic vowel of the stem, into -ē-. Hence the rule:—

**157.** Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions by changing the characteristic vowel of the stem to -ē-.

## EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb.
1. <i>fortis, brave.</i>	<i>forti-</i>	<i>fortiter, bravely.</i>
2. <i>grāvis, heavy.</i>	<i>grāvi-</i>	<i>grāviter, heavily.</i>
3. <i>ācer, eager.</i>	<i>ācri-</i>	<i>ācriter, eagerly.</i>
4. <i>fērōx, wild.</i>	<i>fērōc-</i>	<i>fērōciter, wildly.</i>
5. <i>sāpiēns, wise.</i>	<i>sāpient-</i>	<i>sāpienter, wisely.</i>
6. <i>prūdēns, prudent.</i>	<i>prūdēt-</i>	<i>prūdentē, prudently.</i>

Obs. Note (1) that the adjectives are all of the third declension; (2) that 1, 2, 3 add *-ter* to the stem; (3) that 4 assumes *-i* before the suffix *-ter*; (4) that 5 and 6 end in *-ns*, gen. *-nt-is*; (5) that these adjectives drop *-t-* from the stem before adding *-ter*. Hence the rule:—

**158.** Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-ter* to the stem; but stems ending in *c*, *k*, or *g* assume *-i-* before the suffix *-ter*, and those in *-nt-* drop final *t* of the stem before adding *-ter*.

**159.** Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have adverbs in *-ter* as well as in *-ē*; as,

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb.
1. <i>dūrus, severe.</i>	<i>dūro-</i>	<i>dūrē and dūriter</i>
2. <i>firmus, firm.</i>	<i>firno-</i>	<i>firmē and firmiter</i>
3. <i>largus, bounteous.</i>	<i>largo-</i>	<i>largē and largiter</i>
4. <i>hūmānus, courteous.</i>	<i>hūmāno-</i>	<i>hūmānē and hūmāniter</i>
5. <i>miser, wretched.</i>	<i>misēro-</i>	<i>misērē and misēriter</i>

**160.** The neuter accusative of many adjectives is used as an adverb; neuter comparatives are especially so used.

## EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Accusative.	Adverb.
1. <i>multus, much.</i>	<i>multum</i>	<i>multum</i>
2. <i>facilis, easy.</i>	<i>facile</i>	<i>facile</i>
3. <i>recens, late.</i>	<i>recens</i>	<i>recens</i>
4. <i>acer, eager.</i>	<i>acrius</i>	<i>acrius</i>
5. <i>dulcis, sweet.</i>	<i>dulce</i>	<i>dulce</i>
6. <i>primus, first.</i>	<i>primum</i>	<i>primum</i>

## II. Classification of Adverbs.

**161.** The adverbs enumerated in the foregoing examples denote, for the most part, the manner of the action, and are therefore called *adverbs of manner*. Adverbs may also denote the *time*, the *place*, the *degree*, or the *cause* of the action expressed by the verb.

## III. Comparison of Adverbs.

**162.** The comparative of adverbs that are regularly compared is the same as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of adjectives, and consequently ends in *-ius*.

1. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing the final vowel of the stem to *-ē*.

### EXAMPLES.

Adjectives.	Adverbs.		
Positive.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
cārus, <i>dear</i> .	cārē	cārius	cārissimē
miser, <i>wretched</i> .	{ misērē (misērīter)	miserius	miserimē
audāx, <i>bold</i> .	{ audācter (audācīter)	audācius	audācissimē
lēvis, <i>light</i> .	lēviter	lēvius	lēvissimē
ācer, <i>eager</i> .	ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
prūdēns, <i>prudent</i> .	prūdentē	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
fēlix, <i>happy</i> .	fēliciter	fēlicius	fēlicissimē

2. If the adjectives are irregular in their comparison, the adverbs have the same irregularity.

### EXAMPLES.

Adjectives.	Adverbs.		
Positive.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bōnus, <i>good</i> .	bēne	mēlius	optimē
mālus, <i>bad</i> .	māle	pējus	pessimē
multus, <i>much</i> .	multum	plūs	plūrimum
māgnus, <i>great</i> .	—	māgis	māximē



3. A few adverbs not derived from adjectives are compared.

## EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>diū</b> , <i>for a long time.</i> <b>saepe</b> , <i>often.</i>	<b>diūtius</b> <b>saepius</b>	<b>diūtissimē</b> <b>saepissimē</b>

4. Form from each of the following adjectives an adverb, and compare it:—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>sīmilis</b> , -e, <i>like.</i>         | 7. <b>aeger</b> , -gra, -grum, <i>sick.</i>     |
| 2. <b>fortis</b> , -e, <i>brave.</i>         | 8. <b>āmāns</b> , gen. -ntis, <i>loving.</i>    |
| 3. <b>cēler</b> , -ēris, -ēre, <i>quick.</i> | 9. <b>ēlōgāns</b> , gen. -ntis, <i>elegant.</i> |
| 4. <b>grāvis</b> , -e, <i>heavy.</i>         | 10. <b>altus</b> , -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i>  |
| 5. <b>liber</b> , -ēra, -ērum, <i>free.</i>  | 11. <b>cūpidus</b> , -a, -um, <i>greedy.</i>    |
| 6. <b>āmīcus</b> , -a, -um, <i>friendly.</i> | 12. <b>fērōx</b> , gen. -ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>   |

163. Model for parsing adverbs:—

**mīlitēs fortīter pūgnant**, *the soldiers fight bravely*: **fortīter** is an adverb of *manner* (161), derived from the adjective **fortis** (157); compared, **fortīter**, **fortius**, **fortissime** (157); of the positive degree, and modifies **pūgnant**, according to Rule XVI.: *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is an adverb? What is the usual position of an adverb in a sentence? (*Ans.* It stands immediately before the word it limits.) How are adverbs classified? How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension? How from adjectives of the third declension? How are adverbs compared? How are English adverbs formed? Form an adverb from *brave*; compare it. Write a sentence in English containing an adverb of place; of manner; of degree.

## LESSON XLI.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.

**164.** The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice are made up of the Perfect Participle in combination with the forms of *sum*.

**EXAMPLE.** — *āmāre*, to love.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PART. STEM.	NOM.
āmā-	āmāvī-	āmāto-	āmātus, -a, -um

## PASSIVE VOICE.

PRES. STEM.	PRES. INFIN.	PERFECT.
āmā-	āmārī	āmātus, -a, -um sum

1. The Participial Stem is formed by adding *-to*, nom. *-tus* (often changed to *-so*, nom. *-sus*), to the present stem.

## EXAMPLES.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PART. STEM.	NOM.
āmo	āmā-	āmāvī-	āmātō-	āmātus
vōco	vōcāt-	vōcāvī-	vōcātō-	vōcātus
laudo	laudā-	laudāvī-	laudātō-	laudātus

2. The Principal Parts of a verb are : —

- (1) The Present Indicative, } showing the *present stem* and the
- (2) The Present Infinitive, } *conjugation*.
- (3) The Perfect Indicative, showing the *perfect stem*.
- (4) The Neuter Nominative and Accusative of the Perfect Participle, showing the *participial stem*.

## EXAMPLES.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PERF. PART.
āmo	āmāre	āmāvī	āmātum

## PASSIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.
āmor	āmārī	āmātus, -a, -um sum

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
	Verb-stem —			
Sing. 1	+ tus sum	āmātus sum	I have	I was loved.
2	+ tus es	āmātus es	Thou hast	Thou wast loved.
3	+ tus est	āmātus est	He has	He was loved.
Plur. 1	+ tī sūmus	āmātī sūmus	We have	We were loved.
2	+ tī estis	āmātī estis	You have	You were loved.
3	+ tī sunt	āmātī sunt	They have	They were loved.
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
Sing. 1	Verb-stem + tus ēram	āmātus ēram	I had been loved.	
2	“ + tus ērās	āmātus ērās	Thou hadst been loved	
3	“ + tus ērat	āmātus ērat	He had been loved.	
Plur. 1	“ + tī ērāmus	āmātī ērāmus	We had been loved.	
2	“ + tī ērātis	āmātī ērātis	You had been loved.	
3	“ + tī ērant	āmātī ērant	They had been loved.	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
Sing. 1	Verb-stem + tus ēro	āmātus ero	I shall have	} been loved.
2	“ + tus ēris	āmātus ēris	Thou wilt have	
3	“ + tus ērit	āmātus ērit	He shall have	
Plur. 1	“ + tī ērimus	āmātī ērimus	We shall have	} been loved.
2	“ + tī ēritis	āmātī ēritis	You shall have	
3	“ + tī ērunt	āmātī ērunt	They shall have	

**165.** Analysis of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive : —

1. The perfect = partic. stem + -s together with **sum**.
2. The pluperfect = partic. stem + -s together with **ēram**.
3. The future perf. = partic. stem + -s together with **ēro**.

Obs. 1. The perfect participle has three endings for the three genders, and is declined like *bōnus*; as, *āmātus*, -a, -um. It must agree, like an adjective, in gender, number, and case, with the subject.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *puer āmātus est*, the boy was loved.
2. *virgo āmāta est*, the virgin was loved.
3. *nōmen āmātum est*, the name was loved.
4. *puērī āmātī sunt*, the boys were loved.
5. *virgīnēs āmātae sunt*, the virgins were loved.
6. *nōmīna āmāta sunt*, the names were loved.

Obs. 2. In the foregoing examples, note that the participle agrees with the subject like an adjective.

#### VOCABULARY.

PRES. IND. ACT.	PRES. INF. ACT.	PERF. IND. ACT.	PERF. PART. PASS.
<i>āmo</i> , love.	<i>āmāre</i>	<i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmātum</i>
<i>laudo</i> , praise.	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>laudāvī</i>	<i>laudātum</i>
<i>porto</i> , carry.	<i>portāre</i>	<i>portāvī</i>	<i>portātum</i>
<i>vōco</i> , call.	<i>vōcāre</i>	<i>vōcāvī</i>	<i>vōcātum</i>
<i>ēnuntio</i> , report. <sup>1</sup>	<i>ēnuntiāre</i>	<i>ēnuntiāvī</i>	<i>ēnuntiātum</i>
<i>occulto</i> , conceal.	<i>occultāre</i>	<i>occultāvī</i>	<i>occultātum</i>
<i>comporto</i> , collect.	<i>comportāre</i>	<i>comportāvī</i>	<i>comportātum</i>

SYN. *Infans* (in, not, fari, to speak), an infant; *puer*, a boy, from about seven to sixteen; *ādūlescens* (*adōlesco*, to grow), a youth, from about sixteen to twenty-four; *jūvēnis*, a young man or woman, from about twenty-four to forty-five.

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. *Laudātī estis*. 2. *Onus portātum est*. 3. *Rēgēs culpātī sunt*. 4. *Vulnērātus sum*. 5. *Vulnērātī sūmus*.
6. *Nostra consilia hostībūs<sup>2</sup> ēnuntiāta sunt*. 7. *In tantā multitūdīne ēquitū nostra fūga occultāta est*. 8. *Māgna cōpia frūmentū comportāta erat*.

Translate into Latin : —

1. You were called. 2. You were praised. 3. You have been praised. 4. You shall have been praised. 5. The corn has been collected. 6. An abundance of corn has been collected. 7. They shall have been praised. 8. We had been called. 9. They were loved.<sup>3</sup> 10. They were (being) loved.<sup>4</sup> 11. They were loving.<sup>5</sup> 12. The work was praised. 13. The girl has been called.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Written also *enuncio*.
2. Dative case.
3. The aorist (perf.) passive.
4. Imperfect passive.
5. Imperfect active.

From what stem is the perfect passive formed? What are the principal parts of a verb? Mention the three stems. What verbs can have a passive voice? Can they take an object in the passive voice?



## LESSON XLII.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE ACTIVE.—ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

**166.** All verbs whose characteristic vowel before the ending *-re* in the Present Infinitive is *ē*, belong to the Second Conjugation. Thus —

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INF.
<i>mōneo</i>	<i>mōnē-</i>	<i>mōnē-re</i>
<i>hābeo</i>	<i>hābē-</i>	<i>hābē-re</i>
<i>terreo</i>	<i>terrē-</i>	<i>terrē-re</i>
<i>tāceo</i>	<i>tācē-</i>	<i>tācē-re</i>

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Active are formed by adding the verbal endings to the present stem.

#### PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings are the same as in the first conjugation; the "connective vowel," or the final vowel of the stem, is *e* instead of *a*, and is retained in the present tense.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + o	mōneo	<i>I advise.</i>
2	" " + s	mōnēs	<i>Thou advisest.</i>
3	" " + t	mōnet	<i>He advises.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	mōnēmus	<i>We advise.</i>
2	" " + tis	mōnētis	<i>You advise.</i>
3	" " + nt	mōnent	<i>They advise.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bam	mōnēbam	<i>I was advising.</i>
2	" " + bās	mōnēbās	<i>Thou wast advising.</i>
3	" " + bat	mōnēbat	<i>He was advising.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bāmus	mōnēbāmus	<i>We were advising.</i>
2	" " + bātis	mōnēbātis	<i>You were advising.</i>
3	" " + bant	mōnēbant	<i>They were advising.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bo	mōnēbo	<i>I shall or will advise.</i>
2	" " + bis	mōnēbis	<i>Thou wilt advise.</i>
3	" " + bit	mōnēbit	<i>He will advise.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bimus	mōnēbimus	<i>We shall or will advise.</i>
2	" " + bītis	mōnēbītis	<i>You will advise.</i>
3	" " + bunt	mōnēbunt	<i>They will advise.</i>

*a.* The verbal endings are the same as in the first conjugation. See 58. 1.

#### 167. Ablative of Agent.

##### EXAMPLES.

1. *vulnērātus est sāgittīs*, he was wounded with arrows.
2. *vulnērātus est ā milīte*, he was wounded by a soldier.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, compare the two ablatives; note that the noun *sagittis*, which designates the *instrument* by which the action expressed by the verb is performed, is in the ablative, without a preposition, according to Rule IX. In the second sentence the ablative designates the *person*, or *agent*, by which the action expressed by the verb is performed, and it is accompanied by the preposition *ā* or *ab*. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

**168. RULE XVII.**—The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

## VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>dōceo, teach.</i>	<i>dōcē-</i>	<i>dōcēre</i>	<i>dōcuī</i>	<i>doctum</i>
<i>tīmeo, fear.</i>	<i>tīmē-</i>	<i>tīmēre</i>	<i>tīmuī</i>	—
<i>hābeo, have.</i>	<i>hābē-</i>	<i>hābēre</i>	<i>hābuī</i>	<i>hābitum</i>
<i>dēleo, destroy.</i>	<i>dēlē-</i>	<i>dēlēre</i>	<i>dēlēvī</i>	<i>dēlētum</i>
<i>prōhibeo, restrain.</i>	<i>prōhibē-</i>	<i>prōhibēre</i>	<i>prōhibuī</i>	<i>prōhibitum</i>

SYN. *Dōceo, to teach; ēdōceo, to make one learn; perdōceo, to teach thoroughly; ērūdio (e and rūdis, rough), to instruct, lit. to bring from a rough condition; ēdūco, to educate, whether in a physical or moral sense.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Dōcēmus puellam.* 2. *Dōcētis.* 3. *Multa castra hābēbimus.* 4. *Mōnet.* 5. *Tīmēbat.* 6. *Rēgīnae timent.* 7. *Puellae nōn timent.* 8. *Mōnēbit.* 9. *Hābēbant.* 10. *Timet.* 11. *Dōcēbunt.* 12. *Dōcēbimus.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. We fear, we were fearing, we shall fear. 2. Ye teach, they were teaching, they will teach. 3. The girl will fear. 4. I will teach, I was teaching. 5. Ye were teaching. 6. They call, they were calling, they will call. 7. Thou didst call. 8. You will not have fought. 9. Thou dost fear. 10. The master praises the pupil. 11. The pupil is praised

by the master. 12. The girl is crowned by (her) mother. 13. He was wounded by a spear. 14. He was wounded by a soldier. 15. Crassus is called by (his) friend. 16. The towns will be seized by the Belgians.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is the characteristic vowel of the second conjugation? In what does the present stem end? Analyze the imperfect; i.e., mention the stem, the tense sign, the personal endings.



### LESSON XLIII.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

##### PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

**169.** The Perfect Stem of a regular verb of the Second Conjugation may be formed, —

1. By adding *vi*<sup>1</sup> to the present stem. (This rule is applicable to but few verbs.)

2. By dropping *e* of the present stem and adding *ui*. This is the more common way of forming the perfect stem of the second conjugation.

#### EXAMPLES.

Present.	Pres. Stem.	Perf. Stem.	Part. Stem.
dēleo, <i>destroy.</i>	dēlē-	dēlēvī-	dēlēto-
mōneo, <i>admonish.</i>	mōnē-	mōnuī-	mōnito-

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Participle.
dēleo	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum
mōneo	mōnēre	mōnuī	mōnītum



**170.** The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses are inflected as follows : —

**PARTIAL PARADIGM.**

[The personal endings are the same as in the first conjugation ; the characteristic vowel of the stem changes from *i* to *ē* in the third person plural of the perfect, to *i* in the first person plural, and to *ē* in the pluperfect and future perfect.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. st.	mōnuī	<i>I have advised.</i>	<i>I advised.</i>
2	“ + stī	mōnuistī	<i>Thou hast advised.</i>	<i>Thou advisedst</i>
3	“ + t	mōnuīt	<i>He has advised.</i>	<i>He advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + mus	mōnuimus	<i>We have advised.</i>	<i>We advised.</i>
2	“ + stis	mōnuistis	<i>You have advised.</i>	<i>You advised.</i>
3	“ { + runt or re	monuērunt, or monuēre	<i>They have advised.</i>	<i>They advised.</i>
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ram	mōnuēram	<i>I had advised.</i>	
2	“ “ + rās	mōnuērās	<i>Thou hadst advised.</i>	
3	“ “ + rat	mōnuērat	<i>He had advised.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + rāmus	mōnuērāmus	<i>We had advised.</i>	
2	“ “ + rātis	mōnuērātis	<i>You had advised.</i>	
3	“ “ + rant	mōnuērant	<i>They had advised.</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ro	mōnuēro	<i>I shall have advised.</i>	
2	“ “ + ris	mōnuēris	<i>Thou wilt have advised.</i>	
3	“ “ + rit	mōnuērit	<i>He will have advised.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + rīmus	mōnuērīmus	<i>We shall have advised.</i>	
2	“ “ + rītis	mōnuērītis	<i>You will have advised.</i>	
3	“ “ + rint	mōnuērint	<i>They will have advised.</i>	

## VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>dēleo, destroy.</i>	<i>dēlē-</i>	<i>dēlēre</i>	<i>dēlēvī</i>	<i>dēlētum</i>
<i>compleo, fill.</i>	<i>complē-</i>	<i>complēre</i>	<i>complēvī</i>	<i>complētum</i>
<i>mōneo, advise.</i>	<i>mōnē-</i>	<i>mōnēre</i>	<i>mōnuī</i>	<i>mōnītum</i>
<i>tāceo, be silent.</i>	<i>tācē-</i>	<i>tācēre</i>	<i>tācuī</i>	<i>tācītum</i>
<i>dēbeo, owe.</i>	<i>dēbē-</i>	<i>dēbēre</i>	<i>dēbuī</i>	<i>dēbītum</i>
<i>hābeo, have.</i>	<i>hābē-</i>	<i>hābēre</i>	<i>hābuī</i>	<i>hābītum</i>
<i>dōceo, teach.</i>	<i>dōcē-</i>	<i>dōcēre</i>	<i>dōcuī</i>	<i>doctum</i>
<i>tēneo, hold.</i>	<i>tēnē-</i>	<i>tēnēre</i>	<i>tēnuī</i>	<i>tentum</i>
<i>māneo, remain.</i>	<i>mān(ē)-</i>	<i>mānēre</i>	<i>mansī</i>	<i>mansum</i>
<i>augeo, increase.</i>	<i>aug(ē)-</i>	<i>augēre</i>	<i>auxī</i>	<i>auctum</i>
<i>jūbeo, command.</i>	<i>jūb(ē)-</i>	<i>jūbēre</i>	<i>jussī</i>	<i>jussum</i>

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. *Dēlēvit, dēlēvērant, dēlēvērint.* 2. *Dōcuērās, dōcuērit.*  
 3. *Mōnuistis.* 4. *Hābuērit, mōnuērunt, dōcuērunt.* 5. *Dō-*  
*cuietī puellam.* 6. *Rēgīna mōnuērit.* 7. *Tēnuīmus sāgittas.*  
 8. *Rēgīna tīmet.* 9. *Puellae tīmuērunt.* 10. *Mōnēbit,*  
*mōnuērit, mōnuērant.* 11. *Dōcuērās, dōcuērint, dōcēbunt,*  
*dōcent.* 12. *Mansit, auxit, jussit.*

Translate into Latin : —

1. We have destroyed, they had destroyed. 2. We have  
 taught, he has taught. 3. They were teaching, he had  
 taught. 4. They taught, they are silent, they were advising.  
 5. You fear, you were fearing, you will fear, you have  
 feared, you had feared. 6. They command, they will  
 command, they have commanded, they had commanded.  
 7. They have increased.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The *-vī* of the perfect stands for *fuī*, perfect of *sum*; as, *āmā-*  
 (st. of *amo*) + *fuī* = perf. *āmāfuī* = *āmāuī* = *āmāvī*; so *dēlē-* (st.  
 of *dēleo*) + *fuī* = *dēlēfuī* = *dēlēuī* = *dēlēvī*; *mōn(ē)-* + *fuī* =  
*monfuī* = *mōnuī* (the final vowel of the stem being dropped); also,  
*dōc(e)-* + *fuī* = *dōcfuī* = *dōcuī*. Sometimes the final vowel of the

stem is weakened to *i* and retained in the participial stem; as, **mōneo**, **mōnēre**, **mōnuī**, **mōnītum**.

2. Some verbs drop the characteristic vowel of the stem and add *-si* to form the perfect; as, **aug(ē) + si = augsi = auxi**; **mān(ē) + si = mansi**; **jūb(ē) + si = jubsī = jussi**; but **indulgeo**, *indulge*, **indulgēre**, **indulsi**, **indultum**, where the *g* as well as the characteristic vowel of the stem is dropped.

How many stems has a verb? How many uses has the perfect? How can you distinguish verbs of the second conjugation? How do verbs of this conjugation form their perfects?

## LESSON XLIV.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

#### PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

**171.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive are inflected as follows:—

##### PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings, the tense signs, and passive sign, are the same as those of the first conjugation.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + or	mōneor	<i>I am (being) advised.</i>
2	“ “ + ris or re	mōnēris, -re	<i>Thou art advised.</i>
3	“ “ + tur	mōnētur	<i>He is advised.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mur	mōnēmur	<i>We are advised.</i>
2	“ “ + minī	mōnēminī	<i>You are advised.</i>
3	“ “ + ntur	mōnentur	<i>They are advised.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bar	mōnēbar	<i>I was being</i>
2	“ “ + bāris, re	mōnēbāris, -re	<i>Thou wast being</i>
3	“ “ + bātur	mōnēbātur	<i>He was being</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + bāmur	mōnēbāmur	<i>We were being</i>
2	“ “ + bāminī	mōnēbāminī	<i>You were being</i>
3	“ “ + bantur	mōnēbantur	<i>They were being</i>

*advised.*



Translate into Latin : —

1. They are (being) taught, they were (being) taught, they will be taught. 2. The master teaches the pupils. 3. The pupils are taught by the master. 4. He is feared, he was feared, he will be feared. 5. We are advised, we were advised, we shall be advised. 6. The boys were being taught by the master. 7. The soldiers are wounded by the arrows.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *The top of the mountain ; lit., the highest mountain.*

Define voice in grammar. From what stem are the tenses of incomplete action formed? Give the rule for changing a sentence from the active to the passive voice.

### LESSON XLV.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION.

##### PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

**173.** The Participial Stem of verbs of the Second Conjugation is formed by adding *-to* (or *-so*), nom. *-tus* (or *-sus*), to the verb-stem. Some verbs change final *ē* of the present stem to short *i* in the participial stem ; others drop the stem vowel altogether. Many verbs of this conjugation have no participial stem.

#### EXAMPLES.

Pres. Indicative.	Present Stem.	Perfect Stem.	Part. Stem.
dēleo, <i>destroy.</i>	dēlē-	dēlēvi-	dēlēto-
mōneo, <i>advise.</i>	mōnē-	mōnuī-	mōnīto-
dōceo, <i>teach.</i>	dōcē-	dōcuī-	docto-
māneo, <i>remain.</i>	mānē-	mansi-	manso-
haereo, <i>stick.</i>	haerē-	haesi-	haeso-
sileo, <i>be silent.</i>	silē-	siluī-	—
tīmeo, <i>fear.</i>	tīmē-	tīmuī-	—

1. The tenses of the indicative mode, formed from the participial stem, are inflected as follows : —

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The analysis of the tenses formed from the participial stem in the second conjugation is the same as in the first conjugation.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.						
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.			
			Perfect.		Aorist.	
	Verb-stem —					
Sing. 1	+ tus sum	mōnītus sum	I have	} been advised.	I was	} advised.
2	+ tus es	mōnītus es	Thou hast		Thou wast	
3	+ tus est	mōnītus est	He has		He was	
Plur. 1	+ tī sūmus	mōnītī sūmus	We have	} been advised.	We were	} advised.
2	+ tī estis	mōnītī estis	You have		You were	
3	+ tī sunt	mōnītī sunt	They have		They were	
PLUPERFECT.						
Sing. 1	+ tus ēram	mōnītus ēram	I had been advised.			
2	+ tus ērās	mōnītus ērās	Thou hadst been advised.			
3	+ tus ērat	mōnītus ērat	He had been advised.			
Plur. 1	+ tī ērāmus	mōnītī ērāmus	We had been advised.			
2	+ tī ērātis	mōnītī ērātis	You had been advised.			
3	+ tī ērant	mōnītī ērant	They had been advised.			
FUTURE PERFECT.						
Sing. 1	+ tus ēro	mōnītus ēro	I shall have been advised.			
2	+ tus ēris	mōnītus ēris	Thou wilt have been advised.			
3	+ tus ērit	mōnītus ērit	He will have been advised.			
Plur. 1	+ tī ērimus	mōnītī ērimus	We shall have been advised.			
2	+ tī ēritis	mōnītī ēritis	You will have been advised.			
3	+ tī ērunt	mōnītī ērunt	They will have been advised.			

## VOCABULARY.

fleo	flēre	flēvī	flētum, <sup>1</sup> weep.
plāceo	plācēre	plācuī	plācītum, <sup>2</sup> please.
nōceo	nōcēre	nōcuī	nōcītum, hurt.
contīneo	contīnēre	contīnuī	contentum, <sup>3</sup> hem in.
cēnseo	cēnsēre	cēnsuī	cēnsūm, <sup>3</sup> think.
haereo	haerēre	haesi	haesum, <sup>4</sup> stick.
rīdeo	rīdēre	rīsī	rīsūm, <sup>5</sup> laugh.

jūbeo	jūbere	jussi	jussum, <sup>s</sup> <i>command.</i>
video	videre	vidi	visum, <i>see.</i>
timeo	timere	timui	—, <i>fear.</i>
lateo	latere	latui	—, <i>lie hid.</i>

Gārumna, -ae, m., *the Garonne.*

undique, adv., *on all sides.* et, conj., *and.*

SYN. Jūdicō, *judge*; censeo, *give official opinion.*

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Mōnītī ērunt. 2. Doctus<sup>1</sup> ērat. 3. Puērī doctī sunt.
4. Servī mōnītī ērunt. 5. Puer mōnītus ērit. 6. Undīque lōcī nātūrā Helvētīī cōtinentur. 7. Fīlius tuus et sōror mea ā māgistrō bōnō doctī ērunt. 8. Rōma, urbs nostra, ā Rōmūlō rēge aedificāta est. 9. Pulchra sōror ā fratre dōcēbitur. 10. Milītēs jussī sunt. 11. Avēs multae puērōrum sāgittīs vulnērātae sunt.

Translate into Latin : —

1. They have been taught, they had been taught, they will have been taught. 2. He has been advised, he had been advised, he will have been advised. 3. The boys have been taught by the master. 4. The soldiers have been wounded. 5. The soldiers have been wounded with the arrows. 6. The king has been wounded by the soldier. 7. The mountain will be held by Cæsar. 8. The top of the mountain has been held by Cæsar. 9. The Germans are hemmed in on all sides.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Participle formed regularly.
2. Characteristic vowel of the stem weakened to *i*.
3. Characteristic vowel of the stem dropped.
4. Characteristic vowel of the stem dropped; **haer-eo**, **haer-** is for **haes-**, *s* being changed to *r* between two vowels; the participle = **haestum** = **haessum** = **haesum**.
5. Characteristic vowel of the stem dropped = **rīd-** + **-t** = **rīdt-** = **rīs-** = **rīsum**. See 179. 2.
6. **jūb-** + **-t** = **jubt-** = **jutt-** = **juss**.

## LESSON XLVI.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

**174.** Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in *-us* masculine, and *-ū* neuter. They are declined as follows:—

## PARADIGMS.

FEMININE.		
Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>mānus, a hand.</i>	<i>mānūs, hands.</i>
GEN.	<i>mānūs, of a hand.</i>	<i>mānuum, of hands.</i>
DAT.	<i>mānuī, -ū, to or for a hand.</i>	<i>mānibus, to or for hands.</i>
ACC.	<i>mānum, hand.</i>	<i>mānūs, hands.</i>
VOC.	<i>mānus, O hand.</i>	<i>manūs, O hands.</i>
ABL.	<i>mānū, with, from, or by a hand.</i>	<i>mānibus, with, from, or by hands</i>
NEUTER.		
NOM.	<i>gēnū, a knee.</i>	<i>gēnua, knees.</i>
GEN.	<i>gēnūs, of a knee.</i>	<i>genuum, of knees.</i>
DAT.	<i>gēnū, to or for a knee.</i>	<i>gēnibus, to or for knees.</i>
ACC.	<i>gēnū, knee.</i>	<i>gēnua, knees.</i>
VOC.	<i>gēnū, O knee.</i>	<i>gēnua, O knees.</i>
ABL.	<i>gēnū, with, from, or by a knee.</i>	<i>gēnibus, with, from, or by knees.</i>

Cases.		fructus, M., fruit.	cornu, N., horn.	dōmus, F., house.	Case- Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	fructus	cornū	dōmus	-us -ū
	GEN.	fructūs	cornūs	dōmūs, dōmī	-ūs
	DAT.	fructuī, -ū	cornū	dōmuī (dōmō)	-uī -ū
	ACC.	fructum	cornū	dōmum	-um -ū
	VOC.	fructus	cornū	dōmus	-us -ū
	ABL.	fructū	cornū	dōmō (dōmū)	-ū -ū
Plural.	NOM.	fructūs	cornua	domūs	-ūs -ua
	GEN.	fructuum	cornuum	dōmuum, dōmōrum	-uum
	DAT.	fructibus	cornibus	dōmibus	-ibus (-ūbus)
	ACC.	fructūs	cornua	dōmūs, -ōs	-ūs -ua
	VOC.	fructūs	cornua	dōmūs	-ūs -ua
	ABL.	fructibus	cornibus	dōmibus	-ibus (-ūbus)



1. The stem of nouns of the fourth declension ends in *-u*, which is usually changed to *i* before *-bus*. Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative by adding *s*; neuters, which are very few, have for the nominative the simple stem lengthened to *ū*.

2. The dative and ablative plural of the following words ends in *-ūbus*: **artus**, *joint*, **partus**, *child-birth*, **portus**, *harbor*, **tribus**, *tribe*, **vĕru**; and also of words of two syllables in *-cus*, as **lācus**.

3. A few nouns of the fourth declension are feminine; as, **dŏmus**, *house*, **īdūs** (pl), *Ides*, **mānus**, *hand*, **ācus**, *needle*, and some others.

4. Carefully distinguish the fourth from the second declension:—

- (1) A noun with nominative in *-us* and genitive in *-i* is of the second declension.
- (2) A noun with nominative in *-us* and genitive in *-ūs* is of the fourth declension.

#### VOCABULARY.

**exercĭtus**, -ūs, M., *army*.

**dŏmus**, -ūs, F., *house*.

**lūsus**, -ūs, M., *playing, sport*.

**equitātus**, -ūs, M., *cavalry*.

**ācus**, -ūs, F., *a needle*.

**arcus**, -ūs, M., *a bow*.

**currus**, -ūs, M., *a chariot*.

**mānus**, -ūs, F., *a hand*.

**sĕnātus**, -ūs, M., *senate*.

**conspectus**, -ūs, M., *sight, view*.

**sustĭneo**, **sustĭnĕre**, **sustĭnuĭ**,

**sustentum**, *sustain*.

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Sĕnātus exercĭtum laudat.
2. Agrĭcŏla taurum cornĭbus tĕnet.
3. Pāter dŏmūs aedificat.
4. Currūs hostium ab omnĭbus milĭtibus vĭsĭ ērunt.
5. Galba dŏmĭ<sup>1</sup> fuit.
6. In conspectū exercĭtūs.
7. In conspectū exercĭtūs nostrĭ agrĭ vastantur.
8. Equitātus sustĭnĕbat hostium impĕtum.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The locative form **dŏmĭ** means *at home*; it has the same form as the genitive of the second declension.

How many declensions in Latin? How is each distinguished? Of what gender are most nouns of the fourth declension? Mention a feminine noun of this declension.

## LESSON XLVII.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

**175.** Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *-ēs*, and are feminine. They are declined as follows:—

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>diēs, a day.</i>	<i>diēs, days.</i>
GEN.	<i>diēi (diē), of a day.</i>	<i>diērum, of days.</i>
DAT.	<i>diēi (diē), to or for a day.</i>	<i>diēbus, to or for days.</i>
ACC.	<i>diem, a day.</i>	<i>diēs, days.</i>
VOC.	<i>diēs, O day.</i>	<i>diēs, O days.</i>
ABL.	<i>diē, with, from, or by a day.</i>	<i>diēbus, with, from, or by days.</i>

Cases.		<i>rēs, f., thing.</i>	<i>fidēs, f., faith.</i>	<i>rēspūblica, commonwealth.</i>	Case- Endings.
Singular.	NOM.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>fidēs</i>	<i>rēspūblica</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	GEN.	<i>rēi</i>	<i>fidēi</i>	<i>rēipublicae</i>	<i>-ēi, -ē</i>
	DAT.	<i>rēi</i>	<i>fidēi</i>	<i>rēipublicae</i>	<i>-ēi, -ē</i>
	ACC.	<i>rem</i>	<i>fidem</i>	<i>rēmpublicam</i>	<i>-em</i>
	VOC.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>fidēs</i>	<i>rēspūblica</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	ABL.	<i>rē</i>	<i>fidē</i>	<i>rēpūblicā</i>	<i>-ē</i>
Plural.	NOM.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>Wanting.</i>	<i>rēspūblīcae</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	GEN.	<i>rērum</i>	—	<i>rērūmpūblīcārūm</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
	DAT.	<i>rēbus</i>	—	<i>rēbuspūblīcīs</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
	ACC.	<i>rēs</i>	—	<i>rēspūblīcās</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	VOC.	<i>rēs</i>	—	<i>rēspūblīcae</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
	ABL.	<i>rēbus</i>	—	<i>rēbuspūblīcīs</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

1. Only two nouns of the fifth declension are masculine: *diēs*, *a day*, *mēridiēs*, *midday*; though *diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially when it means a *fixed time*.

2. Only two nouns of this declension are declined throughout the plural; they are *diēs* and *rēs*. In some words, only the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural are used; others want the plural entirely.

3. The stem of nouns of this declension ends in *-ē*, which appears in all the cases, but it is generally shortened in the ending *-ēi* when preceded by a consonant, and also in the ending *-em*.

VOCABULARY.

<b>diēs, diēi</b> , M. and F., <i>day</i> .	<b>perniciēs, perniciēi</b> , F., <i>ruin</i> .
<b>fidēs, fidēi</b> , F., <i>faith, faithful-</i> <i>ness</i> .	<b>militāris, -e</b> , <i>military</i> ; <b>rēs mili-</b> <b>tāris</b> , <i>military affairs</i> .
<b>rēs, rēi</b> , F., <i>thing, affair</i> .	<b>portus, -ūs</b> , M., <i>harbor</i> .
<b>spēs, spēi</b> , F., <i>hope, expectation</i> .	<b>ūsus, ūsus</b> , M., <i>use, experience</i> .

SYN. **Exercitus** (*exerceo, to exercise*) is the drilled army; **acies**, the army drawn up in battle array; and **agmen** (*āgo, move*), the army on the line of march.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Rem Rōmānis nuntiant. 2. Spēs victōriæ māgna fuit.  
3. Sine spē. 4. Māgnās spēs hābēmus. 5. Rēs Helvētiīs  
ēnuntiāta est. 6. Cūm perniciē exercitūs. 7. Caesar  
Dīvitiācō<sup>1</sup> mākīmam fidem hābēbat. 8. Hostēs portum  
tēnēbant. 9. Tīmor omnem exercitum occūpāvit. 10. Itālia,  
patria nostra, omnibus fortibus cāra est. 11. Māgnum in  
rē militārī ūsum hābet.

Translate into Latin : —

1. With the army, with the armies. 2. The consul praises  
the army. 3. They have built houses. 4. The leaders of  
the army fight bravely. 5. There are many houses in the  
city. 6. With hope. 7. Hope delighted the army. 8. The  
consul will hold the harbor. 9. We praise the faithfulness  
of the soldier. 10. The army is brave. 11. The consul  
has large experience in military affairs. 12. Labienus was  
in<sup>2</sup> Cæsar's army.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Lit., *had confidence to Divitiacus*; i.e., *confidence in Divitiacus*.
2. Use the preposition *in*.

What is the stem of **diēs**? When is the final vowel of the stem short? What nouns are complete in the plural?

## LESSON XLVIII.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

**176.** Verbs of the third conjugation are distinguished by having *e* short before *-re* in the present infinitive. The verb-stem, obtained by dropping this characteristic *ē*, ends in a consonant or in *u*.

## EXAMPLES.

Present.	Pres. Stem.	Verb-Stem.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. and Part.
rēgo, <i>rule</i> . mīnuo, <i>lessen</i> .	rēgē- mīnu-	rēg- mīnu-	rēgēre mīnuēre	rēxī, rectum mīnuī, mīnūtum

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perfect.	Participle.
rēgo mīnuo	rēgēre mīnuēre	rēxī mīnuī	rectum mīnūtum

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Active are inflected as follows : —

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The characteristic vowel of the present stem changes to *i*, *u*, etc., in the inflection of the verb. The personal endings and tense signs are the same as in the first conjugation, except those of the future, where the characteristic vowel changes to *ā* or *ē* before the personal endings.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + o	rēgo	<i>I rule.</i>
2	“ “ + s	rēgis	<i>Thou rulest.</i>
3	“ “ + t	rēgit	<i>He rules.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ “ + mus	rēgimus	<i>We rule.</i>
2	“ “ + tis	rēgītis	<i>You rule.</i>
3	“ “ + nt	rēgunt	<i>They rule.</i>

IMPERFECT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bam	rēgēbam	<i>I was ruling.</i>
2	" " + bās	rēgēbās	<i>Thou wast ruling.</i>
3	" " + bat	rēgēbat	<i>He was ruling.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bāmus	rēgēbāmus	<i>We were ruling.</i>
2	" " + bātis	rēgēbātis	<i>You were ruling.</i>
3	" " + bant	rēgēbant	<i>They were ruling.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + m	rēgam	<i>I shall or will rule.</i>
2	" " + s	rēgēs	<i>Thou wilt rule.</i>
3	" " + t	rēget	<i>He will rule.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	rēgēmus	<i>We shall or will rule.</i>
2	" " + tis	rēgētis	<i>You will rule.</i>
3	" " + nt	rēgent	<i>They will rule.</i>

Obs. In the formation of the tenses, note that the future of the first and second conjugations always has the tense sign *-bi-*; the *i* disappears before *o* (as, *āmābiō* = *āmābo*), and becomes *u* in the third person plural. The future of the third conjugation consists of the present stem (the characteristic vowel being lengthened) and the personal endings; *i* becomes *e* in the second and third persons singular, and in the plural.

## VOCABULARY.

scribo	scribere	scripsi, write.
lĕgo	lĕgere	lĕgi, collect, read.
instruo	instruere	instruxi, erect, arrange.
contendo	contendere	contendi, hasten.
dimitto	dimittere	dimisi, dismiss.
gĕro	gĕrere	gessi, carry, carry on.
mitto	mittere	misi, send.
cingo	cingere	cinxi, surround.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

- s. O. V.T. V.T. S. O.  
 1. Puer librum scribēbat. 2. Mittitis servōs. 3. Frāter  
 lĕgēbat. 4. Hostēs urbem cingunt. 5. Discipŭli littērās

scribent. 6. Caesar āciem instruēbat. 7. Puer dōna mittet. 8. Caesar cēlērīter<sup>1</sup> concilium dīmīttit. 9. Caesar in Itāliam māgnīs itīnērīb<sup>2</sup> contendit. 10. Belgae cum Germānīs cōtīnenter bellum gērunt. 11. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad Caesārem mittunt.

Translate into Latin : —

1. We write, we were writing, we shall write. 2. He reads, he was reading, he will read. 3. We send, we were sending, we shall send. 4. The queen writes a book. 5. Friends will send books. 6. The boys were writing. 7. They had called a slave. 8. Cæsar hastens into Gaul. 9. The Romans are carrying on war with the Gauls. 10. We read, they write. 11. We draw up the line of battle, we were drawing up the line of battle.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. For words not given in the special vocabularies, look in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

2. *By long marches.*

Define sentence. What are the essential parts of a sentence? Mention the personal endings of the present, of the imperfect, of the future indicative.

### LESSON XLIX.

#### THIRD CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE  
ACTIVE.

**177.** The Perfect Stem of verbs of the third conjugation is regularly formed by adding *-sī* to the verb-stem.

#### EXAMPLES.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Verb-Stem.	Perfect Stem.
rēgo	rēg-ēre	rēg-	{ rēg + sī = rēgsi (see 18) = rēxī
scrībo	scrīb-ēre	scrīb-	{ scrīb + sī = scrībsei (see 20) = scrīpsī

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active are inflected as follows : —

**PARTIAL PARADIGM.**

[The personal endings are the same as in the first and second conjugations. Note the change of the characteristic vowel of the stem to short *i*, to long *e*, and then to short *e*.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
Sing. 1	Perf. stem	rēxī	I have ruled.	I ruled.
2	“ “ + stī	rēxistī	Thou hast ruled.	Thou didst rule.
3	“ “ + t	rēxit	He has ruled.	He ruled.
Plur. 1	“ “ + mus	rēximus	We have ruled.	We ruled.
2	“ “ + stis	rēxistis	You have ruled.	You ruled.
3	“ “ { + runt or re	rēxērunt or rēxere	They have ruled.	They ruled.
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
Sing. 1	Perf. stem + ram	rēxeram	I had ruled.	
2	“ “ + rās	rēxērās	Thou hadst ruled.	
3	“ “ + rat	rēxerat	He had ruled.	
Plur. 1	“ “ + rāmus	rēxērāmus	We had ruled.	
2	“ “ + rātis	rēxērātis	You had ruled.	
3	“ “ + rant	rēxerant	They had ruled.	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
Sing. 1	Perf. stem + ro	rēxēro	I shall have ruled.	
2	“ “ + rīs	rēxērīs	Thou wilt have ruled.	
3	“ “ + rit	rēxerit	He will have ruled.	
Plur. 1	“ “ + rīmus	rēxerīmus	We will have ruled.	
2	“ “ + rītis	rēxerītis	You will have ruled.	
3	“ “ + rint	rēxerint	They will have ruled.	

**178. Formation of the Perfect Stem.**

1. The perfect stem of the third conjugation is regularly formed by adding *-sī* to the verb-stem.

2. Some verbs have a reduplicated perfect; *i.e.*, the first consonant of the word is prefixed with a vowel, generally *ē*.

Obs. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication, except *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*, sometimes *curro*.

**EXAMPLE.**

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>cādo</i> , <i>fall</i> .	<i>cādēre</i>	<i>cēcīdī</i>	<i>cāsum</i>

Obs. 2. The vowel of the stem is often weakened to *i*, and before *r* to *ē*; in the example above *ā* is weakened to *ī*.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the reduplication has been lost.

**EXAMPLE.**

*findo*, *split*. *findēre* *fīdī* (which stands for *fīfīdī*).

3. The stem vowel is sometimes lengthened.

**EXAMPLES.**

*āgo*, *do*, *āgēre* *ēgī* *ēmo*, *buy*, *ēmēre* *ēmī*

4. The perfect stem has sometimes the same form as the present stem, with *i* added.

**EXAMPLES.**

*ru-o* *ru-ēre* *ruī* *vert-o* *vert-ēre* *vertī*

5. Sometimes the vowel of the stem is transposed and lengthened.

**EXAMPLE.**

*cer-no* *cer-nēre* *crē-vī* *crē-tum*

6. Stems of the third conjugation, like those of the third declension, are divided, according to their final consonant, into:—

- I. LABIAL STEMS, *p*, *b*, *m*: as, *carp-o*, *pluck*, *carp-sī*; *scrib-o*, *write*, *scrip-sī*; *prēm-o*, *pluck*, *pres-sī*.
- II. DENTAL STEMS, *t*, *d*, *s*, *n*, (*s*): as, *mit-to*, *send*, *mī-sī*; *claud-o*, *clau-sī*; *cēd-o*, *ces-sī*.
- III. LINGUAL STEMS, *r*, *l*: as, *gēr-o*, *ges-sī*; *vel-lo*, *tear*, *vel-lī* (*vulsī*).
- IV. GUTTURAL STEMS, *c*, *qu*, *k*, *g*, *h*: as, *dīc-o*, *say*, *dīx-ī*; *coqu-o*, *cook*, *cox-ī*; *ping-o*, *paint*, *pinx-ī*; *trāh-o*, *draw*, *trāx-ī*.
- V. U-STEMS: as, *mīnu-o*, *lessen*, *mīnu-ī*.



**179. Laws of Euphony :—**

- 1.
- b*
- is changed to
- p*
- before
- s*
- .

**EXAMPLES.***scribo, write, perf. (scribsi) = scripsi.**nūbo, marry (of woman), perf. (nubsi) = nupsi.*

- 2.
- t*
- and
- d*
- are dropped before
- s*
- , or become with
- s*
- ,
- ss*
- .

**EXAMPLES.***mitto, send, perf. (mittsi) = misi.**claudio, shut, " (claudsi) = clausi.**laedo, injure, " (laedsi) = laesi.**cēdo, yield, " (cedsi) = cessi.*

- 3.
- c, g, qu, h*
- , with
- s*
- , become
- x*
- .

**EXAMPLES.***dīco, say, perf. (dicsi) = dixi.**jungo, join, " (jungsi) = junxi.**coquo, cook, " (coqusi) = cōxi.**trāho, draw, " (trahsi) = trāxi.*

4. Verbs whose stems end in
- l, m, n*
- , or
- r*
- , and a few others, form their perfects in
- uī*
- ; those whose stems end in a vowel form their perfects in
- vī*
- (
- āvī, -ēvī, -ivī*
- ).

**EXAMPLES.***cōlo cōlēre cōluī, cultivate.**ālō ālēre āluī, nourish.**sēro sēlēre sēruī, connect.**frēmo frēmēre frēmuī, rage.**pōno pōnēre pōsuī, place.**pāsko (v. st. pā-) pascēre pāvī, feed.**cerno cernēre crēvī (178. 5), decide.**cūpio cūpēre cūpivī, desire.***VOCABULARY.***rēgo regēre rēxi, rule.**carpo carpēre carpsi, pluck.**dūco dūcēre dūxi, lead.**pingo pingēre pinxi, paint.**necto nectēre nēxi, or nēxui, tie.**nūbo nūbēre nupsi, marry (said of a woman).**ascendo<sup>1</sup> ascendēre ascendī, ascend.*

## EXERCISES.

Form the perfect of the following verbs, and account for the euphonic changes : —

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>dīmitto</b> , <i>dismiss</i> .              | 8. <b>dīco</b> , <i>say, tell</i> .             |
| 2. <b>contendo</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>hasten</i> . | 9. <b>vinco</b> , <i>conquer</i> .              |
| 3. <b>cingo</b> , <i>surround</i> .               | 10. <b>dēligo</b> , <i>select</i> .             |
| 4. <b>dūco</b> , <i>lead</i> .                    | 11. <b>trāho</b> , <i>draw</i> .                |
| 5. <b>tēgo</b> , <i>cover</i> .                   | 12. <b>defendo</b> , <i>defend</i> .            |
| 6. <b>lūdo</b> , <i>play</i> .                    | 13. <b>claudio</b> , <i>shut</i> .              |
| 7. <b>tango</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>touch</i> .     | 14. <b>frango</b> , <sup>3</sup> <i>break</i> . |

Translate into English : —

1. Rēgīna nuntiōs nōn mīserat. 2. Puērī ēpistulās scripserunt. 3. Caesar āciem instrūxerat. 4. Impērātor urbem mūrīs<sup>4</sup> cinxit. 5. Belgae cūm Germānīs continenter bellum gesserunt. 6. Māgister filium et puellam<sup>5</sup> docuit. 7. Rēgīna et rēx ēpistulās scribent.<sup>6</sup>

Translate into Latin : —

1. The boys have written letters. 2. We have written, we had written, we shall have written. 3. He has conquered, he had conquered, he shall have conquered. 4. They have sent, they sent, they had sent, they shall have sent. 5. The boys and the girls wrote<sup>6</sup> letters. 6. The slaves have led the boys and girls.<sup>5</sup> 7. They have defended. 8. We are playing. 9. He hastened into Gaul.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Stems ending in *-nd* form the perfect by adding *-i*, not *-si*.
2. **tango**: verb-stem *tag-*, present stem *tang-*, present *tango*, infinitive *tangere*, perfect *tēgī*.
3. The verb-stem is *frag-*, the present stem *frang-*, perfect *frēgī*.
4. Why ablative ?
5. When the object consists of two or more nouns joined by **et**, *and*, both must be in the accusative.
6. When the subject consists of more than one noun joined by **et**, *and*, the verb must be plural.

How is the perfect stem of the third conjugation regularly formed ?  
How are stems of the third conjugation classified ?

## LESSON L.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.  
—ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

**180.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive are inflected as follows : —

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings and tense signs are the same as in the first and second conjugations, except in the future, where the vowel changes to *a*, and then to *ē*, as in the future active.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + <i>r</i>	<i>rēgor</i>	<i>I am (being) ruled.</i>
2	" " + <i>ris</i> or <i>re</i>	<i>rēgēris, -re</i>	<i>Thou art ruled.</i>
3	" " + <i>tur</i>	<i>rēgītur</i>	<i>He is ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + <i>mur</i>	<i>rēgimur</i>	<i>We are ruled.</i>
2	" " + <i>minī</i>	<i>rēgimīnī</i>	<i>You are ruled.</i>
3	" " + <i>ntur</i>	<i>rēguntur</i>	<i>They are ruled.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + <i>bar</i>	<i>rēgēbar</i>	<i>I was (being) ruled.</i>
2	" " + <i>bāris, re</i>	<i>rēgēbāris, -re</i>	<i>Thou wast ruled.</i>
3	" " + <i>bātur</i>	<i>rēgēbātur</i>	<i>He was ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + <i>bāmur</i>	<i>rēgēbāmur</i>	<i>We were ruled.</i>
2	" " + <i>bāminī</i>	<i>rēgēbāminī</i>	<i>You were ruled.</i>
3	" " + <i>bantur</i>	<i>rēgēbantur</i>	<i>They were ruled.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + <i>r</i>	<i>rēgar</i>	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>
2	" " + <i>ris</i> or <i>re</i>	<i>rēgēris, -re</i>	<i>Thou wilt be ruled.</i>
3	" " + <i>tur</i>	<i>rēgētur</i>	<i>He will be ruled.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + <i>mur</i>	<i>rēgēmur</i>	<i>We will be ruled.</i>
2	" " + <i>minī</i>	<i>rēgēmīnī</i>	<i>You will be ruled.</i>
3	" " + <i>ntur</i>	<i>regentur</i>	<i>They will be ruled.</i>

1. Note the change in the present of short *e* to *i*, and in the third person plural to *u*. In the imperfect the characteristic is long *e*; in the future *a*, which changes to *ē*.

#### ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

**181. RULE XVIII.**—The ablative is used to denote accompaniment, usually with the preposition *cum*.

1. Note that *with*, when it means *together with* or *in company with*, is translated by *cum* with the ablative.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *mitto servum cum puērō, I send a slave WITH A BOY.*

2. *nostrī ēquitēs cum funditōribus saggittariisque flūmen transgressi sunt, our cavalry crossed the river WITH THE SLINGERS AND ARCHERS.*

2. Carefully distinguish this construction from the instrumental ablative, which shows *with what* or *by what* an action is done.

#### EXAMPLE.

*puer vulnerātus est saggittis, the boy was wounded with (by) arrows.*

#### VOCABULARY.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	PARTICIPLE.
cingo	cingere	cinxi	cinctum, surround.
frango	frangere	frēgi	fractum, break.
occīdo	occīdere	occīdī	occīsum, kill.
dīvido	dīvidere	dīvisī	dīvisum, divide.
dīligo	dīligere	dīlēxi	dīlectum, love.
dēligo	dēligere	dēlēgi	dēlectum, select.
dēfendo	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfensum, defend.
vinco	vincere	vīcī	victum, conquer.
vīvo	vīvere	vīxī	victum, live.
laedo	laedere	laesī	laesum, hurt.
flecto	flectere	flēxi	flexum, bend.
mergo	mergere	mersī	mersum, dip.

OBS. Form the perfect of each verb, and account for the euphonic changes.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English :—

1. Dēligitur. 2. Cingitur. 3. Puer ab omnibus dīlīgēbatur. 4. Urbs mūrō<sup>1</sup> cingitur. 5. Urbs ā<sup>2</sup> cīvibus dēfēditur. 6. Omnēs vincentur. 7. Tēlis occīdēris. 8. A Caesāre dūcēbāmur. 9. Nōn dūcēbāminī. 10. Bella gērēbantur. 11. Cum Germānīs pūgnant. 12. Cum dēcīma lēgiōne vēnit. 13. Tītus cum equitibus mittitur.

Translate into Latin :—

1. They are (being) selected. 2. We are conquered, we were conquered, we shall be conquered. 3. The city will be surrounded by a wall. 4. The soldiers will be conquered by the enemy. 5. The soldiers will be killed with the weapons.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Why ablative ?
2. Why is the preposition expressed ?

What are the personal endings of the present passive voice ? What are the future endings of this conjugation ? What verbs have a passive voice ? What is meant by voice in grammar ?

## LESSON LI.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE  
PASSIVE. — TWO ACCUSATIVES WITH ONE VERB.

**182.** The Participial Stem of verbs of the third conjugation is formed by adding *-to-*, nom. *-tus* (or *-so-*, nom. *-sus*), to the verb-stem.

## EXAMPLE.

PRESENT.	VERB-STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PART. STEM.	NOM.
dīco, say.	dīc-	dīxī-	dicto-	dictus

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive are inflected as follows :—

**PARTIAL PARADIGM.**

[The personal endings, tense signs, and formation, are the same as in the first and second conjugations.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
	Verb-stem —			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	+ tus sum	rectus sum	<i>I have</i>	} <i>been ruled.</i>
2	+ tus es	rectus es	<i>Thou hast</i>	
3	+ tus est	rectus est	<i>He has</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	+ tī sūmus	rectī sūmus	<i>We have</i>	
2	+ tī estis	rectī estis	<i>You have</i>	
3	+ tī sunt	rectī sunt	<i>They have</i>	
PLUPERFECT.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-st. + tus ēram	rectus ēram	<i>I had been ruled.</i>	
2	“ + tus ērās	rectus ērās	<i>Thou hadst been ruled.</i>	
3	“ + tus ērat	rectus ērat	<i>He had been ruled.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + tī ērāmus	rectī ērāmus	<i>We had been ruled.</i>	
2	“ + tī ērātis	rectī ērātis	<i>You had been ruled.</i>	
3	“ + tī ērant	rectī ērant	<i>They had been ruled.</i>	
FUTURE PERFECT.				
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Verb-st. + tus ēro	rectus ēro	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>	
2	“ + tus ēris	rectus ēris	<i>Thou wilt have been ruled.</i>	
3	“ + tus ērit	rectus ērit	<i>He will have been ruled.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + tī ērimus	rectī ērimus	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i>	
2	“ + tī ēritis	rectī ēritis	<i>You will have been ruled.</i>	
3	“ + tī ērunt	rectī ērunt	<i>They will have been ruled.</i>	

**183.** Euphonic changes :—

1. *g, qu, h* become *c* before *t*.

**EXAMPLES.**

<i>rēgo, rule,</i>	part. stem (regtus)	=	rectus,	M.	-a, -um
<i>oōquo, cook,</i>	“ (coqtus)	=	coctus,	F.	-a, -um
<i>trāho, draw,</i>	“ (trāhtus)	=	tractus,	N.	-a, -um

II. *b* becomes *p* before *t*.

## EXAMPLES.

	M.	F.	N.
<i>scribo, write</i> , partic. stem ( <i>scribtus</i> ) =	<i>scriptus</i> , -a, -um		
<i>nūbo, marry</i> , " " ( <i>nubtus</i> ) =	<i>nuptus</i> , -a, -um		

III. *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the participial stem. which is then changed to *s*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>laedo, injure</i> , partic. stem ( <i>laedtus</i> ) =	<i>laesus</i> , -a, -um
<i>claudio, shut</i> , " " ( <i>claudtus</i> ) =	<i>clausus</i> , -a, -um
<i>flecto, bend</i> , " " { <i>flecttus</i> } =	<i>flexus</i> , -a, -um
	{ <i>flectus</i> }

IV. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the stem becomes *s*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>cēdo, yield</i> , partic. stem ( <i>cedtus</i> ) =	<i>cessus</i> , -a, -um
<i>mitto, send</i> , " " ( <i>mittus</i> ) =	<i>missus</i> , -a, -um

V. *b* is sometimes assimilated, and *tt* becomes *ss* or *s*.

## EXAMPLE.

*jūbeo, command*, partic. st. (*jūbtus* = *jut-tus*) = *jussus*, -a, -um

VI. Verbs with present stem ending in *ll*, *rr*, change the participial suffix *-t-* to *-s-*, and drop *l* or *r* of the stem.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>fallo, deceive</i> , partic. st. ( <i>falltus</i> = <i>falsus</i> ) =	<i>falsus</i> , -a, -um
<i>curro, run</i> , " ( <i>currtus</i> = <i>cur-sus</i> ) =	<i>cursus</i> , -a, -um

NOTE 1. The verb-stem is *fal-*; *fallo* = *falio* (*faljo*); *cur-*, *curio* (*curjo*).

NOTE 2. In enumerating the principal parts of the verb, we give the neuter of the perfect participle.

## EXAMPLES.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>dīco</i>	<i>dīc-ēre</i>	<i>dīxi</i>	<i>dīctum</i>

Learn the principal parts of the following verbs, and account for the euphonic changes:—

vīvo	vīvēre	vīxī	victum, live.
dūco	dūcere	dūxī	ductum, lead.
dīvido	dīvidere	dīvisī	dīvīsum, divide.
lūdo	lūdere	lūsī	lūsum, play.
cāno	cānere	cēcīnī	—, sing.
lēgo	lēgere	lēgī	lectum, read.

### 184. Two Accusatives with one Verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesārem sententiam rōgāvit**, he asked *Cæsar* (his) opinion.
2. **Caesar Aeduōs frumentum flāgitāvit**, *Cæsar* demanded corn of the *Ædui*.
3. **Tītus rēgem sermōnem cēlāvit**, *Titus* concealed the conversation from the king.
4. **Caesar sententiam ā consule rōgātus est**, *Cæsar* was asked his opinion by the consul.
5. **pācem ab Rōmānīs pētit**, he seeks peace from the Romans.

Obs. Note that in Exs. 1, 2, and 3 the verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *concealing*, are in the active voice, and are followed by two accusatives, one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*. In Ex. 4 the verb of *asking* is in the passive voice, and the accusative of the person in the active becomes the subject in the passive. In Ex. 5 the person after a verb of *asking* (*pētit*) is put in the ablative with a preposition. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

#### TWO ACCUSATIVES. — PERSON AND THING.

**185. RULE XIX.**— Verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, *teaching*, and *concealing* take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing.

1. The accusative of the *thing* may remain with the passive voice of verbs of *teaching*, and also with *rōgo*.

2. *Pēto* and *postūlo* generally take the accusative of the *thing* and the ablative of the *person* with *ā* or *ab*; *quaero*, the accusative of the *thing* and the ablative of the *person* with *ē*, *ex*, *ā*, *ab*, or *de*.

SYN. *Pēto*, to beg, *rōgo*, to ask, are general terms for either a request or a demand; *postūlo*, to demand as a right; *flāgitō*, to demand with earnestness; *posco*, to ask as a right, as a price, or salary.



## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Ductī ērant, missus est, cinctī sunt. 2. Victī sunt.  
3. Puērī ā māgistrō mōnītī ērant. 4. Castra vallō cincta<sup>1</sup>  
sunt. 5. Exercitus Rōmānus ab Helvētiīs sub jūgum missus  
est. 6. Nuntīi ad exercitum nostrum missī sunt. 7. Rēx et  
rēgīna omnibus<sup>2</sup> cārī<sup>3</sup> fuērunt. 8. Caesar omnia consilia  
Aeduōs cēlat. 9. Consul Caesārem sententiam rōgābat.

Translate into Latin : —

1. They have been led, they have been sent. 2. He has  
been sent, we have been sent, he had been sent. 3. You  
shall have been sent. 4. The city has been surrounded by  
a wall. 5. The Helvetians have been sent. 6. We have  
been conquered, we had been conquered, we shall have been  
conquered. 7. He was sent, he will be sent, he has been  
sent, he had been sent. 8. We shall not be conquered by  
the enemy. 9. They asked Titus his opinion. 10. Cæsar  
concealed his plans from the Helvetians. 11. The Helvetians  
seek peace from Cæsar.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Neuter plural.
2. Dative after cārī.
3. Masculine by preference.

## LESSON LII.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—  
ACCUSATIVE OF THE SAME PERSON.

**186.** The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs that have  
*i* long before *-re* in the present infinitive. The present stem  
is found by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive.

## EXAMPLE.

PRES. IND.  
audio, hear.

PRES. INF.  
audire

PRES. STEM.  
audī-

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses, Indicative Active, are formed by adding the verbal endings to the present stem.

**PARTIAL PARADIGM.**

[The personal endings and the tense signs are the same as in the first and second conjugations, except in the future, where the characteristic vowel of the stem becomes *a* or *ē*. The third person plural indicative is **audiunt**, not **audi-nt**.]

PRESENT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + o	<b>audio</b>	<i>I hear.</i>
2	" " + s	<b>audīs</b>	<i>Thou hearest.</i>
3	" " + t	<b>audit</b>	<i>He hears.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	<b>audīmus</b>	<i>We hear.</i>
2	" " + tis	<b>audītis</b>	<i>You hear.</i>
3	" " + unt	<b>audiunt</b>	<i>They hear.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + bam	<b>audiēbam</b>	<i>I was hearing.</i>
2	" " + bās	<b>audiēbās</b>	<i>Thou wast hearing.</i>
3	" " + bat	<b>audiēbat</b>	<i>He was hearing.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + bamus	<b>audiēbāmus</b>	<i>We were hearing.</i>
2	" " + bātis	<b>audiēbātis</b>	<i>You were hearing.</i>
3	" " + bant	<b>audiēbant</b>	<i>They were hearing.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + m	<b>audiam</b>	<i>I shall or will hear.</i>
2	" " + s	<b>audiēs</b>	<i>Thou wilt hear.</i>
3	" " + t	<b>audiet</b>	<i>He will hear.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + mus	<b>audiēmus</b>	<i>We shall or will hear.</i>
2	" " + tis	<b>audiētis</b>	<i>You will hear.</i>
3	" " + nt	<b>audient</b>	<i>They will hear.</i>

**187. Two Accusatives of the Same Person.**

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **Caesārem consūlem creāvērunt**, *they elected Cæsar consul.*
2. **consūlēs creantur Caesar et Servilius**, *Cæsar and Servilius are elected consuls.*
3. **Rōmūlus urbem Rōmam vōcāvit**, *Romulus called the city Rome.*
4. **urbs Rōma ā Rōmūlo vōcāta est**.

OBS. In the foregoing examples, note that the verbs of *electing, calling, choosing, making, etc.*, are followed by two accusatives of the *same person or thing*; one accusative is the direct object of the verb, and the other is an essential part of the predicate, and is called the **PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE**. (In **Exs. 2 and 4** *consulēs* and *Rōma* are predicate nominatives after *creantur* and *vōcata est*.) The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

**TWO ACCUSATIVES OF THE SAME PERSON OR THING.**

**188. RULE XX.**—Verbs of *naming, calling, choosing, making, reckoning, regarding, esteeming, showing, and the like*, take two accusatives of the same person or thing.

**VOCABULARY.**

Form the infinitives of the following verbs of the fourth conjugation:—

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <i>mūnio, fortify.</i>  | 4. <i>pūnio, punish.</i> |
| 2. <i>vēnio, come.</i>     | 5. <i>dormio, sleep.</i> |
| 3. <i>ērūdio, educate.</i> | 6. <i>finio, finish.</i> |

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. *Audīmus, audiēmus.* 2. *Erūdit, ērūdient.* 3. *Mūnitis, mūniēs.* 4. *Mīlītēs impērātōrem audiunt.* 5. *Pūnīmus puērūm.* 6. *Mīlītēs castra mūniunt.* 7. *Puer dormiēbat.* 8. *Pūniēmus.* 9. *Caesar in Galliam citēriōrem vēnit.* 10. *Rōmānī suam<sup>1</sup> urbem Rōmam appellāvērunt.* 11. *Oppīdum appellat Gēnāvam.* 12. *Caesar oppīdum virtūte<sup>2</sup> suōrum mīlītum expūgnāvit.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. They hear, they were hearing, they will hear. 2. He fortifies the town. 3. They will punish the boys. 4. He sleeps, you sleep, they sleep. 5. The Romans call their city Rome. 6. The soldiers hear. 7. We come. 8. They punish the boy. 9. The soldiers are fortifying their<sup>3</sup> camp. 10. He will punish the boy. 11. The soldiers were fortifying their camp.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. When **suis** refers to a noun in the plural, as is the case in this sentence, render it *their*; when it refers to a noun in the singular, render it *his, her, or its*.

2. *By means of*, etc. Why ablative?

3. *Their* can be omitted in translating.

What are the personal endings of the present? What is the present stem of **audio**? What is a predicate accusative? How many conjugations? How do you distinguish each? What is the present stem of each? How found?

## LESSON LIII.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE.—  
THE SUBJECTIVE AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

**189.** The Perfect Stem of a regular verb of the fourth conjugation is formed by adding *-vī* to the present stem.

## EXAMPLE.

PRESENT.	PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PERFECT.
<b>audio, hear.</b>	<b>audi-</b>	<b>audivī-</b>	<b>audivī</b>

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active are inflected as follows:—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings, the tense signs, the formation, and the changes of the characteristic vowel of the stem are the same as in the first, second, and third conjugations.]

PERFECT AND AORIST.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<b>Perf. stem</b>	<b>audivī</b>	<i>I have heard.</i>	<i>I heard.</i>
2	“ + <b>stī</b>	<b>audivistī</b>	<i>Thou hast heard.</i>	<i>Thou didst hear.</i>
3	“ + <b>t</b>	<b>audivit</b>	<i>He has heard.</i>	<i>He heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	“ + <b>mus</b>	<b>audivimus</b>	<i>We have heard.</i>	<i>We heard.</i>
2	“ + <b>stis</b>	<b>audivistis</b>	<i>You have heard.</i>	<i>You heard.</i>
3	“ { + <b>runt</b> or <b>re</b>	<b>audivērunt</b> or <b>audivēre</b>	<i>They have heard.</i>	<i>They heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ram	audivēram	<i>I had heard.</i>
2	" " + rās	audivērās	<i>Thou hadst heard.</i>
3	" " + rat	audivērat	<i>He had heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + rāmus	audivērāmus	<i>We had heard.</i>
2	" " + rātis	audivērātis	<i>You had heard.</i>
3	" " + rant	audivērant	<i>They had heard.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Perf. stem + ěro	audivĕro	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
2	" " + ěris	audivĕris	<i>Thou wilt have heard.</i>
3	" " + ěrit	audivĕrit	<i>He will have heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + ěrimus	audivĕrimus	<i>We will have heard.</i>
2	" " + ěritis	audivĕritis	<i>You will have heard.</i>
3	" " + ěrunt	audivĕrint	<i>They will have heard.</i>

## 2. Synopsis of Rules for Forming the Perfect Stem : —

1. Most Vowel Stems (55.3) form the perfect stem by adding *-vī* (*-uī*) to the characteristic vowel of the present stem : as, *āmo*, *āmāvī*; *dāleo*, *dālēvī*; *mōneo*, *mōnūī*; *audio*, *audīvī*.

2. Most Consonant Stems form the perfect stem by adding *-ī* to the verb-stem : as, *dūco*, *dūxī*; *tēgo*, *tēxī*.

3. Many Labial and Lingual Stems, and a few others, form the perfect stem by adding *-uī* to the verb-stem : as, *dōmo*, *dōmūī*; *ālo*, *ālūī*; *tēneo*, *tēnūī*.

4. A few Consonant Stems form the perfect stem simply by adding *-ī* to the verb-stem (this is the case when the stem vowel is long by nature or by position) : as, *accendo*, *accendī*; *verto*, *vertī*; *prēhendo*, *prēhendī*.

5. The Perfect Stem is sometimes formed by reduplication and by adding *-ī* to the verb-stem (the stem vowel *a* is generally weakened to *i*, but before *r* to *e*) : as, *cādo*, *cēcīdī*; *tondeo*, *tōtondī*; *cāno*, *cēcīnī*; *pārio*, *pēpērī*.

6. Some verbs lengthen the stem vowel and add *-ī* to form the perfect (that is, the reduplication disappears and the vowel is lengthened) : as, *lēgo* (*lē-līgī* = *lē-īg-ī* = *lēgī*), *lēgī*; *fācio* (*fē-fīc-ī* = *fē-īc-ī* = *fēcī*), *fēcī*; *cāpio*, *cēpī*; *āgo*, *ēgī*.

Oss. The *v* is often dropped and the syllable contracted; as, *āmā(v)erat* = *āmārat*, *audī(v)erat* = *audīerat*.

## 190. Subjective, Possessive, and Objective Genitives.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **oppīdum Rēmōrum**, a town of (i.e., belonging to) the Remi.
2. **Divītiacī stūdiū**, the zeal of Divitiacus (i.e., the zeal that Divitiacus manifests).
3. **āmor glōriae**, love of glory (i.e., a desire to obtain glory).
4. **tīmor hostiū crescit**, fear of the enemy (i.e., fear towards the enemy, not fear experienced by the enemy) increases.

OBS. In the first example, note that the genitive designates the possessor; it is called the *possessive genitive*. In Ex. 2 the genitive designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action or feeling; it is called the *subjective genitive*. In Exs. 3 and 4 the genitive designates the *object* towards which the action or feeling is directed; it is called the *objective genitive*. Hence the qualifying genitive may be —

1. A POSSESSIVE GENITIVE, denoting the *author* or the *possessor*; as, **Caesaris prōvincia**, *Cæsar's province*.
2. A SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE, denoting the *subject* or *agent* of the action or feeling; as, **āmor Deī**, *the love of God* (i.e., the love which He feels).
3. AN OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, denoting the *object* of the action or feeling; as, **āmor Deī**, *love to* (i.e., towards) *God*.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Pūnīvit, pūnīverat, pūnīverit.    2. Audīveram, audīverō.
3. Mīlītēs castra mūnīverant.    4. Pūnīvimus puērum.
5. Ērūdīvī, ērūdīvit, ērūdīvīstī, ērūdīveram.    6. Puērī<sup>1</sup> librum tēnēs.
7. Lēgātus consīlia Gallōrum ēnuntiat.

Translate into Latin: —

1. We have heard, we heard, we had heard, we shall have heard.
2. They have punished, they had punished, they will have punished.
3. He has slept.
4. We fortify, we have fortified, we had fortified, we shall have fortified.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Why genitive?

What is meant by the possessive genitive? Give the rule for the genitive after nouns. What is the objective genitive? How is the perfect stem of verbs of the fourth conjugation formed?

## LESSON LIV.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—  
DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

**191.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive are inflected as follows :—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings and tense signs are the same as in the first and second conjugations, except in the future, when the characteristic vowel of the stem becomes *a* or *e*.]

PRESENT PASSIVE.			
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + <i>or</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>I am (being) heard.</i>
2	" " + <i>ris</i> or <i>re</i>	<i>audiris, -re</i>	<i>Thou art heard.</i>
3	" " + <i>tur</i>	<i>auditur</i>	<i>He is heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + <i>mur</i>	<i>audimur</i>	<i>We are heard.</i>
2	" " + <i>mini</i>	<i>audimini</i>	<i>You are heard.</i>
3	" " + <i>untur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>	<i>They are heard.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + <i>bar</i>	<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>I was (being) heard.</i>
2	" " + <i>bāris, re</i>	<i>audiēbāris, -re</i>	<i>Thou wast heard.</i>
3	" " + <i>bātur</i>	<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>He was heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + <i>bāmur</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>	<i>We were heard.</i>
2	" " + <i>bāmini</i>	<i>audiēbāmini</i>	<i>You were heard.</i>
3	" " + <i>bantur</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>	<i>They were heard.</i>
FUTURE.			
<i>Sing.</i> 1	Pres. stem + <i>r</i>	<i>audiar</i>	<i>I shall be heard.</i>
2	" " + <i>ris</i> or <i>re</i>	<i>audiēris, -re</i>	<i>Thou wilt be heard.</i>
3	" " + <i>tur</i>	<i>audiētur</i>	<i>He will be heard.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	" " + <i>mur</i>	<i>audiēmur</i>	<i>We shall be heard.</i>
2	" " + <i>mini</i>	<i>audiēmini</i>	<i>You will be heard.</i>
3	" " + <i>ntur</i>	<i>audientur</i>	<i>They will be heard.</i>

## 192. Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **haec sententia puērō placet, illa displicet, this opinion pleases the boy, that displeases (him).**
2. **militis est dūci pārere, it is the duty of a soldier to obey the leader.**
3. **fortūna fāvet fortibus, fortune favors the brave.**

Obs. We have already learned that the dative is the case of the indirect object, and is used to express the person or thing *to* or *for* whom or which anything is done. In the sentence, *I send the book to the boy*, *boy* in Latin must be in the dative, as **mitto librum puērō**; but in the sentence *Caesar comes to the city*, *city* in Latin is not dative,—a preposition must be used, as **Caesar ad urbem vēnit**. In the foregoing examples, note that the verbs are intransitive; that they signify *to favor*, *to please*, *to obey*, etc.; that they are followed by the dative generally without the sign *to* or *for*. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

## DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

**193. RULE XXI.**—The dative of the indirect object may be used with most intransitive verbs signifying *to favor*, *please*, *trust*, *assist*, and their contraries; also, *to believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *threaten*, *spare*, *pardon*, *be angry*.

1. Some verbs which, from their signification, might be included in the foregoing lists are transitive, and take the accusative; as, **jūvo, adjūvo, to help**, **laedo, to injure**, **dēlecto, to delight**, **offendo, to offend**, and **jūbeo, to command**.

2. Verbs compounded with **sātis, bōne, māle**, take the dative.

## EXAMPLE.

**illis sātisfacere, to satisfy them, lit. to do enough for them.**

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Mūniēbantur, pūniēris, pūniuntur.**
2. **Audītur, audiēbantur, audiētur.**
3. **Castra ā Lābiēnō<sup>1</sup> mūniēbantur.**
4. **Bellum ā Caesāre finiēbātur.**
5. **Militēs castra<sup>2</sup> mūniēbant.**
6. **Māli puērī ā māgistrō pūniuntur.**
7. **Imprōbi<sup>3</sup> ā māgistrātibus pūniuntur.**
8. **Caesar bellum fīnit.**
9. **Bellum**



ā Caesāre finītur. 10. Parce puērō. 11. Prōbus<sup>8</sup> invīdet nēmīnī.<sup>4</sup> 12. Mālēdicimus mālīs.<sup>3</sup>

Translate into Latin : —

1. He will be heard, they will be heard, they were (being) heard, they are (being) heard. 2. The soldiers fortify the camp. 3. The camp is fortified by the soldiers. 4. The war is (being) finished, the war will be finished, the wars were (being) finished. 5. The boys are (being) punished, the boys will be punished, the boys were (being) punished by the master. 6. The soldiers obey the leader.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. See 172. 2. See 80. 2. 3. Used as a noun; see 83. 4.

4. The genitive and ablative of *nullus* are used instead of *nēmīnis* and *nēmīne*.

What is the passive voice? In what case is the agent after a verb in the passive voice? What are the principal parts of a verb in the passive voice?

### LESSON LV.

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.

**194.** The Participial Stem of the fourth conjugation is formed by adding *-to*, nom. *-tus* (or *-so*, nom. *-sus*), to the present stem.

#### EXAMPLE.

PRES. IND.	PRES. STEM.	PERF. STEM.	PARTIC. STEM.
audio, hear.	audi-	audivī-	audīto-

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

##### ACTIVE VOICE.

PRESENT.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.	(NEUTER OF) PERF. PARTIC.
audio	audire	audivī	audītum

##### PASSIVE VOICE.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT.
audior	audiri	audītus, -a, -um sum

1. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive are all formed by adding to the perfect participle the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the verb *sum*.

#### PARTIAL PARADIGM.

[The personal endings, tense signs, the changes of the characteristic vowel of the stem, and the formation, are the same as in the other conjugations.]

PERFECT AND AORIST PASSIVE.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
			Perfect.	Aorist.
	Verb-stem —			
Sing. 1	+ tus sum	auditus sum	I have	I was heard.
2	+ tus es	auditus es	Thou hast	Thou wast heard.
3	+ tus est	auditus est	He has	He was heard.
Plur. 1	+ tī sūmus	audītī sūmus	We have	We were heard.
2	+ tī estis	audītī estis	You have	You were heard.
3	+ tī sunt	audītī sunt	They have	They were heard.
PLUPERFECT PASSIVE.				
Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.	
	Verb-stem —			
Sing. 1	+ tus ēram	auditus ēram	I had been heard.	
2	+ tus ērās	auditus ērās	Thou hadst been heard.	
3	+ tus ērat	auditus ērat	He had been heard.	
Plur. 1	+ tī ērāmus	audītī ērāmus	We had been heard.	
2	+ tī ērātis	audītī ērātis	You had been heard.	
3	+ tī ērant	audītī ērant	They had been heard.	
FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.				
Sing. 1	+ tus ēro	auditus ēro	I shall have been heard.	
2	+ tus ēris	auditus ēris	Thou wilt have been heard.	
3	+ tus ērit	auditus ērit	He will have been heard.	
Plur. 1	+ tī ērimus	audītī ērimus	We shall have been heard.	
2	+ tī ēritis	audītī ēritis	You will have been heard.	
3	+ tī ērunt	audītī ērunt	They will have been heard.	

2. The Participial Stem of verbs of all four conjugations is generally formed by adding *-to* (euphonically *-so*), nom. *-tus* (or *-sus*), to the present stem.

**195. Accusative and Ablative of Time.****EXAMPLES.**

1. *primō annō occisus est, he was killed in the first year.*
2. *multōs annōs mānēbit, he will remain many years.*

Obs. In Ex. 1 note that *annō* answers the question *when? within what time?* In Ex. 2 *annōs* answers the question *how long?* This Latin idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

**ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.**

**196. RULE XXII.**—Time *when, or within which, is put in the ablative; time how long, in the accusative.*

1. The use of the preposition *in* with the ablative, and *per* with the accusative, in order to express the time with greater precision, is common.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *in diēbus prōximis dēcem, WITHIN the next ten days.*
2. *per annōs viginti certātum est, the war was waged FOR twenty years.*

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. *Erūditi sunt.* 2. *Pūnītus ērat.* 3. *Audītī ērant.*
4. *Puer pūnītus est.* 5. *Puer ā māgistrō pūnītus ērat.*
6. *Bellum finītum ērit.* 7. *Castra ā Caesāre mūnīta erant.*
8. *Proximā nocte castra mōvit.* 9. *Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra rēdūxit.* 10. *Multās hōrās pūgnāvērunt.* 11. *Multōs annōs bellum gērēbant.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. He has been heard, he had been heard, he shall have been heard.
2. They hear the boy.
3. The teacher punishes the boy.
4. The boy has been punished by the teacher.
5. The wars will have been finished.
6. Cæsar fortifies the camp.
7. The camp has been fortified by Cæsar.
8. On the next day he fortifies the camp.
9. The soldiers have fought many hours.
10. He has lived many years.

## LESSON LVI.

THIRD CONJUGATION. — VERBS IN *-io*.

**197.** A few verbs of the third conjugation ending in *-io*, *-ior* (passive), are inflected in the tenses formed from the present stem like the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has *i* followed by a vowel.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.							
cāpio cāpere cēpi captum		cāpior cāpi captus sum					
<i>Active.</i>		<i>PRESENT.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>			
Indicative.		Subjunctive.		Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
cāpio		cāpīam		cāpior		cāpiar	
cāpis		cāpiās		cāpēris (re)		cāpiāris (re)	
cāpit		cāpiat		cāpītur		cāpiātur	
cāpīmus		cāpiāmus		cāpīmur		cāpiāmur	
cāpītis		cāpiātis		cāpīminī		cāpiāminī	
cāpiunt		cāpīant		cāpiuntur		cāpiantur	
IMPERFECT.							
cāpiēbam		cāpērem		cāpiēbar		cāpērer	
FUTURE.							
cāpīam		cāpiēmus		cāpiar		cāpiēmur	
cāpiēs		cāpiētis		cāpiāris (re)		cāpiēminī	
cāpiet		cāpient		cāpiētur		cāpientur	
PERF. cēpi		cēperim		captus sum		captus sim	
PLUP. cēpēram		cēpisse		captus eram		captus essem	
F. P. cēpēro				captus ero			
IMP. cāpe		cāpite		cāpere		cāpīminī	
cāpito		cāpitōte		cāpitor		—	
cāpito		cāpiunto		cāpitor		cāpiuntor	
INF. cāpere		cēpisse		cāpi		captus esse	
FUT. captūrus esse				captum iri			
PART. cāpiēns		captūrus		cāptus		cāpiendus	
GER. cāpiendī, -dō, -dum				SUP. captum, captū			

## VOCABULARY.

cūpio	cūpēre	cūplvī	cūpltum, <i>desire.</i>
fācio	fācēre	fācl	factum, <i>make, do.</i>
fōdio	fōdēre	fōdl	fossam, <i>dig.</i>
fūgio	fūgēre	fūgl	fūgitum, <i>flee.</i>
jācio	jācēre	jācl	jactum, <i>throw, hurl.</i>
pārio	pārēre	pāpl	partum, <i>bring forth.</i>
quātio	quātēre	(no perf.)	quassum, <i>shake.</i>
rāpio	rāpēre	rāpl	raptum, <i>seize.</i>
sāpio	sāpēre	sāplvī	—, <i>taste.</i>

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Fūgiunt, fūgiēbant, fūgient, fūgiant.
2. Jācit, jāciēbat, jāciet, jāciat.
3. Cāpimur, cāpiēbāmur, cāpiēmur, cāpiāmur.
4. Mīlītēs arma cāpiunt.
5. Arma ā mīlītibus cāpiuntur.
6. Vir fossam fōdit.
7. Fossa ā vīrō fōdītur.
8. Mīlītēs lāpīdēs ac tēla cōnciēbant.<sup>1</sup>
9. Lāpīdēs ac tēla ā mīlītibus coniecta ērant.
10. Fūgīte, mīlītēs, in urbem.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Written also *conciēbant*.

When does a verb in *-io* keep the *i*? What is the verb-stem of *cāpio*? *Ans.* The verb-stem of *cāpio* is *cāp-*; the present stem is formed by adding *-i-* (= *jo* = *io*) to the verb-stem. Inflect the present of *cāpio*; of *jācio*. The compounds of *jācio* are written and pronounced as follows: (*ex* + *jācio*) = *ēicio*, pronounced as if written *ē-yicio*; so also *abicio* (= *ab* + *jācio*) = *abyicio*, etc.

## LESSON LVII.

## USES OF THE DATIVE.

## DATIVE OF INTEREST.—DATIVE OF PURPOSE.

OBS. We have learned that the dative may be used with transitive or intransitive verbs; the datives with these verbs are essential to the completion of the sense, and are usually so closely connected with their verbs that they could not be omitted. The dative is

often merely added to a sentence, which would make complete sense without it, for the purpose of designating the person or thing interested in the action of the verb, or affected by it. This use of the dative, called *dative of interest*, may be stated as follows:—

### 198. Dative of Interest.

1. The dative of *advantage* and *disadvantage*.
2. The dative of *possessor*.
3. The dative of *apparent agent* with perfect participles and gerundives (this dative designates the person interested in doing the action, and not *merely* the agent).
4. The dative of *reference* (this dative depends not on a single word, but is loosely connected with the whole predicate, and merely designates the *person* or *thing with reference* to whom or which the action is done).
5. The *dative* used where the English idiom would lead us to expect the *genitive*.
6. The dative of *purpose* or *end*, denoting the object or end for which something is or is done.

#### DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR END.

**199. RULE XXIII.**—The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end, usually with another dative of the person or thing affected or interested.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *dōmus dōmīnis aedificāta est, nōn mūrībus*, a house is built for its owners, not for the mice. (See 198. 1.)
2. *mīhī est amīcus*, I have a friend, lit. there is a friend to me (emphasizes the fact of possession; see 198. 2).
3. *vīrtūs nōbis colenda est*, we have virtue to cultivate. (198. 3.)
4. *tēgīmenta gāleīs mīlītēs faciēre iubet*, he orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets. *Gāleīs* depends on *tēgīmenta faciēre* rather than on *faciēre* alone. (See 198. 4.)
5. *lēgātī Caesārī ad pedēs prōiciunt*, the ambassadors threw themselves at Cæsar's feet, lit. to Cæsar at his feet. (198. 5.)
6. *sānāvit mīhī filium*, he cured my son, out of regard to me; *sānāvit filium meum*, he cured my son, not caring whose son. (See 198. 5.)

7. *māgnō ūsuf nostris fuit, it was of great service to our men.*  
(See 198. 6.)

8. *tertiā āciem nostris subsidiō mīsit, he sent the third line as a relief to our men.* (See 198. 6.)

Obs. Note that the dative of purpose takes the place of the complement, *i.e.*, it is a predicate dative. The two datives (*purpose* with another dative) occur after only a few verbs, such as *esse* and verbs of *giving, coming, sending, leaving*, and a few others.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. *Nōn schōlae, sed vītae discimus.* 2. *Virtūtēs hōmīnibus dēcōrī glōriaēque sunt.* 3. *Caesar milītēs castris praesidiō relinquit.* 4. *Lēgiōnēs praesidiō impēdimentis ērant.* 5. *Lēgātus ēquitātum auxiliō Caesarī mīserat.* 6. *Caesar tertiam āciem nostris subsidiō mīsit.*

Translate into Latin : —

1. *Cæsar sent the cavalry as an aid to the soldiers.*  
2. *He sent the third line for a protection to the baggage.*  
3. *Do not trust fortune.* 4. *He gave the book to (his) friend.* 5. *Cæsar did not trust the Gauls.* 6. *The Gauls desire a revolution.*

## LESSON LVIII.

## PREPOSITIONS.

**200.** Prepositions show the Relation between a Noun or Pronoun and some other word.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative :

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>ad, to, towards, at</i> (opposite of <i>ab</i> ).  | 5. <i>circā, -um, -iter, around, about</i> ( <i>circiter</i> is used chiefly with numerals). |
| 2. <i>adversus, -um, against, towards.</i>   | 6. <i>cis, cītrā, on this side.</i>  |
| 3. <i>ante, before.</i>  | 7. <i>contrā, against.</i>   |
| 4. <i>apud</i> (chiefly of persons), <i>near, at, with, at the house of, in the writings of.</i> | 8. <i>ergā, towards</i> (usually of friendly relations).                                     |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9. <i>extrā</i> , outside, beyond.       | 19. <i>praeter</i> , past, besides.                   |
| 10. <i>infrā</i> , below, under.         | 20. <i>prōpe</i> , near.                              |
| 11. <i>inter</i> , between, among.       | 21. <i>propter</i> , on account of.                   |
| 12. <i>intrā</i> , within.               | 22. <i>secundum</i> , following, after, according to. |
| 13. <i>juxtā</i> , next to.              | 23. <i>suprā</i> , above.                             |
| 14. <i>ob</i> , for, on account of.      | 24. <i>trans</i> , across, on the other side.         |
| 15. <i>pēnes</i> , in the power of.      | 25. <i>ultrā</i> , beyond.                            |
| 16. <i>per</i> , through, by the aid of. | 26. <i>versus</i> , towards (placed after noun).      |
| 17. <i>pōne</i> , behind.                |   |
| 18. <i>post</i> , behind, after, since.  |   |

2. Ten prepositions are followed by the ablative : —

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>ā</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>abs</i> , from, after, by.         | 6. <i>ē</i> , <i>ex</i> , out of, from.                        |
| 2. <i>absque</i> , but, for, without (rare in classic authors). | 7. <i>prae</i> , before, in comparison with.                   |
| 3. <i>cōram</i> , in presence of.                               | 8. <i>prō</i> , before, for, instead of.                       |
| 4. <i>cum</i> , with.   | 9. <i>sine</i> , without.                                      |
| 5. <i>dē</i> , down from, from, concerning.                     | 10. <i>tēnus</i> , up to, as far as (sometimes with genitive). |

3. The following four prepositions are followed by the accusative when *motion to a place* is implied ; by the ablative when *rest in a place* is implied : —

- in**, denoting *motion to a place*, INTO with accusative ; *rest in a place*, IN with ablative.
- sub**, denoting *motion to a place*, UNDER with accusative ; *rest in a place*, UNDER with ablative.
- super**, denoting *motion to a place*, ABOVE with accusative ; *rest in a place*, ABOVE with ablative.
- supter (subter)**, denoting *motion to a place*, UNDER with accusative ; *rest in a place*, UNDER with ablative.

OBS. 1. *Tēnus* (with abl.), like *versus* (with acc.), is placed after its case ; and *cum* is annexed to the ablative of the personal and relative pronouns.

OBS. 2. *Ā* and *ē* are used before consonants ; *ab* and *ex* before vowels and consonants.

## 201. The Use of Prepositions.

We have learned (81. n. 2) that a preposition with its object is a *prepositional phrase* (or *adjunct*). Such a phrase enables us to ex-



press an idea more distinctly: as, *Cæsar came there*; if we substitute *into Gaul* for *there*, the sentence reads *Cæsar came into Gaul*, expressing the thought with greater precision than with the adverb alone. The preposition with its object, *into Gaul*, or *in Galliam*, is a phrase modifying the verb.

The pupil should gradually commit the lists of prepositions to memory.

## 202. Dative with Verbs Compounded with a Preposition.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *dux suis militibus adërat*, the leader was assisting his soldiers.
2. *Caesar Galliae praefuit*, Cæsar ruled over Gaul.
3. *Caesar interfuit pūgnæ*, Cæsar was present in the battle.

Obs. Verbs compounded with certain prepositions govern the dative, when they acquire a meaning from the preposition which calls for the dative. When the simple verb is transitive, the compound may take both the dative and the accusative: as, *jungere*, to join, takes the accusative; but *adjungere*, to join to, takes the dative also; when the verb is intransitive, it takes the dative only. Hence the following rule:—

### DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS.

**203. RULE XXIV.**—The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *pro*, *sub*, and *super*, and sometimes *circum*.

### VOCABULARY.

*Aquitània*, f., *Aquitania*, a province in Southern Gaul.

*Pyrænaei*, -ōrum, m. pl., the Pyrenees.

*pertineo*, *pertinere*, *pertinui*, stretch.

*specto*, *spectare*, *spectavi*, *spectatum*, look at.

*septentrionēs*, -ōnum, m., the north.

*divido*, *dividere*, *divisi*, *divisum*, separate, divide.

*dives*, -itis, rich.

*incolo*, -colere, -colui,<sup>2</sup> —, inhabit, dwell.

*contendo*, *contendere*, *contendi*, *contentum*, contend, hasten.

*pervenio*, *pervenire*, *perveni*, *perventum*, arrive at.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Aquitānia ā Gārumnā flūmine<sup>3</sup> ad Pŷrēnaeōs pertinet.
2. Apud Helvētiōs nobilissimos et dītissimos fuit Orgētōrix.
3. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Gārumna flūmen dividit. 4. Germānī trans Rhēnum incolunt. 5. Spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs Aquitānia.<sup>4</sup> 6. Caesar hibernis Lābiēnum praepōsuit. 7. Belgae ad infēriōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinent. 8. Caesar in Itāliam māgnis itinēribus<sup>5</sup> contendit. 9. Apud<sup>6</sup> Cicerōnem lēgimus. 10. Militēs omnēs in oppidum irrumpunt.<sup>7</sup>

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Commit to memory the prepositions that always require the ablative.

2. No participial stem.

3. How is **flūmine** parsed ?

4. Subject of **spectat**.

5. Why ablative ?

6. **Apud** is used with names of authors (instead of **in**, with the name of the work). Translate, *we read in Cicero*.

7. Most of the prepositions enumerated above are often used as prefixes in composition with verbs, and modify their meaning: as, **pōnēre**, *to place*; **post-pōnēre**, *to place after*. A few prepositions are never used alone, but always occur in composition: —

**amb-**, *round, about*; as, **ambīre**, *to walk around*.

**con-**, *together*; as, **conjungere**, *to join together*.

**dis-**, *asunder*; as, **discēdere**, *to depart*.

**in-**, with adjectives and verbs, means *not, un-*; as **indoctus**, *unlearned*; **ignosco** *not to know*.

**re-** or **red-**, *back, again*; as, **reficere**, *to make again, refit*.

**se-**, *aside*; as **seducere**, *to lead astray*.

**ve-**, *not* (serves to negative the positive idea in the word with which it is compounded, or intensifies it); **vegrandis**, *not large*.

When do **in** and **sub** require the accusative ? How does the use of **ā** differ from **ab** ? When is *to* the sign of the dative ? When must it be translated by **ad** ?

## LESSON LIX.

## CLASSES OF CONJUNCTIONS.

**204.** Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or clauses; they are divided into two general classes, COÖRDINATE and SUBORDINATE.

1. *Coördinate Conjunctions* connect words, phrases, or clauses of the same rank.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *lūna et stella fulgēbant*, the moon and the stars were shining.
2. *puēri stūdent et puellae lūdunt*, the boys study and the girls play.
3. *puēri puellaeque lūdunt*, the boys and the girls are playing.
4. *militēs atque impērātor*, the soldiers and the commander too.

I. *Coördinate Conjunctions.*

**205.** The Coördinate Conjunctions comprise —

1. Copulative Conjunctions, denoting *union*: *as*, *et*, *and*; *-que* (enclitic), *and*; *atque*, *and*; *ac*, *and*; *et . . . et*, *both . . . and*; *nec*, *neque*, *and not*; *neque . . . neque*, *nec . . . nec*, *neither . . . nor*.

## EXAMPLE.

*His father is dead, and his friends have deserted him.*

2. Disjunctive Conjunctions, denoting *separation*: *as*, *aut*, *vel*, *or*; *aut . . . aut*, *vel . . . vel*, *either . . . or*.

## EXAMPLE.

*Either his father is dead or his friends have deserted him.*

3. Adversative Conjunctions, denoting *opposition*: *as*, *sed*, *autem*, *vērūm*, *vērō*, *but*; *at*, *but*, *on the contrary*.

## EXAMPLE.

*His father has abandoned him, but his friends have not.*

4. Illative (inferential or conclusive) Conjunctions, denoting *inference*: *as*, *ergō*, *igitur*, *itāque*, *therefore*.

## EXAMPLE.

*His father has abandoned him, therefore his friends will.*

5. Causal Conjunctions, denoting *cause*: **as**, **nam**, **namque**, **enim**, **et̄nim**, **for**.

**EXAMPLE.**

*His friends will abandon him, for his father has done so.*

## II. Subordinate Conjunctions.

**Obs.** A subordinate clause is so united to another clause (or clauses) as to be *dependent* on it; as, *the messenger departed when he was sent*. Here *the messenger departed* is the principal, or leading clause; *when he was sent* modifies *departed*, and is the subordinate clause. Dependent clauses perform the office of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, and hence are called *noun*, *adjective*, or *adverb clauses*; they are often named from the subordinate conjunctions by which they are introduced. (See 317.)

**206.** The Subordinate Conjunctions comprise —

1. Temporal, denoting *time*; as, **cum**, **when**.
2. Comparative, denoting *comparison*; as, **quam**, **v̄l̄ut**, *as, just as*.
3. Conditional, denoting *condition*; as, **si**, *if*.
4. Concessive, denoting *concession*; as, **licet**, *although*.
5. Final, denoting *purpose* or *end*; as, **ut**, **nē**, *that, that not*.
6. Consecutive, denoting *consequence* or *result*; as, **quin**, *so that not*; **ut**, *so that*.
7. Causal, denoting *cause*; as, **quid**, **quod**, **quō̄niam**, *because*.
8. Interrogative, used in *asking questions*: as, **-ne** (enclitic), **nō̄ne**, **num**, *whether*; **an**, *or*; **annō̄n**, *or not*.

**Obs. 1.** Of the three words meaning *and* —

- a. **et** connects independent words and clauses, as in Exs. 1, 2.
- b. **-que** (enclitic) connects words or clauses that are to be considered together, or as a whole, as in Ex. 3.
- c. **atque** (**ad**, *in addition to*, and **que**, *and*), and *also*, indicates that the second word is more important than the first, as in Ex. 4.

**Obs. 2.** Most of the causal conjunctions are subordinate.

**207.** Model for Parsing a Conjunction: —

In Ex. 1 **et** is a coördinate conjunction, and connects the compound subject **lūna** and **stella**. Hence the following rule: —

**208. RULE XXV.** — Conjunctions connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences.

## EXERCISES.

Parse the conjunctions in the following sentences : —

1. Nēque pāter nēque fīlius vīrum laudat. 2. Hostēs Itāliam longē lātēque vastāvērant. 3. Lībērī ērant nōn māgnī, sed bōnī pulchrīque. 4. Hōmīnēs sunt aut fēlicēs aut infēlicēs.

## LESSON LX.

GENITIVES IN *-ius*.

## IMPERATIVE MODE, ACTIVE VOICE.

**209.** Nine Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have their genitive singular in *-ius*, and dative in *-ī*, in all genders. These adjectives are : —

<i>ālius</i> , other.	<i>tōtus</i> , whole.	<i>alter</i> , other (of two).
<i>nūllus</i> , none.	<i>ūllus</i> , any.	<i>neuter</i> , neither.
<i>sōlus</i> , alone.	<i>ūnus</i> , one.	<i>ūter</i> , which (of two).

1. The plural of these adjectives is declined like the plural of *bōnus*. The singular is thus declined : —

## PARADIGMS.

Cases.	Singular.					
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utrī	utrī	utrī
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
VOC.						
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	ālius	ālia	āliud	alter	altēra	altērum
GEN.	ālius	ālius	ālius	altērius	altērius	altērius
DAT.	āliī	āliī	āliī	altērī	altērī	altērī
ACC.	ālium	āliam	āliud	altērum	altēram	altērum
VOC.						
ABL.	āliō	āliā	āliō	altērō	altērā	altērō

**210.** The Imperative Mode has two tenses, the Present and the Future.

1. The Present Imperative has only the second person.
2. The Future Imperative has the second and third persons.
3. The first person of the Imper. is supplied by the Subjunctive.
4. The Negative of the Imperative is *nē*.

**211.** The Present and Future Imperative Active of the Four Conjugations is inflected as follows :—

FIRST CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	<i>āmā</i>	<i>Love thou.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + <i>te</i>	<i>āmāte</i>	<i>Love ye.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + <i>to</i>	<i>āmāto</i>	<i>Thou shalt love.</i>
	3	" " + <i>to</i>	<i>āmāto</i>	<i>He shall love.</i>
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + <i>tōte</i>	<i>āmātōte</i>	<i>Ye shall love.</i>
	3	" " + <i>nto</i>	<i>āmanto</i>	<i>They shall love.</i>
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	<i>mōnē</i>	<i>Advise thou.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + <i>te</i>	<i>mōnēte</i>	<i>Advise ye.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + <i>to</i>	<i>mōnēto</i>	<i>Thou shalt advise.</i>
	3	" " + <i>to</i>	<i>mōnēto</i>	<i>He shall advise.</i>
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + <i>tōte</i>	<i>mōnētōte</i>	<i>Ye shall advise.</i>
	3	" " + <i>nto</i>	<i>mōnento</i>	<i>They shall advise.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	rēge	Rule thou.
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + te	rēgite	Rule ye.
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + to	rēgito	Thou shalt rule.
	3	" " + to	rēgito	He shall rule.
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tōte	rēgitōte	Ye shall rule.
	3	" " + nto	rēgunto	They shall rule.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem	audī	Hear thou.
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + te	audīte	Hear ye.
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + to	audīto	Thou shalt hear.
	3	" " + to	audīto	He shall hear.
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tōte	audītōte	Ye shall hear.
	3	" " + nto	audiunto	They shall hear.

OBS. 1. Note that the personal endings are the same for all four conjugations. The characteristic vowel of the stem is the same as in the infinitive active, *i.e.*, *ā*, *ē*, *ē*, *i* (but in the third conjugation the *ē* changes to *ī*, and in the future third person plural to *u*). Note the future third person plural of the fourth conjugation.

OBS. 2. Four verbs, *dīco*, *dūco*, *fācio*, *fēro*, with their compounds, drop the final vowel of the imperative; as, *dīc*, *dūc*, *fāc*, *fēr*. But compounds in *-ficio* retain the final *e*; as, *confice*.

OBS. 3. For the first person of the imperative, see p. 241; for the expression of a negative command (*i.e.*, a prohibition), see 278. 2.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English :—

1. Laudā, exercē, scrībe, ōbēdī. 2. Laudāte, exercēte, scrībīte, ōbēdīte. 3. Disce, puer. 4. Tācēte, puērī.<sup>1</sup> 5. Mīlītēs in ūnum lōcum vēniunto. 6. Mīles ex altērā parte urbis vēnīto. 7. Spēs tōta Rōmānos dēsērīt.

Translate into Latin :—

1. Praise thou, exercise thou, write thou, obey thou. 2. Praise ye, exercise ye, write ye, obey ye. 3. Call the boy. 4. Learn, boys.<sup>1</sup> 5. Call ye, punish ye, advise ye, rule ye. 6. The soldiers of both armies are brave. 7. They come to one place. 8. Which (of the two) does he praise?

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Case and rule.

How many modes ? Define each. Does the use of the Latin imperative differ from the same mode in English ? How many persons has the imperative ? How is the first person supplied ?



## LESSON LXI.

## NUMERALS.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.—ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

**212.** Numeral adjectives express *number*; they are divided into three principal classes :—

1. **CARDINALS**, which answer the question *how many*: as, **ūnus**, *one*; **trēs**, *three*.
2. **ORDINALS**, which express rank or order; they answer the question *which in order*, or *one of how many*: as, **prīmus**, *first*.
3. **DISTRIBUTIVES**, which answer the question *how many to each*, or *how many at a time*: as, **bīnī**, *two each*, or *two by two*; **bīs bīna māla**, *twice two apples*.
4. Numeral adverbs answer the question *how often*: as, **bīs**, *twice*.



**213.** The Cardinal Numbers are indeclinable, except *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, and the hundreds beginning with *dūcentī*, *two hundred*. The hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*; and the first three cardinals are declined as follows:—

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	unum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
GEN.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
ACC.	unum	unam	unum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
VOC.	ūne	ūna	unum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

	duo, two.			trēs, three.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACC.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria
VOC.	duó	duae	duo	trēs	tria
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

1. In the plural, *ūnus* often has the meaning of *same*, *only*. It is also used in its ordinary sense with a plural noun of a singular meaning; as, *ūna castra*, *one camp*.

2. *Mille* is either an Adjective or a Noun:—

a. As an Adjective it is indeclinable, and limits the noun; as,

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *mille hōmīnēs*, *a thousand men*.

2. *cum bis mille hōmīnibus*, *with two thousand men*.

b. As a noun it is indeclinable in the singular; in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre* (110): *mīlia*, *mīlium*, *mīlibus*, *mīlia*, *mīlibus*. It is followed by the genitive, unless a declined numeral comes between, as in Ex. 3; as,

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *mille hōmīnum*, *a thousand men* (lit., *of men*).

2. *tria mīlia hōmīnum*, *three thousand men* (lit., *of men*).

3. *tria mīlia trēcentī mīlitēs*, *three thousand three hundred soldiers*.

Obs. 1. The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without *et*, or by the smaller numeral first with *et*; as, *viginti unus*, *twenty-one*, or *unus et viginti*, *one and twenty*. The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first; as, *centum et sexaginta sex*, or *centum sexaginta sex*, *one hundred and sixty-six*.

Obs. 2. The numerals 18, 19, 28, 29, 38, 39 have the smaller numeral first, with the preposition *dē* to indicate subtraction; as, *duodēviginti*, *undēviginti*, *duodētriginta*, etc.

3. Distributive numerals are sometimes used to show a plural signification in those nouns, the plural forms of which have otherwise a singular meaning; as, *binā castra*, *two camps*; *binæ aedēs*, *two houses*; *binæ littærae*, *two epistles*. *Duo castra* would mean *two forts*; *duæ aedēs*, *two temples*; *duæ littærae*, *two letters* (of the alphabet).

Obs. 3. The year is expressed by *annus* with the ordinal numerals; as, *annus millēsimus octingentēsimus octogēsīmus quintus*, *the year 1885*.

Obs. 4. *Prior* is used instead of *primus* when only two things are spoken of; *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

## 214. Accusative of Time and Space.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *Rōmulus septem et trigintā rēgnāvit annōs*, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven YEARS*.
2. *fossa pēdēs trēcentōs longa est, sex pēdēs alta*, *the ditch is three hundred FEET long, six FEET deep*.
3. *castra ab urbe mīlia passuum octo absunt*, *the camp is eight MILES distant from the city*.

Obs. Note that *annōs*, in Ex. 1, expresses duration of *time*; that *pēdēs* and *mīlia*, in Exs. 2 and 3, denote the extent of *space*, and are also in the accusative. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

### ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

**215. RULE XXVI.**—Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

1. Distance is sometimes expressed by the ablative. (See Ablative of Difference, 302.)

### EXAMPLE.

*millibus passuum sex ā Caesāris castris consēdit*, *he encamped AT THE DISTANCE of SIX MILES from Cæsar's camp*.

2. Duration of time may be expressed by *per* with the accusative, and sometimes, though rarely, by the ablative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *lūdi dēcem per diēs factī, the games were celebrated THROUGH ten entire DAYS.*
2. *pūgnātum est cōtīnenter hōrīs quinque, they fought for five hours incessantly.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Amīcus meus hābet duōs filiōs et duās filiās.
2. Oppidum Rēmōrum ab castrīs octo mīlia passuum ābērat.
3. Mons dēcem mīlia trēcentōs pēdēs altus est.
4. Erant itinēra duo ; ūnum per Sēquānōs ; altērum pēr prōvinciam nostram.
5. Mīlia passuum tria ab urbe castra pōsuit.
6. Quot hōrās hābet ūnus diēs ? Quattuor et vīgintī.
7. Mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesāris castrīs consēdit.
8. Dēcem annōs urbs oppūgnāta est.

Translate into Latin : —

1. The boy has six books.
2. The men have ten apples.
3. Cæsar will come with ten vessels.
4. Cæsar leads out five legions from Italy.
5. The town is six miles distant.
6. The river is sixteen feet deep.
7. The river is twenty-two feet deep.
8. The mountain is four thousand feet high.
9. Three gifts, seven hostages, five kings, a thousand soldiers, eleven friends, ten towns.
10. The first friend, the second town, the third king, the ninth queen, the tenth enemy.
11. They fought five hours.
12. He lived sixty years.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The pupil should learn the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs*, and memorize the cardinals to one hundred, and the ordinals to twenty.

2. The adjectives *longus*, *lātus*, and *altus* usually accompany the accusative of space.

What is a cardinal number ? Decline *ūnus*. Is *unūs* ever used in the plural ? Mention the ordinal numbers from first to twentieth. Decline *duo*.

TABLE OF NUMERALS.<sup>1</sup>

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
1	I.	ūnus, -a, -um, <i>one</i> .	primus, <i>first</i> .
2	II.	duo, -ae, -o, <i>two</i> .	secundus, <i>second</i> .
3	III.	trēs, tria, <i>three</i> .	tertius, <i>third</i> .
4	IV.	quattuor, <i>four</i> .	quartus, <i>fourth</i> .
5	V.	quīque, <i>etc</i> .	quintus, <i>fifth, etc</i> .
6	VI.	sex	sextus
7	VII.	septem	septimus
8	VIII.	octo	octāvus
9	IX.	nōvem	nōnus
10	X.	dēcem	dēcimus
11	XI.	undēcim	undēcimus
12	XII.	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus
13	XIII.	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus
14	XIV.	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus
15	XV.	quīndēcim	quintus dēcimus
16	XVI.	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus
17	XVII.	septendēcim	septimus dēcimus
18	XVIII.	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus
19	XIX.	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus
20	XX.	vigintī	vicēsīmus
21	XXI.	{ ūnus et vigintī or vigintī ūnus	primus et vicēsīmus or vicēsīmus primus
28	XXVIII.	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētricēsīmus
29	XXIX.	undētrīgintā	undētricēsīmus
30	XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
40	XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50	L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60	LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70	LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80	LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90	XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100	C.	centum	centēsīmus
101	CI.	{ centum ūnus centum et ūnus	centēsīmus primus centēsīmus et primus
200	CC.	dūcentī, -ae, -a	dūcentēsīmus
300	CCC.	trēcentī, -ae, -a	trēcentēsīmus
400	CCCC.	quadrīgentī, -ae, -a	quadrīgentēsīmus
500	D. or ID.	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsīmus
600	DC.	sēscentī, -ae, -a	sēscentēsīmus
700	DCC.	septīngentī, -ae, -a	septīngentēsīmus
800	DCCC.	octīngentī, -ae, -a	octīngentēsīmus
900	DCCCC.	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsīmus
1000	M. or CIO.	mille	mīllēsīmus
2000	MM.	duo mīlia (millia)	bis mīllēsīmus
5000	IOO.	quīque mīlia	quīnquīēs mīllēsīmus
10,000	CCIOO.	dēcem mīlia	dēcīēs mīllēsīmus
100,000	CCCIOOO.	centum mīlia	centīēs mīllēsīmus

TABLE OF NUMERALS. — *Continued.*

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Distributives.	Nominal Adverbs.
1	I.	singŭlī, <i>one a piece.</i>	sēmel, <i>once.</i>
2	II.	bīnī, <i>two a piece, etc.</i>	bīs, <i>twice, etc.</i>
3	III.	ternī <i>or</i> trinī	ter
4	IV.	quāternī	quāter
5	V.	quīnī	quīnquies
6	VI.	sēnī	sexies
7	VII.	septēnī	septies
8	VIII.	octōnī	octies
9	IX.	nōvēnī	nōvies
10	X.	dēnī	dēcies
11	XI.	ūndēnī	undēcies
12	XII.	duōdēnī	duōdēcies
13	XIII.	ternī dēnī	terdēcies <i>or</i> trēdēcies
14	XIV.	quāternī dēnī	quattuordēcies
15	XV.	quīnī dēnī	quīndēcies
16	XVI.	sēnī dēnī	sēdēcies
17	XVII.	septēnī dēnī	septiesdēcies
18	XVIII.	duōdēvicēnī	duōdēvicies
19	XIX.	ūndēvicēnī	undēvicies
20	XX.	vicēnī	vicies
21	XXI.	{ vicēnī singŭlī <i>or</i> vicēnī octōnī	sēmel et vicies <i>or</i> vicies et sēmel
28	XXVIII.	duōdētricēnī	duōdētricies
29	XXIX.	undētricēnī	undētricies
30	XXX.	trīcēnī	trīcies
40	XL.	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgies
50	L.	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgies
60	LX.	sexāgēnī	sexāgies
70	LXX.	septuāgēnī	septuāgies
80	LXXX.	octōgēnī	octōgies
90	XC.	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgies
100	C.	centēnī	centies
101	CI.	{ centēnī singŭlī centēnī et singŭlī	centies sēmel
200	CC.	dūcēnī	dūcenties
300	CCC.	trēcēnī	trēcenties
400	CCCC.	quadrīngēnī	quadrīngenties
500	D. <i>or</i> ID.	quīngēnī	quīngenties
600	DC.	sescēnī	sescenties
700	DCC.	septīngēnī	septīngenties
800	DCCC.	octīngēnī	octīngenties
900	DCCCC.	nōngēnī	nōngenties
1000	M. <i>or</i> CIO.	singŭla mīlia	mīllies
2000	MM.	bīna mīlia	bīs mīllies
5000	ICD.	quīna mīlia	quīnquies mīllies
10,000	CCID.	dēna mīlia	dēcies mīllies
100,000	CCCID.	centēna mīlia	centies mīllies

## LESSON LXII.

## IMPERATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## THE PLACE TO WHICH.

**216.** The Imperative Passive of the Four Conjugations is inflected as follows :—

FIRST CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + re	āmāre	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + minī	āmāminī	<i>Be ye loved.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tor	āmātor	<i>Thou shalt be loved.</i>
	3	" " + tor	āmātor	<i>He shall be loved.</i>
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	_____	_____	_____
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	āmantor	<i>They shall be loved.</i>
SECOND CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + re	mōnēre	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + minī	mōnēmīnī	<i>Be ye advised.</i>
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	Sing. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tor	mōnētor	<i>Thou shalt be advised.</i>
	3	" " + tor	mōnētor	<i>He shall be advised.</i>
	Plur. 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	_____	_____	_____
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	mōnentor	<i>They shall be advised.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + re	rēgēre	Be thou ruled.
	3	_____	_____	_____
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + minī	rēgimīnī	Be ye ruled.
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tor	rēgītor	Thou shalt be ruled.
	3	" " + tor	rēgītor	He shall be ruled.
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	_____	_____	_____
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	rēguntor	They shall be ruled.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.				
	Person.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + re	audīre	Be thou heard.
	3	_____	_____	_____
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + minī	audimīnī	Be ye heard.
	3	_____	_____	_____
Future.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	Pres. stem + tor	audītor	Thou shalt be heard.
	3	" " + tor	audītor	He shall be heard.
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	_____	_____	_____
	2	_____	_____	_____
	3	Pres. stem + ntor	audiuntor	They shall be heard.

Obs. Note that the characteristic vowel of the stem is variable in the third conjugation, weakened to *ĭ* and then to *u*; the stem of the third person plural future of the fourth conjugation, is *audiu-*.

## 217. The Place to Which.

### EXAMPLES.

1. in Galliam vēnit, he came into Gaul.
2. in Itāliam contendit, he hastens into Italy.
3. ad urbem vēnit, he came to the city.
4. Rōmam prōfectus est, he set out for Rome.
5. Cōrinthum pervēnit, he came to Corinth.
6. puer dōmum ibat, the boy was going home.
7. rūs ibo, I will go to the country.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that in 1, 2, 3, the names of the places to which the motion is directed are *not* the names of towns; in each case the preposition is expressed. In Exs. 4, 5, the nouns denoting the place to which the motion is directed are *names of towns*; the accusative is used without a preposition. Note, further, that *dōmum*, *dōmōs*, and *rūs*, like names of towns, have no preposition. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

THE NAME OF THE PLACE TO WHICH.

**218. RULE XXVII.**—The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, regularly requires the preposition *in* or *ad*.

1. But with names of towns and small islands, and with *dōmum*, *dōmōs*, and *rūs*, the preposition is omitted.

VOCABULARY.

*ēdūco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *educate*.

*strēnuē* (adv.), *briskly, vigorously*.

*Britannia*, -ae, f., *Britain*.

*attingo*, -tingere, -tīgī, *tactum*, *touch, reach*.

*institūtum*, -ī, n. *custom*; pl. *institutions*.

*gēro*, *gērere*, *gessi*, *gestum*, *bear, carry on*.

*vergo*, *vergēre*, —, —, *turn, lie toward*.

*persuādeo*, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *convince, persuade*.

*facile*, *facilius*, *facilissīme*, *easily*.

EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Puer, bēne ēdūcāre.
2. Puer, strēnuē exercēre.
3. Puer, prōbē excōlēre.
4. Puer, diligenter ērūdīre.
5. Puer, bēne ēdūcātor, strēnuē exercētor, prōbē excōlītor, diligenter ērūdītor.
6. In fīnes Vōcontiōrum diē septīmō pervēnit.
7. Hōrā quartā Britanniam attīgīt.
8. Nocte ad Caesārem pervēnerunt.
9. In Galliā ultēriōre multōs<sup>1</sup> annōs mănēbīmus.
10. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās suās ēdūxit.
11. Cōsul Athēnās prōfectus est.
12. Caesar Milētum prōpērāvit.
13. Multī ex urbe rūs migrābant.
14. Sērō dōmum vēnistī.



## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

The quantity of long final syllables has hitherto been marked; the pupil should be taught to account for the quantity of all final syllables.

Define the imperative. How many tenses has the imperative? Are the personal endings the same for all four conjugations? After verbs of motion, how is the *place to which* expressed? With names of towns, how is the *place to which* expressed? What other words omit the preposition?

---

## LESSON LXIII.

## CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.—ANALYSIS OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

**219.** Sentences may be classified, with respect to their meaning, as:—

1. **Simple.**      2. **Complex.**      3. **Compound.**

**220.** A Simple Sentence contains but one subject and one predicate, either of which may be compound.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Messengers come.*
2. *The swift messengers come quickly.*
3. *The boys and girls laugh and play.*

OBS. *Messenger* is the subject of the first sentence, and *come* is the predicate. In Ex. 2 *the* and *swift* modify *messengers*, and are called the Modifiers of the Subject. *The swift messengers* is the modified, or logical subject; *come quickly* is the modified, or logical predicate. The third sentence has a compound subject, *boys and girls*, connected by the coördinate copulative conjunction *and*, and a compound predicate.

**221.** A Complex Sentence is composed of one independent clause in combination with one or more dependent clauses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *The general, who is cautious, will succeed.*
2. *When the rain descended, the floods came.*

OBS. The first sentence contains two parts: *the general will succeed*, and *who is cautious*. Each part contains a subject and predicate, and is called a *clause*; hence the definition:—

**222.** A clause is a part of a sentence containing a subject and predicate.

**Obs.** The clause, *who is cautious*, really performs the office of an adjective, as we may use in place of it simply the word *cautious*, and say *the cautious general will succeed*. The adjective clause, *who is cautious*, performing the office of a single word, is called a **DEPENDENT CLAUSE**; the other clause, *the general will succeed*, not performing the office of a single word, is called an **INDEPENDENT CLAUSE**. The two clauses, connected by *who*, are so combined that one modifies the other; they form in combination a **COMPLEX SENTENCE**. In the second sentence, *the floods came* is the independent clause, modified by the clause *when the rain descended*, i.e. by a clause telling *when* the floods came; and as this clause performs the office of a single word, *an adverb*, the two clauses in combination form a **Complex Sentence**.

**223.** A Compound Sentence is composed of two or more independent clauses.

**EXAMPLE.**

*The rain descended, and the floods came.*

**Obs.** This sentence consists of two parts, *the rain descended* and *the floods came*, each of which is independent, and makes complete sense by itself. The sentence is **COMPOUND**, because it consists of two independent clauses.

**SIMPLE SENTENCES CLASSIFIED.**

**224.** Simple sentences may be Declarative, Interrogative, Imperative, or Exclamatory.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *Cæsar was stabbed.*
2. *Was Cæsar stabbed by Brutus?*
3. *Love justice, and hate evil.*
4. *What a cruel deed he has done!*

**Modifiers.**

**225.** The Subject or the Predicate may be modified by (1) *a word*, (2) *a phrase*, (3) *a clause*.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *mīlitēs fortēs*, brave soldiers.
2. *oppīda sine praesīdiō*, towns without garrisons.
3. *rēx Albānōrum*, the king of the Albans.
4. *puer, quī lēgit*, the boy, who reads.

**226.** A Phrase is a group of words, without a subject or predicate, used in the sense of an adjective or an adverb.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *A large army came there.*
2. *An army of sixty thousand men came to Rome.*

Obs. In the first sentence, the adjective *large* modifies *army*, and the adverb *there* modifies *came*. If we wish to express the thought with greater distinctness, we should use the second sentence, in which the groups of words, *of sixty thousand men* and *to Rome*, have been substituted, the one for the adjective *large*, and the other for the adverb *there*. These groups of words we call PHRASES.

**227.** Directions for Analyzing Sentences : —

Tell (1) whether the sentence is *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*. If the sentence is Simple, tell (2) whether it is *declarative*, *interrogative*, *imperative*, or *exclamatory*; (3) mention the subject and its modifiers, (4) the predicate and its modifiers. If the sentence is Complex, analyze each clause like a simple sentence; name the connective, and tell whether the subordinate or dependent clause stands for an *adjective*, an *adverb*, or a *noun*, *i.e.*, whether it is an Adjective, Adverbial, or Noun Clause. If the sentence is Compound, analyze each clause as a simple sentence, name the connective, and the class of conjunctions to which it belongs.

**EXERCISES.**

Classify the following sentences; name the clauses; analyze each, and mention the modifiers : —

1. The bridge spans the river.
2. The great iron bridge spans the broad river.
3. The great iron bridge, built by a skilful engineer, spans the broad river.<sup>1</sup>
4. Great men are rare.
5. The man dies, but his memory lives.
6. How wonderful is the advent of spring!
7. Are there any accidents in the providence of God?
8. Thank you, sir.
9. Has the gentleman finished?
10. While Louis XIV. reigned, Europe was at war.
11. Great men lived during the Revolution.
12. Franklin, who was a great philosopher, was born in Boston.
13. Hamilton smote the rock of the national re-

sources, and abundant streams of revenue gushed forth. 14. There<sup>2</sup> is a pleasure in the pathless woods. 15. The soldiers were brave.<sup>3</sup>

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Expand this sentence into a compound sentence.
  2. *There* is used as an introductory word, to fill out the sentence, and is, therefore, called an *expletive* (Lat. *explēre*, to fill out).
  3. Is this adjective *attributive* or *predicate* ?
- What is a sentence ? Classify sentences. Write a simple sentence. Expand it to a complex, then to a compound sentence. Of what is a complex sentence composed ? What is a clause ? What is a dependent clause ? (*Ans.* A dependent clause is one used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.) Mention the modifiers of the subject ; of the predicate.



### LESSON LXIV.

#### PRONOUNS.

**OBS.** *Charles went to Rome with his mother, and he came back without her.* In this sentence we use three little words called **PRONOUNS** ; they are *his*, *he*, and *her*. If we had not these words, we would be compelled to say : "Charles went to Rome with *Charles's* mother, and *Charles* came back without *Charles's* mother." The pronouns take the place of the nouns, and hence the definition : —

**228.** A Pronoun is a word used for a noun. Pronouns are divided into eight classes : —

1. Personal Pronouns : **ēgo**, *I* ; **nōs**, *we*, etc.
2. Reflexive Pronouns : **sui**, *of himself*.
3. Possessive Pronouns : **meus**, *my*, etc.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns : **hic**, *this*, etc.
5. Determinative Pronouns : **is**, *he*, *that* ; **ipse**, *self*, etc.
6. Relative Pronouns : **qui**, *who*, and its compounds.
7. Interrogative Pronouns : **quis**, *who* ? and its compounds.
8. Indefinite Pronouns : **aliquis**, *some one*, etc.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**229.** The Personal Pronouns are so called because they designate the person of the noun for which they stand. They are *ēgo, I, tū, thou*, and are declined as follows:—

## I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>ēgo, I.</i>	<i>nōs, we.</i>
GEN.	<i>meī, of me.</i>	<i>nōstrum and nōstri, of us.</i>
DAT.	<i>mihi, to or for me.</i>	<i>nōbis, to or for us.</i>
ACC.	<i>mē, me.</i>	<i>nōs, us.</i>
VOC.	—	—
ABL.	<i>mē, with, from, or by me.</i>	<i>nōbis, with, from, or by us.</i>

## II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

Cases.	Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	<i>tū, thou.</i>	<i>vōs, ye or you.</i>
GEN.	<i>tuī, of thee.</i>	<i>vestrum and vestri, of you.</i>
DAT.	<i>tibi, to or for thee.</i>	<i>vōbis, to or for you.</i>
ACC.	<i>tē, thee.</i>	<i>vōs, you.</i>
VOC.	<i>tū, O thou.</i>	<i>vōs, O ye or you.</i>
ABL.	<i>tē, with, from, or by thee.</i>	<i>vōbis, with, from, or by you.</i>

**OBS.** The genitives *nōstrum, vestrum*, are used *partitively* (see 236); as, *ūnus nōstrum, one of us*. *Nōstri* and *vestri* are used as *objective genitives*; as, *mēmor es nōstri, be mindful of us*.

1. *Ego* and *nōs* are Personal Pronouns of the first person, and *tū, vōs*, of the second. The personal pronouns of the third person, — *he, she, it, they*, — are wanting in Latin.

2. The pronouns of the first person may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mēt* or *tē*, or both: as, *ēgōmēt, I myself; tūtē, tūtēmet, thou thyself; nōsmet, vōsmet, we ourselves, you yourselves*.

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

**230.** The Reflexive Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and do not, therefore, require a nominative case. The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are the same as the first and second personal pronouns; the reflexive of the third person is thus declined:—

## Singular and Plural.

NOM. (Wanting.)

GEN. **suī**, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

DAT. **sibi**, for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

ACC. **sē**, himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

VOC. ———

ABL. **sē**, by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

1. The use of the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns can be understood from the following conjugation of **laudo**, with subject and object expressed:—

**ēgo mē laudo**, I praise myself; **nōs nōs laudāmus**, we praise ourselves; **tū tē laudās**, you praise yourself; **vōs vōs laudātis**, you praise yourselves; **is (ea) sē laudat**, he (she) praises himself (herself); **iī (eae) sē laudant**, they praise themselves; also, **Cicēro sē** (i.e. **Cicērōnem**) **laudat**, Cicero praises himself; **Cicēro eum** (i.e. **Caesārem**) **laudat**, Cicero praises him.

2. The reduplicated forms, **sēsē**, **tētē**, **mēmē**, for **sē**, **tē**, **mē**, often occur.

3. **Cum**, when used with the ablative of the personal pronoun, is appended to it: as, **mēcum**, with me; **vōbiscum**, with you.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**231.** The Possessive Pronouns are formed from the personal pronouns, and denote *possession*. They are:—

**meus, mea, meum**, my or mine.

**tuus, tua, tuum**, thy or thine.

**suus, sua, suum**, his, hers, its, or their.

**nōster, nōstra, nōstrum**, our.

**vester, vestra, vestrum**, your.

Obs. 1. The vocative singular masculine of **meus** is **mī**.

Obs. 2. Note that **suī** and **suus** refer to the leading subject of the sentence; but when no ambiguity can arise, **suī** sometimes refers to some other word than the leading subject.

**232.** Decline together : —

1. **meus frāter**, *my brother.*
2. **tuum cāput**, *thy head.*
3. **spēs omnis nostra**, *our only hope.*
4. **sua mānus dextra**, *his right hand.*

**233.** Examples Illustrating the Uses of the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns : —

1. **inter sē diffērunť**, *they differ (among themselves) from one another.*
2. **tū laudās mē, sed ēgo tē culpo**, *you praise me, but I blame you.*
3. **Ariovistus tantōs sībī spīrītūs sumpsērat**, *Ariovistus had taken such airs upon himself.*
4. **sī tū et Tullia vālētis, ēgo et Cīcēro vālēmus**, *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*
5. **inter nōs āmāmus**, *we love each other.*
6. **inter sē āmant**, *they love each other.*
7. **obsīdēs inter sēs dant**, *they give hostages to each other.*
8. **puella ēpistūlam mănū suā scrībit**, *the girl writes the letter with her own hand.*
9. **nōs ēquītāmus, ambūlātis vōs, or ēquītāmus nōs, vōs ambūlātis.**

Obs. The personal pronouns are implied in the endings of the Latin verb, and are not expressed in Latin unless they are emphatic (see 57. n. 1). Note that if there are two subjects connected by *and*, the verb is plural; if the subjects are of different persons, as in Ex. 4, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, the second rather than the third. Note, also, that the first person is *the first in order*, not the last, as by courtesy in English. *His, her, its*, referring to the subject of the sentence, must be expressed by **suus, sua, suum**; when not referring to the subject, the genitive (**ējus**) of **is, ea, id**, is used.

## Rule for Position :—

1. The Personal Pronouns, when connected by conjunctions to other words, stand first. **Ego** always precedes (see Ex. 4).

2. Contrasted words are put as near together, or as far apart, as possible (see Ex. 9).

## EXERCISES.

## Translate into English :—

1. Ego vōco, tū vōcās, āmīcus vōcat. 2. Tū es tristis. 3. Nōs sūmus pōtentēs, sēd vōs pōtentiōrēs estis. 4. In mē et in tē et in nōbis omnībus est ānīmus immortālis. 5. Ego et frāter ambūlāmus. 6. Ego ā tē laudābor, sed tū ā mē pūniēris. 7. Mī frāter, audī. 8. Ego sum mālus, sed tū es bōnus. 9. Caesar suōs mīlītēs in Galliam mittet, sed in prōvinciam nostrōs. 10. Caesar Dīvitiācum ad sē vōcat.

## Translate into Latin :—

1. I call, thou callest, the friend calls. 2. I praise you, you praise me, we praise you. 3. He comes in company with you. 4. I give (to) you the book. 5. I am sad, but you are joyful. 6. I am a Roman, but you are a Gaul. 7. I am praised by you. 8. My brother and I are praising you. 9. You are reading, but I am writing. 10. They differ from one another.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Why are reflexive pronouns so called? Name the personal pronouns. How is the lack of a third personal pronoun supplied? Give the rule for the use of possessive pronouns. (*Ans.* Same as for adjectives: *Adjectives, adjective pronouns, etc., agree.* See Rule VIII.) How can you tell after a transitive verb whether **suōs mīlītēs** means *his, her, its, or their soldiers*? The reflexive **sē** is often written **sēsē**; as, **puer sēsē laudat**, *the boy praises himself*.



## LESSON LXV.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

**234.** Demonstrative Pronouns are so called because they *point out* what object is meant. They are:—

1. **Hic**, *this, this near me.*

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.		hūjus		hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.		huīc <sup>1</sup>			his	
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc <sup>2</sup>	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc		his	

2. **Iste**, *that, that near you.*

NOM.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
GEN.		istius		istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.		istī			istīs	
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istō	istā	istō		istīs	

3. **Ille**, *that, that near him.*

NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.		illius		illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.		illī			illīs	
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō		illīs	

**235.** Decline together:—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>haec</b> <sup>2</sup> <b>diēs</b> , <i>this day.</i>            | 4. <b>illud</b> <b>ōnus</b> , <i>that burden.</i>         |
| 2. <b>ista</b> <b>tua</b> <b>sōror</b> , <i>that sister of thine.</i> | 5. <b>istud</b> <b>tempus</b> , <i>that time.</i>         |
| 3. <b>haec</b> <b>lēgiō</b> , <i>this legion.</i>                     | 6. <b>hōmo</b> <b>iste</b> , <i>that (worthless) man.</i> |

Obs. 1. **Hic**, used for what is near the speaker, is called the *demonstrative of the first person*; **iste**, used of what is near the per-

son addressed, is called the *demonstrative of the second person*; *ille*, used of what is remote from both, is called the *demonstrative of the third person*.

Obs. 2. The demonstratives are often used in the oblique cases as personal pronouns (*him, her, it, them*) of the third person.

**EXAMPLE.**

*eum et frātre<sup>m</sup> ejus vīdeo, I see him and his brother.*

## 236. Partitive Genitive.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *pars mīlitum, part of the soldiers.*
2. *alter consūlum, one of the (two) consuls.*
3. *ūnus mīlitum, one of the soldiers.*
4. *nīhīl vīnī, (nothing of wine) no wine.*
5. *multum aestātis, a large part of the summer.*
6. *māgna est corpōris pars āperta, a great part of the body is exposed.*

Obs. In each of the foregoing examples, note that the genitive expresses the *whole*, and that the word which the genitive limits designates a *part*. This use of the genitive is called the *partitive genitive*. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

**PARTITIVE GENITIVE.**

**237. RULE XXVIII.**—Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive denoting the whole.

NOTE. Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, the ablative with *ex*, *out of*, *dē*, *from*, is regularly used with cardinals.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *ūnus ex mīlitibus, one of the soldiers.*
2. *quinque ex mīlitibus, five (of) soldiers.*
3. *ūnus dē multis, one of the many.*

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. Illi<sup>3</sup> virū laudant. 2. Hōc<sup>4</sup> bellum est saevissimū.
3. Hūjus discipūli dīligentiam laudo. 4. Hīc puer dīligens est, ille īners.
5. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.
6. Laudābo illiūs<sup>5</sup> filium. 7. Pāter filiam suam et filiam

Tulliae ad sē vōcābat. 8. Haec sententia mīhī plācet, illa displicet. 9. Hī omnēs inter sē diffērunt. 10. Oppidum āberat mīlia passuum octo. 11. Māgna est corpōris pars āperta.

Translate into Latin : —

1. I will give you this book, and you give me that.  
 2. These men, those men. 3. These places, those places.  
 4. This mountain, that mountain. 5. This opinion, that opinion.  
 6. This soldier is brave, that one is cowardly.  
 7. These things<sup>6</sup> were announced to Cæsar. 8. A part of the army came.  
 9. The army marched six miles. 10. The wall is ten feet high.  
 11. Cicero was a very distinguished orator; we shall hear him with pleasure.  
 12. The man calls his own son to him.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Hūic** is to be pronounced as a monosyllable.

2. The vocative of demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite pronouns is wanting.

3. Demonstrative pronouns may be used as personal or as adjective pronouns: as, **hī omnēs diffērunt**, *all these differ*; **ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant**, *traders often resort to THEM*; **ad hās suspiciōnēs**, *to THESE suspicions*. In the former case parse them as nouns; in the latter, as adjectives.

4. Demonstrative pronouns usually precede their nouns.

5. For *his* or *her* not referring to the subject, **ējus** (see 231. obs. 2) should be used when not emphatic; **illius**, or **hūius**, if the word is emphatic; **istius**, if very emphatic, or at all sarcastic, or referring to the second person.

6. The neuter plural of pronouns, as well as of adjectives, is often used as nouns, where we use in English the word *thing* or *things*; as, **haec**, *these things*, *this*.

Is the nominative of the pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, often expressed? When they must be expressed, what is used? *Ans.* Generally **hic**, **is**, or **ille**; as, **hic dixit**, *he (this man) speaks*. What is a pronoun? Mention the different classes. Define personal pronoun. What is meant by *partitive genitive*? Give the Latin for *a part of the soldiers*. Which is the *partitive genitive*? How is *all of the soldiers* expressed in Latin? *Ans.* **militēs omnēs**; *all* does not denote a *part*, but the *whole*.

## LESSON LXVI.

## DETERMINATIVE (DEMONSTRATIVE) PRONOUNS.

**238.** The Determinative Pronouns are *is, ea, id, this* (and *he, she*), *that*; its compound *idem, eādem, idem, the same*; and *ipse, ipsa, ipsum, he, self, very same*. They refer to some person or thing determined by the context:—

1. *Is, this, and he, she, it.*

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
GEN.		ejus		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.		eī			eīs or iīs	
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō		eīs or iīs	

2. *Idem,<sup>2</sup> the same.*

NOM.	idem	eādem	idem	{ eīdem or iīdem }	eaedem	eādem
GEN.		ejusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.		eīdem			eīsdem or iīsdem	
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		eīsdem or iīsdem	

3. *Ipse, self, he.*

NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
GEN.		ipsius		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.		ipsī			ipsis	
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsis	

OBS. 1. *Ipse* is often called an *intensive pronoun*; it should not be confounded with *sē*; as, *vir ipse sē laudat, the man himself praises himself*.

OBS. 2. **Idem** often means *also*; as, **Cicēro erat orator Idem-que philosophus**, *Cicero was an orator, and also a philosopher* (lit., *the same was a philosopher*).

OBS. 3. **Is**, *that*, is often used as a personal pronoun (*he, she, it, they, them*, etc.) of the same gender with the noun for which it stands: as, **Cicēro multos libros scripsit; eos** (i.e. **libros**) **libenter lēgo**, *Cicero has written many books; I read them* (i.e. *the books*) *with pleasure*.

### 239. Decline together:—

1. **ipse homo**, *the man himself*.
2. **id oppidum**, *that town*.
3. **ipsa causa**,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the cause itself.} \\ \text{the very same cause.} \end{array} \right.$
4. **hōc ipsum tempus**, *this very time*.
5. **Idem princeps**, *the same chief*.
6. **Idem bellum**, *the same war*.

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Is** orābat pōpulum. 2. **Ipse** tū mē laudābas. 3. **Ipse** māgister mē laudābit. 4. **Ipsī** in eōrum finibus bellum gē-runt. 5. **Caesar** eōdem itinēre ad eōs contendit. 6. **Caesar** Dīvitiācum ad sē vōcāvit. 7. **Pāter** filiam suam et filium ējus ad sē vōcat.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **Idem**, compounded of **is** and **-dem**, is declined like **is**, but it shortens **isdem** to **idem**, and **iddem** to **idem**, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *-dem*.

Why are demonstrative pronouns so called? (*Ans.* Because they point out the noun.) Mention the demonstrative of the first person. When must *his* or *her* be expressed by **ējus**? When by **suus**? What are determinative pronouns? Why so called? Mention them. **Ipse** is often called an *intensive pronoun*, because it makes the word to which it is added more emphatic.

## LESSON LXVII.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**240.** Relative Pronouns are so called because they relate to some preceding noun or pronoun, called the *antecedent*; they are **quī** and its compounds. **Quī** is declined as follows:—

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.		cūjus		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.		cūi			quībus	
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō		quībus	

1. **Quicumque** (**quicunque**) and **quisquīs**, *whoever*, are called, from their signification, *general relatives*. **Quicumque** is declined like **quī**. The only forms of **quisquis** in use are **quisquis**, the neuter **quidquid**, and the ablative **quōquō**.

**241.** Agreement of Relative Pronouns:—

## EXAMPLES.

1. **puer quī māgistrum āmat bōnus est**, *the boy who loves the master is good.*
2. **puer quem māgister āmat bōnus est**, *the boy whom the master loves is good.*
3. **ēgo, quī tē laudāvī, rēx sum**, *I, who have praised you, am king.*

Obs. In Ex. 1, **quī** stands for **puer**, and connects the second statement or clause, *loves the master*, with *the boy is good*. The word **quī** is said to relate to **puer**; it is, therefore, called a **RELATIVE PRONOUN**; it also binds the two clauses together like a conjunction, and this is the real peculiarity of relatives, as all pronouns have antecedents. The word **puer**, which the clause **quī māgistrum āmat** modifies, is called the **ANTECEDENT**. The sentence in which the *relative* stands is called the *relative clause*; the other, the *principal clause*.

NOTE (1) that **quī** is masculine gender, to agree with its antecedent, **puer**; (2) that it is singular number and third person, to

agree with *puer*, while *quī*, in Ex. 3, is first person, to agree with *ego*; note (3) also that the relatives, in Exs. 1 and 3, are in the nominative case; but in Ex. 2 the relative is in the accusative case, because it is the object of *amat*. Hence the following rule:—

#### AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES.

**242. RULE XXIX.**—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

1. The relative at the beginning of a sentence is translated like a personal or demonstrative pronoun with a conjunction, determined by the construction.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *quī proelium committunt*, *they engage in battle.*
2. *quae cum ita sint*, *since these (things) are so.*

2. The relative is often omitted in English; it is never omitted in Latin.

#### EXAMPLE.

*liber quem mihi dediti*, *the book (which) you gave me.*

3. In English, *as* is often a relative pronoun, especially after *such* and *same*. It must then be rendered by *quī* after *idem*, and by *quālis* or *quantus* after *tālis*, *such*, *tantus*, *so great*.

#### 243. Position of the Relative:—

The *relative* generally stands at the beginning of the relative sentence, after the antecedent, and as near to it as possible; *but for the sake of emphasis the relative sentence is often placed first.*

1. When the antecedent is *indefinite*, it is often omitted altogether; as, *quī tertiam partem incolunt Galli appellantur*, *(those) who inhabit the third part are called Gauls.* (Cf. the English, "who steals my purse steals trash," i.e., *any one who*, etc.)

#### 244. Model for Parsing a Relative:—

*puer, quī māgistrum amat, bonus est*: *quī* is a relative pronoun; decline *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, etc.; masculine gender, singular, to agree with its antecedent *puer*, and is in the nominative case,

the subject of *amat*; Rule XXIX. The three words, *quī māgistrum amat*, are called a *clause*; it is a relative clause, because introduced by a relative pronoun; it performs the office of an adjective, *i.e.*, it describes *puer*, and is therefore called an *adjective clause*. Since it is subjoined to the leading clause (*puer bonus est*), as modifying it, it is called a *subordinate clause*. A sentence consisting of two clauses, one of which is subordinate, is called a *complex sentence*. (See 221.)

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Puer, qui stūdet, discit. 2. Fēlix est is rēx, quem omnēs cīvēs āmant. 3. Allobrōgēs, quī trans Rhōdānum vicōs possessiōnēsq̄ hābēbant, ad Caesārem vēniunt. 4. Multī hōmīnēs aedificāvērunt dōmōs, in quībus nōn hābitāvērunt. 5. Caesar vōcat Casticum, cūjus<sup>1</sup> pāter rēgnum multōs annōs<sup>2</sup> obtīnuērat. 6. Ab Ocēlō, quod est citēriōris prōvinciae oppīdum extrēmum. 7. Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trans Rhēnum incōlunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. The boy, whom you have blamed, is my brother. 2. The man has built a house, in which he has not lived. 3. He summons Casticus, whose father held the sovereignty in Gaul for many years. 4. The boy who studies will learn. 5. The Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, came into Gaul. 6. Caesar will hasten into the province with the three legions which he had levied in Gaul. 7. Caesar led from winter quarters the three legions which were wintering in Gaul.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Cūjus, whose.

2. Why accusative?

Give the rule for the use of relative pronouns. What is a pronoun? How many classes? What is a clause? A relative clause? What is the antecedent? Define sentence. To what is a relative equivalent? (*Ans.* A personal pronoun + a connective; as, *the boy who studies*, etc., = *the boy and he studies*.)



## LESSON LXVIII.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

**245.** The Interrogative Pronouns, **quis** and **quī**, with their compounds, are used in *asking questions*. They are declined as follows : —

1. **Quis**, *who, which, what?*

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN.		cūjus			quōrum	
DAT.		cui			quibus	
ACC.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō		quibus	

2. **Quī**, *who, which, what?* is declined like the relative **quī**.

3. **Quis** is used both as a noun and as an adjective; **quid** is always used as a noun; **quī** and **quod** are used as adjectives.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **quid commisit**, *what has he done?* (Noun.)
2. **quod facinus commisit**, *what deed has he done?* (Adj.)
3. **quis vocat**, *who calls?* (Noun.)
4. **quī** (or **quis**) **homo vocat**, *what man calls?* (Adj.)

4. **Quis** and **quī** are often strengthened by the addition of **nam** in emphatic interrogation; as, **quisnam**, or **quidnam**, *who then? what then?*

5. When the question refers to *one of two*, **ūter**, **ūtra**, **ūtrum**, *which of two*, is used.

6. Recollect that the interrogative particles are **-ne**, used when asking for information simply; **nōne**, when the answer *yes* is expected; and **num**, when the answer *no* is expected. If an interrogative pronoun or adverb is used, then **-ne**, **nōne**, or **num** is not required. There is no single word in Latin equivalent to our *yes* and *no*, in answer to questions. The answer may be expressed

by repeating the verb with a negative adverb, if *no* is the answer; and with or without an adverb, if *yes* is the answer.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *vēnitne*, has he come? *vēnit*, or *vēnit vērō*, yes (he has come).
2. *mātrōnane puellam vōcat*, does the mother call the girl? *vōcat*, yes (she calls).
3. *nōnne bōnus puer est*, is not the boy good?

7. **Ne** is annexed to the word to which it especially refers.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *tūne puērum dōcēs*, do YOU teach the boy?
2. *dōcēsne puērum*, do you TEACH the boy?
3. *puērumne dōcēs*, do you teach the BOY?

8. Questions in Latin, as in English, may be single or double. *Is the soldier brave?* is a single question. *Is the soldier brave or cowardly?* is a double question. In asking a double question in Latin, the first clause usually has *utrum* or *-ne*, and the second *an*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *utrum vir lēgit an scrībit*, does the man read or write?
2. *utrum patriam amat, annōn*, does he love his country or not?

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Quis mē vōcat?* 2. *Quis scrībit hās littērās?* 3. *Quod carmen lēgis?* 4. *Quis tībī hunc librum dēdit?* 5. *Quae est mūlier quae vēnit?* 6. *Uter consūlum āmicus vester est?* 7. *Quisnam tē vōcāvit, Tullī?* 8. *Quī cōsul est Cicerōne prūdentior?*

Translate into Latin:—

1. Who is that man? 2. Who are those soldiers?
3. What soldiers are these? 4. Who has called us?
5. Which book have you? 6. Who gave you that book?
7. Who has come into the city? 8. Who was walking with you in the garden?
9. Which boy wounded you with a stone?

## LESSON LXIX.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**246.** Indefinite Pronouns are such as designate an object in an indefinite or a general manner. They are : —

1. **āliquis**, subst., **āliquī**, adj., *some one* (I do not know who), *some, any*.
2. **sīquis**, *if any one*.
3. **nēquis**, *lest any*.
4. **quisque**, *each or each one*.
5. **quisquam**, *any one* (where all are excluded).
6. **quispiam**, *some one*.
7. **ūnusquisque**, *each* (stronger than **quisque**).
8. **quīdam**, subst., *a, a certain* (I know who, though I may not wish to say); adj., *a certain, some*; plural, *some* (unemphatic); neuter, *something*.
9. **quīlibet**, } *any one you please* (where all are included).
10. **quīvis**, }
11. **quis**,<sup>1</sup> subst., and **quī**, adj., *any, some*.

1. **Quis** and **quī** are declined like the interrogatives **quis** and **quī**.

2. **Aliquis** is thus declined : —

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
NOM.	āliquis	āliqua	{ āliquod āliquid	āliquī	āliquae	āliqua
GEN.		ālicūjus		āliquōrum	āliquārum	āliquōrum
DAT.		ālicuī			āliquibus	
ACC.	aliquem	āliquam	{ āliquod āliquid	āliquōs	āliquās	āliqua
ABL.	āliquō	āliquā	āliquō		āliquibus	

3. **Āliquis**, **āliqua**, **āliquid**, are used as nouns; and **āliquis**, **āliqua**, **āliquod**, as adjectives.

4. The following are declined like the Relative or Interrogative; the neuters in **quid** are used as nouns, and those in **quod** as

adjectives; the masculines and feminines are used either as nouns or adjectives :—

**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, a certain one.**  
**quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam or quidpiam, some one.**  
**quīvis, quaevis, quodvis or quidvis, } any one**  
**quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet or quidlibet, } (you please).**  
**quisque, quaeque, quodque or quidque, every one.**  
**ūnusquisque, ūnāquaeque, ūnumquodque, each.**

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **quīvis hōmo, any man.**
2. **aliquis hōmo, a man, any man (it matters not who).**
3. **quīdam hōmo, a certain man (whose name I could mention, or whom I could identify, if I chose).**
4. **aliquem ad mē mittent, they will send somebody to me.**
5. **aliquod bōnum, some good thing.**
6. **aliquid bōnī (part. gen.), something good.**

#### 247. Decline together :—

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>pāter meus, my father.</b>      | 6. <b>tōtus ille diēs, that whole day.</b>  |
| 2. <b>is consul, that consul.</b>     | 7. <b>vir quīdam Rōmānus, a certain Roman.</b>                                      |
| 3. <b>idem vir, the same man.</b>     | 8. <b>iste alter, that other fellow.</b>  |
| 4. <b>eādem nāvis, the same ship.</b> | 9. <b>quis nauta, what sailor?</b>  |
| 5. <b>quīvis hōmo, any man.</b>       | 10. <b>Cicērō ipse, clārissīmus ōrātor, Cicero himself, the most famous orator.</b> |

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English :—

1. **Aliquōs<sup>2</sup> ad eum mīsērunt.** 2. **Narrāvit quīdam cōram mē istam fābūlam.** 3. **Narrābit aliquis cōram mē illam fābūlam.** 4. **Aliquem lōcum occupāvit.** 5. **Cum aliquībus militum<sup>3</sup> vēnit.** 6. **Quīdam ex milītibus<sup>3</sup> dēcīmae lēgiōnis vēniēbat.** 7. **Tītus quendam Gallum ad Caesārem mīsīt.**

Translate into Latin :—

1. **In company with those soldiers.** 2. **In company with these soldiers.** 3. **Some one praises the king.** 4. **A cer-**

tain one is praising the king. 5. Who praises the king? 6. Some soldiers are brave. 7. A soldier came to Cæsar. 8. Some one will tell this story. 9. The generals will come in company with some of the chiefs. 10. Is the soldier brave? 11. Is the soldier brave or not? 12. Cæsar sent a Gaul to Cicero.

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Used only after *sī, nē, nīsi, num*, and relatives; *as, si quis, nē quis*; but of course *āliquis, quīdam*, etc., may be used after the same particles: *as, si quis, if any; si āliquis, if some.*

2. Is *āliquōs* used as a noun or adjective?

3. See 237.

LESSON LXX.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

SEPARATION, SOURCE, CAUSE, MATERIAL, AGENT.

Obs. We have learned that the ablative is used to denote the relations expressed in English by the prepositions *from; with or by; at or in*. In expressing all these relations, the ablative performs the offices of three cases that in some languages were kept distinct. These uses of the ablative may be classified as follows:—

1. THE ABLATIVE PROPER, expressing the relation *from*, or WHENCE.

EXAMPLE.

*vīrum culpā libērat*, he frees the man from blame.

2. THE INSTRUMENTAL, expressing the relation *with, by, or WHEREWITH*.

EXAMPLE.

*hostium finēs ferrō et ignī vastant*, they lay waste the enemy's territory with sword and fire.

3. THE LOCATIVE, expressing the relation *in, at, or WHERE*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Rōmæ vivit*, he lives at Rome.

2. *castris sē tēnuit*, he kept himself in camp.

The general rule for the Ablative Proper may be stated as follows:—

ABLATIVE PROPER.

**248. RULE XXX.**—Separation, cause, source, and origin are denoted by the ablative with or without a preposition.

EXAMPLE.

**mē tīmōre libērās**, you free me from fear (separation).

Obs. The prepositions are omitted chiefly with verbs signifying to abstain, relieve, remove, exclude, deprive, cease, and want, and with adjectives of kindred meanings; but, if a person is specified, the preposition must be used; as, **tē ab illō imprōbō libērāvī**, I have rid you of that scoundrel.

1. Compounds with **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, **ex**, denoting separation from a person or place, take the ablative when used figuratively; but, in a local and literal sense, they usually require a preposition with the ablative.

EXAMPLES.

1. **Iter ab Arāre Helvētīī āvertērānt**, the Helvetians had turned their march from the Arar.
2. **Helvētīī hōc cōnātū dēsistunt**, the Helvetians desist from this attempt.

2. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition with intransitive and passive verbs of emotion, and with adjectives that are passive in meaning.

EXAMPLE.

**Helvētīī suā victōriā insolēnter glōriābantur**, the Helvetians boasted insolently because of their victory (cause).

Obs. 1. When the moving cause is a person, the preposition **ā** or **ab** is used with the ablative; or **ob**, **per**, or **propter**, with the accusative.

Obs. 2. The ablatives **causā** and **grātiā**, for the sake of, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a possessive pronoun in agreement.

Obs. 3. Expressions of trust and distrust (**fīdo**, **cōnfīdo**, **diffīdo**), and many adjectives and participles expressing emotion, and **frētus** and **contentus**, are used with the ablative.

3. Perfect Participles denoting parentage or birth,—**gēnītus**, **nātus**, **ortus**, etc.,—generally take the ablative without a preposition.

EXAMPLE.

**Pīsō amplissimō gēnēre nātus**, Piso, born of a very illustrious family.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

4. The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *māgister discipulōs laudat*, *the teacher praises the pupils.*
2. *discipulī ā māgistrō laudantur*, *the pupils are praised by the teacher.*

EXERCISES.

Translate into English :—

1. *Ars ūtilitāte laudātur.*
2. *Caedem ā vōbis dēpello.*
3. *Hostēs proeliō excēdēbant.*
4. *Animō constāmus et corpore.*
5. *Itinēre exercitum nostrum prōhibent.*
6. *Discipulī ā māgistrō dōcentur.*
7. *Omnī Galliā interdicit Rōmānōs.*
8. *Proeliō abstīnēbat.*

LESSON LXXI.

READING LATIN AT SIGHT.

**249.** It may now be taken for granted that the pupil has become familiar with the inflectional endings, the general order of words in a Latin sentence (111), and the principal rules of syntax. He has, also, learned many words, mostly selected from the First Book of Cæsar, and it is now time for him to try to unravel the difficulties of an ordinary Latin sentence.

1. In the first place, the pupil should pronounce the Latin carefully and slowly, noticing the endings of each word, in order to determine which words are nouns and which verbs, etc.

2. Then, if the first sentence is simple, find the **SUBJECT**, and determine its *number* and *meaning*. Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but is contained in the ending of the verb. It can be found by noticing the person and number of the verb, as it must be a pronoun of the person indicated by the verb.

3. Next find the **PREDICATE**, and translate it, noticing carefully its *voice*, *mode*, and *tense*.

4. Find and translate the modifiers of the subject; and, lastly, the modifiers of the predicate.

5. If the sentence is *complex*, translate, first, the *principal clause*, and then the subordinate clauses in the order of their importance. It is always easier for the pupil to translate the principal clause first than it is to pick out words here and there with the hope of being able finally of putting them together into a sentence. When the meaning of the principal clause has been obtained, then take the subordinate clauses.

6. Consult the dictionary or vocabularies only as a last resort. The pupil must, however, remember that only the nominative singular of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and the first person singular present indicative active of verbs, are given there; *i.e.*, the dictionary gives the meaning of words without reference to their grammatical relations. The *case, person, number, mode, tense, or voice*, must be determined by the grammar. It is, therefore, essential that the declension of nouns and the inflection of the regular verbs be thoroughly memorized, so that the pupil can distinguish by the endings the different parts of speech, and determine at once the force and relation of the words.

### *Sight-Reading.*

#### TABLE.

In	prātō	ērant	trēs	bōvēs	in	māximā	concordiā.	Sed
	meadow			oxen		greatest	harmony	
dissīdiō	inter	eōs	ortō,	singulī	ā	fērīs	pētītī	et lāniātī sunt.
discord			arising	one-by-one		wild-beasts	attack	tear

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

The pupil can discover by the forms of the words that **bōvēs** is in the nominative plural, and is the subject of the verb **ērant**; **prātō**, after the preposition, is in the ablative singular, and its nominative is **prātum**, for which form the pupil must look in the dictionary. **Concordiā** is also in the ablative, and is modified by the adjective **māximā**.

Note the mode, tense, and voice of **pētītī** and **lāniātī sunt**, and translate them.

What is the subject of the first sentence? The predicate? Has the subject any modifiers? Has the predicate? In what case is **trēs**? In what case is **singulī**?



## LESSON LXXII.

## INFINITIVE MODE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

**OBS.** In the sentence *I wish to see you*, the verb, *to see*, names the action in an indefinite way, without limiting it to any particular subject; and hence, a verb that expresses an action in this *unlimited manner* is said to be in the Infinitive Mode (Lat. *infinitus*, *without limit*). The infinitive expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed. The infinitive may be used, like a noun, as the subject or object of a verb, but it differs from a noun in several important particulars: (1) It may be modified by *adverbs*, but not by *adjectives*, as *I wish TO SEE you IMMEDIATELY*; (2) it governs a noun or pronoun in the objective like a verb. In Latin, the infinitive has voice and tense like a verb, but, like a noun, admits of two cases: the nominative when it is the subject of a verb, and the accusative when it is the object of a verb. The infinitive is also used in Latin to represent the tenses of the indicative mode in Indirect Discourse. (For this use, see 347.) Hence the uses of the infinitive may be stated as follows:—

**250. Uses of the Infinitive.**

1. The infinitive is used as an indeclinable abstract noun in the nominative and accusative.
2. The infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse to represent the tenses of the indicative. (See 347.)

**OBS.** The infinitive has *voice* and *tense*, and takes adverbial modifiers like any verb; it governs the case of its verb.

**251.** In Latin there are Four Infinitives in each voice,—the Present, Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect. They are formed from the stems as follows:—

**ACTIVE VOICE.**

Present infinitive = present stem + *re*.

Perfect infinitive = perfect stem + *se*.

Future infinitive = future participle and *esse*.

Fut. perf. infin. = future participle and *fuisse*.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Present infinitive = present stem + **rī** for 1st, 2d, 4th conjugations.

“ “ = verb-stem + **ī** for 3d conjugation.

Perfect infinitive = perfect passive participle and **esse**.

Future infinitive = supine and **īrī** (the word **īrī** is the present infinitive passive of **eo**, *I go*, and **āmātum īrī** has the idea of *going to be loved*).

Fut. perf. infin. = Perfect passive participle and **fōre**.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVES. — ACTIVE.			
	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	āmā- mōnē- rēgē- audī-	} + re āmāre mōnēre rēgēre audīre	to love. to advise. to rule. to hear.
Perfect.	āmāvī- mōnuī- rēxi- audīvī-	} + sse āmāvisse mōnuisse rēxisse audivisse	to have loved. to have advised. to have ruled. to have heard.
Future.	āmā- mōnī- rec- audī-	} + tūrus esse āmātūrus esse mōnitūrus esse rectūrus esse auditūrus esse	to be about to love. to be about to advise. to be about to rule. to be about to hear.
Fut. Perf.	āmā- mōnī- rēg- audī-	} + tūrus fuisse amātūrus fuisse mōnitūrus fuisse rectūrus fuisse auditūrus fuisse	to have been about <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;">             {             <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 5px;">               to love. to advise. to rule. to hear.             </div> </div>
INFINITIVES. — PASSIVE.			
Present.	āmā- + rī mōnē- + rī rēg- + ī audī- + rī	āmārī mōnērī rēgī audīrī	to be loved. to be advised. to be ruled. to be heard.
Perfect.	āmā- mōnī- rec- audī-	} + tus, -a, -um esse āmātus esse mōnitus esse rectus esse audītus esse	to have been loved. to have been advised. to have been ruled. to have been heard.



## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is the subject of the leading clause? the predicate? The modifiers of the predicate? The subject of the subordinate clause? What kind of a clause is it? In what case is **Galli**? Why is **Germani**s dative? How is **quā** translated? Define the word *infinitive*. Give the uses of the infinitive. How is the present infinitive formed? Form the present infinitive of **rēgo**, **vōco**, **tīmeo**, **mūnio**, **pūnio**. How is the perfect infinitive formed? How the future infinitive? With what does the participle, of which the future infinitive is composed, agree? Write all the active and passive infinitives of the following words: **dōno**, to give; **nōmīno**, to name; **hābeo**, to have; **dēbeo**, to owe; **dūco**, to lead; **dīco**, to say; **finio**, to finish; **mūnio**, to fortify. Write a sentence in English with an infinitive as subject; as object.

## LESSON LXXIII.

## INFINITIVE AND SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE. — COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

## 252. Infinitive and Subject-Accusative.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the subject or object of a verb is a whole clause, beginning with the word *that*.

## EXAMPLES.

- |   |            |  |
|---|------------|--|
| Subject.  | Predicate. |  |
| 1. <u>That Cæsar conquered Gaul</u> is certain. |            |  |
| Sub. Pred.                                      | Object.    |  |
| 2. <u>He says that Cæsar conquered Gaul.</u>    |            |  |

In the first sentence, *that Cæsar conquered Gaul* is the subject of the verb, and is called a *subject-clause*; in the second sentence, the same words become the object of the verb *say*, and are called an *object-clause*. Such clauses are expressed in Latin by the accusative with the infinitive.

## EXAMPLES.

- |  |         |  |
|--|---------|--|
| Subject.   | Object. |  |
| 1. <b>Caesārem</b> (acc.) <b>vīcisse</b> (infin.) <b>Gallōs</b> { certum est.<br>or dicit.                         |         |  |
| 2. <b>pūtat mē scribēre</b> , he thinks I am writing.  |         |  |
| 3. <b>Dīvicō rēspōdit ita Helvētiōs institūtōs esse</b> , Divico replied that the Helvetians had been so educated. |         |  |

4. **Caesar Dumnōrigem dēsignārī sentiēbat**, *Cæsar perceived that Dumnorix was meant.*
5. **dīcit montem ab hostībus tēnērī**, *he says that the hill is held by the enemy.*
6. **rūmor erat Cātīlīnam servōs armāsse**, *there was a report that Catiline had armed the slaves.*

Obs. 2. Note the translation of the foregoing sentences. The subject-accusative is translated as if it were a nominative preceded by the word *that*. The infinitive is translated like any finite verb. Note, further, that **dīcit** is a verb of *saying*; **pūtat**, a verb of *thinking*; **rēspōdit**, a verb of *telling*; and **sentiēbat**, a verb of *perceiving*. Hence the following rules:—

#### SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE.

**253. RULE XXXI.**—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative.

#### SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

**254. RULE XXXII.**—Verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, hearing*, and the like, are followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

1. Various Impersonal Phrases, such as **certum est**, *it is certain*, **nēcesse est**, *it is necessary*, **justum est**, *it is just*, etc., are followed by the accusative with the infinitive.

#### INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.

**255.** The Infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, may be used as the Subject of a Verb.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **dulce prō patriā mōrī est**, *to die for one's country is sweet.*
2. **Caesārī nuntiātum est equitēs accēdēre**, *it was announced to Cæsar that the cavalry was approaching.*

Obs. The predicate adjective, agreeing with the infinitive, is neuter.

#### COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

**256. RULE XXXIII.**—The infinitive without a subject-accusative is used with many verbs to complete their meaning.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar prōficisci mātūrat, Cæsar hastens to set out.**
2. **pārat bellum gērrē, he prepares to wage war.**
3. **mīlites pūgnāre possunt, the soldiers are able to fight.**

**Obs.** The Complementary Infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning; it is generally either the direct object of a transitive verb, or an accusative of limitation, as in Ex. 3, *the soldiers are able as to fighting*. The verbs that the complementary infinitive is used after usually denote *ability, obligation, intention, or endeavor*; after verbs signifying *to abstain, to begin, to cease, to continue, to dare, to fear, to hesitate, to be wont, and after the passive voice of verbs of saying, believing, reckoning*.

Note the translation of the following sentences; parse each infinitive, and give the rule:—

1. **grātum est tēcum ambūlāre, it is pleasant to walk with you.**
2. **pārat bellum gērrē, he prepares to wage war.**
3. **āqua frīgida est, water is cold.**
4. **sentio āquam frīgīdā esse, I perceive that water is cold.**
5. **audiō āmicum aegrōtū esse, I hear that (my) friend is sick.**
6. **Caesar in Galliā hiēmāre constituit, Cæsar determined to winter in Gaul.**
7. **mīlites urbem custōdīre dēbent, the soldiers ought to guard the city.**
8. **libērī eōrum in servitūtem addūcī nōn dēbent, their children ought not to be led into servitude.**
9. **cōstituērunt jūmentōrum quā māxīmū nūmērū cōēmere, they determined to buy up as great a number of beasts of burden as possible.**

*Sight-Reading.*

## STORY OF HORATIUS.

Tullō rēgnante, bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exor-  
Tullus reigning nom. arise  
 tum est. Forte in duobus exercitiis erant trigemini frātrēs,  
by chance three born at one birth  
 nec aetate nec viribus dispārēs, apud Rōmānōs Hōrātii,  
neither nor unlike  
 apud Albānōs Cūriātii. Cum his agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā  
arrange  
 quisque patriā dimicent ferrō. Arma igitur capiunt, et in  
fight accordingly they take

mēdium inter duās āciēs prōcēdunt. Dātūr signum, infes-  
with  
 tisque armīs ternī iuvēnēs, māgnōrum exercituum animōs  
hostile arms  
 gērentēs, concurrunt.  
bearing rush together.  
spirit

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Define infinitive. How many infinitives in the active voice? How many in the passive voice? Give the stem of the present infinitive; of the perfect; give the endings of each. Do infinitives have personal endings? Of what forms is the future infinitive composed? Mention the uses of the infinitive. What is the complementary infinitive? Give the rule for the complementary infinitive. What case is the subject of the infinitive? After what verbs may the accusative and infinitive be used?

## LESSON LXXIV.

## PARTICIPLES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

## EXAMPLE.

*The river, flowing from the mountain, waters the plain.*

OBS. In the foregoing sentence, note that the word *flowing* is a form of the verb, but that it does not make a statement like a verb. It is used (1) as an adjective, describing *river* by assuming or implying an action; (2) it is used as a verb, by expressing the act of *flowing* as going on at the time *the river waters the plain*. *Flowing from the mountain* is a participial phrase, modifying *river*. This form of the verb is called a *participle* (Lat. *pars*, *part*, and *cāpĕre*, *to take*), because it partakes of or shares the nature of an adjective and of a verb. The principal word of the phrase is *flowing*; its meaning is completed and made more distinct by the prepositional phrase *from the mountain*. Hence the following definition:—

**257.** Participles in Latin, as in English, give the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

1. Participles are sometimes translated by the English participle or infinitive, and sometimes by a clause. (See 259.)

2. Like a verb, the Participle has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension* and *gender*; and like both, it has *two numbers*.

3. Transitive verbs have usually Four Participles: two in the active voice (present and future), as **āmans**, **āmātūrus**; and two in the passive voice (perfect and the gerundive, or future), as **āmātus**, **āmandus**.

4. Intransitive verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

5. Participles govern the same cases as their verbs.

6. Participles agree with nouns like adjectives.

#### FORMATION OF PARTICIPLES.

[The present participle is formed by adding *-nt*, nom. *-ns*, to the present stem; the future, by adding *-tūro*, nom. *-tūrus*, to the modified present stem, or verb-stem; the perfect, by adding *-to*, nom. *-tus* (*-so*, nom. *-sus*), to the verb-stem; the gerundive, by adding *-ndo*, nom. *-ndus*, to the present stem.]

PARTICIPLES. — ACTIVE VOICE.			
Tense.	Formation.	Example.	English.
Present.	Pres. stem + ns	āmans mōnēns rēgēns audiēns	<i>loving.</i> <i>advising.</i> <i>ruling.</i> <i>hearing.</i>
Future.	Verb-st. + turus esse	āmātūrus esse mōnitūrus esse rectūrus esse auditūrus esse	<i>about to love.</i> <i>about to advise.</i> <i>about to rule.</i> <i>about to hear.</i>
PARTICIPLES. — PASSIVE VOICE.			
Perfect.	Verb-stem + tus	āmātus mōnītus <sup>1</sup> rectus auditus	<i>having been loved.</i> <i>having been advised.</i> <i>having been ruled.</i> <i>having been heard.</i>
Gerundive, or Future.	Pres. stem + ndus	āmandus mōnendus rēgendus audiendus	<i>to be loved.</i> <i>deserving to be loved.</i> <i>to be advised.</i> <i>to be ruled.</i> <i>to be heard.</i>



7. The present stem of verbs of the fourth conjugation ends in *-ie* (as *audie-*) in the present participle and gerundive.

8. The Present Participle is declined like *āmāns* or *prūdēns*; note that the vowel is long before *-ns*, but short before *-nt*. The Perfect and Future Participles are declined like *bōnus*.

Form and translate the Present and Future Active Participles, the Perfect Passive, and the Gerundive of the following verbs:—

vōco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>call.</i>	dēleo, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, <i>destroy.</i>
pūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, <i>fight.</i>	fleo, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, <i>weep.</i>
hābeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, <i>have.</i>	tāceo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, <i>silent.</i>
dūco, -ēre, dūxī, ductum, <i>lead.</i>	vīvo, -ēre, vīxī, victum, <i>live.</i>
rēgo, -ēre, rēxī, rectum, <i>rule.</i>	dīco, -ēre, dīxī, dictum, <i>say.</i>
mūnio, -īre, -īvī, -itum, <i>fortify.</i>	finio, -īre, -īvī, -itum, <i>finish.</i>

### Distinctions of Time.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *sēsē omnes flentēs Caesārī ad pēdēs prōjēcērunt*, they all, weeping, threw themselves at Cæsar's feet.
2. *Gallia in trēs partēs est dīvisa*, Gaul is divided into three parts.
3. *Dīvitiācus flēns, ā Caesāre haec pētēbat*, Divitiacus, weeping, begged these things from Cæsar.
4. *Lābiēnus, monte occūpātō, nostrōs expectābat*, Labienus, having taken possession of the mountain, was waiting for our men.
5. *mīles pūgnāns cādit*, the soldier falls fighting.
6. *hostībus fūgātīs Caesar suōs rēvōcāvit*, when the enemy were put to flight, Cæsar recalled his men.

Obs. The Present Participle has usually the same meaning and use in Latin as in English. It denotes the action as going on at the time denoted by the principal verb. The Perfect Participle is used, in Ex. 2, like a predicate adjective, but the idea is conveyed of the action being completed before the time denoted by the principal verb. Note the translation of Exs. 3, 4, 5, and 6.

#### TIME OF THE PARTICIPLE.

**258. RULE XXXIV.**—The participle represents the time as *present*, *past*, or *future*, relatively to that of the principal verb.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**259.** In Latin there is no Perfect Participle in the active voice. Its place is often supplied (1) by the Ablative Absolute (*i.e.*, the noun and the participle are both in the ablative, a construction similar to our independent case), or (2) by a Clause with a Conjunction.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *urbe captā* (abl. abs.) *cīvēs fūgērunt*, *the city having been taken, or being taken, or after the city had been taken, the citizens fled.*
2. *urbe ā Caesāre captā, cīvēs fūgērunt*, *when the city had been taken by Cæsar, the citizens fled.*

Obs. Note that when the noun and participle are both in the ablative, and used independently of the rest of the sentence, the construction is called *ablative absolute*, *i.e.* *absolute* meaning, *freed from dependence*. (A word is said to *depend* on another when its case, gender, number, mode, tense, or person is determined by that word.) In English, the Independent Case is used in the same way with Participles; as,

## EXAMPLES.

1. Noun + participle; as, *the city having been taken, the citizens fled.*
2. Noun + *being* + adjective; as, *the soldiers being brave, the enemy was conquered.*
3. Noun + *being* + noun; as, *he came to Rome, Cæsar being consul.*

Note (1) that the noun in the Ablative Absolute denotes a different person or thing from that denoted by any other word in the sentence; note (2) that the words in the Ablative Absolute express the *time or circumstance* of the action in the leading clause; note (3) that words like *a Caesāre*, modifying the Ablative Absolute, stand between the noun and the participle. Hence the following rule:—

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

**260. RULE XXXV.**—A noun or pronoun, with a participle or an adjective, or two nouns, may be put in the ablative, to express the Time or Circumstance of an action.

*Translation of the Participles.*

EXAMPLES.

1. *audīvistīne mē id dīcentem*, did you hear me (lit. saying that) when I said that.
2. *Caesar eōrum prēcibus adductus bellum suscepit*, Caesar (lit. having been influenced), because he had been influenced by their entreaties, undertook the war.
3. *mīlitēs in oppīdum acceptī cīvēs interfēcērunt*, the soldiers (lit. having been received), when they had been received into the town, killed the citizens.
4. *āger cōlendus est*, the field must be cultivated.

OBS. Note the translation of each participle; that the time represented by the participle is *present*, *past*, or *future*, relatively to that of the principal verb. Note, finally, that the gerundive, used as an adjective, has the meaning of *must* or *ought*, as in Ex. 4.

**261.** Directions for Parsing a Participle.

Give the principal parts of the verb; the stems from which each participle is formed; name the participles; mention the time denoted by the participle; decline; rule.

*Sight-Reading.*

STORY OF HORATIUS (*continued*).

Ut <sup>as</sup> <sup>at first</sup> <sup>onset</sup> <sup>resound</sup> <sup>nom.</sup> <sup>spectators</sup>  
 tantēs perstrinxit. Stātim duo Rōmānī ālius <sup>super</sup> <sup>upon</sup> <sup>ālium</sup>  
 expīrantēs cēcīdērunt; trēs Albānī vulnerātī sunt. Rō-  
 mānōs jam spēs dēsērēbat. Unum Hōrātium trēs Cūriatī  
 circumstētērant. Is, <sup>surround</sup> <sup>although</sup> <sup>unhurt</sup> <sup>because</sup> <sup>unequal</sup>  
 erat, fūgam sīmūlāvit. Jam ālīquantum spātīū ex eō lōcō  
 ūbi <sup>flight</sup> <sup>pretend</sup> <sup>some</sup> <sup>distance</sup>  
 pūgnātum est, aufūgērat, cum rēspīciēns vīdet ūnum  
 Cūriātium <sup>(they) fought</sup> <sup>flee</sup> <sup>looking back</sup>  
 haud <sup>not</sup> <sup>far</sup> <sup>against him</sup>  
 impētū rēdit; hōc <sup>returns</sup> <sup>killed</sup> <sup>interfectō</sup>, altērum deinde, priusquam  
 tertius <sup>was able to come up</sup> <sup>posset consēquī</sup>, interfēcīt.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Sōle ōriente,<sup>1</sup> fūgiunt tēnēbrae. 2. Bellum Gallicum, Caesare impērātōre, gestum est. 3. Puer, mē invītō, ābiit. 4. Cīvēs cum hostībūs urbem oppūgnantībūs acriter dīmīcābant. 5. Hostēs, victōriam ādeptī, in castra sē rēcēpērunt. 6. Milītēs, pīlis coniectīs, phālangem hostium perfrēgērunt. 7. Caesar, urbe captā,<sup>2</sup> discessit. 8. Exercitus rēdiit, bellī cāsum de intēgrō tentātūrus. 9. Quis est, quī mē unquam vīdērit lēgentem? 10. Hostēs amnem transgressī castra mūnīvērunt. 11. Ex āmissīs cīvībūs dōlor fuit. 12. Caesar cum sōlā dēcīmā lēgiōne prōfectūrus est. 13. Sōlem ōrientem<sup>3</sup> cum māximā vōluptāte spectāmus.

Translate into Latin : —

1. *When this was known*, Cæsar departed. 2. *When this reply had been given*, the men departed. 3. Cæsar, *when he went to Gaul*, took three legions. 4. Cæsar, *after he had subdued Gaul*,<sup>4</sup> set out for Rome. 5. He assists others *without robbing himself*.<sup>5</sup> 6. *Under Cæsar as commander*, the soldiers fought bravely. 7. Many things go on *without your perceiving it*.<sup>6</sup> 8. *After I had spoken*, you went away. 9. *Because their leader was killed*, the soldiers fled. 10. The soldiers, *by throwing their weapons*, repulsed the line of the enemy. 11. I come *to assist you*. 12. *When the leader ordered*, the soldiers assaulted the town. 13. This happened one hundred years before the *founding of the city*. 14. Did you hear me *when I said that*? 15. I saw my friend sitting in the garden yesterday. 16. Cæsar *is going to set out from the camp with five legions*. 17. Cæsar lost his father *when he was*<sup>7</sup> sixteen years (old).

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *When the sun rises*, temporal clause.

2. Remember that there is no perfect active participle; its place is supplied by the ablative absolute, or by a clause with *cum*; as, *urbe captā* = *cum urbem cēpisset*.

3. The present indicative follows the third conjugation. See 176.

4. Observe that the ablative absolute can be used only when the subject of the subordinate clause is different from that of the principal clause (except in such phrases as **sē invitō**, *against his will*, used in indirect discourse, and a few others not to be imitated).

5. Lit. *not robbing himself*, **sē nōn spōlians**.

6. Lit. *you not perceiving it*, **tē nōn sentiente**.

7. Use **agens**, present participle.

Note that verbs of the second conjugation often weaken the characteristic vowel of the stem to *i*; as, **mōnī-tus**. Sometimes this vowel disappears; as, **dōceo**, **doc-tus**.

How many participles may a transitive verb have? What is a participle? Give the meaning of the word. Show how the participle is used as a verb, and as an adjective. What time do participles denote? How are they generally best translated? What is the meaning of *absolute*? Of *ablative absolute*? Have we a similar construction in English? Explain the English construction. Give the rule for the ablative absolute in Latin. When is one word said to *depend* on another? What active participle is found in English, but not in Latin? (*Ans.* The perfect; as, *having loved*.) Give the stem and ending of the present participle of **āmo**.

## LESSON LXXV.

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

#### EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

**262.** The Gerund is a verbal noun of the Second Declension, used only in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative singular. It corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **āmandī causā**, *for the sake of loving*.
2. **ūtīlis bibendō**, *useful for drinking*.
3. **ad agrum ārandum**, *for ploughing the field*.
4. **dōcendō discīmus**, *we learn by teaching*.

1. The Nominative of the Gerund is supplied by the Present Infinitive.

#### EXAMPLE.

**scrībēre est ūtile**, *writing (to write) is useful*.

2. The Gerund and Gerundive are formed by adding *-ndī* and *-ndus*, respectively, to the present stem.

## PARADIGM.

GERUND.		
Formation.	Example.	English.
Pres. stem + <i>ndī</i> {	<i>āmandī</i>	<i>of loving.</i>
	<i>mōnendī</i>	<i>of advising.</i>
	<i>rēgendī</i>	<i>of ruling.</i>
	<i>audiendī</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>of hearing.</i>
GERUNDIVE.		
Pres. stem + <i>ndus</i> {	<i>āmandus</i>	<i>{ to be loved,</i>
	<i>mōnendus</i>	<i>{ deserving to be loved.</i>
	<i>rēgendus</i>	<i>to be advised.</i>
	<i>audiendus</i>	<i>to be ruled.</i>
		<i>to be heard.</i>

## 3. Declension of the Gerund.

Cases.	Example.	English.
NOM.	<i>āmāre</i>	<i>to love.</i>
GEN.	<i>āmandī</i>	<i>of loving.</i>
DAT.	<i>āmandō</i>	<i>to or for loving.</i>
ACC.	{ <i>āmāre</i> , or with a pre- position <i>āmandum</i> }	<i>loving.</i>
ABL.	<i>āmandō</i>	<i>with, from, or by loving.</i>

## EXAMPLES.

NOM. *scribēre est ūtile*, (*to write*) *writing is useful.*

GEN. *ars scribendī est ūtilis*, *the art of writing is useful.*

DAT. *charta scribendō est ūtilis*, *paper is useful for writing.*

ACC. { *scribēre disco*, *I learn to write* ; or,  
 { *inter scribendum disco*, *I learn during writing.*

ABL. *scribendō discimus*, *we learn by writing.*

OBS. Note that the accusative case of the gerund is found only after prepositions, and cannot be used as the direct object of a transitive verb.

## 4. The Gerund governs the same case as its verb.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **jūs vōcandī sēnātum**, *the authority (of convening) to convene the senate.*
2. **consīlium urbem cāpiendī**, *the design of taking the city.*

**Obs.** In the foregoing sentences the gerund is used in each, with its object in the accusative; but instead of using the gerund with its object in the accusative, we generally use the gerundive in agreement with the noun, which then takes the case of the gerund; as,

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **jūs sēnātūs vōcandī**, *the authority of convening the senate.*
2. **consīlium urbis cāpiendae**, *the design of taking the city.*

## 5. Equivalent Gerundive Forms :—

**NOM.** **urbem cāpēre** (infin.), *to take a city.*

**GEN.** **urbem cāpiendī**, or using the Gerundive = **urbis cāpiendae**, *of taking a city.*

**DAT.** **urbem cāpiendō**, or using the Gerundive = **urbī cāpiendae**, *to or for taking a city.*

**ACC.** **urbem cāpēre** (infin.); Acc. after a preposition = **(ad) urbem cāpiendum**, or using the Gerundive = **ad urbem cāpiendam**, *taking a city.*

**ABL.** **urbem cāpiendō**, or using the Gerundive = **urbe cāpiendā**, *with, from, by taking a city.*

The idiom is expressed in the following rule :—

**GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.**

**263. RULE XXXVI.**—Instead of the gerund with its object in the accusative, the gerundive is generally used, the noun taking the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with the noun in gender, number, and case.

**Obs. 1.** The rule requires the following changes :—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is changed to the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive agrees with its noun in *gender, number, and case.* This construction is called the *gerundive construction.*

## EXAMPLES.

1. **āgrīcōla hōmīnēs mīsit ad agrum ārandum** (gerundive),  
*the farmer sent men (for plowing) to plow the field.*
2. **ad eās rēs conficiendās** (gerundive) **Orgētōrix dēligitur**,  
*Orgetorix is chosen (for executing) to execute these plans =*  
**ad eās rēs conficiendum** (gerund), etc.
3. **ars puērōs ēdūcandī difficilis est**, *the art of training boys is difficult.*

Obs. 2. In the dative, and in the *ablative with a preposition*, the gerund with a direct object is rarely used. Generally after prepositions the gerundive construction should be used; as, **ad cāpiendam urbem**, not **ad cāpiendum urbem**, *for taking the city.*

Obs. 3. The gerundive construction can be used only after verbs that take the accusative, so also after **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **pōtior**, and **vescor**, which in early Latin were followed by the accusative. If the verb is intransitive, or governs any other case than the accusative, the gerundive is used impersonally with **est** in the nominative singular neuter.

## EXAMPLE.

1. **vālētūdīnī parcendum est**, *the health must be spared (lit., there must be sparing of the health).*

Obs. 4. The gerundive construction cannot be used when the object is a neuter pronoun or an adjective, as it would be impossible to distinguish the gender.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **stūdium āgendī ālliquid**, *desire of doing something.*
2. **cūpiditās plūra hābendī**, *greed for having more.*

## 264. Gerund and Gerundive Constructions.

1. The *genitive* of the gerund and gerundive is used after nouns and adjectives as an objective genitive.

a. The genitive of the gerund and gerundive is common with **causā**, *for the sake of*, to express purpose.

2. The *dative* of the gerund and gerundive is used after adjectives (rarely after nouns) that are followed by the dative of nouns.

3. The *accusative* of the gerund and gerundive is used after the preposition **ad**, to denote *purpose*, and sometimes after **inter**, **circa**, **ob**; also after verbs signifying *to give*, *to deliver*, *to agree for*, *to have*, *to receive*, *to undertake*, *to demand*.



4. The *ablative* of the gerund and gerundive is used to express *means*, or *cause* (rarely of *manner*), and after the prepositions **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, **ex**, **in** (rarely after **cum** and **prō**).

## EXAMPLES.

1. **spēs urbis dēlendae**, *the hope of destroying the city*; or, **audiendī cūpīdus**, *desirous of hearing*.
2. **āqua ūtilis est bibendō**, *water is useful for drinking*. (See 263. Obs. 2.)
3. **ad discendum prōpensī sūmus**, *we are inclined to learn*; or, **Caesar pontem in Arārī faciendum cūrat**, *Cæsar (takes care to have) has a bridge built over the Arar*.
4. **mens discendō ālitur**, *the mind is nourished by learning*. (See 263. Obs. 2.)

## VOCABULARY.

**im-pello**, **-pellere**, **-pūlī**, **-pulsum**, *drive against, impede*.

**cresco**, **crescere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *grow, increase*.

**au-fūgio**, **fūgere**, **fūgī**, **fūgitum**, *flee away*.

**pōtior**, **-īrī**, **-ītus sum**, *take possession of*.

**āliquantus**, **-a**, **-um**, *some*.

**pāreo**, **pārere**, **pāruī**, **pārītum**, *obey*.

**dē-līgo**, **-līgere**, **-lēgī**, **-lectum**, *choose out*.

**crēmo**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *burn*.

**vincūlum**, **-ī**, *N.*, *bond, fetter*.

## EXERCISES.

Convert the following into the gerundive construction : —

1. **Ars puērōs ēdūcandī difficilis est**.
2. **Dat ōpēram agrōs cōlendō**.
3. **Jūs vōcandī sēnātum**.
4. **Gallī lēgiōnēs opprimendī cōsīlium cēpērunt**.
5. **Cūpīdo urbem condendī eum cēpit**.
6. **Agrīcōla hōmīnēs mīsīt agrum ārandī causā**.
7. **Ad eās rēs cōficiendum Orgētōrix dēligitur**.
8. **Mercātōrēs ea important quae ad effēmīnandum ānīmōs pertainēt**.

Translate into English : —

1. **In ambūlandō mēcum cōgīto**.
2. **Nātandī ars ūtilis est**.
3. **Ars cīvītātem gūbernandī difficillīma est**.
4. **In**

librīs tuīs lēgendīs hōs trēs diēs cum multā vōluptāte exēgī.  
 5. Ars cīvītātis gūbernandae est difficillīma. 6. Prōficiscendum<sup>2</sup> mīhī ērat illō ipsō diē. 7. Hostēs in spem vēnērant pōtiendōrum casuōrum. 8. Caesar lōquendī finem fācit. 9. Asinus idōneus est ōnēra portandō. 10. Asinus idōneus est ōnērībus portandīs. 11. Cātilīna bellum suscepit reī-publicae dēlendae causā. 12. Ager cōlendus est.

### Sight-Reading.

#### STORY OF HORATIUS (*continued*).

Jam singulī sūpērērant, sed nec spē nec vīrībūs pārēs.  
one on each side survive  
 Altērius ērat intactum ferrō corpus, et gēmīnātā victōriā  
untouched double  
 fērōx ānimus. Alter fessum vulnēre fessum cursū trāhēbat  
weary running drag  
 corpus. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus exsultāns Albā-  
exult  
 num māle sustīnentem arma conficit, jācentemque spōliat.  
holding up kill lying prostrate strip

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The stem of **audio** is here *audie*.
2. The gerundive used impersonally.

What is a gerund? How is the gerund declined? What is used as the nominative of the gerund? How is the gerund formed? Is the gerund ever used in the plural? What is generally used instead of the gerund with its object?

Note that the gerundive has three uses: (1) The predicate use with the verb **sum**, to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (286); as, **urbs dēlenda est**, *the city must be destroyed*, see 288. (2) The impersonal use (263. Obs. 3) in the neuter gender, with the verb **est**, with the same force as above; as, **pūgnātum est mīhī**, *I must fight* (lit., *fighting must be done by me*). (3) The gerundive use, which is always active in meaning, being equivalent to the gerund (see 263). With transitive verbs the personal construction is regularly used; as, **ēpistūla mīhī est scrībenda**, *I must write a letter* (lit., *a letter must be written by me*).

## LESSON LXXVI.

## INFLECTION AND SYNTAX OF SUPINES.

## EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

**265.** The Supine is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the accusative and ablative. The supine in *-um*, sometimes called the Former Supine, is used only after verbs of *motion* to express *purpose*, like the English infinitive; the supine in *-ū*, sometimes called the Latter Supine, is used after adjectives, and rarely after verbs, as the *ablative of specification*.

1. The Supine has the same form as the neuter of the perfect participle; the Former Supine is formed by adding *-tum* (or *-sum*) to the present stem of the 1st, 2d, and 4th, and to the verb-stem of the 3d conjugations (the final letter of which is generally modified before *t*, and in the second conjugation *i* is inserted before *t*); the Latter Supine is formed by adding *-tū* (or *-sū*).

## PARADIGM.

FORMER SUPINE.		
Formation.	Example.	English.
Verb-stem + tum {	āmātum	to love.
	mōnītum	to advise.
	rectum	to rule.
	audītum	to hear.
LATTER SUPINE.		
Verb-stem + tū {	āmātū	to love, or to be loved.
	mōnītū	to advise, or to be advised.
	rectū	to rule, or to be ruled.
	audītū	to hear, or to be heard.

## 2. Uses of the Supine.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *lĕgātos mittunt rōgātum auxiliūm*, they send ambassadors to ask for aid.
2. *vĕnērunt pācem pētītum*, they came to ask for peace.
3. *id fācile factū est*, this is easy to do, or to be done.

Obs. Note, in the first two of the foregoing examples, that the supines **rōgātum** and **pētītum** are construed with **mittunt** and **vēnērunt**, both verbs of *motion*; these supines express the *purpose* of the motion. In Ex. 3 the supine is used with the adjective **fācile**, and answers the question *in what respect?* (298.) Note, further, that **rōgātum** and **pētītum** are each followed by the accusative, the same case that the verbs **rōgo** and **pēto** require. The idioms are expressed in the following rules:—

## FORMER SUPINE.

**266. RULE XXXVII.**—The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion, to express the purpose of the motion.

1. The supine in **-um** governs the same case as its verb.

## LATTER SUPINE.

**267. RULE XXXVIII.**—The supine in **-ū** is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy or difficult, worthy or unworthy, honorable or base*, and the nouns *fās, nēfās, and ōpus*.

1. The supine in **-ū** takes no object.

Obs. 1. The future infinitive passive **āmātum irī** is made up of the present infinitive passive of **eo**, *I go*, and the supine in **-um** of **āmo**, and is, literally translated, *it is being gone* (by somebody) *to love*; so that the apparent (or logical) subject is really the grammatical object.

Obs. 2. The supine in **-um** is not very common; only about two hundred and fifty verbs, chiefly of the first and third conjugations, have a supine; the supine in **-ū** is still less common. Hence the propriety of calling the third stem the *participial stem*, as Vanicek and other noted grammarians have done.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Lēgātī** **tōtius** **fērē** **Galliae** **ad** **Caesārem** **grātulātum** **convēnērunt**.
2. **Orātor** **dignus** **est** **audītū**.
3. **Divitiācus** **Rōmam** **ad** **sēnātum** **vēnit** **auxilium** **postulātum**.
4. **Id** **fācile** **dictū** **est**.
5. **Aeduī** **lēgātōs** **ad** **Caesārem** **mittunt** **rōgātum**

auxilium.<sup>1</sup> 6. Fās est dictū ; nēfās est dictū. 7. Exclūsī eōs, quōs tū ad mē sālūtātum mīsērās. 8. In urbem mīgrāvī hābītātum. 9. Ariōvistus dīxit omnēs Galliae civītātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse.

### *Sight-Reading.*

#### STORY OF HORATIUS (*concluded*).

Rōmānī ōvantēs ac grātūlantēs Hōrātium accīpiunt, et dō-  
rejoice cheering  
 mum dēdūcunt. Prīnceps ībat Hōrātius, trium frātrum spōlia  
home conduct first go  
 prae sē gērēns. Cū obvia fuit sōror, quae dēspōnsa fuērat  
before him bear him met betrothed  
 ūnī ex Cūriātiis, vīsōque sūper ūmērōs frātris pālūdāmentō  
on  
 sponsī, quod ipsa cōnfēcērat, flēre et crīnēs solvēre coepit.  
make hair tear begin  
 Mōvit fērōcis jūvēnis ānimum complōrātiō sōrōris in tantō  
stir fierce youth temper weeping  
 gaudiō publicō ; strictō itāque glādiō transfigit puellam,  
drawn therefore sword stab  
 sīmul eam verbīs incrēpāns : “ Abī hinc cum immātūrō āmōre  
at the same time chide go hence untimely love  
 ad sponsum tuum, oblīta frātrum, oblīta patriae.” Sīc eat  
forgetting (your) brothers perish  
 quaecumque Rōmāna lūgēbit hostem.  
whatever

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

##### 1. Accusative after rōgātum.

What is a gerund ? What is the gerundive ? How many cases has the gerund ? What is used as the nominative of the gerund ? Is the gerund used in the plural ? When is the gerundive used instead of the gerund ? Remember that the gerundive construction is preferred to the gerund construction, unless the use of the former would cause ambiguity. In connection with the prepositions, the gerundive construction is always used. What is a supine ? How many supines has a Latin verb ? From what stem are they formed ? After what verbs may supines be used ? After what other words may the supine be used ? Give the rules for the use of the supine.

## LESSON LXXVII.

## LOCATIVE.

## PLACE WHITHER? WHENCE? WHERE?

**268.** The name of the place *whither*, *whence*, and *where*, regularly requires a preposition.

1. The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, regularly requires **ad** or **in** with the accusative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **in Galliam**, into Gaul.
2. **in urbem**, into the city.
3. **ad urbem**, towards (the vicinity of) the city.
4. **ad Rōmam**, towards (the vicinity of) Rome.

Obs. Note that **AT**, meaning *near*, not *in*, is, with all names of places, to be translated by **ad** or **apud**, with the accusative.

2. The name of the place *whence*, or *from which*, regularly requires **ā**, **ab**, **dē**, **ē**, or **ex**, with the ablative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **ab urbe**, away from the city.
2. **ex Africā**, from (out of) Africa.
3. **ex oppidō**, from the town.
4. **ā Rōmā**, from about (the vicinity of) Rome.

3. The name of the place *where*, or *in which*, regularly requires **in** with the ablative.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>in Galliā</b> , in Gaul.      | 3. <b>in Africā</b> , in Africa.    |
| 2. <b>in portū</b> , in the harbor. | 4. <b>in castris</b> , in the camp. |

*Names of Places.*

**269. RULE XXXIX.**—Relations of place are expressed by a noun with a preposition; but with names of towns and small islands, and also with *dōmus*, *rūs*, and a few other words, the preposition is omitted, and

## PLACE TO WHICH.

1. The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, is put in the Accusative.

## PLACE FROM WHICH.

2. The name of the place *whence*, or *from which*, is put in the Ablative.

## PLACE IN WHICH.

3. The name of the place *where*, or *in which*, takes the Locative.

**270.** The Locative has the same form as the Dative in the first and third declensions; in the second declension it has the same form as the Genitive. In the plural of all three declensions, Dative, Locative, and Ablative are alike.

## EXAMPLES.

## LOCATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1st Decl.	<b>Rōma</b> , <i>Rome</i> ;	<b>Rōmae</b> , <i>at Rome</i> .
2d "	<b>Brundīsiūm</b> , <i>Brundisium</i> ;	<b>Brundīsiī</b> , <i>at Brundisium</i> .
3d "	<b>Karthāgo</b> , <i>Carthage</i> ;	<b>Karthāgīnī</b> , <i>at Carthage</i> .
<i>Plur.</i> 1st "	<b>Athēnae</b> , <i>Athens</i> ;	<b>Athēnīs</b> , <i>at Athens</i> .
2d "	<b>Delphī</b> , <i>Delphi</i> ;	<b>Delphīs</b> , <i>at Delphi</i> .
3d "	<b>Cūrēs</b> , <i>Cures</i> ;	<b>Cūrībus</b> , <i>at Cures</i> .

1. A similar construction is used with the words:—

<b>dōmum</b> , <i>home</i> ;	<b>dōmō</b> , <i>from home</i> ;	<b>dōmī</b> , <i>at home</i> .
<b>rūs</b> , <i>into the country</i> ;	<b>rūre</b> (-ī), <i>from the</i>	<b>rūrī</b> (e), <i>in the country</i> .
<b>dōmōs</b> , <i>home</i> .	<i>country</i> ;	<b>mīlitiae</b> , <i>in military service</i> .
	<b>terrā</b> , <i>by land</i> .	<b>bellī</b> , <i>abroad</i> .
	<b>mārī</b> , <i>by sea</i> .	<b>hūmī</b> , <i>on the ground</i> .

2. That is—

a. **Dōmus** in both numbers, and **rūs** in the singular, are put after verbs of *motion* in the accusative, like names of towns, without a preposition; but if a genitive or possessive pronoun limits **dōmum**, the preposition **in** or **ad** may be used, as **in dōmum meam**, *to my house*.

b. The ablatives **dōmō**, **hūmō**, **rūre**, are used like the names of towns, to denote the place *from which*.

c. The ablatives **lōcō**, **lōcīs**, **parte**, **partībus**, **dextrā**, *on the right*, **laevā**, **sīnistrā**, *on the left hand*, **terrā**, *on land*, and **mārī**, *on sea*, especially when they are modified by adjectives, are often used like names of towns, without a preposition.

d. The forms **dōmī** (gen. **dōmūs**), *at home*, **bellī** (used with **dōmī**), *abroad*, **mīlitiae**, *in military service*, **hūmī**, *on the ground*, being locatives, take no preposition.

## Examples Illustrating the Uses of the Locative: —

1. *in Galliam contendit, he hastens into Gaul.*
2. *ab urbe vēnit, he came from the city.*
3. *erat in Galliā lēgio ūna, one legion was in Gaul.*
4. *Rōmam vēnit, he came to Rome.*
5. *dōmum vēnit, he came home.*
6. *Rōmā vēnit, he came from Rome.*
7. *dōmō dūxerat, he had brought from home.*
8. *Rōmae vīxit, he lived at Rome.*
9. *Cōrinthī puērōs dōcēbat, he taught boys at Corinth.*
10. *nihil dōmī gestum est, nothing has been done at home.*
11. *dōmī mīlītiaēque, mārī atque terrā, at home and abroad,  
on land and on sea.*

Obs. 1. In the foregoing examples note that 1, 2, and 3 illustrate the general rule; in Exs. 4, 6, and 8, the words denoting the *place to which*, the *place from which*, and the *place at which*, are names of towns, and the preposition is therefore omitted. In Exs. 5 and 7 *dōmum* and *dōmō* are in the accusative and ablative without a preposition. In Ex. 11 the locative forms *dōmī* and *mīlītiaē* are used without a preposition, and also *mārī* and *terrā*. Note that in the first and third declensions the locative is the same as the dative; in the second declension it takes the form of the genitive. In the plural of all three declensions, dative locative, and ablative are alike.

## Supplementary Examples: —

1. *in Gallōrum finibus, in the territory of the Gauls.*
2. *ā Galliā contendit, he hastens away from Gaul.*
3. *Rōmam prōfectus est, he set out for Rome.*
4. *Rōmā prōfectus est, he set out from Rome.*
5. *Rōmae vīxit, he lived at Rome.*
6. *Athēnīs vīxit, he lived at Athens.*
7. *dōmī vīxit, he lived at home.*
8. *Karthāgīnī(e) vīxit, he lived at Carthage.*
9. *Athēnīs fūgiunt, they flee from Athens.*
10. *Brundīsī vīxit, he lived at Brundisium.*
11. *dōmum vēnit, he came home.*
12. *dōmō prōfectus, having set out from home.*
13. *mīles hūmī jācēbat, the soldier was lying on the ground.*
14. *bellī dōmīque, in war and in peace.*
15. *dōmī mīlītiaēque, at home and abroad.*
16. *terrā mārīque (seldom mārī et terrā), by land and sea.*



OBS. 2. Note that when we wish to express simply motion *towards* a place, or that one is *near*, or in the *vicinity* of a place, prepositions must be used, even with names of towns and small islands, because it would be impossible to tell whether **Rōmam ivit** meant *he went to Rome*, or *towards Rome*; or **Rōmā vēnit**, *he came from Rome*, or *from the vicinity of Rome*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Rōmam profectus est**, *he went to Rome*;  
**ad Rōmam profectus est**, *he set out towards Rome*.
2. **Gēnāvam pervēnit**, *he came to Geneva*;  
**ad Gēnāvam pervēnit**, *he arrived in the neighborhood of Geneva*.
3. **Cāpuā vēnit**, *he came from Capua*;  
**a Cāpuā vēnit**, *he came from about Capua*.

**271.** The way or road by which is put in the ablative without a preposition.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Aurēliā viā profectus est**, *he set out by the Aurelian way*.
2. **exercitum vādō transducit**, *he leads his army across by a ford*.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>hiems</b> , -ēmis, F., <i>winter</i> .	<b>at-tingo</b> , -tingēre, -tīgī, -tactum, <i>touch</i> .
<b>initus</b> , -a, -um, (part. of <i>ineo</i> ), <i>having begun</i> .	<b>strēpitus</b> , -ūs, M., <i>noise</i> .
<b>Athēnae</b> , -ārum, F., <i>Athens</i> .	<b>ab-do</b> , -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, <i>hide, conceal</i> .
<b>dē-fendo</b> , -dēre, -dī, -sum, <i>ward off, defend</i> .	<b>cōn-cīdo</b> , -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cīsum, <i>cut to pieces, kill</i> .
<b>im-pēdio</b> , -īre, -īvi or -īī, -ītum, <i>entangle, impede</i> .	<b>per-solvo</b> , -solvēre, -solvi, -sōlūtum, <i>pay, render</i> .
<b>calāmitās</b> , -ātis, F., <i>loss, calamity</i> .	<b>rēpentīnus</b> , -a, -um, <i>sudden, unlooked for</i> .
<b>con-sēquor</b> , -quī, -cūtus sum, <i>dep., follow after</i> .	<b>jāceo</b> , -ēre, -uī, -ītum, <i>lie</i> .

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Consul in Itāliam profectus est.
2. Cīcērō profectus est Athēnās, in urbem<sup>1</sup> cēlēberrimam.
3. Consul Rōmā Athēnās profectus est.
4. Caesar Rōmam profectus est.
5. Puer vēniēbat dōmum.
6. Puer profectus est rūs.
7. Cas-

trīs sē tēnuit. 8. Vir multōs annōs dōmī vīxit. 9. Miles hūmī jācēbat. 10. Attīcus, Cīcērōnis āmicus, multōs annōs Athēnīs vīxit. 11. Karthāgīnī rēgēs creābantur. 12. Māgnās rēs Pompējus dōmī mīlītiaēque, terrā mārīque gessit.

Translate into Latin : —

1. Cæsar came to the camp. 2. Cæsar came into Gaul. 3. Cæsar came from Gaul. 4. The consul lived at Rome. 5. The consul came from Rome to Athens. 6. Cæsar came into Italy. 7. The boy set out for home. 8. In the summer my friends and I shall depart from Rome. 9. I shall set out for Miletus, they will set out for Athens. 10. In the first watch, the soldiers departed from the camp with a great tumult. 11. Cæsar set out for Rome. 12. Cæsar set out from Rome. 13. Cæsar wished to be first at Rome. 14. I will depart into the country at the beginning of summer. 15. My friend lived many years at Athens. 16. Your friend lived many years at my house. 17. Many apples lay on the ground.

Supplementary Exercises : —

1. I will dwell at Athens, but you at Rome. 2. Many great generals were born at Rome. 3. He died at Corinth. 4. The soldiers lie on the ground in summer. 5. Cæsar, (when he was) made quæstor, hastened from Italy to Spain. 6. He came into Italy. 7. They were with me both in peace and in war. 8. He returned from the city to the country. 9. I have lived at Athens, at Rome, and at Carthage. 10. When the speech had been delivered, Cæsar departed. 11. He came to Rome in the consulship of Cicero. 12. In Cæsar's consulship, the Germans crossed the Rhine.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. If **urbs** or **oppidum** is added in apposition, the preposition **in** must be used.

How is the *place to which* expressed? The *place from which*? The *place at which*, or *where*? With names of towns, how is the *place to which*, the *place from which*, and the *place at which* expressed? With

nouns of the first declension, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Rōma**, **Athēnae**, **Thēbae**. With nouns of the third declension, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Cūrēs**, **Gādēs**, **Karthāgo**. With nouns of the second declension, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Argī** (pl.), **Delphī** (pl.), **Cōrinthus**. With all plural nouns, what form does the locative take? Write the locative of **Athenae**, **Argī**, **Thebae**, **Cūrēs**, **Delphī**. Write the Latin for *at home*, *on the ground*, *at Athens*, *at Rome*, *at Cures*, *at Corinth*, *at Carthage*. Is the preposition ever expressed with names of towns? When, and for what purpose? Write in Latin: *he went to Rome*; *he went towards, or near, Rome*; *he came from Rome*; *he came from (the neighborhood of) Rome*.

---

## LESSON LXXVIII.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM*.—DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

Obs. 1. The verb asserts action or being. The Modes of the verb are used to denote the *manner* in which the action or being is asserted. The Indicative Mode asserts the action or being as a *fact*; as, *I write*. Here *writing* is asserted as an actual fact. The Imperative Mode asserts the action not as an actual or possible fact, but as a *command*; as, *James, write the letter*. *Writing* is not asserted as a fact, but *James* is ordered to make it a fact. The Subjunctive Mode is used to express the action or being not as a fact, but as merely *conceived*, or *thought of*; as, *if I should write*. Here *writing* is asserted not as an actual fact, but only as *thought of*, or *conceived* in the mind, without regard to its becoming an actual fact. So with *I may write*; *writing* is not asserted as an actual fact, but only as a *possible* or *doubtful* fact. As the assertions of fact are made more often in principal sentences, it is obvious that the indicative chiefly is used in such clauses; but the subjunctive is used, even in independent clauses, to express an action doubtfully or indirectly, or to represent it as *possible*, not as *real*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **sint beātī**, *may they be happy*.
2. **amēmus patriam**, *let us love our country*.
3. **quid faciā**, *what am I to do?*

Obs. 2. The subjunctive in Ex. 1 expresses a *wish*, representing the action as *desired*; the indicative would assert as a fact that *they*

are happy. Ex. 2 expresses a command *indirectly*, i.e. commanding an act in which the first or third person is to be the *actor*; the imperative is used to express a *direct* command. The question in Ex. 3 implies *doubt*, or *uncertainty*, and hence the subjunctive is used. The indicative is used in asking questions that do not imply doubt.

Obs. 3. The pupil should note that *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, when denoting *emphasis* or *contrast*, or meaning *permission* or *duty*, are not the signs of the subjunctive, but require separate verbs; as, *the soldiers can fight*, meaning *the soldiers are able to fight* = **mīlitēs pūgnāre possunt**. *May* and *might* are usually rendered by the proper tenses of **licet**; *can* and *could*, by **possum**; *must* and *should*, by **oportet**, **nēcesse est**, or the gerundive.

Obs. 4. The translations of the subjunctive mode given below in connection with the conjugation of the verb are the most common meanings when used in *independent sentences*. The meanings in *dependent sentences* will be illustrated in the exercises further on.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT.	
Singular.	Plural.
1. <b>sim</b> , <i>I may be.</i>	<b>simus</b> , <i>we may be.</i>
2. <b>sīs</b> , <i>thou mayst be.</i>	<b>sītis</b> , <i>you may be.</i>
3. <b>sit</b> , <i>he may be.</i>	<b>sint</b> , <i>they may be.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
1. <b>essem</b> , <i>I should be.</i>	<b>essēmus</b> , <i>we should be.</i>
2. <b>essēs</b> , <i>thou wouldst be.</i>	<b>essētis</b> , <i>you would be.</i>
3. <b>esset</b> , <i>he would be.</i>	<b>essent</b> , <i>they would be.</i>
PERFECT.	
1. <b>fuērim</b> , <i>I may have been.</i>	<b>fuērīmus</b> , <i>we may have been.</i>
2. <b>fuēris</b> , <i>thou mayst have been.</i>	<b>fuērītis</b> , <i>you may have been.</i>
3. <b>fuērit</b> , <i>he may have been.</i>	<b>fuērīnt</b> , <i>they may have been.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
1. <b>fuissem</b> , <i>I should have been.</i>	<b>fuissēmus</b> , <i>we should have been.</i>
2. <b>fuissēs</b> , <i>thou wouldst have been.</i>	<b>fuissētis</b> , <i>you would have been.</i>
3. <b>fuisset</b> , <i>he would have been.</i>	<b>fuisSENT</b> , <i>they would have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.	
PRES. 2. <i>es, be thou.</i>	<i>este, be ye.</i>
FUT. 2. <i>esto, thou shalt be.</i>	<i>estôte, ye shall be.</i>
3. <i>esto, he shall be.</i>	<i>sunto, they shall be.</i>
INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
PRES. <i>esse, to be.</i>	<i>fütürus, -a, -um, about to be.</i>
PERF. <i>fuisse, to have been.</i>	
FUT. <i>fütürus esse, or före, to be about to be.</i>	

OBS. 5. The subjunctive is sometimes translated by the English Indicative; sometimes by the Potential, with the auxiliaries *may, might, would, should*; sometimes by the Subjunctive; sometimes by the Infinitive; and it is often used for the Imperative, especially in prohibitions.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *cum sim, since I am.*
2. *sim, may I be.*
3. *sī essem, if I were.*
4. *nē fuēris, be thou not.*
5. *adsum ut videam, I am here to see (that I may see).*
6. *sīmus, let us be, may we be.*
7. *sī fuērit, if he should have been.*

OBS. 6. The Present Imperative has no first or third person. If it is required, in an imperative sentence, to use the first or third person, the subjunctive is to be used; as,

Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>sim, let me be.</i>	<i>sīmus, let us be.</i>
2. <i>es, be thou.</i>	<i>este, be ye.</i>
3. <i>sit, let him (her, it) be.</i>	<i>sint, let them be.</i>

**272.** Instead of the regular forms of the Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Future Infinitive of *sum*, the following are frequently used:—

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Singular.	Plural.
<i>fōrem = essem</i>	_____
<i>fōrēs = essēs</i>	_____
<i>fōret = esset</i>	<i>fōrent = essent</i>
FUTURE INFINITIVE.	
<i>fōre = fütürus esse</i>	

**273. Dative of Possessor.****EXAMPLES.**

1. *est mihī liber*, *I have a book* (among other things); or,
2. *liber est meus*, *the book is mine* (and no one else's); or,
3. *habeo librum*, *I have, I hold, I keep, a book.*

Obs. From the foregoing examples the pupil will notice that *possession* may be expressed in three different ways; the dative emphasizes the *possessor*, and is the usual way of expressing simple possession. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

**DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.**

**274. RULE XL.**—The dative of the possessor is used with the verb *sum*.

**VOCABULARY.**

*obses*, -idis, M. & F., *hostage*.

*creo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *make, choose, elect*.

*persuādeo*, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *convince, persuade*.

*dīvido*, -vīdēre, -vīsī, -vīsum, *separate, divide*.

*Allōbrōgēs*, -um, M., *the Allobroges*.

*testis*, -is, M. & F., *witness*.

*contīneo*, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -tentum, *hold in, bound*.

*āger*, agrī, M., *field*.

*lācus*, -ūs, M., *lake*.

*Aeduus*, -ī, M., *an Aeduan*.

*influo*, -fluēre, -flūxī, -flūxum, *flow into*.

**EXERCISES.**

Tell the Mode, Tense, Number, and Person of the following; parse each word:—

1. *Este, est, sunt.* 2. *Ero, sītis, esset.* 3. *Erāmus, sūmus, esset.* 4. *Fuērit, fuissēmus, sint.* 5. *Fuit, es, sim.* 6. *Fuēre, fuērāmus, essent.* 7. *Esse, fuisse, sunt.* 8. *Fōrent, fuērit, fōrem.* 9. *Essēs, estis, essētis.* 10. *Multi mihī sunt librī.* 11. *Sex nōbīs filiī sunt.* 12. *Caesārī ērant multae lēgiōnēs et fidēlēs āmicī.*

## LESSON LXXIX.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

**275.** The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Active are formed from the present stem; the Perfect and Pluperfect from the perfect stem, by adding the verbal endings.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.—ACTIVE.

PRESENT.	
Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>āmēm, may I love.</i>	<i>āmēmus, let us love.</i>
2. <i>āmēs, love thou.</i>	<i>āmētis, love ye.</i>
3. <i>āmet, let him love.</i>	<i>āment, let them love.</i>
IMPERFECT.	
1. <i>āmārem, I should love.</i>	<i>āmārēmus, we should love.</i>
2. <i>āmārēs, thou wouldst love.</i>	<i>āmārētis, you would love.</i>
3. <i>āmāret, he would love.</i>	<i>āmārent, they would love.</i>
PERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāvērim, I may have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvērimus, we may have loved.</i>
2. <i>āmāvēris, thou mayst have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvēritis, you may have loved.</i>
3. <i>āmāvērit, he may have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvērint, they may have loved.</i>
PLUPERFECT.	
1. <i>āmāvissem, I should have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvissemus, we should have loved.</i>
2. <i>āmāvisseſ, thou wouldst have l'd.</i>	<i>āmāvissetis, you would have loved.</i>
3. <i>āmāvisset, he would have loved.</i>	<i>āmāvissent, they would have loved.</i>

1. The Analysis of the Tenses of the Subjunctive in the Active Voice is as follows:—

PRES. SUBJ.:	Pres. st. <i>āmā-</i> ( <i>ā</i> changed to <i>ē</i> )	+ personal endings.
IMPF. SUBJ.:	" <i>āmā-</i>	+ tense sign <i>-re-</i> + " "
PERF. SUBJ.:	" <i>āmāvi-</i>	+ tense sign <i>-ri-</i> + " "
PLUP. SUBJ.:	" <i>āmāvi-</i>	+ tense sign <i>-sse-</i> + " "

## 2. Translation of the Subjunctive :—

1. *āmet*, *let him love.*
2. *āmēmus*, *let us love.*
3. *cum vēnisset*, *when he had come, or having come.*
4. *sī Caesar pūgnet*, *if Caesar (should) fight.*
5. *sī Caesar esset dux*, *if Caesar were leader.*
6. *āmāvērit*, *suppose he (has) loved.*
7. *cum āmāvērit*, *since he loved.*
8. *cīvēs meī sint beatī*, *may my fellow-citizens be happy.*
9. *nē<sup>1</sup> audiat*, *let him not hear.*

## VOCABULARY.

*trans-grēdiōr*, *-grēdī*, *-gressus sum*, *dep.*, *cross.*

*extrā*, *prep. and adv.*, *outside of, beyond.*

*incrēdībīlis*, *-e*, *incredible.*

*jungo*, *jungēre*, *junxi*, *junctum*, *join, unite.*

*sāgittārius*, *-ii*, *m.*, *archer.*

*excelsus*, *-a*, *-um*, *lofty.*

*consanguīneus*, *-a*, *-um*, *related by blood, kindred.*

*in-fluo*, *-fluēre*, *-fluxi*, *-fluxum*, *flow into, empty.*

*impēdītus*, *-a*, *-um*, *part.*, *hindered.*

## EXERCISES.

Tell the mode, tense, number, and person of the following :

1. *Amāret*, *āmēmus*, *āmet*.    2. *Amāvissem*, *āmāvērint*, *āmārent*.
3. *Laudāret*, *laudāvissent*, *laudāvērit*.    4. *Vōcet*, *vōcārent*, *vōcāvissent*.
5. *Vulnērēs*, *vulnēret*, *vulnērent*.
6. *Exspectēmus*, *exspectārēmus*, *exspectāvissēmus*.    7. *Rōgem*, *rōgāvērim*, *rōgāvissem*.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *Nē* may be an adverb, as *nē āmet*, *let him not love*; *nē* may be a conjunction, as *nē commeātū prōhibēretur*, *castris idōneum lōcum dēlēgit*, *he chose a suitable place for a camp, that he might not be cut off from supplies (i.e. lest he should be cut off, etc.)*; *ne* is an interrogative particle (always an enclitic), as *audīvitnē*, *does he hear*?

How many tenses has the subjunctive? How is the imperfect formed?



## LESSON LXXX.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

**276.** The inflection of the Subjunctive Active of the four conjugations is as follows : —

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PRESENT.			
1. āmem	mōneam	rēgam	audiam
2. āmēs	mōneās	rēgās	audiās
3. āmet	mōneat	rēgat	audiat
1. āmēmus	mōneāmus	rēgāmus	audiāmus
2. āmētis	mōneātis	rēgātis	audiātis
3. āment	mōneant	rēgant	audiant
IMPERFECT.			
1. āmārem	mōnērem	rēgērem	audīrem
2. āmārēs	mōnērēs	rēgērēs	audirēs
3. āmāret	mōnēret	rēgēret	audiret
1. āmārēmus	mōnērēmus	rēgērēmus	audirēmus
2. āmārētis	mōnērētis	rēgērētis	audirētis
3. āmārent	mōnērent	rēgērent	audirent
PERFECT.			
1. āmāvērīm	mōnuērīm	rēxērīm	audīvērīm
2. āmāvērīs	mōnuērīs	rēxērīs	audivērīs
3. āmāvērīt	mōnuērīt	rēxērīt	audivērīt
1. āmāvērīmus	mōnuērīmus	rēxērīmus	audivērīmus
2. āmāvērītis	mōnuērītis	rēxērītis	audivērītis
3. āmāvērīnt	mōnuērīnt	rēxērīnt	audivērīnt
PLUPERFECT.			
1. āmāvissem	mōnuissem	rēxissem	audivissem
2. āmāvissēs	mōnuissēs	rēxissēs	audivissēs
3. āmāvisset	mōnuisset	rēxisset	audivisset
1. āmāvissēmūs	mōnuissēmūs	rēxissēmūs	audivissēmūs
2. āmāvissētis	mōnuissētis	rēxissētis	audivissētis
3. āmāvissent	mōnuissent	rēxissent	audivissent

## VOCABULARY.

rātis, -is, F., *raft*.stātuo, stātuere, stātuī, stātūtum, *place at*.stātūra, -ae, F., *size, statue*.nihil (indecl. neut. noun), *nothing*.lēnītās, -ātis, F., *softness, smoothness*.im-pēdio, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *hinder*.funditor, -ōris, M., *slinger*.linter, -tris, F., *boat*.calvus, -a, -um, *bald*.

## EXERCISES.

Tell the mode, tense, number, and person of the following :

1. Mōneat, mōnērēmus, mōnērent. 2. Mōnuērim, mōnuissem, mōnuissent. 3. Hābeam, hābeant, hābērent. 4. Dēlēret, dēlēvērim, dēlēvissem. 5. Dōceat, dōcēret, dōcuērit. 6. Rēgat, rēgēret, rēxērit. 7. Rēgāmus, rēgērēmus, rēxērīmus. 8. Mittāmus, mittērent, mīsīssent. 9. Contendās, contendērēs, contendēris. 10. Dūcant, dūcērent, dūxērīnt, dūxīssent. 11. Vincat, vīcērit, vīcisset. 12. Audiat, audīret, audīvērit. 13. Audīvisset, audīrēmus, audiant. 14. Mūniās, mūnīrēs, mūnīvēris. 15. Vēniātis, vēnīrētis, vēnērītis.

## LESSON LXXXI.

## VERBS.—SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.

**277.** The inflection of the Subjunctive Passive of the four conjugations is as follows :—

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

PRESENT.			
1. āmer	mōnear	rēgar	audiar
2. āmēris, or -re	mōneāris, or -re	rēgāris, or -re	audiāris, or -re
3. āmētur	mōneātur	rēgātur	audiātur
1. āmēmur	mōneāmur	rēgāmur	audiāmur
2. āmēminī	mōneāminī	rēgāminī	audiāminī
3. āmentur	mōneantur	rēgantur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.			
1. <i>āmārer</i>	<i>mōnērer</i>	<i>rēgērer</i>	<i>audirer</i>
2. <i>āmārēris, or -re</i>	<i>mōnērēris, or -re</i>	<i>rēgērēris, -re</i>	<i>audirēris, or -re</i>
3. <i>āmārētur</i>	<i>mōnērētur</i>	<i>rēgērētur</i>	<i>audirētur</i>
1. <i>āmārēmur</i>	<i>mōnērēmur</i>	<i>rēgērēmur</i>	<i>audiremur</i>
2. <i>āmārēmīnī</i>	<i>mōnērēmīnī</i>	<i>rēgērēmīnī</i>	<i>audirēmīnī</i>
3. <i>āmārentur</i>	<i>mōnērentur</i>	<i>rēgērentur</i>	<i>audirentur</i>
PERFECT.			
1. <i>āmātus sim</i>	<i>mōnītus sim</i>	<i>rectus sim</i>	<i>audītus sim</i>
2. <i>āmātus sīs</i>	<i>mōnītus sīs</i>	<i>rectus sīs</i>	<i>audītus sīs</i>
3. <i>āmātus sit</i>	<i>mōnītus sit</i>	<i>rectus sit</i>	<i>audītus sit</i>
1. <i>āmātī sīmus</i>	<i>mōnītī sīmus</i>	<i>rectī sīmus</i>	<i>audītī sīmus</i>
2. <i>āmātī sītis</i>	<i>mōnītī sītis</i>	<i>rectī sītis</i>	<i>audītī sītis</i>
3. <i>āmātī sint</i>	<i>mōnītī sint</i>	<i>rectī sint</i>	<i>audītī sint</i>
PLUPERFECT.			
1. <i>āmātus essem</i>	<i>mōnītus essem</i>	<i>rectus essem</i>	<i>audītus essem</i>
2. <i>āmātus essēs</i>	<i>mōnītus essēs</i>	<i>rectus essēs</i>	<i>audītus essēs</i>
3. <i>āmātus esset</i>	<i>mōnītus esset</i>	<i>rectus esset</i>	<i>audītus esset</i>
1. <i>āmātī essēmus</i>	<i>mōnītī essēmus</i>	<i>rectī essēmus</i>	<i>audītī essēmus</i>
2. <i>āmātī essētis</i>	<i>mōnītī essētis</i>	<i>rectī essētis</i>	<i>audītī essētis</i>
3. <i>āmātī essent</i>	<i>mōnītī essent</i>	<i>rectī essent</i>	<i>audītī essent</i>

## EXERCISES.

Tell the mode, tense, number, and person of the following :

1. *Amētur, āmārentur, āmātus sit, āmātus esset.* 2. *Amēmur, āmārēmur, āmātī sīmus, āmatī essēmus.* 3. *Lauder, laudārer, laudātus sim, laudātus essem.* 4. *Edūcēris, ēdūcārēris, ēdūcātus sīs, ēdūcātus essēs.* 5. *Vōcēmur, vōcārēmur, vōcātī sīmus, vōcātī essēmus.* 6. *Mōneāmur, mōnērēmur, mōnītī sīmus, mōnītī essēmus.* 7. *Dōcear, dōcērer, doctus sim.* 8. *Hābeantur, hābērentur, hābitus sit.* 9. *Rēgātur, rēgērētur, rectus sit, rectus esset.* 10. *Mittāmur, mittērēmur, missus sit.* 11. *Vincar, vincantur, vincērentur.* 12. *Dīcātur, dictī sīmus.* 13. *Audiātur, audirētur, audītus sit.* 14. *Mūniāmīnī, mūnīrentur, mūnītī sīmus.* 15. *Pūniātur, pūnirētur, pūnītī essent.*

## LESSON LXXXII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

## IMPERATIVE.

**278.** The Latin Subjunctive has two principal uses:—

I. It is used in INDEPENDENT SENTENCES to express—

1. A Wish (*Optative Subjunctive*); negative is *nē*.
2. An Exhortation or a Mild Command, chiefly in Prohibitions (*Hortatory Subjunctive*), negative is *nē*.
3. A Question of Doubt or of Deliberation (*Dubitative or Deliberative Subjunctive*); negative is *nē*.
4. An Action as Possible, not as Real (*Potential Subjunctive*); negative is *nōn*.
5. A Concession (*Concessive Subjunctive*); negative is *nē*.

II. It is used in DEPENDENT CLAUSES to express—

1. Condition (*Conditional Clause*, see **325**).
2. Comparison (*Comparative Clause*, see **327**).
3. Concession (*Concessive Clause*, see **328**).
4. Purpose (*Final Clause*, see **321**).
5. Result (*Consecutive Clause*, see **322**).
6. Characteristic (*Relative Clause*, see **323**).
7. Cause (*Causal Clause*, see **330**).
8. Time (*Temporal Clause*, see **331**).
9. Indirect Question (*Interrogative Clause*, see **342**).

a. The Subjunctive is also used in relative clauses (see **355**), in intermediate clauses (see **359**), and in subordinate clauses in Indirect Discourse (see **346**).

## EXAMPLES.

1. (*ūt*nam) milītes fortiorēs fuissent, *would that the soldiers had been brave.*
2. pugnēmus, *let us fight.*
3. pūgnet, *let him fight.*
4. nē pugnēmus, *let us not fight.*
5. quid facērem, *what was I to do?*
6. ego censeam, *I am inclined to think, or I should think.*
7. sit clārus Scipiō, *granted that Scipio be renowned.*

Obs. Ex. 1 expresses a *wish*, and the verb is therefore in the Optative Subjunctive; *utīnam*, *would that*, *O that*, frequently precedes the optative subjunctive; the negative particle is *nē*. Note, further, that the present and perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the imperfect and pluperfect, that the wish is not fulfilled, — the imperfect representing an unfulfilled wish in present time, the pluperfect in past time. Exs. 2 and 3 express a mild *command*, commanding an act in which the first or third person is the actor; the verbs are in the Hortatory Subjunctive; the negative particle is *nē*, not *nōn*. Ex. 4 expresses a Prohibition. Ex. 5 asks a *deliberative* or *doubtful* question; the verb is in the Dubitative or Deliberative Subjunctive. Ex. 6 makes a *cautious*, *polite*, or *modest* statement, and the verb is in the Potential Subjunctive. Ex. 7 expresses a *concession*, and the Concessive Subjunctive is used.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Scrībāmus. 2. Nē scrībāmus. 3. Laudēmus nōmen Deī. 4. Māli<sup>1</sup> sēcernant sē ā bōnīs.<sup>1</sup> 5. Utīnam pāter vēniat. 6. Amēmus. 7. Vēniāmus in urbem. 8. Sint beātī.<sup>2</sup> 9. Utīnam māgister discīpūlōs laudet. 10. Utīnam māgister discīpūlōs laudāret. 11. Utīnam in lītore mārīs ambūlārem. 12. Utīnam māgister discīpūlōs laudāvisset.

Translate into Latin: —

1. Let us love our country. 2. Let us praise our friends. 3. May you be happy. 4. Do not write the letter. 5. Would that he were present. 6. May the pupil study. 7. May the teacher praise the pupils. 8. Would that the teacher praised the pupils. 9. Would that the teacher had praised the pupils. 10. Let him walk with his friends.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. See 83. 4.

2. Note that (1) when the *wish* is for something *future*, the present subjunctive is used, but the perfect may be used; (2) when it is for something *present*, the imperfect subjunctive is used; (3) when it is for something *past*, the pluperfect subjunctive is used. As the *present* and *past* cannot be changed, the *wish* expressed by these tenses is unfulfilled.

Mention the chief uses of the subjunctive. Give the uses of the subjunctive in independent clauses. What negative is used with the subjunctive? What with the imperative? How many persons has the imperative? How is a *future*, a *present*, and a *past wish* expressed?

## SYNOPSIS FOR REVIEW.

Subjunctive in Independent Sentences	1. <i>Optative</i> . . . . .	Wishes.
	2. <i>Hortatory</i> . . . . .	Exhortations. Commands. Prohibitions.
	3. <i>Dubitative, or Deliberative</i> . . . . .	Questions of — Doubt. Deliberation. Indignation. Impossibility.
	4. <i>Potential</i> . . . . .	Cautious, Polite, or Modest } statements.
	5. <i>Concessive</i> . . . . .	Concession.

## LESSON LXXXIII.

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—  
ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

**279.** Many verbs are used only in the Passive Voice, but with an Active meaning. These are called **DEPONENT** (*laying aside*), because they lay aside the *active form* and the *passive meaning*.

1. They occur in all four conjugations, and the conjugation to which they belong is determined by the characteristic vowel of the present infinitive. They are inflected like the passive of other verbs, and have also the gerund, participles, and supines of the active voice.

2. Deponents of the First Conjugation are inflected as follows :

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
1. <i>mīror</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	<i>mīrātus sum, admire.</i>
2. <i>hortor</i>	<i>hortārī</i>	<i>hortātus sum, exhort.</i>
3. <i>glōrior</i>	<i>glōriārī</i>	<i>glōriātus sum, boast.</i>
4. <i>vāgor</i>	<i>vāgārī</i>	<i>vāgātus sum, wander about.</i>

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Indicative.		PRESENT.	Subjunctive.
<i>mīror, I admire.</i>		<i>mīrer, may I be admired.</i>	
<i>mīrāris, -re, thou admirest.</i>		<i>mīrēris, -re, be thou admired.</i>	
<i>mīrātur, he admires.</i>		<i>mīrētur, let him be admired.</i>	
<i>mīrāmur, we admire.</i>		<i>mīrēmur, let us be admired.</i>	
<i>mīrāminī, you admire.</i>		<i>mīrēminī, be ye admired.</i>	
<i>mīrantur, they admire.</i>		<i>mīrentur, let them be admired.</i>	
IMPERFECT.			
<i>mīrābar, I admired.</i>		<i>mīrārer, I should admire</i>	
<i>mīrābāris, -re, thou admiredst.</i>		<i>mīrārēris, -re, thou wouldst admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābātur, he admired.</i>		<i>mīrārētur, he would admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābāmur, we admired.</i>		<i>mīrārēmur, we would admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābāminī, you admired.</i>		<i>mīrārēminī, you would admire.</i>	
<i>mīrābantur, they admired.</i>		<i>mīrārentur, they would admire.</i>	
FUTURE.			
<i>mīrābor, I shall admire.</i>			
<i>mīrābēris, -re, thou wilt admire.</i>			
<i>mīrābitur, he will admire.</i>			
<i>mīrābimur, we shall admire.</i>			
<i>mīrābimīnī, you will admire.</i>			
<i>mīrābuntur, they will admire.</i>			
PERFECT.			
<i>mīrātus sum, I have admired.</i>		<i>mīrātus sim, I may have</i>	} <i>been admired.</i>
<i>mīrātus es, thou hast admired.</i>		<i>mīrātus sis, thou mayst have</i>	
<i>mīrātus est, he has admired.</i>		<i>mīrātus sit, he may have</i>	
<i>mīrātī sūmus, we have admired.</i>		<i>mīrātī simus, we may have</i>	
<i>mīrātī estis, you have admired.</i>		<i>mīrātī sitis, you may have</i>	
<i>mīrātī sunt, they have admired.</i>		<i>mīrātī sint, they may have</i>	
PLUPERFECT.			
<i>mīrātus ēram, I had admired.</i>		<i>mīrātus essem, I should</i>	} <i>have admired.</i>
<i>mīrātus ērās, thou hadst admired.</i>		<i>mīrātus essēs, thou wouldst</i>	
<i>mīrātus ērat, he had admired.</i>		<i>mīrātus esset, he would</i>	
<i>mīrātī ērāmus, we had admired.</i>		<i>mīrātī essēmus, we should</i>	
<i>mīrātī ērātis, you had admired.</i>		<i>mīrātī essētis, you would</i>	
<i>mīrātī ērant, they had admired.</i>		<i>mīrātī essent, they would</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT.	
<b>mīrātus ēro</b> , <i>I shall have admired.</i> <b>mīrātus ēris</b> , <i>thou wilt have admired.</i> <b>mīrātus ērit</b> , <i>he will have admired.</i> <b>mīrātī ērimus</b> , <i>we shall have admired.</i> <b>mīrātī ēritis</b> , <i>you will have admired.</i> <b>mīrātī ērunt</b> , <i>they will have admired.</i>	
Imperative.	
<b>SINGULAR</b> <b>PRES. 2. mīrāre</b> , <i>admire thou.</i> <b>FUT. 2. mīrātor</b> , <i>thou shalt admire.</i> <b>3. mīrātor</b> , <i>he shall admire.</i>	<b>PLURAL.</b> <b>mīrāminī</b> , <i>admire ye.</i> <b>mīrantor</b> , <i>they shall admire.</i>
Infinitive.	
<b>PRES. mīrārī</b> , <i>to admire.</i> <b>PERF mīrātus esse</b> , <i>to have admired.</i> <b>FUT mīrātūrus esse</b> , <i>to be about to admire.</i> <b>F. P. mīrātus fōre</b> , <i>to have been about to admire.</i>	
Participles.	
<b>PRES. mīrāns</b> , <i>admiring.</i> <b>PERF mīrātus</b> , <i>having admired.</i>	<b>FUT. mīrātūrus</b> , <i>about to admire.</i> <b>GER. mīrandus</b> , <i>to be admired.</i>
Gerund.	
<b>GEN. mīrandī</b> , <i>of admiring.</i> <b>ACC. mīrandum</b> , <i>admiring.</i> <b>DAT. mīrandō</b> , <i>to, for admiring.</i> <b>ABL. mīrandō</b> , <i>with, from, by admiring.</i>	
Supine.	
<b>FORMER. mīrātum</b> , <i>to admire.</i> <b>LATTER. mīrātū</b> , <i>{ to admire,</i> <span style="display: block; text-align: right;"><i>{ to be admired.</i></span>	

a. Note that Deponent Verbs have *four* participles, — the two active and the two passive. They are the only Latin verbs that have a perf. partic. with an active meaning; as, *hortātus*, *having exhorted*.

b. The Gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs (263. Obs. 1), or in intransitive verbs used impersonally; hence only the gerundives of transitive deponent verbs, or the impersonal forms of intransitive deponent verbs, can be used; as,

### EXAMPLES.

1. **hortandus**, *fit to be*, or *must be exhorted*.
2. **pugnandum est mihi**, *I must fight* (lit., *fighting must be done by me*).
3. **moriendum est nobis**, *we must die*.



c. The Perfect Participle of a few deponent verbs may have a passive meaning ; as,

## EXAMPLE.

1. *ādeptus*, *having obtained*, or *having been obtained*.

280. Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *plūrimis mārītīmīs rēbus fruīmur et ūtīmur*, *we enjoy and use very many maritime productions.*
2. *Caesar oppidō pōtītur*, *Cæsar obtains possession of the town.*
3. *lacte vescuntur*, *they live on milk.*
4. *fungītur officiō*, *he performs his duty.*

Obs. Note the translation of the deponent verbs in each of the foregoing sentences ; note that each is construed with the ablative, as if it were an accusative. The idiom is expressed in the following rule :—

## ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

**281. RULE XLI.** — *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative.



## LESSON LXXXIV.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**282.** A Synopsis of Deponent Verbs of the Four Conjugations is as follows :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
1. <i>mīror</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	<i>mīrātus sum</i> , <i>admire.</i>
2. <i>vēreor</i>	<i>vērērī</i>	<i>vērītus sum</i> , <i>fear.</i>
3. <i>sēquor</i>	<i>sēquī</i>	<i>sēcūtus sum</i> , <i>follow.</i>
4. <i>pōtior</i>	<i>pōtīrī</i>	<i>pōtītus sum</i> , <i>possess.</i>

## PARADIGMS.

Indicative.				
PRES.	mīror mīrāris, or -re mīrātūr mīrāmur mīrāminī mīrantur	vēreor vērēris, or -re vērētūr vērēmur vērēminī vērentur	sēquor sēquēris, or -re sēquitūr sēquimur sēquiminī sēquuntur	pōtior pōtīris, or -re pōtītūr pōtimur pōtīminī pōtiuntur
IMP.	mīrābar	vērēbar	sēquēbar	pōtiēbar
FUT.	mīrābor	vērēbor	sēquar	pōtiar
PERF.	mīrātus sum	vērītus sum	sēcūtus sum	pōtītus sum
PLUP.	mīrātus eram	vērītus eram	sēcūtus eram	pōtītus eram
F. P.	mīrātus ēro	vērītus ēro	sēcūtus ēro	pōtītus ēro
Subjunctive.				
PRES.	mīrer	vērear	sēquar	pōtiar
IMP.	mīrārer	vērērer	sēquērer	pōtīrer
PERF.	mīrātus sim	vērītus sim	sēcūtus sim	pōtītus sim
PLUP.	mīrātus essem	vērītus essem	sēcūtus essem	pōtītus essem
Imperative.				
PRES.	mīrāre	vērēre	sēquēre	pōti-re
FUT.	mīrātor	vērētor	sēquitōr	pōtītōr
Infinitive.				
PRES.	mīrārī	vērērī	sēquī	pōtīrī
PERF.	mīrātus (-a, -um) esse	vērītus (-a, -um) esse	sēcūtus (-a, -um) esse	pōtītus (-a, -um) esse
FUT.	mīrātūrus (-a, -um) esse	vērītūrus (-a, -um) esse	sēcūtūrus (-a, -um) esse	pōtītūrus (-a, -um) esse
F. P.	mīrātus (-a, -um) fōre	vērītus (-a, -um) fōre	sēcūtus (-a, -um) fōre	pōtītus (-a, -um) fōre
Participles.				
PRES.	mīrāns	vērēns	sēquēns	pōtiēns
FUT.	mīrātūrus (-a, -um)	vērītūrus (-a, -um)	sēcūtūrus (-a, -um)	pōtītūrus (-a, -um)
PERF.	mīrātus (-a, -um)	vērītus (-a, -um)	sēcūtus (-a, -um)	pōtītus (-a, -um)
GER.	mīrandus (-a, -um)	vērendus (-a, -um)	sēquendus (-a, -um)	pōtiendus (-a, -um)

Gerund.				
GEN.	mīrandī	vērendī	sēquendī	pōtiendī
DAT.	mīrandō	vērendō	sēquendō	pōtiendō
ACC.	mīrandum	vērendum	sēquendum	pōtiendum
ABL.	mīrandō	vērendō	sēquendō	pōtiendō
Supines.				
FORMER	mīrātum	vēritum	sēcūtum	pōtītum
LATTER	mīrātū	vēritū	sēcūtū	pōtītū

OBS. 1. The future infinitive is to be given in the active form (the passive being rare); thus of *sēquor* it is *sēcūtūrus esse*, not *sēcūtum iri*.

OBS. 2. The gerund and gerundive of the 3d and 4th conjugations, instead of *-endī, -endus*, may, especially after *i*, end in *-undī* and *-undus*; as, *pōtiundus, faciundī*.

### SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

**283.** Four verbs, having no perfect stems, take the form of the passive in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses only. They form the tenses derived from the present stem regularly. Such verbs, being half active and half passive in form, are called *semi-deponents*, or *neuter passives*. They are:—

Present.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Passive.
<i>audeo</i>	<i>audēre</i>	<i>ausus sum, dare.</i>
<i>gaudeo</i>	<i>gaudēre</i>	<i>gāvīsus sum, rejoice.</i>
<i>sōleo</i>	<i>sōlēre</i>	<i>sōlitus sum, am accustomed.</i>
<i>fido</i>	<i>fīdēre</i>	<i>fīsus sum, trust.</i>

SYN. *Prōficiācor*, to set out on a journey; *Iter faciēre*, to travel, either at home or abroad; *peregrīnārī*, to travel abroad.

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. Caesar suōs mīlītēs cōhortātus est.
2. Omnēs admīrantur splendōrem virtūtis.
3. Mīlītēs agrōs pōpūlābantur.
4. Mī fili, vērēre pārentēs.
5. Intuēmur praeclāra virtūtis exempla.
6. Virtūtis viam sēquimur.
7. Amīcus mōrītur.

8. Hostēs urbem aggrēdiuntur. 9. Puer, nē mentītus sīs.  
 10. Māgnōs hōmīnēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortunā. 11. Praeceptor gaudēbat. 12. Cīvēs māximē gāvīsī sunt. 13. Rēmus Nūmītōris grēgēs infestāre sōlītus est.

Translate into Latin : —

1. We admire, we fear, we approach,<sup>1</sup> we measure. 2. You admire, you fear, you approach, you measure. 3. We admire, we were admiring, we have admired, we had admired. 4. We rejoice, they rejoice. 5. We have rejoiced, they have rejoiced. 6. We dare, we dared, we have dared. 7. We trust, we trusted, we have trusted, we will trust. 8. The garden of the king is adorned.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Use the proper tense of **aggrēdior**.

Define deponent verbs. Why are these verbs so called? Of what conjugation are they? How many participles may a deponent verb have? What deponents have four participles? How many stems has a deponent verb? What active forms have deponent verbs?

### LESSON LXXXV.

#### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.—DATIVE OF AGENT.

**284.** The Periphrastic<sup>1</sup> Conjugations are formed by combining the tenses of **esse** with the future active participle and with the gerundive.

##### I. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

**285.** The Active Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the tenses of **esse** with the future active participle, denotes an *intended* or *future* action.

Obs. The subjunctive has no future tense; its place may be supplied, whenever it is necessary to distinguish accurately *future* from *present* time in subordinate clauses, by the periphrastic subjunctive, which may be called the *future subjunctive*.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.
PRES.	<i>āmātūrus sum, I am about to love.</i> <i>āmātūrus es, thou art about to love.</i> <i>āmātūrus est, he is about to love.</i> <i>āmātūrī sūmus, we are about to love.</i> <i>āmātūrī estis, you are about to love.</i> <i>āmātūrī sunt, they are about to love.</i>	<i>āmātūrus sim</i> <i>āmātūrus sis</i> <i>āmātūrus sit</i> <i>āmātūrī sīmus</i> <i>āmātūrī sītis</i> <i>āmātūrī sint</i>
IMP.	<i>āmātūrus eram,<sup>2</sup> I was about to love, etc.</i>	<i>āmātūrus essem</i>
FUT.	<i>āmātūrus ero,<sup>3</sup> I shall be about to love, etc.</i>	
PERF.	<i>āmātūrus fui, I have been about to love, etc.</i>	<i>āmātūrus fuērim</i>
PLUP.	<i>āmātūrus fuēram, I had been about to love.</i>	<i>āmātūrus fuisset</i>
F. P.	<i>āmātūrus fuēro (not used).</i>	
Infinitive.		
PRES.	<i>āmātūrus esse, to be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	<i>āmātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love.</i>	

II. Passive<sup>4</sup> Periphrastic Conjugation.

**286.** The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, formed by combining the tenses of *esse* with the gerundive, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.
PRES.	<i>āmandus sum, I am to be loved.</i> <i>āmandus es, thou art to be loved.</i> <i>āmandus est, he is to be loved.</i> <i>āmandī sūmus, we are to be loved.</i> <i>āmandī estis, you are to be loved.</i> <i>āmandī sunt, they are to be loved.</i>	<i>āmandus sim</i> <i>āmandus sis</i> <i>āmandus sit</i> <i>āmandī sīmus</i> <i>āmandī sītis</i> <i>āmandī sint</i>
IMP.	<i>āmandus eram, I was to be loved.</i>	<i>āmandus essem</i>
FUT.	<i>āmandus ero,<sup>3</sup> I shall be (worthy) to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	<i>āmandus fui, I have been, or was to be loved.</i>	<i>āmandus fuērim</i>
PLUP.	<i>āmandus fuēram, I had been to be loved.</i>	<i>āmandus fuisset</i>
F. P.	<i>āmandus fuēro</i>	
Infinitive.		
PRES.	<i>āmandus esse, to be fit to be loved.</i>	
PERF.	<i>āmandus fuisse, to have been fit to be loved.</i>	

**287. Dative of the Agent.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **diligentia colenda est nobis**, *we must cultivate a habit of carefulness* (lit., *(a habit of) carefulness is to us to be cultivated*).
2. **Caesari omnia uno tempore erat agenda**, *Caesar had to do everything at one time* (lit., *everything was to Caesar to be done at one time*).
3. **omnibus moriendum est**, *all must die* (lit., *(the necessity of) dying is to all*).
4. **Caesari in Galliam maturandum**, *Caesar had to hasten into Gaul* (lit., *(the necessity of) hastening into Gaul was to Caesar*).

Obs. In Exs. 1 and 2 note that with the gerundive the person upon whom the obligation rests of doing the action is expressed by the dative; this dative expresses not merely the doer of the action, but the *person interested* in doing it, and is, therefore, to be classified under the Dative of Interest (see 193.3). Note that the verbs in Exs. 1 and 2 are transitive,<sup>5</sup> and the periphrastic forms have a subject with which they agree in *gender, number, and case*; in Exs. 3 and 4 the verbs are intransitive, the periphrastic forms have no subject, but are of the third person singular, neuter gender. The verb is here used impersonally, but the agent is in the dative. The idiom may be stated as follows:—

**DATIVE OF AGENT.**

**288. RULE XLII.—The dative of the agent is used with the gerundive to denote the person interested in doing the action.**

1. The dative of agent is often used after perfect participles.
2. The *agent* with passive verbs is usually denoted by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. Patria amanda est.
2. Amandus est ille puer.
3. Hic liber tibi legendus est.
4. Caesar castra moturus est.
5. Caesar cum sola decima legione profecturus erat.
6. Mihi scribendum est.
7. Obsides tibi daturus sum.
8. Frumentum Aedu<sup>6</sup>s dandum est.
9. Epistula tibi scribenda est.

Translate into Latin :—

1. The town must be stormed by the soldiers.
2. Cæsar must hasten into Gaul.
3. They must write the letter.
4. You will have to fortify the town.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The word *periphrastic* is derived from two Greek words, and means *round-about speaking* = the English word *circumlocution* (**circum**, *around*, and **lōquor**, *I speak*).

2. The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly.

3. The subjunctive has no future tense. (See 285. Obs.)

4. The passive periphrastic conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. With intransitive verbs used in the passive, the impersonal (263. Obs. 1) form is used, and the agent is in the dative; as, **cīvibus subvĕniendum est**, *we must help the citizens*.

5. Whenever the verb itself takes the dative, the agent is usually expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**; as, **cīvibus ā vōbīs cōsūlendūm**, *the interest of the citizens must be consulted by all*.

6. In what two ways may this dative be translated?



### LESSON LXXXVI.

#### TABLE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

**289.** We have learned that there are three stems on which all the tenses of the verb are formed :—

1. The PRESENT STEM, found by dropping *-re* of the Present Infinitive Active, on which are formed the tenses expressing incomplete action; viz.,

- a. The PRESENT, IMPERFECT, and FUTURE INDICATIVE, active and passive.
- b. The PRESENT and IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, active and passive.
- c. The IMPERATIVE, active and passive.
- d. The PRESENT INFINITIVE, active and passive.
- e. The PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.
- f. The GERUND and the GERUNDIVE.

## PRESENT STEM.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Tense, Mode, and Person.			1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Present.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āma-o <sup>1</sup>	mōne-o	rēg-ē-o <sup>1</sup>	audi-o
		2	āmā-s	mōnē-s	rēg-ī-s	audi-s
		3	āmā-t	mōnēt	rēg-īt	audīt
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmā-mus	mōnē-mus	rēg-ī-mus	audi-mus
		2	āmā-tis	mōnē-tis	rēg-ī-tis	audi-tis
		3	āmā-nt <sup>2</sup>	mōne-nt	rēg-u-nt	audiu-nt
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> 2	āmā	mōnē	rēg-e	audi
<i>Plur.</i> 2		āmā-te	mōnē-te	rēg-ī-te	audi-te	
INFINITIVE		āmā-re	mōnē-re	rēg-ē-re	audi-re	
PARTICIPLE		āmā-ns	mōnē-ns	rēg-ē-ns	audiē-ns	
GERUND.	<i>Gen.</i>	āma-ndī	mōne-ndī	rēg-e-ndī	audiē-ndī	
	<i>Dat.</i>	āma-ndō	mōne-ndō	rēg-e-ndō	audiē-ndō	
	<i>Acc.</i>	āma-ndum	mōne-ndum	rēg-e-ndum	audiē-ndum	
	<i>Abl.</i>	āma-ndō	mōne-ndō	rēg-e-ndō	audiē-ndō	
Imperfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-ba-m	mōnē-ba-m	rēg-ē-ba-m	audiē-ba-m
		2	āmā-bā-s	mōnē-bā-s	rēg-ē-bā-s	audiē-bā-s
		3	āmā-ba-t	mōnē-ba-t	rēg-ē-ba-t	audiē-ba-t
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmā-bā-mus	mōnē-bā-mus	rēg-ē-bā-mus	audiē-bā-mus
		2	āmā-bā-tis	mōnē-bā-tis	rēg-ē-bā-tis	audiē-bā-tis
		3	āmā-ba-nt	mōnē-ba-nt	rēg-ē-ba-nt	audiē-ba-nt
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-re-m	mōnē-re-m	rēg-ē-re-m	audi-re-m
		2	āmā-rē-s	mōnē-rē-s	rēg-ē-rē-s	audi-rē-s
		3	āmā-re-t	mōnē-re-t	rēg-ē-re-t	audi-re-t
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmā-rē-mus	mōnē-rē-mus	rēg-ē-rē-mus	audi-rē-mus
		2	āmā-rē-tis	mōnē-rē-tis	rēg-ē-rē-tis	audi-rē-tis
		3	āmā-re-nt	mōnē-re-nt	rēg-ē-re-nt	audi-re-nt
Future.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmā-bo	mōnē-bo	rēg-ā-m	audiā-m
		2	āmā-bi-s	mōnē-bi-s	rēg-ē-s	audiē-s
		3	āmā-bi-t	mōnē-bi-t	rēg-ēt	audiēt
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmā-bī-mus	mōnē-bī-mus	rēg-ē-mus	audiē-mus
		2	āmā-bī-tis	mōnē-bī-tis	rēg-ē-tis	audiē-tis
		3	āmā-bu-nt	mōnē-bu-nt	rēg-e-nt	audie-nt
	IMPER.	<i>Sing.</i> 2	āmā-to	mōnē-to	rēg-ī-to	audi-to
		3	āmā-to	mōnē-to	rēg-ī-to	audi-to
		<i>Plur.</i> 2	āmā-tōte	mōnē-tōte	rēg-ī-tōte	audi-tōte
		3	āmā-nto	mōne-nto	rēg-u-nto	audiu-nto



2. The PERFECT STEM (found by adding to the present stem *-vi* for the 1st and 4th conjugations; *-vī*, or generally *-uī*, for the 2d; and *-sī* to the verb-stem of the 3d), on which are formed the tenses in the active voice that express completed action; viz.,

- a. The PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, and FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.
- b. The PERFECT and PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.
- c. The PERFECT INFINITIVE.

## PERFECT STEM.

Tense, Mode, and Person.			1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.	
Perfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmāvī	mōnuī	rēxī	audivī	
		2	āmāvī-stī	mōnuī-stī	rēxī-stī	audivī-stī	
		3	āmāvī-t	mōnuī-t	rēxī-t	audivī-t	
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmāvī-mus	mōnuī-mus	rēxī-mus	audivī-mus	
		2	āmāvī-stis	mōnuī-stis	rēxī-stis	audivī-stis	
		3	āmāvē-runt, re	mōnuē-runt, re	rēxē-runt, re	audivē-runt, re	
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmāvē-ri-m	mōnuē-ri-m	rēxē-ri-m	audivē-ri-m	
		2	āmāvē-ri-s	mōnuē-ri-s	rēxē-ri-s	audivē-ri-s	
		3	āmāvē-ri-t	mōnuē-ri-t	rēxē-ri-t	audivē-ri-t	
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmāvē-ri-mus	mōnuē-ri-mus	rēxē-ri-mus	audivē-ri-mus	
2		āmāvē-ri-tis	mōnuē-ri-tis	rēxē-ri-tis	audivē-ri-tis		
3		āmāvē-ri-nt	mōnuē-ri-nt	rēxē-ri-nt	audivē-ri-nt		
INFINITIVE		āmāvī-sse	mōnuī-sse	rēxī-sse	audivī-sse		
Pluperfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmāvē-ra-m	mōnuē-ra-m	rēxē-ra-m	audivē-ra-m	
		2	āmāvē-rā-s	mōnuē-rā-s	rēxē-rā-s	audivē-rā-s	
		3	āmāvē-ra-t	mōnuē-ra-t	rēxē-ra-t	audivē-ra-t	
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmāvē-rā-mus	mōnuē-rā-mus	rēxē-rā-mus	audivē-rā-mus	
		2	āmāvē-rā-tis	mōnuē-rā-tis	rēxē-rā-tis	audivē-rā-tis	
		3	āmāvē-ra-nt	mōnuē-ra-nt	rēxē-ra-nt	audivē-ra-nt	
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmāvī-sse-m	mōnuī-sse-m	rēxi-sse-m	audivī-sse-m	
		2	āmāvī-ssē-s	mōnuī-ssē-s	rēxi-ssē-s	audivī-ssē-s	
		3	āmāvī-sse-t	mōnuī-sse-t	rēxi-sse-t	audivī-sse-t	
		<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmāvī-ssē-mus	mōnuī-ssē-mus	rēxi-ssē-mus	audivī-ssē-mus	
		2	āmāvī-ssē-tis	mōnuī-ssē-tis	rēxi-ssē-tis	audivī-ssē-tis	
		3	āmāvī-sse-nt	mōnuī-sse-nt	rēxi-sse-nt	audivī-sse-nt	
	Fut. Perf.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1	āmāvē-ro	mōnuē-ro	rēxē-ro	audivē-ro
			2	āmāvē-ri-s	mōnuē-ri-s	rēxē-ri-s	audivē-ri-s
			3	āmāvē-ri-t	mōnuē-ri-t	rēxē-ri-t	audivē-ri-t
			<i>Plur.</i> 1	āmāvē-ri-mus	mōnuē-ri-mus	rēxē-ri-mus	audivē-ri-mus
			2	āmāvē-ri-tis	mōnuē-ri-tis	rēxē-ri-tis	audivē-ri-tis
			3	āmāvē-ri-nt	mōnuē-ri-nt	rēxē-ri-nt	audivē-ri-nt

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—ACTIVE VOICE.

*Recapitulation.*

Give the meaning, stem, formation, principal parts, euphonic changes, mode, tense, number, and person of each of the following:—

1. audit	dūxērīmus <sup>3</sup>	lēgēbat <sup>5</sup>
2. ērūdiēbat	mīserunt	pūnīvērunt
3. amāmus	ērūdīvērant	pangunt
4. dōcēmus	tīmuīmus	pētent
5. rēgit	frēgīstī	persuāsērat
6. vōcēmus	clausēris	dōcēbunt
7. vulnērat	rēxērāmus	laudā(vē)ro
8. amā	scripsēram	ērūdī(v)ērit
9. timent	lēgērant	dūcēbat
10. mōnēbunt	dōcuērunt	exercēbis
11. culpābant	scribe	ērūdī(vi)stī
12. crēdunt	dōnāvērīnt	discit
13. mittunt	dōmūī	hābītāvērunt
14. frangītis	dīluīmus	vōcat
15. terrētis	mōvērit	scripsēro
16. laudābit	audīvīstis	dēdit
17. clausīmus	lēgīstī	tēnuērat <sup>4</sup>
18. narrant	dōcuīstis <sup>4</sup>	narrāte

## Supplementary Exercises:—

1. Laudā, exercē, scribe, ōbēdī. 2. Laudēmus, exercēamus, scribāmus, ōbēdiāmus. 3. Utīnam pāter fābūlam nōvam narret! 4. Fīdem servēmus. 5. Tācēte, puērī. 6. Laudāte, exercēte, scribīte, ōbēdīte. 7. Cōpiās mājōrēs hābērēmus. 8. Utīnam pāter vēniat! 9. Nē pūgnēmus. 10. Dīcit Caesārem oppīdum expūgnāvīsse. 11. Dīcit Caesārem oppīdum expūgnāre. 12. Caesar in Galliā hiēmāre constituit. 13. Littērās scribāmus.

## Translate into Latin:—

1. He praises. 2. We teach. 3. They write. 4. He hears. 5. They were teaching. 6. He will write. 7. They will hear. 8. We do not ask. 9. They are reading.

10. Praise the boy. 11. Do not blame the boy. 12. Let us hear.<sup>6</sup> 13. May we hear? 14. We have praised. 15. They had taught. 16. They wrote. 17. He has heard. 18. We have sent. 19. Thou wilt have heard. 20. He has taught. 21. I have called. 22. I had read. 23. I shall have written. 24. I had heard. 25. They had sent. 26. They were teaching. 27. You did not fear. 28. Thou wert praising. 29. I will hear. 30. Ye write. 31. I shall have called. 32. Ye have punished. 33. Do not punish. 34. Do not write. 35. Praise ye the boys. 36. I gave. 37. I have given. 38. We have instructed. 39. Write the letter.

Supplementary Exercises : —

1. May you write the letter. 2. He determines to remain<sup>7</sup> in the city. 3. He says that Cæsar is storming the town. 4. Let us instruct the boys. 5. Would that my friend had written the letter! 6. Would that my father had told the story! 7. He determines to write. 8. May the teacher praise the scholars. 9. Praise ye, teach ye, write ye, punish ye. 10. Would that the teacher had not punished the scholar!

NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The first person singular is **āmo** for **āma-o**; **rēgo** for **rēge-o**.
2. The translation is, —

<b>PRÆS.</b> <i>I love, am loving, do love, etc.</i>	<b>PERF.</b> <i>I have loved, etc.</i>
<b>IMP.</b> <i>I was loving, did love, etc.</i>	<b>AOR.</b> <i>I loved, etc.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> <i>I shall or will love, etc.</i>	<b>PLUP.</b> <i>I had loved, etc.</i>

**FUT. PERF.** *I shall or will have loved.*

3. Account for the *x* in the perfect.
4. A few verbs of the second conjugation form their participial stem without a connecting vowel; as, **dōceo**, **doctum**.
5. Verbs of the third conjugation with a short stem-syllable take their perfect stem by adding **-ī** to the verb-stem, and lengthening the stem-syllable (**ā** is changed to **ē**); as, **āgo**, **ēgī**.
6. Review the rules for the subjunctive in independent clauses.
7. Review the rules for the uses of the infinitive.

## PRESENT STEM. — PASSIVE VOICE.

Tense, Mode, and Person.		1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Present.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āma-or</i> <sup>1</sup> 2 <i>āmā-ris, -re</i> 3 <i>āmā-tur</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>āmā-mur</i> 2 <i>āmā-mīni</i> 3 <i>āmā-ntur</i>	<i>mōne-ūr</i> <i>mōnē-ris, -re</i> <i>mōnē-tur</i> <i>mōnē-mur</i> <i>mōnē-mīni</i> <i>mōne-ntur</i>	<i>rēg-ūr</i> <i>rēg-ē-ris, -re</i> <i>rēg-i-tur</i> <i>rēg-i-mur</i> <i>rēg-i-mīni</i> <i>rēg-u-ntur</i>	<i>audi-ūr</i> <i>audi-ris, -re</i> <i>audi-tur</i> <i>audi-mur</i> <i>audi-mīni</i> <i>audiu-ntur</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmē-r</i> 2 <i>āmē-ris, -re</i> 3 <i>āmē-tur</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>āmē-mur</i> 2 <i>āmē-mīni</i> 3 <i>āmē-ntur</i>	<i>mōneā-r</i> <i>mōneā-ris, -re</i> <i>mōneā-tur</i> <i>mōneā-mur</i> <i>mōneā-mīni</i> <i>mōnea-ntur</i>	<i>rēg-ā-r</i> <i>rēg-ā-ris, -re</i> <i>rēg-ā-tur</i> <i>rēg-ā-mur</i> <i>rēg-ā-mīni</i> <i>rēg-a-ntur</i>	<i>audiā-r</i> <i>audiā-ris</i> <i>audiā-tur</i> <i>audiā-mur</i> <i>audiā-mīni</i> <i>audia-ntur</i>
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> 2 <i>āmā-re</i> <i>Plur.</i> 3 <i>āmā-mīni</i>	<i>mōnē-re</i> <i>mōnē-mīni</i>	<i>rēg-ē-re</i> <i>rēg-i-mīni</i>	<i>audi-re</i> <i>audi-mīni</i>
Imperfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmā-bā-r</i> 2 <i>āmā-bā-ris, -re</i> 3 <i>āmā-bā-tur</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>āmā-bā-mur</i> 2 <i>āmā-bā-mīni</i> 3 <i>āmā-ba-ntur</i>	<i>mōnē-bā-r</i> <i>mōnē-bā-ris, -re</i> <i>mōnē-bā-tur</i> <i>mōnē-bā-mur</i> <i>mōnē-bā-mīni</i> <i>mōnē-ba-ntur</i>	<i>rēg-ē-bā-r</i> <i>rēg-ē-bā-ris, -re</i> <i>rēg-ē-bā-tur</i> <i>rēg-ē-bā-mur</i> <i>rēg-ē-bā-mīni</i> <i>rēg-ē-ba-ntur</i>	<i>audiē-bā-r</i> <i>audiē-bā-ris, -re</i> <i>audiē-bā-tur</i> <i>audiē-bā-mur</i> <i>audiē-bā-mīni</i> <i>audiē-ba-ntur</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmā-rē-r</i> 2 <i>āmā-rē-ris, -re</i> 3 <i>āmā-rē-tur</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>āmā-rē-mur</i> 2 <i>āmā-rē-mīni</i> 3 <i>āmā-re-ntur</i>	<i>mōnē-rē-r</i> <i>mōnē-rē-ris, -re</i> <i>mōnē-rē-tur</i> <i>mōnē-rē-mur</i> <i>mōnē-rē-mīni</i> <i>mōnē-re-ntur</i>	<i>rēg-ē-rē-r</i> <i>rēg-ē-rē-ris, -re</i> <i>rēg-ē-rē-tur</i> <i>rēg-ē-rē-mur</i> <i>rēg-ē-rē-mīni</i> <i>rēg-ē-re-ntur</i>	<i>audi-rē-r</i> <i>audi-rē-ris, -re</i> <i>audi-rē-tur</i> <i>audi-rē-mur</i> <i>audi-rē-mīni</i> <i>audi-re-ntur</i>
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> 2 <i>āmā-bo-r</i> 3 <i>āmā-bē-ris, -re</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>āmā-bī-tur</i> 2 <i>āmā-bī-mur</i> 3 <i>āmā-bī-mīni</i> <i>āmā-bu-ntur</i>	<i>mōnē-bo-r</i> <i>mōnē-bē-ris, -re</i> <i>mōnē-bī-tur</i> <i>mōnē-bī-mur</i> <i>mōnē-bī-mīni</i> <i>mōnē-bu-ntur</i>	<i>rēg-ā-r</i> <i>rēg-ē-ris, -re</i> <i>rēg-ē-tur</i> <i>rēg-ē-mur</i> <i>rēg-ē-mīni</i> <i>rēg-e-ntur</i>	<i>audiā-r</i> <i>audiē-ris, -re</i> <i>audiē-tur</i> <i>audiē-mur</i> <i>audiē-mīni</i> <i>audie-ntur</i>
Future.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 2 <i>āmā-bo-r</i> 3 <i>āmā-bē-ris, -re</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 <i>āmā-bī-tur</i> 2 <i>āmā-bī-mur</i> 3 <i>āmā-bī-mīni</i> <i>āmā-bu-ntur</i>	<i>mōnē-bo-r</i> <i>mōnē-bē-ris, -re</i> <i>mōnē-bī-tur</i> <i>mōnē-bī-mur</i> <i>mōnē-bī-mīni</i> <i>mōnē-bu-ntur</i>	<i>rēg-ā-r</i> <i>rēg-ē-ris, -re</i> <i>rēg-ē-tur</i> <i>rēg-ē-mur</i> <i>rēg-ē-mīni</i> <i>rēg-e-ntur</i>	<i>audiā-r</i> <i>audiē-ris, -re</i> <i>audiē-tur</i> <i>audiē-mur</i> <i>audiē-mīni</i> <i>audie-ntur</i>
	IMP.	<i>Sing.</i> 2 <i>āmā-tor</i> 3 <i>āmā-tor</i> <i>Plur.</i> 3 <i>āmā-ntor</i>	<i>mōnē-tor</i> <i>mōnē-tor</i> <i>mōnē-ntor</i>	<i>rēg-i-tor</i> <i>rēg-i-tor</i> <i>rēg-u-ntor</i>	<i>audi-tor</i> <i>audi-tor</i> <i>audiu-ntor</i>
INFINITIVE.		<i>āmā-rī</i>	<i>mōnē-rī</i>	<i>rēg-i</i>	<i>audi-rī</i>
GERUNDIVE.		<i>āmā-ndus, -da, -dum</i>	<i>mōne-ndus, -da, -dum</i>	<i>rēg-e-ndus, -da, -dum</i>	<i>audiē-ndus -da, -dum</i>

3. The PARTICIPIAL STEM (found by adding *-tum* to the present or to the verb-stem), on which are formed —

a. The PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE, which, with the proper parts of the auxiliary verb *sum*, forms in the passive voice all those tenses which in the active are derived from the perfect stem.

b. The FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE, which, with *esse* and *fuisse*, forms the future and the future perfect infinitive active.

c. The SUPINES in *-um* and in *-ū*, the former of which, with *iri*, forms the future infinitive passive.

## PARTICIPIAL STEM.

Tense, Mode, and Person.		1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Perfect.	INDICATIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmā-tu-s</i> <sup>2</sup> <i>sum</i> 2 - <i>ta es</i> 3 - <i>tu-m est</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 - <i>tī sūmus</i> 2 - <i>tae estis</i> 3 - <i>ta sunt</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-s</i> <i>sum</i> - <i>ta es</i> - <i>tu-m est</i> - <i>tī sūmus</i> - <i>tae estis</i> - <i>ta sunt</i>	<i>rec-tu-s</i> <i>sum</i> - <i>ta es</i> - <i>tu-m est</i> - <i>tī sūmus</i> - <i>tae estis</i> - <i>ta sunt</i>	<i>audi-tu-s</i> <i>sum</i> - <i>ta es</i> - <i>tu-m est</i> - <i>tī sūmus</i> - <i>tae estis</i> - <i>ta sunt</i>
		<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmā-tu-s</i> <i>sim</i> 2 - <i>ta sis</i> 3 - <i>tu-m sit</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 - <i>tī simus</i> 2 - <i>tae sitis</i> 3 - <i>ta sint</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-s</i> <i>sim</i> - <i>ta sis</i> - <i>tu-m sit</i> - <i>tī simus</i> - <i>tae sitis</i> - <i>ta sint</i>	<i>rec-tu-s</i> <i>sim</i> - <i>ta sis</i> - <i>tu-m sit</i> - <i>tī simus</i> - <i>tae sitis</i> - <i>ta sint</i>	<i>audi-tu-s</i> <i>sim</i> - <i>ta sis</i> - <i>tu-m sit</i> - <i>tī simus</i> - <i>ti sitis</i> - <i>ta sint</i>
		<i>PARTICIP.</i> <i>āmā-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> ; pl. - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> ; pl. - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta</i>	<i>rec-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> ; pl. - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta</i>	<i>audi-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> ; pl. - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta</i>
		<i>INFINITIVE</i> <i>āmā-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> , - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta esse</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> , - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta esse</i>	<i>rec-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> , - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta esse</i>	<i>audi-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m</i> , - <i>tī</i> , - <i>tae</i> , - <i>ta esse</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmā-tu-s</i> <i>ēram</i> 2 - <i>ta ērās</i> 3 - <i>tu-m ērat</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 - <i>tī ēramus</i> 2 - <i>tae ērātis</i> 3 - <i>ta ērant</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-s</i> <i>ēram</i> - <i>ta ērās</i> - <i>tu-m ērat</i> - <i>tī ēramus</i> - <i>tae ērātis</i> - <i>ta ērant</i>	<i>rec-tu-s</i> <i>ēram</i> - <i>ta ērās</i> - <i>tu-m ērat</i> - <i>tī ēramus</i> - <i>tae ērātis</i> - <i>ta ērant</i>	<i>audi-tu-s</i> <i>ēram</i> - <i>ta ērās</i> - <i>tu-m ērat</i> - <i>tī ēramus</i> - <i>tae ērātis</i> - <i>ta ērant</i>
		<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmā-tu-s</i> <i>essem</i> 2 - <i>ta essēs</i> 3 - <i>tu-m esset</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 - <i>tī essēmus</i> 2 - <i>tae essētis</i> 3 - <i>ta essent</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-s</i> <i>essem</i> - <i>ta essēs</i> - <i>tu-m esset</i> - <i>tī essēmus</i> - <i>tae essētis</i> - <i>ta essent</i>	<i>rec-tu-s</i> <i>essem</i> - <i>ta essēs</i> - <i>tu-m esset</i> - <i>tī essēmus</i> - <i>tae essētis</i> - <i>ta essent</i>	<i>audi-tu-s</i> <i>essem</i> - <i>ta essēs</i> - <i>tu-m esset</i> - <i>tī essēmus</i> - <i>tae essētis</i> - <i>ta essent</i>
		<i>Fut. Perf.</i> <i>INDICATIVE.</i> <i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>āmā-tu-s</i> <i>ēro</i> 2 - <i>ta ēris</i> 3 - <i>tu-m ērit</i> <i>Plur.</i> 1 - <i>tī ērimus</i> 2 - <i>tae ēritis</i> 3 - <i>ta ērunt</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-s</i> <i>ēro</i> - <i>ta ēris</i> - <i>tu-m ērit</i> - <i>tī ērimus</i> - <i>tae ēritis</i> - <i>ta ērunt</i>	<i>rec-tu-s</i> <i>ēro</i> - <i>ta ēris</i> - <i>tu-m ērit</i> - <i>tī ērimus</i> - <i>tae ēritis</i> - <i>ta ērunt</i>	<i>audi-tu-s</i> <i>ēro</i> - <i>ta ēris</i> - <i>tu-m ērit</i> - <i>tī ērimus</i> - <i>tae ēritis</i> - <i>ta ērunt</i>
		<i>F. INF. ACT.</i> <i>āmā-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum esse</i> <i>F. P. INF. ACT.</i> <i>āmā-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum fuisse</i>	<i>mōnī-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum esse</i> <i>mōnī-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum fuisse</i>	<i>rec-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum esse</i> <i>rec-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum fuisse</i>	<i>audi-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum esse</i> <i>audi-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>rum fuisse</i>
		<i>F. INF. PASS.</i> <i>āmā-tu-m</i> <i>irī</i> <i>F. P. INF. PASS.</i> <i>āmā-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m fōre</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-m</i> <i>irī</i> <i>mōnī-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m fōre</i>	<i>rec-tu-m</i> <i>irī</i> <i>rec-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m fōre</i>	<i>audi-tu-m</i> <i>irī</i> <i>audi-tu-s</i> , - <i>ta</i> , - <i>tu-m fōre</i>
		<i>F. PART. ACT.</i> <i>āmā-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>ru-m</i>	<i>mōnī-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>ru-m</i>	<i>rec-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>ru-m</i>	<i>audi-tūru-s</i> , - <i>ra</i> , - <i>ru-m</i>
		<i>F. SUPINES.</i> <i>āmā-tu-m</i> <i>L. SUPINES.</i> <i>āmā-tū</i>	<i>mōnī-tu-m</i> <i>mōnī-tū</i>	<i>rec-tu-m</i> <i>rec-tū</i>	<i>audi-tu-m</i> <i>audi-tū</i>

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

*Recapitulation.*

Give the meaning, stem, formation, principal parts, euphonic changes, mode, tense, number, and person of each of the following :—

1. narrātur	āmāti sūmus	vidēmīni
2. dōcentur <sup>3</sup>	docti sunt	vincēbāris
3. lēgēbantur <sup>4</sup>	auditus est	mānēbunt
4. audiēbar	missa est	aedificātis
5. mōnēris	ērūdītī sunt	pārātī ēramus
6. vōcābēris	lectus est	ērūdītur
7. pūniuntur	vōcātus es	pūnitae sunt
8. dūcēris <sup>5</sup>	mūnītum est	ēducātor
9. vincar	pūnītī ēramus	oppugnāta est
10. narrantur	laudātus erat	ēducātī fuērant
11. mōvēmur	laudātae sunt	culpābāris
12. dōcēre puērōs	puērī exercītī sunt	laudētur
13. audītor	puella ornāta est	vīsī ērant
14. amēmur	mōnītī ērant	cingētur

## Supplementary Exercises :—

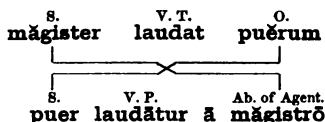
1. Discipulus ā māgistrō laudātur. 2. Puer, bēne ēdūcātor. 3. Lābōrā. 4. Dīcit puer sē laudātum esse. 5. Dēbēmus laudārī. 6. Mīlītēs jussī sunt pūgnāre. 7. Discipulī ā māgistrō dōcentur. 8. Crēdo eum illōs puērōs laudātūrum esse. 9. Bōnī discipulī stūdent exercērī in littērārum stūdiīs.

## Translate into Latin :—

1. He was told. 2. They are telling. 3. I was (being) taught. 4. We are taught. 5. He is heard. 6. They will be taught. 7. We shall be sent. 8. He was conquered. 9. They were seen. 10. I was being called. 11. Thou wilt have been blamed. 12. He is being praised. 13. Thou wilt have been praised. 14. They have been sent. 15. They have been called. 16. They will have been heard. 17. She has been taught. 18. He has been heard. 19. Ye have been

praised. 20. She has been heard. 21. The boy had been taught. 22. Call ye. 23. Hear ye. 24. We are led. 25. They are exercised. 26. We have been exercised. 27. We had been instructed. 28. They have been punished. 29. It has been finished. 30. He is sent. 31. The town has been stormed. 32. It is being read.

Remember the formula for converting a sentence into the passive form:—



Obs. If the ablative expresses not the Agent or Doer of the action, but only the *cause*, *means*, or *instrument*, no preposition is used. Change the following to the passive form; translate into Latin:—

1. The master praises the boys. 2. The general punishes the soldiers. 3. The father is calling the boy. 4. The arrow wounds the soldier. 5. The teacher praises the boys and the girls. 6. The man writes the letter. 7. The soldiers storm the town.

Supplementary Exercises:—

1. The soldiers are praised by their commander. 2. The war has been finished. 3. The soldier was killed by a javelin. 4. Let those boys be praised. 5. Let the letter be written. 6. I think these soldiers will finish the war. 7. They desire to depart. 8. The men are commanded to fight.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The translation is—

<p><b>PRÆS.</b> <i>I am being loved, or I am loved, etc.</i></p> <p><b>IMP.</b> <i>I was being loved, etc.</i></p> <p><b>FUT.</b> <i>I shall or will be loved, etc.</i></p>	<p><b>PERF.</b> <i>I have been loved, etc.</i></p> <p><b>AOR.</b> <i>I was loved, etc.</i></p> <p><b>PLUP.</b> <i>I had been loved, etc.</i></p> <p><b>F. P.</b> <i>I shall or will have been loved, etc.</i></p>
---	---

2. The form is inflected as follows:—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
Sing.	<b>āmātus</b>	<b>āmāta</b>	<b>āmātum sum, es, etc.</b>
Plur.	<b>āmātī</b>	<b>āmātae</b>	<b>āmāta sūmus, estis, etc.</b>

3. See above, note 4.
4. Notice that *rĕg* + *tus* = *rec-tus*.
5. Verb-stem = *dūc-* + *tum* = *ductum*.

How do you distinguish the conjugations? Give the present stem of the first conjugation. What is meant by the *principal parts* of a verb? What are the principal parts in the passive voice? How is the perfect of each conjugation formed? What verbs take two accusatives of the same person or thing? Give the tense-sign of the imperfect indicative active. How is the participial stem of each conjugation formed? What is the tense-sign of the present? (*Ans.* It has none.) What is the tense-sign of the future perfect? (*Ans.* *amāvĕ-ri-mus*.) Has the indicative any special sign to mark the mode? (*Ans.* No.) What are the personal endings of the present? These endings were originally personal pronouns, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. Remember that the verbal endings contain —

1. The tense-sign; as *-ba-* in *āmā-ba-m*.
2. The mode-vowel; as *-ā-* in *rĕg-ā-s*.
3. The personal ending; as *-s* in *rĕg-ā-s*.

Are the future participle active and supines formed from this stem? (*Ans.* Strictly they are not; the future participle active is an adjective form to nouns in *-tor, -sor*: as, *lec-tor*, fut. part. *lec-tūrus*; the supine is a noun of the fourth conjugation in *-tu* or *-su*, nom. *-tum* or *-sum*; but as the form is the same as the participial stem, and as the suffixes begin with *t*, these forms are usually referred to this stem.)



## LESSON LXXXVII.

### GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

#### EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

#### 290. Genitive of Quality.

##### EXAMPLES.

1. *vir mǎxīmī consīlī*, a man of very great sagacity.
2. *fossa quīndĕcim pĕdum*, a ditch of fifteen feet.
3. *vir est excellētis īngĕnī*, he is a man of excellent disposition.
4. *Caesar Dumnōrīgem mǎgnī ānīmī et mǎgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōvērat*, Caesar knew that Dumnorix was (a man) of great courage and influence among the Gauls.



## 291. Ablative of Quality.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **summā virtūte** **adulescēns**, a youth of the greatest valor.
2. **Cātīlīna ingēniō mālō fuit**, Catiline was a man of a bad disposition.
3. **Caesar fulsae trāditur excelsā stātūrā**, Caesar is said to have been of tall stature.

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the nouns added for description (as **consiliū**, **pēdum**, **ingēniū**, **ānīmī**, **auctōritātis**) are all in the genitive case, and that, in every instance, the genitive is accompanied by an adjective (as **māximī**, **quindēcim**, **excellētis**, **māgnī**, **māgnae**). This genitive cannot be used without an accompanying adjective: as, a man of talent is **hōmo ingēniōsus** (not **hōmo ingēniū**); but, a man of great talent is **hōmo māgnī ingēniū**. Note, further, that in every instance the relation expressed is between two nouns; thus, a ditch of fifteen feet is **fossa quindēcim pēdum**, but when **lātus** is added, we must say **fossa quindēcim pēdōs lāta**, a ditch fifteen feet deep. (Note that **ānīmī** and **auctōritātis**, in Ex. 4, stand in the predicate after the intransitive verb **esse** understood.) A genitive added in this way to a noun for further description is called a **DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE**, or a **GENITIVE OF QUALITY**, or of **CHARACTERISTIC**; if it stands in the predicate after an intransitive verb, it is called a **PREDICATE GENITIVE OF QUALITY**, etc. Note that in Exs. 1, 2, 3, under 291, the nouns **virtūte**, **ingēniō**, and **stātūrā** are added to express *quality*, or for further *description*, and that these nouns are in the *ablative*. Distinguish the *attributive* (**virtūte**) and the *predicate use* (**ingēniō**, **stātūrā**). The idioms are expressed in the following rule:—

## GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

**292. RULE XLIII.**—A noun denoting quality, quantity, or description, and having an adjective joined with it, may be put in the genitive or in the ablative.

Obs. The use of the ablative is more common, but the two cases are often used indifferently, and sometimes both are found in the same sentence.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. **Germanī virī corpōrum ingentī māgnitūdine fuērunt**.
2. **Cātīlīna fuit māgnā vī et ānīmī et corpōris**.
3. **Bibracte est oppidum apud Aeduōs māximae auctōritātis**.
4. **Caesar, vir summī ingēniū (or summō ingēniō), prūdentiam cum eloquentiā junxit**.

*Sight-Reading.*

## CÆSAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN.

Erat<sup>1</sup> ob hās causās summa diffīcultās, quod nāvēs propter  
for because  
 māgnitūdinem, nīsi in altō, constītūī<sup>2</sup> nōn pōtērant; mīlitī-  
size deep (water) station could  
 bus<sup>3</sup> autem — ignōtīs lōcīs,<sup>4</sup> impēditīs īmanībūs, māgnō et grāvī  
unknown encumber  
 armōrum ōnēre oppressīs — sīmul et dē nāvībūs dēsiliendum  
weight load both  
 et in fluctībūs consistendum et cum hostībūs ērat pūgnan-  
and wave stand-firm  
 dum; cum illī<sup>5</sup> aut ex āridō, aut paulum in āquam prōgressī,  
while dry (land) a-little advance  
 omnībūs membrīs<sup>4</sup> expēditī, nōtissimis lōcīs, audacter tēla  
limbs free well-known dart  
 cōnīcērent, et ēquos insuēfactōs incitārent.  
hurl train push-on

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Subject? Position? Eng. = *there was*.
2. Rule for this infinitive?
3. The construction is, **mīlitībūs dēsiliendum ērat**, *the soldiers had to leap*. Rule for **mīlitībūs** being in the dative?
4. Explain these ablatives.
5. To whom does **illī** refer?

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**293.** Irregular Verbs deviate from the common inflection in some of the parts formed from the *present stem*. The tenses formed from the perfect and participial stems are inflected alike in all verbs. The forms called irregular are, for the most part, either syncopated or ancient forms.

1. The most common Irregular Verbs are:—

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>sum</b> , <i>I am</i> .            | 5. <b>fēro</b> , <i>I bear</i> .              |
| 2. <b>vōlo</b> , <i>I wish</i> .         | 6. <b>eo</b> , <i>I go</i> .                  |
| 3. <b>mālo</b> , <i>I prefer</i> .       | 7. <b>fio</b> , <i>I am made, or become</i> . |
| 4. <b>nōlo</b> , <i>I am unwilling</i> . | 8. <b>ēdo</b> , <i>I eat</i> .                |
| 9. <b>queo</b> , <i>I am able</i> .      |   |

2. **Pos-sum**, *I am able, I can*, a compound of the adjective **pōtis** (**pōte**), *able*, and **sum**, is inflected as follows:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. INF.	PARTICIPLE.
<b>pos-sum</b>	<b>pos-se</b>	<b>pōt-uī</b>	—

## PARADIGM.

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<b>pos-sum</b>	<b>pos-sim</b>	<b>pōt-uī</b>	<b>pōt-uērim</b>
	<b>pōt-es</b>	<b>pos-sīs</b>	<b>pōt-uistī</b>	<b>pōt-uēris</b>
	<b>pōt-est</b>	<b>pos-sit</b>	<b>pōt-uit</b>	<b>pōt-uērit</b>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<b>pos-sūmus</b>	<b>pos-sīmus</b>	<b>pōt-uīmus</b>	<b>pōt-uērimus</b>
	<b>pōt-estis</b>	<b>pos-sītis</b>	<b>pōt-uistis</b>	<b>pōt-uēritis</b>
	<b>pos-sunt</b>	<b>pos-sint</b>	<b>pōt-uērunt, -re</b>	<b>pōt-uērint</b>
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<b>pōt-eram</b>	<b>pos-sem</b>	<b>pōt-ueram</b>	<b>pōt-uissem</b>
	<b>pōt-erās</b>	<b>pos-sēs</b>	<b>pōt-uērās</b>	<b>pōt-uissēs</b>
	<b>pōt-erat</b>	<b>pos-set</b>	<b>pōt-uērat</b>	<b>pōt-uisset</b>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<b>pōt-erāmus</b>	<b>pos-sēmus</b>	<b>pōt-uērāmus</b>	<b>pōt-uissēmus</b>
	<b>pōt-erātis</b>	<b>pos-sētis</b>	<b>pōt-uērātis</b>	<b>pōt-uissētis</b>
	<b>pōt-erant</b>	<b>pos-sent</b>	<b>pōt-uērant</b>	<b>pōt-uissent</b>
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<b>pōt-ēro</b>		<b>pōt-uēro</b>	
	<b>pōt-ēris</b>		<b>pōt-uēris</b>	
	<b>pōt-ērit</b>		<b>pōt-uērit</b>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<b>pōt-ērimus</b>		<b>pōt-uērimus</b>	
	<b>pōt-ēritis</b>		<b>pōt-uēritis</b>	
	<b>pōt-ērunt</b>		<b>pōt-uērint</b>	
Infinitive.			Participle.	
PRES. <b>pos-se</b> PERF. <b>pōt-uisse</b>			PRES. <b>pōt-ēns</b>	

Obs. In forming the compound **possum**, note that **pōtis** drops *is*, and that *t* becomes *s* before *s*; as, (**pot-sum**) = **possum**. In the perfect, *f* of **fuī**, etc., is dropped after *t*. The infinitive **posse**, subjunctive **possem**, are shortened forms of **pōtesse** and **pōtessem**. **Possum** has no *imperative*, no *future participle*, no *gerund*, and no *supine*; **pōtēns** is used only as an adjective. The omitted forms are wanting.

3. **Prō-sum**, *I help, I profit*, is inflected like **sum**, but retains its original *d* (**prōd-**) before a vowel, and loses it before a consonant; as,

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

prō-sum

PRES. INF.

prōd-esse

PERF. IND.

prō-fuī

PARTICIPLE.

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	prō-sum	prō-sim	prō-fuī	prō-fuērim
2	prōd-es	prō-sīs	prō-fuistī	prō-fuēris
3	prōd-est	prō-sit	prō-fuit	prō-fuērit
<i>Plur.</i> 1	prō-sūmus	prō-sīmus	prō-fuimus	prō-fuērīmus
2	prōd-estis	prō-sītis	prō-fuistis	prō-fuēritis
3	prō-sunt	prō-sint	prō-fuerunt, -re	prō-fuērint
		IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	prōd-eram	prōd-essem	prō-fuēram	prō-fuissem
2	prōd-ērās	prōd-essēs	prō-fuērās	prō-fuissēs
3	prōd-erat	prōd-esset	prō-fuērat	prō-fuisset
<i>Plur.</i> 1	prōd-ērāmus	prōd-essēmus	prō-fuērāmus	prō-fuissēmus
2	prōd-erātis	prōd-essētis	prō-fuērātis	prō-fuissētis
3	prōd-erant	prōd-essent	prō-fuērant	prō-fuissent
		FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	prōd-ēro		prō-fuēro	
2	prōd-ēris		prō-fuēris	
3	prōd-ērit		prō-fuērit	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	prōd-ērimus		prō-fuērīmus	
2	prōd-ēritis		prō-fuēritis	
3	prōd-ērunt		prō-fuērint	
Imperative.				
PRES. prōd-es, prōd-este		FUT. prōd-esto, prōd-esto, prō-sunto		
Infinitive.			Participle.	
PRES. prōd-esse		PERF. prō-fuisse	FUT. prō-fūtūrus	

4. Like **sum** are conjugated **ab-sum**, **ad-sum**, **dē-sum**, **in-sum**, **inter-sum**, **ob-sum**, **prae-sum**, **sub-sum** (no perfect), **super-sum**.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar pōtest iter dāre (256)**, *Cæsar is able to give, or can give, a passage.*

2. **Caesar pōtērat iter dāre**, *Cæsar was able to give, or could give, a passage.*  
 3. **Caesar pōtērit iter dāre**, *Cæsar will be able to give a passage.*  
 4. **Caesar pōtuit iter dāre**, *Cæsar has been able to give, or could have given, a passage.*

SYN. **Possum**, *I am able*, because I have sufficient power; **queo**, *I am able*, because circumstances allow.

## EXERCISES.

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following forms:—

1. Pōtest, pōtērat, pōtērit. 2. Possūmus, pōtērāmus, pōtērīmus. 3. Ego possum lēgēre, tu pōtes scribēre. 4. Caesar oppīdum expūgnāre pōtest. 5. Amīcīs<sup>1</sup> prōdesse possūmus. 6. Caesar pōtest iter Helvētiīs dāre. 7. Divītiācus plūrī-mum<sup>2</sup> in rēliqūā Galliā pōtērat. 8. Caesar urbī praeērat. 9. Multī<sup>3</sup> sūpersūmus. 10. Caesar ēquitēs praemittit.<sup>4</sup>

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. **202.** 2. **plūrī-mum posse**, *to be very powerful*; see Vocabulary.  
 3. **multī** modifies **nōs** (*we*), the omitted subject of **sūpersūmus**.  
 Translate, *many of us survive*; *of us* is appositive. See **202**.

If the simple verb is transitive, the compound is transitive, and is followed by the accusative. What is an irregular verb? Mention the most common irregular verbs. Of what is **possum** compounded? Give its composition; account for the euphonic changes.

## LESSON LXXXIX.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

**294.** The Irregular Verbs **vōlo**, and its compounds, **nōlo** and **mālo**, are inflected as follows:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Participle.
1. vōlo	velle	vōlui	—, <i>wish.</i>
2. nōlo	nōlle	nōlui	—, <i>be unwilling.</i>
3. mālo	mālle	mālui	—, <i>prefer.</i>

PRESENT.					
Ind.	Subj.	Ind.	Subj.	Ind.	Subj.
vōlo	vēlim	nōlo	nōlim	mālo	mālim
vis	vēlis	nōnvīs	nōlis	māvis	mālis
vult	vēlit	nōnvult	nōlit	māvult	mālit
vōlūmus	vēlimus	nōlūmus	nōlimus	mālūmus	mālimus
vultis	vēlitis	nōnvultis	nōlitis	māvultis	mālitis
vōlunt	vēlint	nōlunt	nōlint	mālunt	mālint
IMPERFECT.					
vōlēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nollem	mālēbam	mallem
vōlēbās	vellēs	nōlēbās	nollēs	mālēbās	mallēs
vōlēbat	vellet	nōlēbat	nollet	mālēbat	mallet
vōlēbāmus	vellēmus	nōlēbāmus	nollēmus	mālēbāmus	mallēmus
vōlēbātis	vellētis	nōlēbātis	nollētis	mālēbātis	mallētis
vōlēbant	vellent	nōlēbant	nollent	mālēbant	mallent
FUTURE.					
vōlam, vōlēs, vōlet, vōlēmus, etc.		nōlam, nōlēs, nōlet, nōlēmus, etc.		mālam, mālēs, mālet, mālēmus, etc.	
PERFECT.					
vōlui	vōluērīm	nōlui	nōluērīm	mālui	māluērīm
vōluistī	vōluēris	nōluistī	nōluēris	māluistī	māluēris
vōluit	vōluērit	nōluit	nōluērit	māluit	māluērit
vōluīmus	vōluērīmus	nōluīmus	nōluērīmus	māluīmus	māluērīmus
vōluistis	vōluēritis	nōluistis	nōluēritis	māluistis	māluēritis
vōluērunt, or -re	vōluērīnt	nōluērunt, or -re	nōluērīnt	māluērunt, or -re	māluērīnt
PLUPERFECT.					
vōluēram	vōluissem	nōluēram	nōluissem	māluēram	māluissem
vōluērās	vōluissēs	nōluērās	nōluissēs	māluērās	māluissēs
vōluerat	vōluisset	nōluerat	nōluisset	māluerat	māluisset
vōluērāmus	vōluissēmūs	nōluērāmus	nōluissēmūs	māluērāmus	māluissēmūs
vōluērātis	vōluissētis	nōluērātis	nōluissētis	māluērātis	māluissētis
vōluērānt	vōluissent	nōluērānt	nōluissent	māluērānt	māluissent
FUTURE PERFECT.					
vōluēro		nōluēro		māluēro	
vōluēris		nōluēris		māluēris	
vōluērit		nōluērit		māluērit	
vōluērīmus		nōluērīmus		māluērīmus	
vōluērītis		nōluērītis		māluērītis	
vōluērīnt		nōluērīnt		māluērīnt	
Imperative.					
PRES. nōli, nōlite		FUT. nōlito, nōlito, nōlītōte, nōlunto			
Infinitive.					
PRES. velle nolle malle		PERF. vōluisse nōluisse māluisse			
Participles.					
PRES. vōlēns, <i>willing</i> . nōlēns, <i>unwilling</i> .					

**OBS.** *Nōlo* is a compound of *nē* (*nōn*), *not*, and *vōlo*; *mālo*, of *māgis*, *more*, and *vōlo*, weakened in pronunciation to *mā-lo*. Notice that *nōlo* alone has an imperative. The omitted forms are wanting.

**SYN.** *Aveo*, *long for*; *dēsīdēro*, *desire* what one has had, but now feels the loss of (hence, *regret*); *vōlo*, *wish*; *opto*, *choose*; *cūpio*, *desire* (general term); *gestio*, *desire*, and manifest it by gestures; *cūpio*, *desire, long for* anything.

### EXERCISES.

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following forms:—

1. *Vōlūmus, vōlēbāmus, vōlēmus, vēlīmus.* 2. *Ego vōlo lēgēre, tū vīs scrībēre, frāter vult pingēre.* 3. *Nōlūmus, nōlēbāmus, nōlēmus, nōlīmus.* 4. *Puer vult audīre.* 5. *Dumnōrix quam<sup>1</sup> plūrīmās cīvītātēs hābēre vōlēbat.* 6. *Nōlī<sup>2</sup> scrībēre.* 7. *Mālūmus, mālēbāmus, mālēmus, mālīmus.* 8. *Mōns, quem ā Lābiēnō<sup>3</sup> occūpārī vōluit, ab hostibus tēnētur.* 9. *Caesar ab Helvētiīs discēdēre nōlēbat.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. You are wishing, you were wishing, you will be wishing. 2. They are unwilling, they were unwilling, they will be unwilling. 3. You prefer, you preferred, you will prefer, you have preferred. 4. I have wished, I had wished. 5. You wish to know. 6. We had been unwilling. 7. Do you prefer to read or to write?

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *Quam* strengthens *plūrīmās* = *as many as possible*.
2. Prohibitions are often expressed by *nōlī* with the infinitive; translate *do not write*. *Nōlī* is softer than *nē scrībe*.
3. Agent after a verb in the passive voice.

What is meant by an irregular verb? In what tenses are they irregular? Give the compounds of *vōlo*. The stem of *vōlo* is *vōl-*, the root-vowel *o* being changed to *ē* or *ū*. The form *vīs* stands for *vōl-is*, *vel-is*, *vīl-is* (= *vīs*). *Velle* is for *vel-se*, so *vellem* for *vel-sem*.

## LESSON XC.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

## ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

295. The irregular verb *fēro* is inflected as follows : —

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>fēro</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>tūlī</i>	<i>lātum</i>

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fēro	fēram	tūlī	tūlērim
2	fers	fērās	tūlistī	tūlēris
3	fert	fērat	tūlit	tūlērit
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērimus	fērāmus	tūlimus	tūlērimus
2	fertis	fērātis	tūlistis	tūlēritis
3	fērunt	fērant	tūlērunt, -re	tūlērint
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fērēbam	ferrem	tūlēram	tūlissem
2	fērēbās	ferrēs	tūlērās	tūliissēs
3	fērēbat	ferret	tūlērāt	tūliisset
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērēbāmus	ferrēmus	tūlērāmus	tūliissēmus
2	fērēbātis	ferrētis	tūlērātis	tūliissētis
3	fērēbant	ferrent	tūlērant	tūliissent
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fēram		tūlēro	
2	fērēs		tūlēris	
3	fēret		tūlērit	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērēmus		tūlērīmus	
2	fērētis		tūlērītis	
3	fērent		tūlērīnt	
Imperative.				
PRES. fer, ferte		FUT. ferto, ferto, fertōte, fērunto		
Infinitive.				
PRES. ferre		PERF. tūlisse	FUT. lātūrus esse	
Participles.				
PRES. fērēns		FUT. lātūrus, -a, -um	SUPINES: lātum, lātū	
GERUND: fērendī, etc.				



## PASSIVE VOICE.

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fēror	fērar	lātus sum	lātus sim
2	ferris, -re	fērāris	lātus es	lātus sis
3	fertur	fērātur	lātus est	lātus sit
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērimur	fērāmur	lāti sūmus	lāti simus
2	fērīminī	fērāminī	lāti estis	lāti sitis
3	fēruntur	fērantur	lāti sunt	lāti sint
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fērēbar	ferrer	lātus eram	lātus essem
2	fērēbāris	ferrēris	lātus erās	lātus essēs
3	fērēbātur	ferrētur	lātus erat	lātus esset
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērēbāmur	ferrēmur	lāti erāmus	lāti essēmus
2	fērēbāminī	ferrēminī	lāti erātis	lāti essētis
3	fērēbantur	ferrentur	lāti erant	lāti essent
	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	fērar		lātus ēro	
2	fērēris		lātus eris	
3	fērētur		lātus erit	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	fērēmur		lāti erimus	
2	fērēminī		lāti eritis	
3	fērentur		lāti erunt	
Imperative.				
PRES. ferre, fērīminī		FUT. fertor, fertor, fēruntor		
Infinitive.				
PRES. ferī		PERF. lātus, -a, -um, esse or fuisse		FUT. lātum irī
FUT. PERF. lātus fōre				
Participles.				
PERF. lātus, -a, -um		GER. fērendus, -a, -um		

Obs. 1. In the Present and Imperfect Tenses of *fēro* the only irregularity is the omission of *e* and *i* in some of the terminations: thus, *fer-s* = *fer-is*, *fer-t* = *fēr-it*, *fer-rem* = *fēr-ērem*, *fer-re* = *fēr-ēre*, etc. The forms of *fēro* are derived from three independent stems, seen in *fēro*, *tūli*, *lātum*.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *fēro* are conjugated in the same way:—

af-fēro (ad, fēro)	af-ferre	at-tūli	al-lātum, bring to.
au-fēro (ab, fēro)	au-ferre	ab-stūli	ab-lātum, carry away.
ef-fēro (ex, fēro)	ef-ferre	ex-tūli	ē-lātum, carry out.
in-fēro (in, fēro)	in-ferre	in-tūli	il-lātum, carry into.
of-fēro (ob, fēro)	of-ferre	ob-tūli	ob-lātum, present.
prō-fēro (prō, fēro)	prō-ferre	prō-tūli	prō-lātum, carry forward.
rē-fēro (re, fēro)	rē-ferre	ret-tūli	rē-lātum, bring back.

**296. Ablative of Specification.****EXAMPLES.**

1. **rēx nōmīne fuit**, *he was king in name.*
2. **claudius altērō pēde**, *lame in one foot.*
3. **Helvētīī rēliqūōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt**, *the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls in valor.*
4. **oppīda sua omnia, nūmērō ad duōdēcim incendunt**, *they burn all their towns, about twelve in number.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, **nōmīne**, **pēde**, **virtūte**, and **nūmērō**, show in *what respect or particular* the statement is true, *i.e.*, *the Helvetians surpass the other Gauls in respect to valor.* The principle is expressed in the following rule:—

**ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.**

**297. RULE XLIV.**—A noun, adjective, or verb may be followed by the ablative to denote in what respect its signification is taken.

**EXERCISES.**

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following verbs:—

1. **Fērīmus, fērēbāmus, fērāmus, fērēmus.**
2. **Quid fers,** *mī<sup>1</sup> āmice?*
3. **Ferte vīrō auxīlium.**
4. **Pōpūlus Rōmānus diū injūriās tūlit.**
5. **Helvētīīs bellum inferre vōlūmus.**
6. **Fērīmur, fērēbāmur, fērēmur, fērāmur.**
7. **Auxīlium milītibus ā dūce fertur.**
8. **Hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē diffērunt.**
9. **Fer mīlī auxīlium.**
10. **Oppīdum Rēmōrum nōmīne Bibrax<sup>2</sup> longē ābērat.**

Translate into Latin:—

1. We bear, we were bearing, we will bear.
2. They bear, they will bear.
3. He has borne, he had borne, they had borne.
4. We are borne, we were borne, we shall be borne.
5. He is borne, he was borne.
6. He has been borne, he had been borne.
7. Bear aid, they will bear aid, he has borne aid.
8. They differ in language and laws.

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

1. **231.** Obs. 1.
2. **Bibrax**, gen. **-actis**, F. (French modern name *Bièvre*).

## LESSON XCI.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

## ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.

**298.** The Irregular Verbs *eo*, *I go*, and *ēdo*, *I eat*, are inflected as follows:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>ēo</i>	<i>īre</i>	<i>īvi or -iī</i>	<i>ītum</i>

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.		
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	ēo	eam	īvi or -iī	ivērim or -iērim	
2	is	eās	īvistī, etc.	ivēris, etc.	
3	it	eat	īvit, etc.	ivērit, etc.	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	īmus	eāmus	ivimus, etc.	ivērimus, etc.	
2	ītis	eātis	īvistis, etc.	ivēritis, etc.	
3	eunt	eant	ivērunt, -re	ivērint, etc.	
	IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.		
	<i>Sing.</i> 1	ībam	īrem	{ ivēram      ivissem, -iissem or -iēram      or issem	
	2	ībās	irēs		ivērās, etc.      ivissēs, etc.
	3	ibat	iret		ivērat, etc.      ivisset, etc.
	<i>Plur.</i> 1	ībāmus	irēmus	ivērāmus, etc.      ivissēmus, etc.	
	2	ībātis	irētis	ivērātis, etc.      ivissētis, etc.	
	3	ibant	irent	ivērant, etc.      ivissent, etc.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1 <i>Plur.</i> 1	FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.		
	ībo, ībis, ibit ībimus, etc.		ivēro or -iēro, ivēris, etc. ivērimus, etc.		
Imperative.					
PRES. ī, īte		FUT. īto, īto, itōte, eunto			
Infinitive.					
PRES. īre		PERF. ivisse, -iisse or -isse	FUT. itūrus, -a, -um, esse		
Participles.					
PRES. iēns (Gen. euntis)		FUT. itūrus, -a, -um			
GERUNDIVE: eundus, -a, -um		GERUND: eundi, etc.		SUP. itum	

OBS. 1. *Eo* is of the fourth conjugation, with variations; the stem is *i* (lengthened to *ī*, except in the future participle and in the supines), which is changed into *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*; as, *eo*, *eunt*, *eam*, etc.

OBS. 2. *Eo* and its intransitive compounds are used in the passive only impersonally: IND. *itur*, *ibātur*, *ibitur*, *itum est*, etc.; SUBJ. *eātur*, *irētur*, *itum sit*, etc.; but the transitive compounds are used regularly in the passive; *īri* occurs as an auxiliary in the future infinitive passive. (See 251.)

Obs. 3. The compounds of *eo* usually take *-i*, rarely *-ivi* in the perfect tenses; as, *ādeo, I approach*, makes *ādīi, ādiēram, ādissem*, etc.

Obs. 4. The compounds of *eo* which have a transitive meaning are conjugated throughout in the passive: as, *ādeo, I approach*; *PASS. ādeor, ādiris, āditur, ādimur, ādimini, ādeuntur*, etc.

Obs. 5. *Ambio, I go about*, retains the *i* throughout, and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the fourth conjugation. Hence we find *ambiēbam*, but occasionally *ambibam*, the gerund *ambiendi*, etc. The perfect participle is *ambitus*, though the verbal substantive is *ambitus*.

### 299. *Edo, I eat.*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.      PRES. INF.      PERF. IND.      PARTICIPLE.  
*ēdo      ēdere or esse      ēdī      ēsum*

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	ēdo	ēdam or ēdim	ēdī	ēderim
2	ēdis or ēs	ēdās or ēdis	ēdistī	ēderis
3	ēdit or ēst	ēdat or ēdit	ēdit	ēderit
<i>Plur.</i> 1	ēdimus	ēdāmus or ēdimus	ēdimus	ēderimus
2	ēditis or ēstis	ēdātis or ēditis	ēdistis	ēderitis
3	ēdunt	ēdant or ēdint	ēderunt, -re	ēderint
IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	ēdebam	ēderem or ēssem	ēderam	ēdissem
2	ēdebās	ēderēs or ēssēs	ēderās	ēdissēs
3	ēdebat	ēderet or ēsset	ēderat	ēdisset
<i>Plur.</i> 1	ēdebāmus	ēderēmus or ēssēmus	ēderāmus	ēdissēmus
2	ēdebātis	ēderētis or ēssētis	ēderātis	ēdissētis
3	ēdebant	ēderent or ēssent	ēderant	ēdissent
FUTURE.			FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	ēdam, ēdēs, ēdet		ēdēro, ēdēris, ēdērit,	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	ēdēmus, etc.		ēdērimus, etc.	
Imperative.				
PRES. ēde or ēs, ēdite or ēste				
• FUT. ēdīto or ēsto, ēdīto or ēsto, ēdītōte or ēstōte, ēdunto				
Infinitive.				
PRES. ēdere or ēsse		PERF. ēdisse	FUT. ēsūrus, -a, -um ēsse	
Participles.				
PRES. ēdēns		FUT. ēsūrus, -a, -um		
SUPINES: ēsum, ēsū		GERUND: Gen. ēdendī, etc.		

Obs. 1. *Edo* is of the third conjugation, with variations; *ē* or *i* before *s* or *t* is dropped, and the *d* of the stem changed to *s*; also the original *s* takes the place of the *r*; as, *ēdē-re* = *es-se*, not *es-re*.

Obs. 2. The passive voice is regular; only *ēstur* is generally used instead of *ēditur*, and *essētur* instead of *ēdērētur*. The perfect participle is *ēsus*.

**300. The Ablative of Difference.****EXAMPLES.**

1. *sōl multis partibus māior est quam terra, the sun is very much (lit., by many parts) larger than the earth.*
2. *altērum iter multō expēditius ērat, the other route was much more passable (more passable by much).*
3. *hic locus aequō spātiō ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris āberat, this place was (distant by an equal space) the same distance from the camp of Ariovistus and (from that) of Caesar.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that the ablatives **partibus**, **multō**, **spātiō**, express the measure of difference. These words follow the comparatives, **māior** and **expēditius**; the ablative **spātiō** denotes *extent of space*, which is usually put in the accusative (see 215), but may be in the ablative, as it is in this case, denoting the *degree of difference* (lit., *was absent by an equal distance*). Hence the following rule:—

**ABLATIVE OF DIFFERENCE.**

**301. RULE XLV.**—The ablative is used, with comparatives and words implying comparison, to denote the measure of difference.

Obs. The ablative of *difference* includes the ablative of *distance*. (See 215. 1.)

**EXERCISES.**

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of the following verbs:—

1. Imus, ibāmus, ibīmus, eāmus.
2. Ego ābeo, tū ex itīnere rēdis.
3. It, eunt, ibit.
4. Ivit, ivērat, ite, itis, ivērāmus.
5. I, quō tē fāta vōcant.
6. I, licitor, dēligā puērū ad pālū.
7. Caesar multō grāvius quērītur.
8. Unō diē longiōrem mensem faciunt.
9. Hibernia dimidiō mīnor (est) quam Britannia.
10. Multō māior ālacritās exercitū injecta est.
11. Ite, milītēs.
12. Edīmus, ēdāmus, ēdunt.

Translate into Latin:—

1. They go, they were going, they will go.
2. He was going, he will go, he goes.
3. We go, we were going, we will go.
4. Go thou, I go, I have gone, I had gone.
5. The sun is much larger than the earth.
6. The tower was ten feet higher than the wall.
7. My country is much dearer to me than life.
8. They make the year one day longer.

## LESSON XCII.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

## ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF PRICE. — EXERCISE FOR SIGHT-READING.

**302.** The Irregular Verb *fiō*, *I became* or *am made*, is inflected as follows:—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.

*fiō*

PRES. INF.

*fiērī*

PERF. IND.

*factus sum*

Person.	PRESENT.		PERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>fīo</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
2	<i>fīs</i>	<i>fiās</i>	<i>factus es</i>	<i>factus sis</i>
3	<i>fit or fit</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>factus est</i>	<i>factus sit</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	[ <i>fimus</i> ]	<i>fiāmus</i>	<i>facti sūmus</i>	<i>facti simus</i>
2	[ <i>fitis</i> ]	<i>fiātis</i>	<i>facti estis</i>	<i>facti sitis</i>
3	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiant</i>	<i>facti sunt</i>	<i>facti sint</i>
IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>fīebam</i>	<i>fīerem</i>	<i>factus eram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>fīebāmus</i>	<i>fīerēmus</i>	<i>facti erāmus</i>	<i>facti essēmus</i>
FUTURE.			FUTURE PERFECT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<i>fiam, fiēs, etc.</i>		<i>factus ero, eris, etc.</i>	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	<i>fīemūs</i>		<i>facti erimus</i>	
Imperative.				
PRES. <i>fī, fite</i>				
Infinitive.				
PRES. <i>fīrī</i>		PERF. <i>factus, -a, -um, esse</i>	FUT. <i>factum irī</i>	
Participles.				
PERF. <i>factus, -a, -um</i>			GER. <i>fāciendus, -a, -um</i>	

Obs. 1. *Fiō* (which stands for *fa-i-o*) is used as the passive of *fācio*, which has no passive forms (except *fāciendus* and *factus*); on the other hand, *factus sum*, *I have become*, has the meaning of the perfect of *fiō*; *fiērī* is not really a passive form, but an old infinitive active, *fiēreī*.

Obs. 2. The *i* in *fiō* is always long, except in *fit* and when not followed by *r* (in present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive).

Obs. 3. Most compounds of *fācio* with prepositions change *a* to *i* (present stem), and are inflected regularly; the passive ends in *-ficio*; other compounds retain *a* and have *fiō* in the passive.

Obs. 4. *Queo*, *I am able*, is conjugated like *eo*, but as it is an unusual verb, it is here omitted; it has a compound, *nēqueo*, *I am unable*.

**303. Genitive and Ablative of Price.****EXAMPLES.**

1. *dōmum duōbus tālentīs ēmit, he bought a house for two talents.*
2. *vīgintī tālentīs ūnam ōrātiōnem vendidit, he sold a single speech for twenty talents.*
3. *pāce bellum mūtāvit, he exchanged war for peace.*
4. *ēmit hortōs tantī, he purchased the gardens at so great a price.*
5. *virtūs māximī aestimātur, virtue is valued very highly.*

OBS. Note that *ēmit*, a verb of *buying*, *vendidit*, a verb of *selling*, *mūtāvit*, a verb of *exchanging*, are each followed by the ablatives *tālentīs*, *pāce*, denoting the *price*, and fixing it at a *definite sum*; the ablative is used because the *price* is the means by which a thing is *bought, sold, or exchanged*. In Exs. 4 and 5, after the same verbs, *ēmit* and *aestimātur*, the *price* is expressed by *tantī* and *māximī*, both being in the genitive, and both designating the price *indefinitely*. The idiom is expressed in the following rule:—

**ABLATIVE OF PRICE.**

**304. RULE XLVI.**—Price is expressed by the ablative when it is a *definite sum*.

1. If the price is *indefinitely* expressed, the genitive is used; in this way the genitives of certain adjectives of Quantity, as *tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris, māgnī, parvī*, etc., are used.

**EXERCISES.**

Name the mode, tense, number, and person of each of the following verbs:—

1. *Fīunt, fiēbant, fient, fiāmus.*
2. *Fīmus, fiebāmus, fiēmus.*
3. *Factus est, factī sunt.*
4. *Fī, fiāmus, fiant.*
5. *Fit, fitis, fiēt.*
6. *Amīcus fiērī sāpiēns<sup>1</sup> pōtest.*
7. *Duo virī consulēs<sup>2</sup> factī ērunt.*
8. *Caesar cum hīs quinque lēgionibus ire<sup>3</sup> contēdit.*
9. *Nēmō fit cāsū bōnus.*
10. *Fiat<sup>4</sup> lūx, et lūx facta est.*
11. *Dumnōrix omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō prētiō rēdēmit.*
12. *Vendo meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam cētērī, fortasse etiā minōris.*
13. *Nulla pestis hūmānō gēnērī plūris stētīt quam īra.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. He becomes, they become, they will become.
2. They became, he will become, we have become.
3. Become thou,

he can become good. 4. The soldier sells his country for gold. 5. The soldier values money highly. 6. He sold his corn at a less price. 7. Cæsar became consul.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Predicate adjective? 2. Rule for **consûles**? 3. Rule?

4. Why subjunctive?

How may *price* be expressed? When is the ablative used? When the genitive?

#### *Sight-Reading.*

##### CÆSAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN (*continued*).

Quod ūbi Caesar ānimadvertit, nāvēs<sup>1</sup> longās (quārum  
and this when (acc.)  
et spēcīēs erat barbārīs<sup>2</sup> inūsītātior, et mōtus ad ūsum ex-  
appearance unusual motion service  
peditior) paulum rēmōvērī ab ōnērārīis nāvibus, et rēmīs<sup>3</sup>  
remove of burden oar  
incītārī, et ad lātus āpertum hostium cōnstītuī,<sup>1</sup> atque inde  
push-on side open thence  
fundīs, sāgittīs, tormentīs hostēs submōvērī<sup>1</sup> jussit. Atque,  
sling engine (acc.) driven order  
nōstrīs mīlītibus cunctantībūs, mākīmē propter altītūdīnem  
delay chiefly depth  
māris, (is) quī dēcīmae lēgiōnis āquīlam fērēbat, contestātus  
tenth appeal-to  
deōs ut ea rēs lēgiōnī fēlicīter ēvēnīret: “Dēsīlīte,” inquit,  
happily turn-out  
“mīlītēs, nīsi vultis<sup>4</sup> āquīlam hostībūs prōdēre. Ego certē  
abandon at-least  
meum reīpūblicae atque impērātōrī officiū praestītēro.”  
duty fulfil  
Hōc cum mākīnā vōce dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcīt, atque in  
exhort  
hostēs āquīlam ferre coepit. Tum nōstrī, cōhortātī inter sē,  
shame permit all-at-once  
nē tantum dēdēcus admittērētur, ūnīversī ex nāvī dēsīluē-  
runt. Hōs itēm ex prōximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent,  
also nearest caught-sight-of  
subsēcūtī hostībūs<sup>2</sup> apprōpinquārunt.  
follow-close approach

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The construction is **jussit nāvēs rēmōvērī**, etc.

2. Why dative? 3. Why ablative? 4. See **vōlo**.

The subjunctives can be omitted until the review.



## LESSON XCIII.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.—INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

**305.** Defective Verbs want some of their parts. The following are the most common Defective Verbs that do not use the tenses formed from the present stem : —

1. **coepī**, *I begin*. 2. **mēmīnī**, *I remember*. 3. **ōdī**, *I hate*.

Obs. There is a large number of verbs that are more or less defective; those enumerated here are the most defective of those that are commonly used.

1. **Odī**, **coepī** (for the present of which *incīpio* is used), and **mēmīnī** are only used in the Perfect Tenses, and hence are sometimes called *preteritive* (or *past*) *verbs*.

## PARTIAL PARADIGM.

Tense.		Indicative.			
PERF.		coepī	mēmīnī	ōdī	nōvī
PLUP.		coepēram	mēmīnēram	ōdēram	nōvēram
F. P.		coepēro	mēmīnēro	ōdēro	nōvēro
Subjunctive.					
PERF.		coepērim	mēmīnērim	ōdērim	nōvērim
PLUP.		coepissem	mēmīnissem	ōdissem	nōvissem
Imperative.					
FUT.	( Wanting )	memento, mementōte ( Wanting )			
Infinitive.					
PERF.		coepisse	mēmīnisse	ōdisse	nōvisse
FUT.		coeptūrus esse	_____	ōsūrus esse	_____
Participles.					
PERF.		coeptus	_____	-ōsus	_____
FUT.		coeptūrus	PRES. mēmīnēns	ōsūrus	_____

Obs. 1. Instead of **coepī** and its tenses, the passive **coeptus sum**, etc., is used before an infinitive passive; as, **urbs aedificārī coepta est**, *the city began to be built*.

OBS. 2. **Nōvī** is properly the perfect of **nosco**, *I learn to know*.

OBS. 3. **Mēmīnī**, **ōdī**, and **nōvī** have in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect the meaning of the present, imperfect, and future respectively.

2. The following have only the tenses formed from the present stem, and these are in many cases incomplete:—

1. **āio**, *I say*.      3. **fārī**, *to speak*.      5. **salve**, *hail*.  
 2. **inquam**, *I say*.      4. **quaeso**, *I ask, beg*.      6. **queo**, *I can*.

a. **Āio**, *I say* (for **āg-io**, cf. **ad-āg-lum**), has only the following forms:—

Person.	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i> 1	<b>āio</b>	—	<b>āiēbam</b>	—
2	<b>āis</b>	<b>āiās</b>	<b>āiēbās</b>	—
3	<b>āit</b>	<b>āiat</b>	<b>āiēbat</b>	—
<i>Plur.</i> 1	—	—	<b>āiēbāmus</b>	—
2	—	—	<b>āiēbātis</b>	—
3	<b>āiunt</b>	<b>āiant</b>	<b>āiēbant</b>	—
PRES. PART. <b>āiēns</b>				

OBS. *i* between two vowels (= *j*) is pronounced like *y*; *āi-* is not a diphthong.

b. **Inquam**, *say I*, has only the following forms:—

Indicative.			
PRES. <b>inquam</b>		IMP. <b>inquiēbam</b>	
<b>inquis</b>		<b>inquiēbās</b>	
<b>inquit</b>		<b>inquiēbat</b>	
<b>inquīmus</b>		<b>inquiēbāmus</b>	
<b>inquītis</b>		<b>inquiēbātis</b>	
<b>inquiunt</b>		<b>inquiēbant</b>	
FUT. —		PERF. —	
<b>inquiēs</b>		<b>inquīstī</b>	
<b>inquiet</b>		<b>inquit</b>	
Imperative.			
PRES. <b>inque</b>		FUT. (2 Pers.) <b>inquitō</b>	

OBS. **Inquam**, **inquit**, like the English *say I*, *says he*, are always used parenthetically, themselves and subjects following between commas after a word or words of the quotation. It is used, except in poetry, only in direct quotations. (See 342.)

c. **Fārī**, to *speak*, a deponent, is used only in the following forms, unless compounded with a preposition :—

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Participles.	
PRES. <b>fatur</b>	—	PRES. ( <b>fāns</b> ) <b>fantis</b> , etc. (without a nominative).	
FUT. <b>fabor, fabitur</b>	—		
PERF. <b>fatus sum</b> , etc.	<b>fatus sim</b> , etc.	PERF. <b>fatus</b> , -a, -um	
PLUP. <b>fatus eram</b>	<b>fatus essem</b>	GER. <b>fandus</b> , -a, -um	
Imperative.	Infinitive.	Supine.	Gerund.
PRES. ( <i>Sing.</i> ) <b>fāre</b>	<b>fārī</b>	<b>fātū</b>	<b>fandī</b> , etc.

### INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

OBS. The instrumental ablative is used to express a variety of relations, the most important of which may be stated as follows :—

#### ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT.

**306.** The *means* and *instrument* are denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **cornibus tauri sē tūtantur**, *bulls defend themselves with their horns.*

2. **frumentum flumine Arari nāvibus subvexerat**, *he had conveyed corn in ships up the river Arar.*

1. The ablative of means without a preposition is used with **utor, fruor**, etc. (see 280) ; as, **plūrimis rebus utimur**, *we use*, i.e. *we serve ourselves by means of many things.*

2. **Pōtior**, in the sense of *becoming master of*, takes the genitive ; as, **tōtius Galliae pōtīrī**, *to become master of all Gaul.*

#### ABLATIVE OF MEASURE.

**307.** The Ablative without a preposition is used to denote the standard by which anything is measured or judged.

#### EXAMPLE.

**magnōs hōmīnēs virtūte mētīmur, nōn fortunā**, *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune.*

OBS. 1. The ablative of measure is used with the comparative instead of **quam** with the nominative or accusative. (See 143.)

OBS. 2. The measure of difference is denoted by the ablative. (See 301.) This ablative is common with the ablative of pronouns (**eō . . . quō**) and of adjectives of quantity (**tantō, quantō, multō, paulō**, etc.) and with verbs implying comparison (as, **antecello, excello, supéro**, etc.).

OBS. 3. Distance may be denoted by the ablative. (See 301.)

OBS. 4. Price, when a definite sum, is denoted by the ablative. (See 304.) Here belongs the ablative with **dignus, indignus**. For ablative of specification, see 297.

OBS. 5. Here belongs the ablative, with the adverbs **ante** and **post**, to denote *how long before* or *after* a thing happens; as, **paucis ante diēbus**, or **paucis diēbus ante**, *a few days before*; **paucis post diēbus**, or **paucis diēbus post**, *a few days after*. The accusative can be used; as, **ante paucos annos**, *a few years before*.

#### ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL.

**308.** The material of which anything is made is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ex** or **dē**, but **cōnstāre**, *to consist*, sometimes omits the preposition.

#### EXAMPLE.

**ānimō constāmus et corpore**, *we consist of soul and body*.

OBS. 1. The ablative of material is used with words of plenty and want, especially with verbs signifying *filling, abounding, supplying, furnishing*, and the like.

OBS. 2. **Opus** and **ūsus**, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative of the thing needed.

#### EXAMPLE.

**dūce nobis ōpus est**, *there is need to us of a leader*.

OBS. 3. Sometimes the thing needed is the subject and **ōpus** the predicate; hence we may say either **dūce nobis ōpus est**, *there is need to us of a leader*, or **dux nobis est**, *a leader is a need to us*.

OBS. 4. The adjective **praeditus** is followed by the ablative.

#### EXAMPLE.

**virtute praeditus**, *endowed with virtue*.

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

**309.** The Ablative of Manner generally takes the preposition *cum*, unless it has a modifying adjective or genitive (when *cum* may be omitted).

Obs. But *cum* is never used with the following ablatives: *mōdō*, *rātiōne*, *mōre*, *gēnere*, *ritō*, etc.; also, *hāc mente*, *hōc cōnālīō*, *eā lēge*, *meo pēriculō*, *jūre*, *injūria*, etc.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *cum cūrā scribit*, he writes with care.
2. *cum* (or without *cum*) *māgnā cūrā scribit*, he writes with great care.
3. *māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesāre pētunt*, with a flood of tears they seek aid from Caesar.
4. *intellēgēbat māgnō cum pēriculō prōvinciae fūtūrum (esse)*, he perceived that it would be attended with the great danger to the province.
5. *Caesar omnibus cōpiis prōficiēscitur*, Caesar departs with all his forces.

## ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

**310.** The Ablative of Accompaniment takes the preposition *cum*, except in a few military and other phases.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *cum dēcimā lēgiōne vēnit*, he came with the tenth legion.
2. *subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis*, he followed close with all his forces.

1. If *WITH* signifies *in company with*, *in conflict with*, *cum* must be used; but relations cross, and whenever manner or accompaniment can be regarded as *means*, the preposition is omitted.

**311.** Ablative of Quality or Characteristic. (See 292.)

Obs. Note the close connection between these three uses of the ablative of manner: the first, *he writes with care*, *care* being an attendant circumstance; the second, *he comes with the tenth legion*, the ablative designating that with which he is attended; the third, *an attendant quality*. (See 292.)

**312.** The Uses of the Ablative may be tabulated as follows : —

- |                             |   |  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| 1. ABLATIVE PROPER          | { | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The Place from which.</li> <li>b. Separation.</li> <li>c. Cause (including Source, Origin, <i>frētus</i>, <i>contentus</i>, <i>fido</i>, <i>cōfido</i>, <i>diffido</i>, and Agency with <i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> after passive verbs).</li> </ul>   |
| 2. INSTRUMENTAL<br>ABLATIVE | { | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Means, Instrument, Deponents, <i>ūtor</i>, etc.</li> <li>b. Measure, Measure of Difference, Price, <i>dignus</i>, <i>indignus</i>.</li> <li>c. Comparison.</li> <li>d. Specification.</li> <li>e. Material, Plenty, and Want, <i>opus</i>, <i>usus</i>, <i>praeditus</i>.</li> <li>f. Manner, Accompaniment (with <i>cum</i>), Quality.</li> </ul> |
| 3. LOCATIVE . . . . .       | { | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Place <i>where</i>.</li> <li>b. Time and Circumstance.</li> <li>c. Ablative Absolute.</li> </ul>   |

SYN. *Dico*, say or speak formally; *loquor* (*loquī*), speak or talk (opposed to *taceo*, keep silent); for (*fārī*), talk, use articulate speech; *āio*, assent, say yes, expresses the assertion of the speaker (opposed to *nēgo*); *inquam*, inquit, say I, says he, used to introduce the *very* words of the speaker, and always comes after one or more words of the quotation (305. 2. Obs.).

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Ait, aisen' ? āio. 2. Inquit, fatur. 3. Oculis videmus, auribus audimus. 4. Vir lapide interfectus est. 5. Sōlus pōtītus est impēriō Rōmulus. 6. Vir dimicat ferrō. 7. Vir culpā dignus est. 8. "Omnia pēriērunt," inquit Caesar, "cōsūlīte, milītēs, vestrae sālūtī." 9. Eādem condiciōne dēditiōnis ūsus est. 10. Germānī virī corpōrum ingentī māgnitūdīne fuērunt.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Learn the synopsis of *coepī*, *mēmīnī*, *ōdī*. What is a *defective verb* ? Which defective verbs have in the perfect and pluperfect the meaning of the present and imperfect ? How are the uses of the ablative classified ? Give the chief uses of the *ablative proper*; of the *instrumental ablative*; of the *locative ablative*.

# LESSON XCIV.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.—GENITIVE WITH VERB.

**313.** Verbs used only in the third person singular, and not admitting a *definite person* or *thing* as the subject, are called *impersonal*.<sup>1</sup>

1. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated like other verbs, but are used, for the most part, in the indicative and subjunctive, and in the present and the perfect infinitives, with traces of participles and gerunds. *Impersonal* is only the name of a use more or less fixed, not of a list of verbs. **Dēcet** (314. 2), etc., are not true impersonals; their subject is an infinitive, or a sentence used as a noun. In the passive voice the idea of the subject must generally be found in the verb itself; as, **mīlītēs pūgnant**, *the soldiers fight*, becomes **ā mīlītibus pūgnātur**, *it is fought* (i.e. *fighting is done*) *by the soldiers*.

**Obs.** The essence of an impersonal verb is that it has no *analytic* subject,—no subject expressed or understood outside of the verb itself,—whether *person* or *thing*. The classification is purely *formal*, not *logical*. **Fātur**, **fāma est**, **fērun**, **pōpūlus fert**, all mean the same; only **fātur** is impersonal.

2. The synopsis of Impersonal Verbs of the four conjugations may be given as follows:—

<b>PRINCIPAL PARTS.</b>	1. <b>constat</b> , <b>constāre</b> , <b>constitit</b> , <i>it is evident.</i>		
	2. <b>licet</b> , <b>licēre</b> , <b>licuit</b> , <i>it is permitted.</i>		
	3. <b>accidit</b> , <b>accidēre</b> , <b>accidit</b> , <i>it happens.</i>		
	4. <b>ēvenit</b> , <b>ēvēnīre</b> , <b>ēvenit</b> , <i>it results.</i>		
<b>constat</b>	<b>licet</b>	<b>accidit</b>	<b>ēvenit</b>
<b>constābat</b>	<b>licēbat</b>	<b>accidēbat</b>	<b>ēvenīēbat</b>
<b>constābit</b>	<b>licēbit</b>	<b>accidet</b>	<b>ēveniet</b>
<b>constitit</b>	<b>licuit</b>	<b>accidit</b>	<b>ēvenit</b>
<b>constitērat</b>	<b>licuērat</b>	<b>accidērat</b>	<b>ēvenērat</b>
<b>constitērit</b>	<b>licuērit</b>	<b>accidērit</b>	<b>ēvenērit</b>
<b>constet</b>	<b>liceat</b>	<b>accidat</b>	<b>ēveniat</b>
<b>constāret</b>	<b>licēret</b>	<b>accidēret</b>	<b>ēvenīret</b>
<b>constitērit</b>	<b>licuērit</b>	<b>accidērit</b>	<b>ēvenērit</b>
<b>constitisset</b>	<b>licuisset</b>	<b>accidisset</b>	<b>ēvenisset</b>
<b>constāre</b>	<b>licēre</b>	<b>accidēre</b>	<b>ēvenīre</b>
<b>constitisse</b>	<b>licuisse</b>	<b>accidisse</b>	<b>ēvenisse</b>
<b>constātūrum esse</b>	<b>licitūrum esse</b>	—	<b>ēventūrum esse</b>

**314.** The Impersonal uses of verbs may be classified as follows :—

1. Verbs relating to the *weather*: as, **fulgurat**, *it lightens*; **grandinat**, *it hails*; **lūcescit**, *it grows light*; **tōnat**, *it thunders*; **illūcescit**, *it becomes light*.

Obs. Sometimes these verbs are used personally, the name of the deity or some other agent, generally expressing a cognate idea, being expressed as the subject; as, **Juppiter pluuit**, *Jupiter rains*; **diēs illūcescit**, *day dawns*.

2. Verbs relating to the *feelings*. The person who feels is put in the accusative; as, **mē misēret**, *it grieves me* (i.e. *I grieve*). The following verbs of the second conjugation belong to this class :—

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PARTICIPLE.
dēcet	dēcēre	dēcuit	— <i>it becomes.</i>
dēdēcet	dēdēcēre	dēdēcuit	<i>it is unseemly.</i>
libet	libēre	libuit and libitum est	<i>it pleases.</i>
licet	licēre	licuit and licitum est	<i>it is lawful.</i>
liquet	liquēre	—	<i>it is clear.</i>
misēret or misērētur }	misērēre	misērītum est	<i>it excites pity.</i>
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	<i>it behoves.</i>
pīget	pīgēre	pīguit and pigitum est	<i>it vexes.</i>
plācet	plācēre	plācuit and plācitum est	<i>it pleases.</i>
paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	<i>it causes sorrow.</i>
pūdet	pūdēre	pūduit and pūditum est	<i>it shames.</i>
taedet	taedēre	(per-)taesum	<i>it wearies.</i>

#### EXAMPLE.

Latin idiom :—

*Becomes a young man to be modest, or  
To be modest becomes a young man,*

English idiom :—

*It becomes a young man to be modest,*

ACTIVE.

**dēcet vērōcūndum esse  
ādūlescentem.**

Obs. 1. As the English idiom requires a subject, the pronoun *it* is placed before the impersonal verb in translating.

Obs. 2. These verbs are not used in the imperative; the subjunctive is used in its place; as, **pūdeat tē**, *shame thyself*. Some of these verbs have a passive voice, as **miséreor**, *I pity (am moved)*



by pity), and occasionally other parts: — (1) Participles: **dēcēns**, becoming; **libēns**, willing; **licēns**, free; **licitus**, allowed. (2) Gerunds: **poenitendus**, to be repented of; **pūdendus**, shameful. (3) Gerunds: **pīgendum**, **poenitendī**, -ō, -um; **pūdendī**, -ō, -um.

Obs. 3. All of these verbs (except **misēret**, **oportet**, **taedet**) can have a neuter pronoun as subject, and are then personal: as, **hōc pūdet mē**, this shames me; **haec libent**, these things please. **Libet** and **licet** can have an adjective used as noun as subject, as **nōn omnia licent**, not every thing pleases; and **dēcet** and **dēdēcet** can have any word as subject, as **virtūs vōs dēcet**, virtue becomes you. See 315. 3 (1).

3. Some personal verbs seem, in certain senses, to be used impersonally; but they are not truly so, because the real subject is generally an infinitive or a clause. Such verbs are: —

	PERSONAL.	IMPERSONAL.
<b>accidit</b> . . . . .	<i>he, she (it) falls upon.</i>	<i>it happens (ill).</i>
<b>appāret</b> . . . . .	<i>" appears.</i>	<i>it appears.</i>
<b>attinet</b> . . . . .	<i>" lays hold of.</i>	<i>it belongs to.</i>
<b>conducit</b> . . . . .	<i>" leads together.</i>	<i>it is useful.</i>
<b>contingit</b> . . . . .	<i>" touches.</i>	<i>it befalls (well).</i>
<b>convēnit</b> . . . . .	<i>" comes together.</i>	<i>it is agreed upon.</i>
<b>expēdit</b> . . . . .	<i>" extricates.</i>	<i>it is expedient.</i>
<b>fallit</b> . . . . .	<i>" deceives</i>	<i>it escapes.</i>
<b>fūgit</b> . . . . .	<i>" flies</i>	
<b>praetērit</b> . . . . .	<i>" goes past</i>	
<b>intērest</b> . . . . .	<i>" is present at.</i>	<i>it concerns.</i>
<b>jūvat</b> . . . . .	<i>" helps.</i>	<i>it delights.</i>
<b>pātet</b> . . . . .	<i>" is open.</i>	<i>it is plain.</i>
<b>plācet</b> . . . . .	<i>" pleases.</i>	<i>it seems good.</i>
etc.	etc.	etc.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **ut Tībēris inter eōs et pons intēresset**, so that the Tiber and bridge might be between them (personal use).
2. **intērest omnium rectē faciēre**, it concerns all to do right (impersonal use).

4. *Intransitive verbs*, when used in the passive (the participle is neuter): as, **curritur**, there is running, or they run; **mīhi crēditur**, it is credited to me, I am believed; **nōn hostibus parcitur**, there is no quarter given to the enemy, or the enemy is not spared; **mīhī invīdētur**, there is envy to me, i.e. I am envied; **hostibus resistunt**, they

*resist the enemy* (used personally); *his sententiis resistitur*, *resistance is offered to these opinions*. When the Agent is mentioned, it is put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *ab*, or may remain in the dative: as, (Act.) *Helvētīī fortiter pugnāvērunt*, *the Helvetians fought bravely*; (Impers.) *āb Helvētīīs fortiter pugnātum est*, *it was fought bravely by the Helvetians*, i.e. *the Helvetians fought bravely*.

5. The *passive* of the periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; the participle is then always neuter (see 287. Obs.): as, *mīhī scribendum est*, *I must write* (lit., *the necessity of writing is to me*); *illī scribendum est*, *he must write*.

Obs. 1. The persons are expressed in the following way in the present indicative, and similarly in the other tenses:—

- pūdet mē*, *it shames me*, or *I am ashamed*.
- pūdet tē*, *it shames thee*, or *thou art ashamed*.
- pūdet eum*, *it shames him*, or *he is ashamed*.
- pūdet nōs*, *it shames us*, or *we are ashamed*.
- pūdet vōs*, *it shames you*, or *you are ashamed*.
- pūdet eōs*, *it shames them*, or *they are ashamed*.

Obs. 2. The impersonal verbs *libet*, *it pleases*, *licet*, *it is lawful*, and *expēdit*, *it is expedient*, are used with the dative; as, *licet mīhī ire*, *it is lawful for me to go*, or *I may go*.

### 315. Genitive with Verbs.

#### VERBS OF MEMORY.

1. Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, and *forgetting*, — *rēcordor* (rarely), *mēmīnī*, *rēmīniscor*, and *oblīviscor*, — are followed by the genitive (sometimes by the accusative).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *mēmīnī vīvōrum*, *I am mindful of the living*.
2. *rēmīniscī virtūtis*, *to remember virtue*.

#### GENITIVE OF CRIME.

2. Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *praetor reum criminis absolvit*, *the praetor acquitted the prisoner of the crime*.
2. *arguit mē furtī*, *he accuses me of theft*.

VERBS OF FEELING.

3. The genitive is used with the following:—

(f) **Misereor, miseresco, I pity.** (Cf. 314. 2.)

EXAMPLE.

**miseresco infelicitum, I pity the unfortunate.**

(2) With the impersonals **refert** and **interest, it concerns, it interests.** (See 314. 3.)

EXAMPLE.

**interest omnium recte facere, it is to the interest of all to act rightly.**

a. Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun, the forms **mea, tua, sua, nostra, and vestra,** are used.

EXAMPLE.

**mea nihil refert, it does not concern me.**

(3) The impersonal verbs **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, and taedet,** take the genitive of the object with the accusative of the person. (See 314. 2.)

EXAMPLES.

1. **eorum nos miseret, we pity them.**

2. **me taedet vitae, I am weary of life.**

GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.

4. **Sum,** and verbs of *valuing*, take the genitive to express the *price* or *value indefinitely*. (Definite price is expressed by the ablative. See 304.)

EXAMPLE.

**ager nunc pluris est quam tunc fuit, the field is of more value now than it was then.**

VOCABULARY.

**re-cordor, -ari, -atus sum, dep., remember, recollect.**

**memini, -isse, def., I remember.** (See 320. Obs. 2)

**remiscor, -isci (no perf.), dep., recollect, remember.**

**obliscor, oblisci, oblitus sum, dep., forget.**

**misereor, -eri, -itus sum, dep., pity.**

**miseresco, -scere (no perf., no partic.), feel pity.**

**refert, it concerns.**

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Mihī ire licuit. 2. Pugnandum est prō patriā.
3. Rēminiscere pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 4. Anīmus mēmīnit praetērītōrum. 5. Frātris meī mē mīseret. 6. Contrōversiārum et dissensiōnum oblīviscimīnī.
7. Vir reus est crīmīnis. 8. Tē fortūnae tuae paenitet. 9. Rōmānī eum cāpītis damnāvērunt. 10. Illud meā māgnī intērest.
11. Absolvunt tē jūdīcēs injūriārum. 12. Plācuit Caesārī,<sup>2</sup> ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mittēret. 13. Eum ad mortem dūcī oportuit. 14. Is ad mortem dūcendus fuit.

Translate into Latin : —

1. I may go. 2. I must fight. 3. The soldiers must fight.
4. We may go. 5. We must depart. 6. I am ashamed of my fault. 7. They accuse him of treachery. 8. A true friend never forgets a friend. 9. Cæsar acquitted the soldier of the crime.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Learn the definition and translation of impersonal verbs; how classified; and the synopsis under 313. 3.

2. *It pleased Cæsar*, i.e. *Cæsar determined*; the clause beginning with *ut* is the subject of *plācuit*.

What is an impersonal verb? Translate *pūgnātur*, *pūgnandum est*, *mē pīget*. What case is used with *licet*? With *oportet*? How is *may*, *can*, expressed in Latin? How is *must*, *might*? In what two ways can *must* be expressed? (See Exs. 13 and 14.) What verbs govern the genitive or accusative? What the genitive alone?



## LESSON XCV.

## CLASSIFICATION OF DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

**316.** Obs. 1. The pupil has now learned the construction of simple sentences. The rules and principles that have been applied to these sentences are applicable to all independent clauses; it is only in *dependent*, or *subordinate*, clauses that difficulty is likely to occur. The pupil should, therefore, obtain an accurate knowledge of the

various kinds of dependent clauses, for this will aid him very much in determining the *tense* and *mode* to be used. We have learned that a complex sentence must contain one or more subordinate clauses. The subordination is expressed by some connecting word, which is always some form of the relative or some word that has acquired the use of the relative. This word may be a pronoun, a conjunction, or a conjunctive adverb.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *The sea, WHEN it had spent its fury, became calm.*
2. *The boy, WHO reads, learns.*
3. *He came, THAT he might see the city.*
4. *He demanded THAT Cæsar should not make war upon the Æduans.*
5. *He says THAT the mountain is held by the enemy.*
6. *IF he conquers, he will rejoice.*
7. *His friends will abandon him, BECAUSE his father has done so.*
8. *So great is the power of honesty, THAT we love it even in an enemy.*
9. *I inquired WHAT he was doing.*
10. *Life is short, THOUGH it extend beyond a thousand years.*

**Obs. 2.** In Ex. 1 of the foregoing sentences, note that the clause *when it had spent its fury*, expresses time, and is combined with the leading clause, *the sea became calm*, by means of the subordinate temporal conjunction *when*; the clause is, therefore, called a **TEMPORAL CLAUSE** (see 206. 1). If we combine the two clauses by means of a coördinate conjunction (205), the sentence becomes compound; as, *the sea spent its fury, AND then it became calm*. In Ex. 2, the subordinate clause is introduced by the relative *who* (241. Obs.), and is called a **RELATIVE CLAUSE**. In Ex. 3, the subordinate clause is introduced by the subordinate final conjunction *that* (206. 5); the clause is, therefore, called a **FINAL CLAUSE**. The clause in Ex. 5, introduced by *that*, is an **INFINITIVE CLAUSE** (341. 1). Ex. 6, *if he conquers* is a **CONDITIONAL CLAUSE**; and in Ex. 7, *because his father had done so* is a **CAUSAL CLAUSE**. A clause introduced by a consecutive conjunction is called a **CONSECUTIVE CLAUSE**, as Ex. 8; one introduced by a concessive conjunction, as in Ex. 10, is called a **CONCESSIVE CLAUSE**.

The relative clause performs the office of an adjective, because *who reads* modifies *boy* = *the reading boy*; it is called an **ADJECTIVE CLAUSE**. The temporal clause in Ex. 1 performs the office of an adverb, and is, therefore, called an **ADVERB CLAUSE**; in Exs. 4, 5, and 9, the clauses *that Cæsar should not make war upon the Æduans*, *that the mountain is held by the enemy*, and *what he was doing*, are objects of the transitive verb *demanded*, of *inquired*, and of *says*, i.e. each performs the office of a noun or substantive, and is, therefore, called a **NOUN, or SUBSTANTIVE, CLAUSE**. Hence, clauses may be classified as:—

## I. COÖRDINATE, see 205.

## II. SUBORDINATE

1. *Final.*
2. *Consecutive.*
3. *Conditional.*
4. *Comparative.*
5. *Concessive.*
6. *Causal.*
7. *Temporal.*
8. *Interrogative.*
9. *Infinitive.*
10. *Relative.*

Named from their meaning, as shown by some introductory word; the same word may introduce clauses of different kinds, according to circumstances.

1. *Substantive.*
2. *Adjective.*
3. *Adverb.*

Named from the part of speech whose office they perform.

Obs. 3. Noun Clauses include: (1) Infinitive clauses, 342. 1; (2) some final and (3) consecutive clauses, 342. 2 and 3; (4) clauses introduced by *quod*, which give prominence to the *fact stated*, or present it as a *ground* or *reason*, 342. 4; (5) and dependent interrogative clauses, 342. 5. Adjective Clauses are connected to the clauses on which they depend by means of relative pronouns. Adverbial Clauses are connected to the clauses on which they depend by means of *conditional, comparative, concessive, final, consecutive, causal, or temporal conjunctions*. The pupil should note that sometimes a clause connected by a final or consecutive conjunction becomes virtually the object of the verb on which it depends, and is then classed as a Noun Clause. (See 342. 2 and 3.)

## EXERCISES.

Classify the following sentences:—

1. The bridge, which spans the river, was built by a skillful engineer. 2. When the war closed, Washington retired to Mount Vernon. 3. If you would be happy, you must be active. 4. When the battle was concluded, the commander began to count his loss. 5. He takes exercise, that he may recover his health. 6. The ground is dry, although it has rained. 7. The sun causes (that all things should bloom, *i.e.*) all things to bloom.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a clause? Mention the various classes of subordinate clauses. What is an adjective clause? Substantive clause? Expand the complex sentences in the foregoing lesson into compound sentences. How many kinds of adverbial clauses? Write an adjective clause.

## LESSON XCVI.

## TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## 317. Primary and Secondary Tenses.

Obs. We have learned that tense denotes the *time* of the action; and as time admits of a threefold division, into *present*, *past*, and *future*, there must be at least three tenses to represent an action in present, past, or future time. But in each of these tenses an action may be represented as *incomplete* or as *completed*, and from these two divisions arise six tenses of the Latin verb; viz.:—

1. The Present, denoting *incomplete* action in the present.
2. The Future, denoting *incomplete* action in the future.
3. The Imperfect, denoting *incomplete* action in the past.
4. The Perfect, denoting *completed* action in the present.
5. The Fut. Perf., denoting *completed* action in the future.
6. The Pluperfect, denoting *completed* action in the past.

Each of these tenses also represents the action either as in progress (still unfinished) or at the close of its progress (*i.e.* as now finished). An action may further be represented as being simply brought to pass, without reference to its being continuous or momentary, complete or incomplete. This distinction gives rise to the *indefinite* or *aoristic* stage of action, which has no separate tense form. It is expressed by the *present tense* for the present, by the *future* for the future, and by the *aorist* (perfect definite) for the past. The following table will show these temporal relations:—

Time.	Action represented as	Examples.	Common Names.
Present {	Incomplete. Completed. Indefinite.	<i>I am writing.</i> <i>I have written.</i> <i>I write.</i>	Present. Perfect. Present.
Past {	Incomplete. Completed. Indefinite.	<i>I was writing.</i> <i>I had written.</i> <i>I wrote.</i>	Imperfect. Pluperfect. Aorist.
Future {	Incomplete. Completed. Indefinite.	<i>I shall be writing.</i> <i>I shall have written.</i> <i>I shall write.</i>	Future. Fut. Perf. Future.

The rules hitherto given will always enable the pupil to determine what tenses of the subjunctive should be used in independent

clauses. In dependent clauses, the tense of the subjunctive is always dated at the same time as the tense of the leading verb. In order to determine what tense of the subjunctive should *follow* (in the dependent clause) the leading verb, special rules are necessary, called the rules for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES. For this purpose the tenses of the indicative mode are divided into *two classes*, according as they represent actions as *present* or *future*, or as *past*. The former are called PRIMARY, and the latter SECONDARY, or HISTORICAL, TENSES. The tenses of each class can be seen from the following table:—

1. PRIMARY.		
PRESENT.	FUTURES.	PERFECT.
āmat, <i>he loves.</i>	āmābit, <i>he will love.</i> āmāverit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	āmāvit, <i>he has loved.</i>
2. SECONDARY.		
IMPERFECT.	AORIST.	PLUPERFECT.
āmābat, <i>he was loving.</i>	āmāvit, <i>he loved.</i>	āmāverat, <i>he had loved.</i>

### 318. Sequence of Tenses.

#### EXAMPLES.

**Primary.** — Present and Future Time in Dependent Clauses.

#### 1. PRESENT —

- scio quid āgās, *I know what you are doing.*  
 scio quid ēgēris, *I know what you have done.*  
 scio quid actūrus sīs, *I know what you are going to do.*

#### 2. PERFECT —

- cōgnōvī quid āgās, *I have learned what you are doing.*  
 cōgnōvī quid ēgēris, *I have learned what you have done*  
 cōgnōvī quid actūrus sīs, *I have learned what you are going to do.*

#### 3. FUTURE —

- audiam quid āgās, *I shall hear what you are doing.*  
 audiam quid ēgēris, *I shall hear what you have done.*  
 audiam quid actūrus sīs, *I shall hear what you are going to do.*

#### 4. FUTURE PERFECT —

- cōgnōvēro quid āgās, *I shall have learned what you are doing.*  
 cōgnōvēro quid ēgēris, *I shall have learned what you have done.*  
 cōgnōvēro quid actūrus sīs, *I shall have learned what you will do.*



## Secondary, or Historical. — Past Time in Dependent Clauses.

## 5. IMPERFECT —

sciēbam quid āgērēs, *I knew what you were doing.*

sciēbam quid ēgissēs, *I knew what you had done.*

sciēbam quid actūrus essēs, *I knew what you were going to do.*

## 6. AORIST —

cōgnōvī quid āgērēs, *I learned what you were doing.*

cōgnōvī quid ēgissēs, *I learned what you had done.*

cōgnōvī quid actūrus essēs, *I learned what you were going to do.*

## 7. PLUPERFECT —

cōgnōvēram quid āgērēs, *I had learned what you were doing.*

cōgnōvēram quid ēgissēs, *I had learned what you had done.*

cōgnōvēram quid actūrus essēs, *I had learned what you were going to do.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note (1) that each verb in the leading, or principal, clauses, of Exs. 1, 2, 3, 4, is in a *primary* tense — present, perfect, future, future perfect; (2) that each verb in the *dependent*, or subordinate, clauses of the same examples, is likewise in a primary tense, but in the *present* subjunctive when the action is *continued* or *incomplete* (i.e. relatively present or future) with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*, and in the *perfect* subjunctive when the action is *completed* (i.e. relatively past) with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. Note, further, that each verb in the *leading*, or *principal*, clauses, of Exs. 5, 6, 7, is in a *secondary*, or an *historical*, tense, — imperfect, aorist, pluperfect, — and also that each verb in the *dependent*, or *subordinate*, clauses is likewise in a secondary, or an historical, tense: in the *imperfect* subjunctive when the action is *continued* or *incomplete* with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*, and in the *pluperfect* subjunctive when the action is *completed* with reference to the action denoted by the *leading verb*. The pupil should note that, after a future or future perfect tense, the simple future is represented in the dependent, or subordinate clause, by the *present* subjunctive, and the future perfect by the *perfect* subjunctive; and also that, in such cases, the dependent subjunctive may be *present* or *past*, with reference either to the time of speaking or to the time of the main action: as, in **audiam quid āgās**, the doing may be going on either at the time of speaking or at the time of hearing, i.e. *I shall hear THEN what you are doing NOW*, or *what you are doing THEN* (i.e. *when I hear*). Finally, the pupil should note that, whenever the future in the dependent clause is subsequent to the future of the leading verb, the present or imperfect of the active periphrastic subjunctive is used. Hence, the pupil will observe that the subjunctives in the *dependent* clauses adapt their verbs to the tenses of the verbs in the *leading* clauses;

*i.e.* a primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a primary tense in the subordinate clause, and that a secondary, or an historical, tense in the leading clause is followed by a secondary, or an historical, tense in the subordinate clause. The rule is called the rule for the SEQUENCE OF TENSES, and is, in general, the same in Latin as in English. For those dependent sentences that require the subjunctive, the rule may be stated as follows:—

#### SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

**319. RULE XLVII.** — A primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; and a secondary tense is followed by a secondary.

Obs. The rules for the Sequence of Tenses are not applicable to indicative clauses (*i.e.* to clauses that have their verbs in the indicative), nor to conditional sentences (regardless of mode). For these, special rules are necessary (see 325).

**320.** The Sequence of Tenses may be represented as follows:—

<i>Primary Tenses:</i> Present, Perfect (Definite), Future, Future Perfect,	} are followed by	{ The <i>Present Subjunctive</i> , for incomplete action. The <i>Perfect Subjunctive</i> , for completed action.
<i>Secondary Tenses:</i> Imperfect, Aorist (Perfect), Pluperfect,	} are followed by	{ The <i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i> , for incomplete action. The <i>Pluperfect Subjunctive</i> , for completed action.

Obs. In the following examples, note that the tense of the subjunctive is always dated at the same time as the tense of the leading verb; *i.e.* the tense of the Latin subjunctive is the same as the tense of the indicative or potential in the English sentence. The commonest tenses of the subjunctive in dependent clauses are the present and imperfect, the latter being used in such dependent clauses for the English aorist as well as for the real imperfect.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *vēnio ut videam*, I come to (in order that I may) see.
2. *vēnī ut vidērem*, I came to (in order that I might) see.
3. *Ita mendāx erat, ut nēmō ei crēderet*, he was such a liar, that no one believed him.

In Exs. 1 and 2, the *seeing* is dated as present or past, according as the *coming* is present or past; and, as *may see* and *might see* are present and imperfect (or past) potential, respectively, so we use the corresponding tenses of the Latin subjunctive. In Ex. 3, *crēderet* is used for *believed*, which is an aorist; *crēderet* would also be used for a true imperfect (*was believing*). After primary tenses, the perfect subjunctive is used to represent all past tenses of the indicative or potential, except that unreal conditions (326. 3) must always have their own form, regardless of the Sequence of Tenses (319).

a. The Perfect (Definite) is properly a primary tense; but as its action is commenced in past time, it is often regarded as a secondary tense, and is followed in the dependent clause by a secondary tense.

b. The Present is often used in lively narration for the Aorist, or Historical, Perfect. We say in English, *Cicero discusses the immortality of the soul*, *discusses* being the historical present. It is used whenever the writer wishes to picture vividly some past event as present. It is then really a past tense, and is usually followed by a past tense in the subordinate clause; though often it is followed by a primary tense, with past meaning like itself.

#### EXAMPLE.

**Helvētīī lēgātōs ad Caesārem mittunt, qui dicērent, the Helvetians (send) sent ambassadors to Cæsar, to say (= who should say).**

c. The Subjunctive has no future or future perfect tense; these tenses are, in general, represented in dependent clauses, after a primary tense, by the *present* or the *perfect* respectively (circumstances determining whether the present subjunctive is equivalent to the present or future, etc.; cf. Exs. in 318); and after a secondary tense, by the *imperfect* or the *pluperfect*. But whenever the action in the subordinate clause is to be represented as subsequent to the future of the leading verb, the periphrastic form is used, composed of the tenses of *esse* in combination with the future active participle. (See 285. Obs.)

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **rēspōdet sī id sit factum, sē nōcītūrum nēmīnī, he replies that, if this should be done, he will harm no one.**

2. **lōquēbantur, ētiam cum vellet Caesar, sēsē nōn esse pūgnātūrōs**, *they were saying that they would not fight, even when Caesar should wish it.*
3. **interrōgo tē, quid actūrus sis**, *I am asking you what you will do, or are going to do.*

**Obs. 1.** Instead of the periphrastic form, **fūtūrum sit** (or **esset**) **ut** may be used; and these words *must be used* when the verb has no participial stem, and therefore no periphrastic form (and also for the future perfect active, which is wanting in the periphrastic conjugation); as, **nōn dūbīto quā scriptūrus sis = nōn dūbīto quā fūtūrum sit, ut scrībās**, *I do not doubt that you will write.*

**Obs. 2.** The future perfect represents both the perfect definite and the aorist, transferred to the future; as, **fēcēro**, *I shall have done it, or I shall do it.* The future perfect is used with a much greater exactness in Latin than in English; as, **ut sēmentem fēcēris, ita mētēs**, *as you shall have sown, so will you reap.* The English idiom often uses the present, or the simple future, for the future perfect: *as you sow, or as you shall sow*, instead of *as you shall have sown.*

**Obs. 3.** In applying the rules for the sequence of tenses, consider (1) whether the leading verb is primary or secondary; (2) remember that the tense of the Latin subjunctive is the same as the tense of the indicative or potential in the English sentence (*may, can, will, and shall* being present; *might, could, would, and should*, past).

### EXERCISES.

Apply the rules for sequence of tenses to the following examples:—

1. **scripsit ut nōs mōnēret**, *he wrote to warn us, or that he might warn us.*
2. **scripsit ut nōs mōneat**, *he has written to warn us, or that he may warn us.*
3. **causa quae esset quaesit**, *he asked what the cause was.*
4. **vēnit ut vīdeat**, *he has come to see, in order to see, or that he may see.*
5. **vēnit ut vīdēret**, *he came to see, or that he might see.*
6. **dūx impērat ut mīlītēs stātiōnēs suās servent**, *the leader commands the soldiers to keep their stations, or that the soldiers should keep their stations.*
7. **cūrat ut pueri corpus exerceat**, *he takes care that he may exercise the boy's body (i.e. to exercise the boy's body).*

8. **Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit ut cum Rōmānīs pugnāret, Hannibal led a large army into Italy to (that he might) fight with the Romans.**
9. **nōn dubito quin Caesar hostēs sup̄erāverit, I do not doubt that Caesar has overcome the enemy.**
10. **nōn dubitābam quin Caesar hostēs sup̄erāvisset, I did not doubt that Caesar had overcome the enemy.**
11. **considerābimus quid faciat, we shall consider what he is doing.**
12. **considerābimus quid fecerit, we shall consider what he has done.**
13. **considerābimus quid facturus sit, we shall consider what he is going to do (or will do).**

**Supplementary Exercises : —**

1. **Nōn dubitābam quin Caesar hostēs sup̄erāvisset.**
2. **Nēmō dubitābat quin milītēs fortissimē pugnāvissent.**
3. **Nēmō dubitat quin puērum semper bene educāverim.**
4. **Pāter cūrat ut ego bene educer, strēnuē exercear, prōbē excōlar, diligenter erūdiar.**
5. **Māgister cūrābat ut discipūlus bene educārētur, strenuē exercērētur, prōbē excōlērētur, diligenter erūdīrētur.**
6. **Nōn est dubium quin discipūlus ā mē bene mōnītus sit.**
7. **Nōn est dubium quin urbs ā milītibz expūgnāta sit.**
8. **Interrogō tē quid actūrus sis.**
9. **Interrogāvero tē quid actūrus sis.**
10. **Interrogābam tē quid actūrus essēs.**
11. **Nōn dubitāvi quin scriptūrus essēs, or nōn dubitāvi quin fūtūrum esset ut scrībērēs.**

**NOTES AND QUESTIONS.**

How many tenses has the indicative mode? How many has the subjunctive? What are primary tenses? Secondary tenses? How do the forms of the perfect subjunctive differ from those of the future perfect indicative? Has the subjunctive future tenses? How is this lack of future tenses supplied in dependent clauses? What is the rule for the tense in a dependent clause containing a subjunctive? Is the rule for sequence of tenses applicable to indicative clauses?

## LESSON XCVII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## I. FINAL CLAUSES.

**Obs.** Final Clauses are those that tell the *purpose* of an action. They are introduced by the Final Conjunctions **ut**, *that, in order that*; **nē** (or **ut nē**), *that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest*; **quō** (= **ut eō**, *that thereby*), *whereby, in order that*, when there is a comparative in the final clause; the Relative Pronoun **quī** (= **ut is**, *that he*), *in order that he*; and the Relative Adverbs, **ūbi**, **unde**, etc. = **ut ibi**, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

**321. RULE XLVIII.**—Final Clauses take their verbs in the present or imperfect subjunctive, according as the leading verb is in a primary or secondary tense.

**Obs. 1.** The leading verb may be in any tense, but the present or imperfect subjunctive is usually used in the final clause. The relative pronoun is used in final clauses chiefly after verbs of *sending, coming, giving, choosing*, etc., when the antecedent is indefinite.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **vēnērunt ut pācem pētērent**, *they came to seek peace.*
2. **pūgnāmus nē servī sīmus**, *we fight that we may not be slaves.*
3. **Caesar castella commūnit, quō facilius Helvētiōs prōhibēre possit**, *Cæsar erects forts that he may the more easily keep off the Helvetians.*
4. **mīlitēs missī sunt quī** (= **ut iī**) **urbem expūgnārent**, *soldiers were sent (that they might assault), or to assault the city.*
5. **lōcum ūbi cōnsidēret dēlēgit**, *he selected a place where he might encamp (that he might there, etc.).*

**Obs. 2.** The ablative **quō** (= **ut eō**) is used in clauses denoting *purpose*, especially with comparatives.

**Obs. 3.** These final clauses may be translated by *to*; sometimes by *that . . . may*, *that . . . might*, etc.

**Object Clauses.**

1. After verbs of *admonishing* and *allowing*, *bidding* and *forbidding*, *beseeking* and *compelling*, *resolving* and *striving*, *willing* and *wishing*, Final Clauses become *object clauses*, i.e. they are the objects of the verbs on which they depend. With many of these verbs the simple infinitive, or the infinitive with subject-accusative, is often used (see 254. and 342. (2)), instead of *ut* with the subjunctive.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *tē rōgo ut eum jūvēs*, *I ask you to (that you may) aid him.*
2. *contendit ut vincat*, *he strives to (that he may) conquer.*
3. *sēnātus censuērat, ūtī (= ut) Aeduōs dēfendēret*, *the senate had decreed that he should defend the Aeduans.*

Obs. This form of final clauses is usually rendered by *to* (never by *in order to*); sometimes by *that*, with *may* or *might*, etc. These verbs have the sequence of ordinary final clauses.

**Verbs of Fearing.**

2. After verbs of *fearing*, *nē*, *lest*, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; *ut* (*nē nōn*) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared; *nē nōn* is used regularly after a negative for both.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *tīmeo ut lābōrēs sustīneās*, *I fear that you will not endure the labors (I wish that you may).*
2. *tīmēbam nē ēvēnīrent ea*, *I feared that these things would happen (I wished that they would not).*
3. *nōn vēreor nē nōn rēdeat*, *I do not fear that he will not return.*
4. *vēreor ut rēdeat*, *I fear he may not return.*

Obs. Note that *nē* is translated by *that*; and *ut*, or *nē nōn*, by *that not*. Verbs of *fearing* take the present (representing the present and future indicative) or perfect (representing the perfect or future perfect indicative) subjunctive after a primary tense, the imperfect or pluperfect (representing the present, future, perfect, and future perfect indicative) after a secondary tense.

*Verbs of Hindering.*

3. After verbs of *hindering*, *quōmīnus* is often used instead of *nē*. The Sequence of Tenses is the same as that in Pure Final Clauses (see 321).

## EXAMPLE.

*nīhil Gaiō obstat quōmīnus ad tē scribat, nothing prevents Gaius from writing to you.*

OBS. 1. *Purpose* is not expressed in Latin prose by the infinitive, as it often is in English; thus, *they came to see*, i.e. for the purpose of seeing, must be rendered by *vēnērunt ut vidērent*, or some one of the following forms:—

1. *vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent* (final clause with *ut*).
2. *vēnērunt quī urbem vidērent* (final relative clause).
3. *vēnērunt ad videndum urbem* (gerund with *ad*, rare).
4. *vēnērunt ad videndam urbem* (gerundive with *ad*).
5. *vēnērunt urbem videndī causā* (gerund with *causā*).
6. *vēnērunt urbis videndae causā* (gerundive with *causā*).
7. *vēnērunt urbem visūrī* (future participle).
8. *vēnērunt urbem visum* (supine).

OBS. 2. For Final Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Laudās mē, ut ā mē invicem laudēris.*
2. *Laudābat mē, ut ā mē invicem laudārētur.*
3. *Contendit Caesar māximīs itinērībus in finēs Nerviorum, ut consilia eōrum cōgnosceret.*
4. *Caesar milītēs cōhortatus est, quō mortem fortius ōbīrent.*
5. *Equitātum, quī sustinēret hostium impētum, mīsīt.*
6. *Postulāvit nē Aeduīs bellum inferret.*
7. *Caesar milītēs cōhortātus est, ut fortiter castra dēfendērent.*
8. *Tīmeo nē hostis vēniat.*
9. *Tīmeo ut pāter vēniat.*
10. *Nōn tīmeo nē amīcus nōn vēniat.*

Translate into Latin:—

1. I praise you in order that I may be praised by you.
2. The soldiers came to seek<sup>1</sup> peace.
3. He sent legates to seek for peace.
4. We come to see you.
5. We came to see you.
6. Caesar encouraged his soldiers in order that<sup>2</sup>



they might meet death more bravely. 7. Cæsar has encouraged his soldiers in order that they may meet death more bravely. 8. Cæsar demanded that the enemy should not make war upon the Æduans. 9. I fear that my friend will not come. 10. I fear lest my friend is not coming. 11. I wish you to answer me.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The English infinitive expressing a purpose (equivalent to *that, in order that*) is to be translated by *ut* with the subjunctive.

2. See 321. Obs. 2.

What is a final clause? When do final clauses become object clauses after verbs of *doubting*? Give the rule for the sequence of tenses in final and complementary final clauses. What is an object clause?

#### 2. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

Obs. Consecutive Clauses are those that tell the *consequence*, or *result*, of an action. They are introduced by the consecutive conjunctions *ut, so that; ut... nōn, so that... not; (after negatives) quān (= quī and nē, how and not), whereby not, but that; quōminus (= ut eō minus), that thereby the less; and the relative pronoun quī (= ut is), that, so that.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

**322. RULE XLIX.**—Consecutive Clauses take their verbs in the subjunctive mode, the tense being determined by the regular rule for Sequence of Tenses.

Obs. In Consecutive Clauses there is an EXCEPTION IN THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES, the same tense being used that would be necessary if the clause were independent; i.e., the *present* is used after *past tenses* to denote the continuance of an action or state into the present, the *perfect* to imply *final result*, and the *imperfect* to denote that the action is contemporaneous with that of the principal verb: as, *Verrēs Siciliam per triennium ita vexāvit, ut ea rēstitui in antiquum stātum nūllō mōdō possit, Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.*

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *tantus timor exercitum occūpāvit, ut omnium mentēs perturbāret, so great fear seized the army that it disturbed the minds of all.*

2. **tempestās (tanta) coōrta est, quae nāvēs-reīcēret**, *so great a storm arose, that it drove the vessels back.*
3. **ādest nēmō quīn vīdeat**, *there is no one present that (or who) does not see.*
4. **nōn dūbīto quīn sāpientissīmus sīs**, *I do not doubt that you are very wise.*

### 323. Consecutive Clauses are used after — .

1. Demonstratives like **tālis, tantus, such; sic, Ita, so; tam, adeo, to such a degree, etc.**; and expressions implying characteristic and degree.

2. Verbs and expressions of *hindering and resisting, delaying and omitting*, and the like; also of *doubt and uncertainty*. These verbs are followed by **quīn** with the subjunctive, but only after a negative, or a question implying a negative.

(1) For **nē** and **quōmīnus**, with the subjunctive after verbs of *hindering*, etc., see 321. 3.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Germanī rētīnērī nōn pōtērant quīn in hostēs tēla cōnīcērent**, *the Germans could not be restrained from hurling darts against the enemy.*
2. **fācēre nōn possum quīn cōttīdīē littērās ad tē mittam**, *I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending you a letter every day.*

OBS. 1. The sequence of tenses after verbs of *hindering*, and the like, is the same as in final clauses; after verbs of *doubt and uncertainty*, the same as in interrogative clauses (346).

OBS. 2. After Negative Indefinite expressions (as **nēmō, nūllus, nīhil, quis**), **quīn** is equivalent to **quī nōn, quae nōn, etc.**; **quīn** is often used in the sense of **ut nōn**, and after negative expressions of *doubt and uncertainty*, in the sense of **ut**. After negative verbs of *hindering and refusing*, **quīn** may be used in the sense of **quōmīnus** (see below).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **ādest nēmō quīn vīdeat**, *there is no one present who does not see.*
2. **nēmō est tam fortis quīn perturbētur**, *no one is so brave as not to be disturbed.*
3. **nōn dūbītārī dēbet quīn fuērīnt poētae**, *it ought not to be doubted that there were poets.*
4. **nēque rēcūsāre quīn armīs contendat**, *and that they do not refuse to contend in arms.*

(2) **Quōmīnus** is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, refusing, and the like* (instead of **nē**). It may generally be rendered by *from* with the present participle.

## EXAMPLE.

**turba impēdīvit quōmīnus vidērem**, *the crowd hindered me from seeing.*

OBS. If verbs of *hindering, etc.*, are negated by **nōn**, or some equivalent word, **quīn** is generally used instead of **quōmīnus**.

## EXAMPLE.

**turba nōn impēdīvit quīn vidērem**, *the crowd did not hinder me from seeing.*

3. Verbs of *effecting*, the negative being **nōn** or **nē**, and the Sequence of Tenses the same as in Final Clauses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant**, *the sun causes all things to flourish.*

2. **fortūna vestra facit, ut irae meae tempērem**, *your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger.*

4. As subject of many Impersonal Verbs and phrases, such as *it happens, it follows, it remains, etc.*

## EXAMPLE.

**accidit ut esset lūna plēna**, *it happened that the moon was full.*

5. Consecutive Clauses become, after many Impersonal Verbs and expressions, after verbs of *effecting, doubting, hindering, and the like*, Substantive Clauses, and are the real subject or object of the verb, or the explanatory appositive to a noun (see 342. 3).

## EXAMPLES.

1. **fit ut quisque dēlectētur**, *it happens that every one is delighted* (subject).

2. **sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant**, *the sun causes all things to flourish* (object).

3. **oportēbat damnātum poenam sēquī ut ignī crēmārētur**, *it was necessary that the punishment of being burnt should follow (him condemned) his condemnation* (appositive).

OBS. For the Accusative with the Infinitive, or **quod** with the Indicative after Impersonal Verbs, see 342. 1 and 4.

*Relative Clauses of Result.*

**324.** Relative Clauses of Result are used to define or to characterize an *indefinite* or *general antecedent*.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **sēcūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent**, *storms (of such severity) followed, which (that they) kept our men in camp.*
2. **nēmō est quī nōn cūpiat**, *there is no one but (who does not) desires.*
3. **sunt quī pūtent**, *there are some who think.*

**Obs.** Relative clauses of result are used to characterize the antecedent, especially when it is otherwise undefined, as in the foregoing examples, and are, therefore, called *relative clauses of characteristic*. The relative clause, **quae . . . continērent** (Ex. 1), describes the severity of the storms by saying that they kept the men in the camp, i.e. by mentioning a *characteristic* of it; in Ex. 2 the relative clause follows a general negative **nēmō**, and in Ex. 3 it follows an indefinite antecedent.

1. Relative Clauses of Result occur also after —

- a. **ūnus** and **sōlus**.
- b. **dīgnus**, **indīgnus**, **idōneus**, and **aptus**.
- c. Comparatives with **quam**, to express *disproportion*.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **sōlī centum ērant quī creārī possent**, *there were only one hundred who could be appointed.*
2. **fābulae dīgnae sunt, quae lēgantur**, *the fables are worthy to be read.*
3. **māius gaudium fuit, quam quod ūnīversum hōmīnēs cāpērent**, *the joy was greater than (what) men could take in all at once.*

**Obs.** The Indicative may be used after affirmative sentences in the statement of *definite facts* with a definite antecedent; but if a general characteristic is denoted, the subjunctive must be used.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **multī sunt quī ērīpiunt**, *many are they who snatch away.*
2. **multī sunt quī ērīpīant**, *there are many to snatch away.*
3. **sunt quī (= the indefinite pronoun quīdam) quod sentiunt nōn audent dīcēre**, *some dare not say what they think.*

The following table shows the indefinite pronoun or adverb to be used in Negative Final or Consecutive Clauses. In English we may say either *that no one*, or *lest any one*, etc. ; but in Latin always *lest any one*, etc.

	Negative Purpose.	Negative Result.
<i>That . . . not</i>	<i>nē</i>	<i>ut nōn</i>
<i>That . . . no, that . . . not any</i>	<i>nē ullus</i>	<i>ut nullus</i>
<i>That no one</i>	<i>nē quis</i>	<i>ut nēmō</i>
<i>That . . . never</i>	<i>nē unquam</i>	<i>ut nunquam</i>
<i>That nothing</i>	<i>nē quid</i>	<i>ut nihil</i>

For Consecutive Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Tantus sūbitō tīmor omnem exercitum occūpāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs ānīmōsque perturbāret.
2. Quid obstat quōminus moenia stātīm oppugnēmus.
3. Nōn dūbito quī vērūm dixeris.
4. Nēmō erat quī cūperet mē ē civitate expellere.
5. Nēmō fuit omnium militum quī vulnerārētur.
6. Vir prōbus dignus est quī ab omnibus diligātur.
7. Rūfūm Caesar idōneum iudicāverat quem mittēret.
8. Tanta vīs prōbitātis est ut eam vel in hoste diligāmus.
9. Milites retinere nōn possum quī longius prōcurrant.
10. Quid tē impēdīvit quōminus venīrēs.

Translate into Latin : —

1. So great a storm arose that it drove the vessels back.
2. I hindered him from going home.
3. There was no one who did not rejoice.
4. There were some who thought Cæsar was in the city.
5. I do not doubt that you speak the truth.
6. What prevents us from seeing the games?
7. The fear of the soldiers was so great that he did not lead them from the camp.
8. He deserves to be heard.
9. He was a suitable person to send (= to be sent).

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

Mention a clause of result in English. How does it differ from one of purpose? After what conjunctions are consecutive clauses used? When is *quōmīnus* used? What is a relative clause of characteristic? Give an example of one. What is the antecedent? After what verbs and expressions are consecutive clauses used? When do consecutive clauses become substantive clauses?

## 3. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

## EXAMPLE.

Condition (Protasis). — Conclusion (Apodosis).

*If he has money, he gives it.*

OBS. The foregoing sentence contains a condition, *if he has money*, and is, therefore, called a **CONDITIONAL SENTENCE**. The sentence is **Complex**, because it consists of two clauses,—a principal, or leading clause, *he gives it*, called the conclusion, and a subordinate, or dependent clause, *if he has money*, containing the condition. The clause containing the condition is called the **PROTASIS**, and that containing the conclusion, the **APODOSIS**. The apodosis is regularly introduced by the conditional conjunction *if*,—in Latin *sī*, or a compound of *sī*: as, *nisi*, *unless* (used instead of *sī nōn* after negatives); *etiāmsī*, *etsī*, *although*; *sīn*, *but if* (see Conditional and Concessive Conjunctions, 331). An indefinite relative may introduce a conditional clause (see 328). Hence the following definition:—

## PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

**325.** In Conditional Sentences, the clause containing the condition is called the **protāsis**, and that containing the conclusion the **apodōsis**.

*Classification of Conditional Sentences.*

## SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

Present or Past { 1. *If he has money, he gives it.*  
Indicative { 2. *If he had money, he gave it.*

## FUTURE CONDITIONS.

Fut. Ind. or Pres. { 1. *If he has (or shall have) money, he will give it.*  
or Perf. Subj. { 2. *If he had (or should have) money, he would give it.*

## UNREAL PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

- |                           |   |  |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| Imperf. or<br>Plup. Subj. | { | 1. <i>If he had money (he has not), he would give it (now, present time).</i><br>2. <i>If he had had money (he had not), he would have given it (then, at some past time).</i> |
|---------------------------|---|--|

Obs. One of the most obvious classifications of conditional sentences is that of (1) *present*, (2) *past*, and (3) *future* conditions, the distinction being based on the time to which the condition refers. The pupil, however, should note that in Ex. 1 of the third set, the imperfect denotes *present* time. We may, on the other hand, classify conditional sentences as to their meaning, *i.e.* as to what is implied with regard to the fulfilment of the condition. In the first two examples, no opinion is expressed or implied as to the *truth* of the supposition, *i.e. as to his having money*; but what is stated as a fact is this: granted the supposition, *i.e. that he has money*, and the conclusion must follow, *i.e. he gives it*. In Latin any present or past tense of the indicative may be used either in the condition or conclusion. If a past tense is used in this form of conditional sentences, the pupil must take care not to confound such sentences with those in the third set. Observe the distinction between *if he had money, he gave it*, and *if he had money (he has not), he would give it (now)*. The next two examples transfer the condition to the future, and the question as to the fulfilment of the condition is, of course, at present undecided; hence the uncertainty of such conditions being fulfilled is greater than in present conditions. Such conditions may be stated in two ways: the first form, *if he shall have money*, is used to state a supposed future case in a *distinct* and *vivid* manner; the second form, *if he should have money*, is used to state a supposed future case in a less *distinct* and *vivid* manner. We may say *if he should have money*, or *if he should have had money*, the first being used for continued action, and the second (*i.e.* the perfect) for completed action, *i.e. completed* at the time denoted by the verb in the apodosis, although both forms are usually rendered in English by the present. The third set of examples, *if he had money, he would give it*, and *if he had had money, he would have given it*, transfer the conditions to past time, and hence the time for the happening of the conditions has already passed, *i.e.* they state the supposed case in such a manner that we perceive the condition is unfulfilled, *i.e. he does not have money, and does not give it*. In the first example the imperfect, a *past tense*, is used to state the unfulfilment or unreality of the condition in *present time*. In both sentences the supposed case is represented as *unreal*, or *contrary to fact*, and the conclusion states what would have been the result if the condition had been fulfilled. In Latin, the subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion,—in the first the imperfect, and in the second the pluperfect. The imperfect refers

to *present time*, and the pluperfect to *past time*. Hence the following classification of conditional sentences:—

#### SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

1. Simple Present and Past Conditions, nothing implied as to their fulfilment. Assume as a fact the supposition, and the conclusion must follow: **Any present or past tense of the indicative in both clauses.**

##### EXAMPLES.

- a. PRESENT: **si pēcūniam hābet, dat, if he has money, he gives it.**
- b. PAST: **si pēcūniam hābēbat, dābat, if he had money, he gave it.**

#### FUTURE CONDITIONS.

2. Future Conditions may be stated in two ways: (1) *More distinct and vivid, the future indicative being used in both clauses*; (2) *less distinct and vivid (i.e. less probable), the subjunctive being used in both clauses. The present subjunctive is used for continued action, the perfect subjunctive for completed action.*

##### EXAMPLES.

- a. **si pēcūniam hābēbit, dābit, if he has (i.e. shall have) money, he will give it.**
- b. **si pēcūniam hābeat, det, if he should have money, he would give it.**
- c. **si pēcūniam habuērit, dēdērit, if he should have had money, he would have given it.**

#### UNREAL PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

3. Unreal Present and Past Conditions, unfulfilled in present or past time: **Imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses.**

##### EXAMPLES.

- a. PRESENT: **si pēcūniam hābēret, dāret, if he had money (he has not), he would give it (now, present time).**
- b. PAST: **si pēcūniam hābuisset, dēdisset, if he had had money (he had not), he would have given it (then, at some past time).**

OBS. The pupil should note that the rules for Sequence of Tenses are not applicable to Conditional Sentences (see 319. Obs.). For conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse, see 355.



## MODE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**326. RULE L.—Conditional Sentences with *sī, nīstī, nī, sīn*, take —**

## SIMPLE PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

1. Any present or past tense of the indicative in both clauses when nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *sī ādest, bēne est*, if he is here, it is well.
2. *sī ādērat, bēne ērat*, if he was here, it was well.
3. *sī vālet, laetor*, if he is well, I rejoice.
4. *sī vālēbat, laetābar*, if he was well, I was rejoicing.

Obs. As stated in the rule, the mode of the conclusion (apodosis) is, as a rule, in the indicative; but it may be also in the imperative or subjunctive, according as a *command, wish, or modest assertion* (278. 2) is to be expressed.

## Example.

*sī dormis, expergiscere*, if you are sleeping, awake.

## FUTURE CONDITIONS.

2. The future indicative in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a *distinct* and *vivid* manner; the present or perfect subjunctive in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a less *distinct* and *vivid* manner.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *sī id crēdēs, errābis*, if you shall believe that you will go wrong.
2. *sī adsit, bēne sit*, if he should (hereafter) be here, it would be well.
3. *sī adfuērit, bēne sit*, if you should have been here, it would be well.
4. *sī id crēdīdēris* (rare), *errāvēris*, if you believe (= should have believed) that, you would go (= have gone) wrong.

Obs. 1. If the action of the condition is regarded as completed before that of the conclusion begins, the future perfect indicative is used instead of the future, or the perfect subjunctive instead of the present subjunctive.

## Examples.

1. *sī mīlitēs hortātus ērit, fortiter pūgnābunt*, if he shall have encouraged the soldiers, they will fight bravely.

2. *sī militēs hortātus sit, fortiter pugnent*, if he should have encouraged the soldiers, they would fight bravely.

#### UNREAL PRESENT AND PAST CONDITIONS.

3. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses, to represent the supposed case as *unreal*, or *contrary to fact*. The imperfect denotes *present time*, and the pluperfect *past*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *sī ādesset, bōne esset*, if he were (now) here (he is not), it would be well.
2. *sī adfuisset, bōne fuisset*, if he had (then) been here (he was not), it would have been well.
3. *sī vālēret, laetārer*, if he were (now) well, I would rejoice.
4. *sī vāluisset, laetātus essem*, if he had (then) been well, I would have rejoiced.

#### *Conditional Clauses after Dum, Mōdo, and Dummōdo.*

327. Conditional Clauses introduced by *dum*, *mōdo*, and *dummōdo* (negative *dum nē*, *mōdo nē*, *dummōdo nē*), if only, provided that, take the present or imperfect subjunctive.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *dummōdo inter mē atque tē mūrus interat*, provided that the city wall is between us.
2. *dum rēs māneant, verba fingant*, if only the facts remain, they may make up words.

Obs. 1. The Apodosis — except in a few involved forms of conditional sentences — regularly corresponds in mode with the Apodosis (see foregoing examples). But see 326. Obs.

Obs. 2. Frequently the present subjunctive of a *future* condition becomes imperfect by sequence of tenses. For conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse, see 355.

1. Verbs in the conclusion of unreal conditions are sometimes in the imperfect or pluperfect indicative (the indicative is regularly used after verbs denoting *duty*, *necessity*, *propriety*, *ability*, and the like); also, the historical perfect

of other verbs when accompanied by **paene** or **pröpe**, and the periphrastic forms in **-rus** and **-dus**. In these cases the conditional *idea* is sufficiently expressed in the meaning of the words, and the regular conditional form is, therefore, neglected.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **dölērī exercītus pötuit, sī persēcūtī victōrēs essent**, *the army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.*
2. **sī Rōmae privātus esset hoc tempöre, tämen is erat dölīgendus**, *if he were at this time a private citizen of Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.*
3. **pons iter paene hostībūs dēdit, nī ūnus vir fuisset**, *the bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have furnished it) had there not been one man.*

## DISGUISED OR OMITTED CONDITIONS.

**328.** A condition is sometimes introduced by an Indefinite Relative, or by a Participial, Imperative, or Interrogative Clause (instead of a regular protasis); or it may be contained in a single word or phrase, or otherwise implied in the context.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **qui sēcum lōquī pötērit, sermōnem altērīus nōn rēquīret**, *if any one (let he who) shall be able to converse with himself, he will not need the conversation of another.*
2. **ēpistulā acceptā, prōfectus essem**, *if I had received a letter, I should have set out.*
3. **nulla prōfectō ālia gens tantā mōle clādīs nōn obrūta esset**, *surely no other nation would have failed to be crushed by such a weight of disaster (i.e. if such a weight of disaster had come upon it; condition implied in tantā mōle).*

Obs. For Conditional Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see **355**.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. **Sī hoc fācit, bēne est.**
2. **Sī hoc fāciat, bēne sit.**
3. **Sī hoc fēcisset, bēne fuisset.**
4. **Sī hoc fācēret, bēne esset.**
5. **Sī tū mē laudābis, ēgo tē laudābo.**
6. **Sī quid hābet, dat.**
7. **Sī Helvētīi Allobrōgībūs sātisfāciant, cum iīs pācem fāciam.**
8. **Sī quid hābuisset, dēdisset.**

Translate into Latin : —

1. If I do this, it is well. 2. If I should do this, it would be well. 3. If I had done this, it would have been well. 4. If he says this, he is mistaken. 5. If he speaks the truth, he will be praised. 6. If he had had money, he would have given it. 7. If he had spoken the truth, he would have been praised. 8. If you were here, you would think differently. 9. If this were so, I should be glad.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is a conditional sentence? Of how many parts does it consist? What name is given to each part? How may conditional sentences be classified? Is a conditional sentence complex or compound? What tenses does the subjunctive lack? How is this lack sometimes supplied? Is the *conclusion* a principal or a dependent clause? What time does each tense denote?

#### 4. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

Obs. Comparative Clauses are those that illustrate or explain the leading statement, by furnishing a standard of measure. The leading clause often has some correlative word like *ita*, *sic*, *so*, etc. Comparative clauses are introduced by comparative conjunctions; as,

<i>quam</i> , <i>than</i> , <i>as</i> .		<i>tanquam</i> ,	
<i>ut</i> , <i>utī</i> ,		<i>quāsi</i> ,	
<i>sicut</i> or <i>sicutī</i> ,	} <i>as</i> , <i>so as</i> .	<i>ut sī</i> ,	} <i>as if</i> .
<i>quemadmodum</i> ,		<i>vēlut sī</i> ,	
<i>vēlut</i> , <i>just as</i> .		<i>ac sī</i> ,	

#### MODE IN COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

**329. RULE LI.**—Comparative Clauses introduced by *ut*, *utī*, *sicut*, *quemadmodum*, etc., followed by the demonstrative particles *ita*, *sic* (*so*), etc., regularly take the indicative or the subjunctive as in independent sentences.

#### EXAMPLE.

*ut sēmentem fēcēris, ita mētēs*, as you shall have sown, so shall you reap.

**330. RULE LII. — Comparative Clauses introduced by *āc sī, ut sī, quāmsī, quāsi, tanquam, tanquam sī, vĕlut, vĕlut sī*, are, in fact, conditional clauses, of which the conclusion is omitted or implied, and therefore take the subjunctive like other conditional sentences.**

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *mē adspīcītis, quāsi monstrum sim*, you gaze at me as (you would gaze) if I were a monster.
2. *Sēquānī absentis Ariovistī crūdēlītātem vĕlut sī cōram ādesset, horrēbant*, the Sequani kept shuddering at the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus as (they would have shuddered) if he were (had been) present.

**Obs.** Ordinary comparative clauses which merely illustrate a preceding statement take the indicative, unless the subjunctive is used as in independent sentences. But comparative clauses that express a condition, with the apodosis omitted, take the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses rather than the ordinary use of conditional sentences. The English translation would lead us to expect only the imperfect and pluperfect, as it makes the comparison an unreal one (326. 3). But the tense of the subjunctive is generally controlled by the tense in the leading clause (319), although occasionally the sequence is not observed, but the rule for conditional sentences prevails. In the first example the present subjunctive is used in the comparative clause, though the unreality of the comparison is implied, because the leading verb is in the present tense; hence,

1. The tenses follow the rules for the sequence of tenses, rather than the ordinary use of conditional sentences. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

**Obs.** For Comparative Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

---

**5. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.**

**Obs.** Concessive Clauses are those which *concede* or *admit* something opposed to the main statement, and are generally introduced in English by *though* or *although*. The concessive conjunctions take the subjunctive or indicative according to the following:—

- a. *quamquam*, *although*, generally takes the indicative.  
 b. *quamvis* (*quam* and *vis*, *as much as you please*), *quantumvis*, *ut*, *nē*, and *cum*, *although*, and the relative *quī* (= *cum*, *is*, *ēgo*, etc.), all take the subjunctive when used concessively.  
 c. *licet*, *although*, is properly a verb, and takes a substantive clause with the subjunctive.  
 d. *etsi*, *tāmeti*, *ētiāmi*, or *si*, take the indicative or subjunctive, like conditional clauses with *si*.

## MODE IN CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

**331. RULE LIII.**—Concessive Clauses are introduced by concessive conjunctions, — *although*, *granting that*, — and take the indicative to represent the concession as a *fact*; the subjunctive to represent it as *merely possible*, or as *contrary to the fact*.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *quamquam* intellēgunt, *tāmen* nunquam dīcunt, *although they understand, yet they never speak*.
2. *quamvis* fortēs sint, *although they are brave*.
3. *ut* dēsint vīrēs, *although the strength fails*.
4. *nē* sit summum mālum dōlor, *although pain may not be the greatest evil*.

1. The relative *quī* is often concessive, equivalent to *although* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and takes the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLE.

*culpātur*, *quī* innōcēns sit, *he is blamed, although he is innocent*.

Obs. For Concessive Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English:—

1. *Quamvis* mōlestus dōlor sit, mālum nōn est.
2. *Ut* dēsint vīrēs, *tāmen* est laudanda vōluntās.
3. *Līcet*<sup>1</sup> mē hortētur, nōn pūgnābo.
4. *Pātrēs* mētus cēpit, vēlut sī jam ad portās hostis esset.<sup>2</sup>
5. *Multī* omnia recta negligunt,

dummōdo pōtentiam consequantur. 6. Cum ea<sup>3</sup> ita sint, tamen, sī obsīdēs ab iīs sībī dentur, cum iīs pācem faciāt. 7. Adēro ēgo, licet ābsit āmīcus. 8. Caesar, etsī prōpe exacta jam aestās ērat, tamen eō<sup>4</sup> exercitum abdūxit. 9. Sicutī dixī faciām. 10. Pāter meus septimā hōrā rēdibit, sicut pollicitus est. 11. Sēquānī absentis Ariovistī crudelitātem vēlut sī cōram adesset, horrēbant.

Translate into Latin : —

1. Although the summer was passed, Cæsar led his army into Gaul. 2. I was present, although you were absent. 3. We will do this, although we know that we shall be punished. 4. Fear seized the citizens, as if the enemy were already in the city. 5. Although they fought bravely, yet they did not conquer. 6. I shall do as I have promised. 7. You look at me as if I were a monster.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Lit., *that he may encourage me is allowed.* 2. See 330.

3. When the demonstrative is used substantively, remember that some noun is to be supplied in English : as, *man, men, soldiers*, if masculine ; *thing or things*, if neuter. 4. *Thither.*

What are comparative clauses ? How introduced ? What are concessive conjunctions ? Name them. Which take the indicative ? Is a clause connected by a concessive conjunction adjective or adverbial ?

#### 6. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

Obs. Causal Clauses are those that state the *cause* or *reason* of the fact mentioned in the leading clause. They are introduced by the causal conjunctions *quod, quia, because, quoniam, quando, since, cum (quum), as, since*, and the relative pronoun *qui, as he*.

**332. RULE LIV.**—Causal Clauses introduced by *quod, quia, quoniam*, and *quando*, take the indicative when the reason assigned is stated as a fact, and indorsed by the speaker or writer.

#### EXAMPLE.

*laudo tē, quia tū mē laudās, I praise you because you praise me.*

Obs. The statement of the reason which is *not the real one* is introduced by **nōn quōd**, **nōn quod**, **nōn quia**, with the verb most commonly in the subjunctive.

**Example.**

**nōn quod dōleant**, *not because they grieve.*

1. Causal Clauses introduced by **cum** or the relative **quī** regularly take the subjunctive.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **cum vīta mētūs plēna sit**, *since life is full of fear.*
2. **quae cum ita sint**, *and since these things are so.*
3. **O fortunāte adūlescēns, quī tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnērīs**, *O fortunate youth, since you (lit. who) have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.*

2. Causal Clauses introduced by **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, take the subjunctive (in Indirect Discourse, **348**) to state the reason as the *assertion* or *opinion* of some one else.

**EXAMPLE.**

**Sōcrātēs accūsātus est quod corrupēret iuventūtem**,  
*Socrates was arraigned because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth.*

**QUOD WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.**

3. **Quod** is used after verbs of *joy* and *sorrow*, *praise* and *blame*, *thanks* and *complaint*, *satisfaction* and *anger*, to give the ground of the emotion, and is followed by the subjunctive or indicative, according to **332** or **332. 2**; but see **342. 4**.

**EXAMPLES.**

1. **jūvat mē quod vīgēt studia**, *I am delighted because studies are flourishing (indicative).*
2. **gaudet mīles quod vicērit hostem**, *the soldier rejoices because he has conquered the enemy (subjunctive).*

Obs. 1. For Causal Clauses as the *subject*, *object*, or *appositive*, see **342. 4**; for the Infinitive after Verbs of Emotion, see **342. (3)**.

Obs. 2. For Causal Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see **351**.

**EXERCISES.**

Translate into English:—

1. **Laudābat mē, quod filium meum culpārem.**
2. **Quō-niam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discēdite.**
3. **Caesar ab**



Aeduis frumentum flāgītābat, quod mīlitēs māgnā inōpiā urgērentur. 4. Omnēs cīvēs gaudent, quod dūcēs mīlitum cūpīditātēs coercuērunt. 5. Succenseo tībī, quia lūcrum āmicītiāe antēpōsuistī. 6. Aedui lēgātōs mīserunt questum quod Hārūdēs agrōs eōrum populārentur. 7. Quōniam rēs ita sē hābet, in urbem redeāmus.<sup>1</sup>

Translate into Latin : —

1. You have praised me because I have praised you.
2. The citizens rejoiced because Cæsar restrained the soldiers.
3. I am angry with you, because you have preferred gain to friendship.
4. He complained because he was not assisted by them.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. See 278.

What is a causal clause? Mention the causal conjunctions. When do clauses introduced by these conjunctions take the indicative? When the subjunctive? How is **cum** translated when it denotes cause? What is the construction after verbs of emotion?

#### 7. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

**Obs.** Temporal Clauses are such as denote the time of an action by mentioning something else which was (1) *antecedent to*, (2) *contemporaneous with*, or (3) *subsequent to it*. The temporal conjunctions are : —

1. **ANTECEDENT**: **postquam** (**posteāquam**), *after that, after; ut, as; ubi, when* (lit. *where*); **sīmulāc**, or **sīmul āc**, **sīmul**, *as soon as; ut primum, cum primum*, *the first moment that; cum (quum)*, *historical, when, after*.
2. **CONTEMPORANEOUS**: **dum**, **dōnec**, *while, as long as, until; quoad, quamdiū*, *as long as; cum (quum)*, *when*.
3. **SUBSEQUENT**: **antēquam**, **priusquam**, *before*.

**Obs.** The subjunctive is used in temporal clauses only in indirect discourse, or to express *cause, doubt, purpose, desire, etc.*, as will be explained hereafter.

I. *Antecedent Action.*

**333.** Temporal Clauses, introduced by *postquam*, *postea* quam, *ubi*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ubi primum*, *sic*, etc., take the indicative (commonly the aorist indicative or historical present).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *postquam id animadvertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit*, after Cæsar had observed this, he withdrew his forces to the nearest hill.
2. *ubi se paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida incendunt*, when they thought they were ready, they burnt their towns.
3. *nostri, simul in arido constitērunt, in hostes impetum fecerunt*, our men, as soon as they got footing on dry (ground), made an attack on the enemy.
4. *militēs, postquam victoriam adepti sunt, nihil reliqui victis fecere*, the soldiers, after they had gained a victory, left nothing to the vanquished.
5. *postquam vidit*, etc., *castra posuit*, he pitched his camp, after he saw it, etc.
6. *ubi certiores facti sunt*, when they were informed.

Obs. After the *antecedent* conjunctions, the *aorist* (Lat. perfect) is frequently rendered in English by the pluperfect (see Exs.).

II. *Contemporaneous Action.*

**334.** RULE LV. — *Dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *while*, *as long as*, take the indicative (any tense).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *hōc feci, dum licuit*, I did this as long as I was allowed.
2. *intermisi, quoad nōn licuit*, I stopped it as long as I was not allowed.

**335.** RULE LVI. — *Dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *until*, take the indicative in the statement of a *fact*, the subjunctive when *purpose* is expressed (i.e. if the accomplishment of the purpose is the limit of the action).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *Milo in senātū fuit eō diē, quoad senātus dimissus est*, Milo was in the senate on that day, until it adjourned.

2. *dōnec rēdiit, silentium fuit, until he returned, there was silence.*
3. *dum nāvēs eō convēnīrent, exspectāvit, he waited until the ships should come up, i.e. for the ships to come up.*
4. *exspectās dum dīcat, you are waiting till he speaks (in order that he may speak).*
5. *impētum hostium sustinuit, quoad cētēri pontem interrumpērent, he withstood the onset of the enemy, until the rest could break down the bridge (in order that they might, etc.).*
6. *dum Caesar mōrātur, ad eum lēgātī vērērunt, while Cæsar was delaying, envoys came to him.*

Obs. **Dum** in the sense of *while, in the time that*, usually takes the present indicative in narration (see Exs. 6 and 7), though the action is past (334. Ex. 1); but when it denotes *purpose*, it takes the subjunctive. In the later prose writers **dum**, *while*, is construed with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive like **cum** Historical. The principle is that of Partial Indirect Discourse (see 364).

### III. Subsequent Action.

**336. RULE LVII.**—*Antēquam* and *priusquam*, *before*, are used with any tense of the indicative, except the imperfect and pluperfect, to express the mere priority of one event to another.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *priusquam lūcet, adsunt, they are present before it is light.*
2. *filiōs convōcāvit antēquam mortuus est, he called together his sons before he died.*
3. *priusquam dē cētēris rēbus respondeo, dē āmicitiā pauca dicam, before I reply to the rest, I will say a few words about friendship.*

**337. RULE LVIII.**—*Antēquam* and *priusquam* are used with the subjunctive to express (1) the *intentional* priority of one action to another (*i.e.* when the action is *purposed* or *desired* by the subject of the leading verb), (2) or when its non-occurrence is expressed or implied.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **nōn prius dūcēs dīmittunt** (320. b.), *quam sit concessum, they did not dismiss the leaders till it was granted.*
2. **priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīvitiācum ad sē vōcārī jūbet** (320. b.), *before he took (should take) action, he ordered Divitiacus to be summoned to him.*

**nec prius sunt vīsi quam castris apprōpinquārent**, *and they were not seen until they were nearing the camp.*

1. **Antēquam** and **priusquam** often have, in historical narration, the same construction as **cum** Historical (see 339).

## EXAMPLES.

1. **priusquam vīsus est Caesar**, *quam fāma perferrētur, Cæsar appeared before any tidings were brought.*
2. **dūcentis annis ante quam urbem cāpērent**, *in Itāliam Gallī dēscendērunt*, *the Gauls came down into Italy two hundred years before they took the city.*

2. The subjunctive is used after **antēquam** and **priusquam** (generally a *present* or *future* stands in the leading clause) when the action is represented as *possible* (Potential Subjunctive, 278. 1. 4), or when the statement of a general truth is made.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **antē vidēmus fulgūratiōnem quam sōnum audiāmus**, *we see the flash of lightning before hearing (i.e. before we can hear) the sound (potential).*
2. **collem, priusquam sentiātur, commūnit**, *he fortifies the hill before it was (could be) perceived.*
3. **tempestās minātur, antēquam surgat**, *the tempest threatens before it rises (general truth).*

3. The subjunctive with an indefinite second person as the subject (*you = one, any one*) is especially common.

## EXAMPLE.

**priusquam incīpiās, consultō ōpus est**, *before you (i.e. any one) begin, there is need of deliberation.* (See 308. Obs. 2.)

Obs. **Antēquam** and **priusquam** are often written as separate words; the translation is often *before* with the present participle.

IV. *Constructions of Cum.*

## CUM TEMPORAL.

**338. RULE LIX.** — *Cum* Temporal (= *when*), introducing a clause that defines the *mere time* of an action, may be used with all the tenses of the indicative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *cum* Caesar in Galliam vēnit, altērius factiōnis principēs erant Aedui, *when* Cæsar came into Gaul, the Ædui were at the head of one party.
2. *cum* verba faciunt, majōrēs suōs extollunt, *when* they speak, they extol their ancestors.

## CUM INVERSUM.

1. When the clauses are inverted, so that the temporal clause expresses the main statement and becomes substantially the leading clause, the indicative must be used.

## EXAMPLES.

1. hōc facere noctū apparābant, *cum* matrēsfamiliae repente prōcurrerunt, *they were preparing to do this by night, when the women suddenly ran forth.*
2. vix agmen novissimum prōcesserat, *cum* Galli flūmen transire nōn dubitant, *scarcely had the rear advanced, when the Gauls without hesitation crossed the river.*

Obs. The verb in the leading clause is usually the imperfect or pluperfect indicative, often preceded by the adverbs *vix*, *jam*, etc. *Subitō* and *repente* are often used in the temporal clause.

## ITERATIVE USE OF CUM.

2. When *cum* (or *ubi*, *sīmul* &c, or the general relatives *quicumque*, *quōtiēns*) means *whenever*, *as often as*, and designates repeated or customary action, it is followed in some writers by the subjunctive, in other writers by the indicative.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *cum* quæpiam cōhōrs impētum fecerat, hostēs rēfugiebat, *whenever any cohort had made an attack, the enemy retreated.*

2. *cum in iūs dūci dēbītōrem vīdissent, undīque convōlābant*, whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they hurried together (made it a rule to hurry together) from all quarters.

#### CUM HISTORICAL.

**339. RULE LX.** — *Cum*, meaning *when*, is used in Historical Narration with the imperfect subjunctive for contemporaneous action, with the pluperfect subjunctive for antecedent action.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *cum cīvītās armīs iūs suum exsēqui conārētur*, *Orgētōrix mortuus est*, when the state was attempting to assert its authority by force of arms, *Orgētōrix* died.
2. *Caesar, cum Pompējum vīcisset, in Itāliam trājēcit*, when *Cæsar* had conquered *Pompey*, he crossed over to Italy.
3. *Caesārī cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat* (320. b.) *ab urbe prōficisci*, when this (had been) was announced to *Cæsar*, he hastened to set out from the city.

**OBS.** *Cum*, followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, is generally *historical*; i.e., it is used in historical narration, a historical tense standing in the leading clause. The subjunctive is translated like the indicative. A notion of cause often intrudes, as in Ex. 3. *Cum nuntiātum esset* points out both the *time* and *cause* of *Cæsar*'s setting out. Usually the temporal clause comes first.

#### CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CUM.

**340. RULE LXI.** — *Cum* Causal (= *since*) and *cum* Concessive (= *although*) may be used with any tense of the subjunctive.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *quæ cum ita sint*, and since these things are so.
2. *Aedui, cum sē dēfendēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Cæsārem mittunt* (320. b.), the *Æduans*, since they were not able to defend themselves, sent envoys to *Cæsar*.
3. *nihil mē adjūvat* (320. b.) *cum posset*, he gave me no assistance, although he had it in his power.

OBS. 1. **Cum**, followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, is almost always CAUSAL or CONCESSIVE, and translated by *since*, *while*, *although*; it cannot be historical.

OBS. 2. Note the translation of the above examples: the subjunctive is rendered by the indicative with *when*; the temporal clause may often be rendered by a *participle*.

OBS. 3. The temporal conjunction **cum** (also **ubi**, **ut**, **quando**, either alone or compounded with **-cumque**) may mean *whenever*, and then, like the general relatives, has the construction of the protasis in conditional sentences.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **cum rōsam vidērat, tum incipere vēr arbitrābātur**, *when-ever (if in any case) he had seen a rose, he thought spring had begun.*
2. **cum sē inter turmās insinuāvērunt, dēsilīunt**, *whenever (if in any case) they have worked their way into (among) the squadrons, they (are wont to) leap down.*
3. **cum quaequam cōhors impētum fēcērat, hostēs rēfūgiēbant**, *whenever any cohort (had made) made an attack, the enemy retreated.*

OBS. For Temporal Clauses in Indirect Discourse, see 351.

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English: —

1. Caesar, cum primum pābūli cōpia esse incipēret, ad exercitum vēnit. 2. Lēgātī Cīcērōnem, cum Rōmae essent, audiēbant. 3. Diū cum esset pūgnātum,<sup>1</sup> impēdimentis<sup>2</sup> castrisque nostrī pōtītī sunt. 4. Haec cum flēns ā Caesāre pētēret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit. 5. Postquam cōpiās venīre vidit, flūmen exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit. 6. Simul atque sīgna nostra vidērunt, portās āpēruērunt.

Supplementary Exercises: —

1. Caesar dum rēliquae nāvēs convēnīrent,<sup>3</sup> ad hōram nōnam exspectāvit. 2. Nec prius<sup>4</sup> sunt vīsī quam castris appropinquārent. 3. Milītēs cūpidē exspectābant, dum dux sē ē castris contra hostēs ēdūcēret. 4. Dōnec tē vidisset,

nōluit ābīre puer.<sup>5</sup> 5. Dōnec tē vīdērat, nōluit ābīre puer.  
6. Nōn exspectandum<sup>6</sup> sībī<sup>7</sup> stātuit dum in Santōnēs Helvētīi  
pervēnīrent. 7. Tum, cum rēs māgnās permultī āmīsērant,  
Rōmae fīdes cēcīdit. 8. Caesar priusquam eōdem est prō-  
fectus, lūna vīsa est. 9. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit  
obsidēs, arma, servōs<sup>8</sup> pōpōscit.<sup>9</sup>

Translate into Latin : —

1. When I was at Athens, I heard Zeno. 2. When ambas-  
sadors came to Cæsar, he demanded corn. 3. When they  
had advanced three days, the enemy appeared. 4. Cæsar  
determined not to wait until the enemy should arrive.  
5. After Cæsar perceived that, he led his forces to the  
nearest hill. 6. The boy was unwilling to depart until he  
had seen you (*i.e.* he waited for the purpose of seeing you).  
7. While the senate was preparing war against Cæsar, he  
made himself dictator. 8. Before Cæsar attempted any-  
thing, he calls Divitiacus to himself. 9. I waited until he  
came.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. *When the battle had been going on for a long time.*
2. Why ablative ?
3. Account for the mode ; the subjunctive is common with **expecto**.
4. See 337. 2. Obs.
5. The subjunctive in this sentence shows that the boy waited for the *purpose* of seeing you, *i.e.* he intended to see you ; the next sentence implies only that he did see you, without implying an intention.
6. Supply **esse**.
7. Why dative ?
8. Note that when several nouns follow each other in the same construction, the Latin differs from the English either in omitting the conjunction altogether or in repeating it after each word, *e.g.* either **obsidēs, arma, servōs**, or **obsidēs et arma et servōs** ; not **obsidēs, arma, et servōs**, as in English.
9. See 178. 2.



Mention the three chief uses of **cum**. When does **cum** temporal take the subjunctive? Give the meanings and uses of **ñum**. Give the meanings of **cum**. What mode is used with most of the particles of time? When do **antēquam** and **priusquam** take the subjunctive? When the temporal clause refers to future time, what mode is used after **cum**? after **antēquam**? When the temporal clause introduced by **cum** contains the main statement, what mode is used? Which are correct: **cum est**, **cum fuit**, **cum ērat**, **cum fuērit**, **cum mōnēbat**?

---

### 8. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

Obs. A clause may perform many of the offices of a noun, and is, therefore, called a *noun*, or *substantive*, *clause*.

THAT GLASS IS MALLEABLE *was known to the ancients*. The dependent clause, *that glass is malleable*, is equivalent to a noun, and is the *subject* of *was*.

*We perceive* THAT FIRE IS HOT. The dependent clause in this sentence is the *object* of the verb *perceive*.

*A peculiarity of the English is*, THAT IT HAS SO MANY BORROWED WORDS. The clause introduced by *that* is equivalent to a noun standing in the predicate after *is*; the clause is, therefore, an attributive complement explanatory of *peculiarity*.

*It is known* THAT CÆSAR CONQUERED GAUL. *It* has no meaning until explained by the clause introduced by *that*, which is equivalent to a noun, and is, therefore, in apposition with *it*, *i.e.* *explanatory* of *it*.

*I know nothing about* WHAT YOU ARE ASKING. The clause *what you are asking* is the *object* of *about*. In English, *what* is at once interrogative (as in the sentence above) and introduces substantive clauses; or it is a compound relative (corresponding to **qui**, **quae**, **quod**), and introduces adjective clauses.

Hence —

**341.** A Substantive Clause is one which, like a noun, is the subject or object or complement of a verb, or is used as an explanatory modifier of the subject or object.

**342.** Substantive Clauses may be classified as follows :—

## INFINITIVE CLAUSES.

1. The accusative with the infinitive is used as the subject of *esse* or of impersonal verbs, and as the object of the following :—

(1) Verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and (for Indirect Discourse, see 348) equivalent expressions.

(2) Verbs of *wishing and willing, permitting, commanding, and forbidding* (most of *commanding* and *forbidding*, except *jūbeo* and *vēto*, are followed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive).

(3) Verbs of *emotion* (joy, sorrow, etc.), and also verbs of *hoping, promising, threatening, swearing* (these verbs are sometimes followed by the complementary infinitive, see 256).

## EXAMPLES.

1. *dīcit montem ab hostībus tenēri*, he says that the mountain is held by the enemy.
2. *dulce prō patriā mori est*, to die for one's country is sweet.
3. *Caesar prōficisci mātūrat*, Cæsar hastens to depart.
4. *dīcitur montem tēnēri*, it is said that the mountain is held.

Obs. 1. In the foregoing examples the pupil will notice that the infinitive is used as subject (Ex. 2) or as object (Ex. 3), or that the infinitive with a subject accusative is the subject or object of the verb. Substantive clauses have their verbs in the infinitive or subjunctive mode, with a subject of infinitive in the accusative case.

Obs. 2. All substantive clauses are regarded as of the neuter gender. The tense of the verb in the infinitive clause is determined by the rule in 319.

## FINAL CLAUSES.

2. Final Clauses are object clauses after verbs of *fearing*, and after verbs of *asking, allowing*, etc. See 321. 2.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *nītītur ut vincat*, he strives to conquer (lit. that he may conquer).
2. *timeo ut lābōrēs sustineās*, I fear (that) you will not endure the labors.
3. *nōn vēreor, nē nōn vēniās*, I do not fear (that) you will not come.
4. *vēreor nē eat*, I fear (that) he will go.

Obs. 1. The clause of *purpose* may be translated by *that* with *may, might, shall, or should*, or by the infinitive.

Obs. 2. After negative clauses, **nē nōn** is regularly used instead of **ut** (see Ex. 3).

#### CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

3. Consecutive Clauses are used as the subject, object, or explanatory appositive with many impersonal verbs (*it happens, it remains, it follows, it is lawful, etc.*); with **ut** after **fācēre** and **efficiēre**; with **quān** (after some verbs of *hindering* and the like), and especially after verbs of *doubting*, when a negative precedes; and with **tantum ābest** (**ut**), *so far it is from*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Ita fit ut nēmō esse possit beātus** (as subject), *so it comes to pass that no man can be happy.*
2. **quae rēs, commeātus ut portārī possent, efficiēbat** (as object), *this movement rendered it possible (brought it about) that supplies could be brought.*
3. **accidit ut esset plēna lūna** (as subject), *it chanced to be full moon.*
4. **fācēre nōn pōtui quān sententiā dīctārem**, *I could not but declare my opinion.*
5. **hābet hoc virtus ut dēlectet** (as appositive), *virtue has this (advantage), that it delights.*

Obs. The clause of *result* is generally translated by *that*, with or without *can* or *could*, sometimes by the infinitive or the participial noun in *-ing*, especially after verbs of *hindering*.

#### INDICATIVE WITH QUOD.

4. Indicative Clauses with **quod** introduce a *statement of fact, specification, or object of feeling*.

Obs. The **quod**-clause may be the subject of impersonal verbs, the object of verbs of *emotion* (see 342. 3), or an explanatory appositive. It is generally translated by *that*, or *the-fact-that*; sometimes by *whereas*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **quod Rēgulus rēdiit mirābile vidētur**, *the fact that Regulus returned seems strange.*
2. **quod dē dōmō scribīs**, *as to what you write of the house (specification).*
3. **gaudēmus quod civitātēs sua jūra hābent**, *we are glad that the states have their just rights (object of feeling).*
4. **māgnū est bēnēficiū nātūrae quod nēcesse est mōrī**, *it is a great boon of nature that we must die (appositive).*

**Obs.** The pupil should note that, when the conjunction *that* introduces a clause denoting *purpose* or *result*, it takes the subjunctive, according to 321, or 322; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive (see 342. 1 and 254). *That* is to be rendered by **quod** when it introduces a substantive clause that contains the *ground* or *reason*, or that is the object of some verb of *emotion* or *feeling* (accusative and infinitive may also be used).

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

5. Indirect Questions are clauses (introduced by some interrogative word), which are the subject or object of a verb, or which depend on verbs expressing *doubt* or *uncertainty*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **scio quid quaerās**, *I know what you are asking* (object).
2. **quid diēs fērat incertum est**, *what a day will bring forth is uncertain* (subject).
3. **dūbīto an pōnam**, *I doubt whether I should not place, i.e. I am inclined to think, etc.*

(1) After verbs of *trial*, an indirect question is introduced by **sī** in the sense of *whether*.

#### EXAMPLE.

**circumfunduntur hostēs sī quem aditum rēpērire possint**,  
*the enemy pour round (to see) if they can find an entrance.*

**Obs. 1.** **Dūbīto** may also be followed by **quīn** with the subjunctive if the sentence is negative; but, if there is no negative, it is followed by indirect question; and, when it means to *hesitate*, by the infinitive.

**Obs. 2.** Note the difference in meaning between Ex. 1 and **scio quod quaeris**, *I know what (= the thing which) you ask*, i.e. *the answer to the question you ask*. In Ex. 1, **quid** is an interrogative pronoun; in the other example, **quod** is a relative.

**Syn.** **Plācet**, *it pleases*, i.e. *it is one's will or determination*; **libet** (**lūbet**), *it pleases*, i.e. *it agrees with one's inclination*.

#### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. **Mīlītēs pontem fācēre jussī sunt**.
2. **Ego bōnus esse dīcor**.
3. **Caesar mīlītēs hortātus est, ut ācrīter dīmīcārent**.
4. **Caesar jussit mīlītēs castra mūnīre**.
5. **Caesar vētuit mīlītēs pontem rescindēre**.
6. **Sāpiēns semper beātus sit**<sup>1</sup>

nēcesse est. 7. Sōl efficit ut omnia flōreant. 8. Omnēs cīvēs mētuēbant, nē urbs ab hostībus expūgnārētur. 9. Plācuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mittēret. 10. Nunquam pūtavi fōre<sup>2</sup> ut supplēx ad tē vēnīrem. 11. Sentīmus nīvem esse albam. 12. Gaudeo quod vālēs.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. The particle **ut** is often omitted, especially after verbs of *wishing* (**vōlo, nōlo, mālo**, and **fācio**), *necessity*, etc.; also after **dīc** and **fac**.

2. *That it would happen.* When there is no supine, **fōre ut** (or **fūtūrum esse ut**) is used for the future infinitive; the clause with **ut** is the subject of **fōre**.

What is a clause? How are clauses classified? What is an independent clause? A dependent clause? How are dependent clauses classified? Define each. Express in Latin *to die for one's country is noble*. With what does *noble* agree? What gender must it be? What is the gender of all substantive clauses?

#### 9. INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES.

**OBS.** Questions are of two kinds: (1) **FACT-QUESTIONS**, or those that ask about the existence of a fact, and expect the answer *yes* or *no*: as, **scribitne pāter**, *is my father writing?* **ANS.** *yes* or *no*. Such questions (unless rhetorical) are generally asked by the help of one of the interrogative particles, **-ne, nōne, num.** (2) **WORD-QUESTIONS**, or those that ask about something connected with a fact, as *who, what, where, when, how, why*, etc., and they cannot be answered by *yes* or *no*: as, **quis hās littērās scripsit**, *who wrote this letter?* **ANS.** *Cicero.* **cūr nōn discēdis**, *why do you not depart?*

#### *Rhetorical Questions.*

**OBS.** Questions may be *real* or they may be *rhetorical*. A real question expects an answer; as, *Who is calling?* **ANS.** *John.* A rhetorical question does not expect an answer, but, under the guise of a question, contains an assertion, put for oratorical effect in the form of a question; as, *What is baser than a lie?* This is a rhetorical question, expecting no answer, but conveying the idea that *nothing is baser than to lie*. Sometimes no interrogative word is used in asking a question. In such cases an affirmative question generally expects a negative answer; a negative question, an affirmative answer. The omission of the interrogative word is common in rhetorical questions (especially with negatives) expressing *surprise, irony, impatience*, etc.; **pātēre tua consilia nōn sentis**, *do you not see (you must surely) that your designs are laid bare?*

Direct simple questions generally take the indicative; but direct simple questions that ask *what is to be done*, when it is intended to imply that some such an answer as *nothing, nowhere*, etc., is expected, take the subjunctive (278. 1. 3); as,

1. **quid āgam**, *what am I to do?*
2. **quis hōc dūbitet**, *who could doubt this?* (rhetorical question)  
= **nēmō hōc dūbitet**, *no one could doubt it.*

Hence the rule:—

#### DIRECT QUESTIONS.

**343.** Direct Simple Questions are generally introduced by interrogative words, and, as a rule, take their verbs in the indicative.

**344.** Direct Simple Questions may take the subjunctive when they express *doubt, deliberation, or impossibility*, or imply a negative *opinion* on the part of the speaker or writer (278. 1. 3).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Rōmamne vēniēs**, *will you come to Rome?* (ANS. *yes* or *no*.)
2. **quisnam in hortō ambūlat**, *who is walking in the garden?*  
(ANS. *Cæsar*.)
3. **quis paupertātem nōn extimescit**, *who does not dread poverty?*
4. **quid hōc hōmīne faciās**, *what can one (you) do with this man?*  
(ANS. *nothing*.)
5. **quis hoc crēdat**, *who would believe this?* (ANS. *no one*.)

#### Double Questions.

Obs. Fact-Questions may consist of two parts, *i.e.* they may be disjunctive (or double); as, *is it this or is it that?* The first member of a double question is introduced by the particles **utrum** or **-ne**, and the second by **an** (*anne* or *-ne*); as, **utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est**, *is that your fault or ours?* Occasionally the interrogative particle is omitted with the first member; as, **silōquar an sileam**, *must I speak or be silent?* The following exhibits the various forms of double questions:—

<b>quaero utrum vērum an falsum sit,</b>	} <i>I ask whether it is true or false.</i>
<b>quaero vērum-ne an falsum sit,</b>	
<b>quaero vērum an falsum sit,</b>	
<b>quaero vērum falsum-ne sit,</b>	

The principle may be stated in the following rule:—

**345.** Direct Double Questions take the same mode as simple questions, and are introduced by *utrum* or *-ne*, *whether*, in the first member, followed by *an*, *anne*, or ; *annōn*, *neque*, or *not*, in the second.

**EXAMPLE.**

*utrum puērī lēgant an scribunt*, are the boys reading or writing?

**Indirect Questions.**

**Obs.** Interrogative sentences are further divided into *direct* and *indirect* (or *independent* and *dependent*). *Who calls me?* is a direct question, i.e. it is a simple independent interrogative sentence. Such sentences, as a rule, take the indicative or the deliberative subjunctive (see 278. 1. 3). *He asks who is calling him* is an indirect question; i.e. the simple interrogative sentence, *who is calling him*, is made to depend on the verb *asks*, and becomes a dependent clause; the verb *is calling* is, in Latin, in the subjunctive mode. Hence the following rule:—

**INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**

**346. RULE LXII.**—Indirect Questions take their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the regular rule for sequence of tenses (see 319).

**EXAMPLES.**

1. *quis mē vōcat*, who is calling me? (Direct.)
2. *rōgāt quis sē vōcet*, he asks who is calling him. (Indirect.)

**Primary Tenses —**

*rōgat*, he asks,  
*rōgābit*, he will ask,  
*rōgāvit*, he has asked,  
*rōgāverit*, he will have asked,

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

*quis sē vōcet*, who is calling him.  
*quis sē vōcāverit*, who has called, or who called him. *quis sē vōcātūrus sit*, who is going to call him.

**Secondary Tenses —**

*rōgābat*, he was asking,  
*rōgāvit* (aorist), he asked,  
*rōgāverat*, he had asked,

*quis sē vōcāret*, who was calling him. *quis sē vōcāvisset*, who had called him. *quis sē vōcātūrus esset*, who was going to call him?

**Obs. 1.** Sometimes the interrogative word is omitted in the first clause; in direct questions *annōn* is generally used; in indirect, *neque*; *num* in indirect questions means *whether*.

Obs. 2. The particle **an** is used after such phrases as **nēscio**, **haud scio**, **dūbito an**, in the sense *I do not know but, I doubt but, i.e. I am inclined to think*; as, **haud scio an ita sit**, *I do not know but it is so*. The forms of the interrogative **quis**, and **quī**, combine with **nēscio**, and are equivalent to an indefinite pronoun; as, **nēscio quis**, *somebody or other*; the verb is in the indicative.

#### DEPENDENT DOUBLE QUESTION.

##### EXAMPLES.

1. **puēri utrum lēgant an scrībant nescio**, *I don't know whether the boys are reading or writing.*
2. **utrum lēgat necne nescio**, *I don't know whether he is reading or not.*

Obs. 1. Note that the subjunctive in indirect questions is translated by the indicative, because it stands for the indicative. Note, also, that the indirect question is always a dependent clause introduced by some interrogative word which connects it with the preceding clause.

Obs. 2. If the direct question had its verb in the subjunctive, no change is made on becoming indirect (except the tense of the leading verb must be in a secondary tense if it is required by the sequence of tenses); but the difference must be shown by the English rendering: thus, (1) **quid agimus**, *what are we doing?* and (2) **quid agamus**, *what are we to do?* become alike in the indirect form, — **nōn sātis constābat quid agerent**, *they did not rightly know (1) what they were doing, or (2) what they were to do.*

#### Questions and Answers.

Obs. There is no one word in Latin meaning simply *yes* and *no*. In answering a question the verb is generally repeated; as, **estne tibi penna**, *have you a pen?* the answer would be **est mihi penna**, *I have a pen*; or simply **est**. Sometimes adverbs are used in answer to a direct question; as, **etiam**, **ita**, **sic**, **vērūm**, **vērō**, **rectē**, **certē**, **sānē**, etc., — **haecine tua dōmus est?** **ita**, *is this your house?* **yes**; **dāsne hoc?** **do sānē**, *do you admit this?* **yes** *I do indeed*. *No* may be expressed by repeating the verb with a negative, or by **nōn**, **nōn vērō**, **nōn ita**, **minimē**, *by no means*, **immo** or **imo**, *yes indeed, nay rather*, etc.; as, **nōn irāta es?** **nōn sum irāta**, *you are not angry?* *I am not*. In answer to a double question, one member of the alternative must be repeated; as, **tūne an frāter erat**, *was it you or your brother?* **ego (eram)**, *it was I*. Hence the following rule:—

**347.** In answering a question in Latin, either the verb, with or without a negative, is repeated for the



words YES or NO; or an intensive or negative particle is used, with or without the repetition of the verb.

### EXERCISES.

Translate into English : —

1. Fuistīne hērī in schōlā? 2. Dīc fuērisne hērī in schōlā? 3. Quaerit num Caesar in urbe sit. 4. Num ita audēs dicēre? 5. Utrum ūnus an plūrēs sunt mundī? 6. Quaeritur utrum ūnus an plūrēs sint mundī? 7. Utrum Cātō an Caesar tībī praestantior et clārior vir esse vīdētur? 8. Caesar jussit eōs spēcūlārī num hostēs ex castrīs exīrent. 9. Quaeritur diī utrum sint, necne. 10. Isne est quem quaero, annōn? 11. Num dūbium est cāsūne an consīliō factus sit mundus? 12. Cūjus hic liber est? tuusne? Nōn, sed frātris. 13. Utrum vestra an nostra culpa est? 14. Causa īgitur nōn bōna est? immo optīma. 15. Quisnam in hortō ambūlat? 16. Nescio quis in hortō ambūlat.

SYN. **Orbis terrārum**, rather than **terra**, when there is decided reference to other lands.

Translate into Latin : —

1. Is Cæsar in the city? 2. He inquires whether Cæsar is in the city. 3. Who is walking in the garden? 4. He asks who is walking in the garden. 5. Is it true or false? 6. He asks whether it is true or false. 7. Did Cæsar come into the senate yesterday? No. 8. Is this your book or mine? It is mine. 9. Are you reading or writing? 10. He asks whether you are reading or writing.

### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

How may simple questions be classified? (*Ans.* Fact-questions and word-questions.) How many kinds of word-questions? What is a double question? How is a direct simple question asked? Mention the most common interrogative words. What is an indirect question? How is it asked? What is the mode of the verb in indirect questions? What is a rhetorical question? How is a question in Latin answered? How is a double question answered?

## LESSON XCVIII.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Obs. 1. Direct Discourse (*ōrātiō recta*) gives the exact words of the speaker or writer; as, *Ariovistus said*, "I HAVE CROSSED THE RHINE" = Lat. *Ariovistus dixit, "Rhēnum trānsi"*. The words *I have crossed the Rhine* are in direct discourse; the original speaker is represented by the narrator as speaking in the *first person* (because the speaker refers to himself), and the words are given precisely as they were uttered. Indirect Discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) uses the same words, except that some are changed to conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted. These changes affect only the pronouns, pronominal adverbs, modes, and tenses (but not always all of these); as, *Ariovistus said THAT HE HAD CROSSED THE RHINE* = Lat. *Ariovistus dixit sē Rhēnum trānsisse*. The original words, *I have crossed the Rhine*, have been changed to *that he had crossed the Rhine*, to indicate the change of relation in the speaker; the first person in English is changed to the third, and the perfect tense to pluperfect, and, in Latin, the indicative to the accusative with the infinitive, which together form an infinitive substantive clause, the object of the leading verb *dixit*.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. a. *rēx urbem oppūgnat*, the king assaults the city.  
     a. *dux dicit, "rēx urbem oppūgnat,"* the leader says, "The king is assaulting the city."  
     b. *dux dicit rēgem urbem oppūgnāre*, the leader says that the king is assaulting the city.
2. a. *scribit*, he writes.  
     b. *dicit sē scribere*, he says that he is (now) writing.
3. a. *nōs pārātī sūmus*, we are ready.  
     b. *sē pārātōs esse arbiṭrātī sunt*, they thought that they were ready.
4. a. *sunt nōnnūllī quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimū vālet*, there are some whose influence prevails most with the common people.  
     b. *Liscus dicit esse nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimū vāleat*, Liscus says that there are some whose influence prevails most with the common people.

Obs. 2. In the foregoing examples marked *a*, note that each gives the exact words of the original speaker or writer, and is, therefore, in Direct Discourse; note, also, that each sentence marked *a* is a declarative sentence, and that the principal verb is in the indicative.

Note further, that, in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse, marked *b*, the nominative has been changed to the accusative, the indicative has been changed to the infinitive, and the personal pronoun *nōs* (Ex. 3) has been changed to the reflexive *sē*. In Ex. 2. *a*. the subject is not expressed, but in Indirect Discourse the subject must (as a rule) be expressed. Note finally, that *vālet* in the dependent clause, in Ex. 4, has been changed to the subjunctive *vāleat*, in order to show the difference of relation, *i.e.* to relieve the quoter of undue responsibility. If we again examine the sentences in the foregoing examples, after their change to Indirect Discourse, we shall notice that they differ from those in Direct Discourse partly in the use of different modes and tenses, and partly in the use of different pronouns. Hence the following rules:—

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**348. RULE LXIII.** — In passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, principal clauses, if declarative, are changed to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and subordinate clauses to the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *a.* Caesar in Galliam vēnit.  
*b.* Caesārem fērunť in Galliam vēnīsse.
2. *a.* mōns tēnētur.  
*b.* nuntius dīcīt montem tēnēri.
3. *a.* scientia ūtīlis est.  
*b.* ūtīlem arbītror esse scientiam.
4. *a.* obsīdēs quōs ab Aeduīs hābeo, inquit Ariovistus, non reddā.  
*b.* Ariovistus rēspōndit sē obsīdēs quōs ab Aeduīs hābēret nōn reddītūrum esse.

Supplementary Examples : —

## DIRECT DISCOURSE.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Divicō ita cum Caesāre ēgit : —

Sī pācem pōpulus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis fāciet, in eam partem Ibunt atque ibi ērunt Helvētīi ūbi tū eōs constitūeris atque esse vōlueris; sīn bellō persēquī persēvērābis, rēmīniscere et vētēris Incommōdī pōpuli Rōmāni et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

Sī pācem pōpulus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis fācēret, in eam partem Itūrōs atque ibi fūtūrōs Helvētiōs, ūbi eōs Caesar constitūisset atque esse vōlūisset; sīn bellō persēquī persēvērāret, rēmīniscērētur et vētēris incommōdī pōpuli Rōmāni et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum.

## Translation.

*Divico treated with Cæsar as follows :—*

*If the Roman people shall make peace with the Helvetians, the Helvetians will go to that place and will remain there where you shall have determined and wished them to be ; but if you shall persist in following them with war, remember the ancient disaster of the Roman people and the ancestral valor of the Helvetians.*

*If the Roman people should make peace with the Helvetians, the Helvetians would go to that place and remain there where Cæsar should have determined and wished them to be ; but if he should persist in following them with war, let him remember the ancient disaster of the Roman people and the ancestral valor of the Helvetians.*

OBS. 1. Note that, in passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, the first and second persons of pronouns and of verbs are changed, when the sense so requires, to the third person. *In all cases, the changes of pronouns depend on sense (354).*

OBS. 2. The report in Indirect Discourse may be made either from the *standpoint of the speaker*, i.e. as if the speaker reported was still speaking (vivid form), or from the *standpoint of the reporter*, the report being made as if the speech was a matter of the past.

## INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**349.** The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse represent the time of the action as *present*, *past*, or *future*, relatively to that of the principal verb.

## EXAMPLES.

- 1. dīcit montem ab hostibus tēnērī**, *he says that the mountain is held by the enemy.*
- 2. dīxit montem ab hostibus tēnērī**, *he said that the mountain was held by the enemy.*

OBS. Note that, in the foregoing examples, the leading verbs **dīcit** and **dīxit** have as an object a clause whose *verb* is in the infinitive, and whose *subject* is in the accusative. Note, further, that the present infinitive is translated by the *present tense* after **dīcit**, and by a *past tense* after **dīxit**; i.e. the infinitives denote the same *time* as the verbs on which they depend. Hence we observe that these infinitives represent the time of the action not as present absolutely, but as present relatively to the time denoted by the principal verb; i.e. the present infinitive expresses *contemporaneous*

action, the perfect infinitive *prior action*, and the future infinitive *future, or subsequent, action*.

### EXAMPLES.

#### 1. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

**dīcit sē scribēre**, he says that he is (now) writing.

**dīcēbat sē scribēre**, he was saying that he was (then) writing.

**dīcet sē scribēre**, he will say that he is (then or now) writing.

#### 2. PRIOR ACTION.

**dīcit sē scripsisse**, he says that he wrote, has or had written, or was writing.

**dīcēbat sē scripsisse**, he was saying that he wrote, had written, or was (previously) writing.

**dīcet sē scripsisse**, he will say that he has (had now or then) written, or wrote.

#### 3. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

**dīcit sē scriptūrum esse**, he says that he will write.

**dīcēbat sē scriptūrum esse**, he was saying that he would write, or was going to write.

**dīcet sē scriptūrum esse**, he will say that he is going to write (now or then).

**dīcit fōre (fūtūrum esse) ut scribat**, he says that (it will happen) he will write (then or now).

**dīcēbat fōre ut scribēret**, he was saying that (it would happen) he would write (then or now).

**OBS. 1.** The perfect infinitive represents in Indirect Discourse the *perfect*, the *aoist*, the *pluperfect*, and the *imperfect indicative*. When the leading verb is in the future, the infinitive expresses a double relation, — (1) to the time of asserting, and (2) to the time of the action asserted; as, **dīcet sē scribēre**, he will say (1) that he is now writing, (2) that he is THEN writing, i.e. at the time of saying. The future infinitive can be formed only from verbs that have a perfect passive participle. The want of it is supplied by the use of the future infinitive of **sum** (**fōre** or **fūtūrum esse**) with a consecutive clause. This periphrase sometimes occurs when the regular forms might be used.

**OBS. 2.** In Indirect Discourse, note that the present infinitive stands for the present indicative (or sometimes for the imperfect, especially after **mēmīni**); and that the perfect infinitive stands for any *past tense* of the indicative.

**OBS. 3.** With verbs of *hoping, promising, threatening*, and the like, the Latin idiom differs from the English in requiring the subject to be (usually) expressed; as, **spērat sē scriptūrum esse**, he hopes to write (lit. he hopes that he will write).

Obs. 4. The infinitive is said to stand, in Indirect Discourse, and its tenses to correspond to those of the finite modes, when it depends on a verb implying *thought*, or the *expression of thought*; thus, **cūpit vēīre**, *he desires to come*, **vēīre** is not in Indirect Discourse, but is really a noun, the object of **cūpit**. But in **dīcit vēīre**, *he says he is coming*, **vēīre** represents **vēnio** (indicative) of Direct Discourse.

Obs. 5. The subject of the infinitive in Indirect Discourse must (as a rule) be expressed, even though it is wanting in Direct Discourse: as, **clēmēns sum**; **dīcit sē esse clēmēntem**.

### TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**350.** Tenses in Indirect Discourse generally conform to the ordinary rules for the use of tenses in the Subjunctive and Infinitive, as determined by the tense of the *introductory verb*; but an Aorist (*i.e.* a Perfect) Infinitive takes the sequence of past tenses, even if the introductory verb is primary (see 348. 2).

Obs. 1. Each tense in Direct Discourse is ordinarily represented by the same tense in Indirect Discourse; but, when the indicatives of those tenses that have no subjunctive (*viz.*, *future* and *future perfect*) are to be changed to the subjunctive, or when the indicatives of those tenses that have no infinitive (*viz.*, *imperfect* and *pluperfect*) are to be changed to the infinitive, on passing to Indirect Discourse, they take the tense nearest them in time. Thus the —

Future Indicative becomes Present or Imperfect Subjunctive, according to sequence of tenses.

Future Perfect Indicative becomes Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, according to sequence of tenses.

Imperfect Indicative = Perfect Infinitive.

Pluperfect Indicative = Perfect Infinitive.

Future Indicative becomes Future Infinitive.

Future Perfect Indicative = Future Perfect Infinitive.

Obs. 2. The Historical Present is often treated in Indirect Discourse as a past tense, and is followed by a past tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clauses; as, **Helvētī lēgātōs ad Cēsārem mittunt, quī dīcērent**, *the Helvetians sent ambassadors to Cæsar (who should say, i.e.) to say*.

Obs. 3. For the sake of *vividness*, a past tense may be followed by the present subjunctive; as, **exītus fuit ōrātiōnis, neque vācāre agrōs, quī dārī possint**, *the close of the oration was, that there were (are) not lands unoccupied which could (can) be given*.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES AFTER OTHER MODES.

1. The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the sequences of primary tenses ; the Imperfect, Aorist, and Pluperfect Subjunctive have the sequences of the secondary, or historical, tenses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *praestā quod rēcōpistī*, perform what you have undertaken.
2. *quid mē prōhiberet Epīcūrēum esse, sī prōbārem quac ille dīcēret?* what could prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says).

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES AFTER AN INFINITIVE OR A PARTICIPLE.

2. When a subordinate clause depends on any part of an infinite verb (Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, Supine), the tense of that clause is determined by that of the verb on which the Infinite verb depends (as these have no time of their own, but a Perfect Infinitive or Perfect Participle has the sequence of past tenses) ; as,

*cūpio scīre quid āgās*, I desire to know what you are doing.

*cūpiēbam scīre quid āgērēs*, I was desirous to know what you were doing.

**351.** The following table presents a synopsis of the chief Uses of the Modes in Direct and Indirect Discourse : —

Clauses.	Clauses.	Direct Discourse.	Indirect Discourse.
Declarative {	Principal	Indicative <sup>1</sup>	Acc. with Inf.
	Subordinate	Ind. or Subj.	Subjunctive.
Interrogative {	Principal	Indicative <sup>2</sup>	Subj. or Inf. <sup>2</sup>
	Subordinate	Ind. or Subj.	Subjunctive.
Imperative {	Principal	Imperative <sup>3</sup>	Subjunctive.
	Subordinate		Subjunctive.
Final	Subordinate	Subjunctive	Subjunctive.
Consecutive		Subjunctive	
Conditional		Ind. or Subj.	
Concessive		Ind. or Subj.	
Comparative		Ind. or Subj.	
Temporal		Ind. or Subj.	
Causal		Ind. or Subj.	Subj. or Ind.
Relative		Ind. or Subj.	

**Obs. 1.** When the principal clause, or *apodosis*, is in the subjunctive, as in Unreal Conditions, then special rules are required (see 355. 5).

**Obs. 2.** Interrogative sentences may sometimes have their verbs in the subjunctive, as in Rhetorical Questions (344): the subjunctive is either retained or changed to infinitive. The deliberative subjunctive (278) is always retained. But Rhetorical Questions that are in the indicative in Direct Discourse are changed to the accusative with the infinitive in Indirect Discourse if the subject is of the *first* or *third person*, into the subjunctive if the subject is of the *second person* (see 356).

**Obs. 3.** Imperative clauses may have their verbs in the subjunctive (278); the subjunctive is then retained in Indirect Discourse.

**352.** The Construction of Indirect Discourse is used after verbs of *saying* and *thinking* (declarative), *asking* (interrogative), *commanding* (imperative).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvīsse**, *Cæsar learned that the Helvetians had broken up their camp.*
2. **Caesar certior factus est exercitum vēnīsse**, *Cæsar was informed that the army had come.*

#### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

**353.** Reflexive Pronouns, **suī** and **suus**, refer primarily to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

1. In some Subordinate Clauses the Reflexive must be used to refer either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate clause; but this happens only when reference is made to the thought or will of the subject in the leading clause, as in Infinitive Clauses, Final Clauses, or in Indirect Discourse (Indirect Questions).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **ānīmus sentit sē vī suā mōvērī**, *the mind perceives that it is moved by its own power.*
2. **quaesivērunt num sē esset etiā mōrī prōhībītūrus**, *they asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.*



## PRONOUNS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**354.** In passing from Direct Discourse to Indirect, pronouns of the first or second person are regularly changed, if the sense requires, to pronouns of the third person, as follows:—

1. **PERSONAL:** *ēgo* (*nōs*) is changed to forms of the reflexive *sē* (sometimes *ipse*); *tu* is changed to forms of *ille* or *is*.

2. **POSSESSIVE:** *meus* (*noster*) and *tuus* (*vester*) are changed to forms of *suus* (sometimes genitive of *ipse* or of *is*).

3. **DEMONSTRATIVE:** *hic* }  
                                  *iste* } are changed to forms of *ille* or *is*;  
*nunc* is changed to *tum* and *tunc*.

4. **INTENSIVE:** *ipse* may be retained, and then refers to the principal subject, like an emphatic reflexive.

Obs. Hence we have two reflexives in some clauses, referring to (1) leading subject, (2) subject of the infinitive.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **DIRECT:** *annūlum ēgo meā mǎnū cōnfēcī, I have made the ring with my own hand.*

**INDIRECT:** *glōriātus est annūlum sē suā mǎnū cōnfēcisse, he boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.*

2. **DIRECT:** *sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mīhī dābuntur, vōbīscum pācem faciā, if hostages shall be given to me by you, I will make peace with you.*

**INDIRECT:** *rēspōdit, sī obsidēs ab iīs sībī dentur, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum, he replied that if hostages should be given to him by them, he would make peace with them.*

3. **cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīlīgentiā dēspērārent, why (asked he) should they despair of their own courage or his diligence?**

Obs. The personal pronoun may, of course, be retained in Indirect Discourse when the sense requires it; in short, all changes of pronouns must conform to the sense.

## Example.

**DIRECT:** *quidvīs perpētīar, I will endure anything.*

**INDIRECT:** *adfirmāvī quidvīs mē perpessūrum, I asserted that I would endure anything.*

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**355.** Conditional Sentences, in passing from Direct to Indirect Discourse, undergo the following changes:—

1. In **SIMPLE CONDITIONS** (326. 1) the apodosis is changed to the accusative with the infinitive (the tenses of the infinitive being present, past, or future, according as the tense of the verb in the apodosis is present, past, or future).

2. The protasis is changed to the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the leading verb of *saying*, etc.; but an aorist (*i.e.* perfect) infinitive takes the sequence of past tenses.

**EXAMPLES.**

O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābet, dat.**

O. O. **PRESENT: dīcīt sē, sī pēcūniam hābeat, dāre.**

O. O. **PAST: dīxit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dāre.**

O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābuit, dēdit.**

O. O. **dīcit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dēdisse.**

3. In **FUTURE CONDITIONS** (326. 2) the present and perfect subjunctive (or future indicative) of the apodosis are changed to the future infinitive (or the periphrase **fōre ut**, etc.).

4. The tenses (present and perfect) in the protasis remain unchanged if the leading verb of *saying* is in a *primary tense*; otherwise, they (present and perfect) are changed respectively to the imperfect and pluperfect.

**EXAMPLES.**

O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābeat, det.**

O. O. **PRESENT: dīcit sē, sī pēcūniam hābeat, dātūrum esse.**

O. O. **PAST: dīxit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dātūrum esse.**

5. In **UNREAL CONDITIONS** (326. 3) the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of the apodosis, *when active*, are changed respectively to the future or future perfect infinitive; *when passive*, these tenses are expressed respectively by the periphrases **fūtūrum esse ut** or **fūtūrum fuisse ut**, with the imperfect subjunctive. This periphrase must be used in the active when the verb in the apodosis has no future participle, and hence no future infinitives.

6. The tenses in the protasis remain unchanged, no matter what may be the tense of the leading verb.

## EXAMPLES.

- O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābēret, dāret.**  
 O. O. **dīcit** or **dixit sē, sī pēcūniam hābēret, dātūrum esse.**  
 O. R. **sī pēcūniam hābuisset, dēdisset.**  
 O. O. **dīcit** or **dixit sē, sī pēcūniam hābuisset, dātūrum fuisse.**

## Supplementary Examples : —

1. a. **sī quid Cæsar mē vult, illum ad mē vēnīre oportet,** *if Cæsar wishes anything of me, he ought to come to me.*  
 b. **respondit, sī quid Cæsar sē vēlit, illum ad sē vēnīre oportēre,** *he replied that, if Cæsar wished anything of him, he ought to come to him.*
2. a. **sī stipendium rēmittātur, libenter rēcūsem (326. 2) pōpūlī Rōmānī āmicītiā,** *if the tribute is (should be) remitted, I would gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people ; or,*  
 a. **sī stipendium rēmittātur, libenter rēcūsābo (326. 2, Obs. 1) pōpūlī Rōmānī āmicītiā,** *if the tribute is (shall be) remitted, I will gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people.*  
 b. **respondit, sī stipendium rēmittātur, libenter sēsē rēcūsātūrum pōpūlī Rōmānī āmicītiā,** *he replied that, if the tribute should be remitted, he would gladly renounce the friendship of the Roman people.*
3. a. **sī quid mīhi ā Cæsare ōpus esset, ad eum vēnīssem,** *if I wanted anything from Cæsar, I should have come to him.*  
 b. **respondit, sī quid ipsī (354. (Obs.)) ā Cæsare ōpus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse,** *he replied that, if he wanted anything of Cæsar, he would have come to him.*

## INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

## EXAMPLES.

1. a. **quid dē praedā faciendum censētis,** *what do you think ought to be done in regard to the booty ?*  
 b. **littērās ad sēnātum mīsīt, quid dē praedā faciendum censērent,** *he wrote to the senate (asking) what they thought ought to be done in regard to the booty.*
2. a. **quid tibi vis,** *what do you mean (wish for yourself) ?*  
 b. **ad postūlātā Cæsāris respondit, quid sibi vellet,** *to the demands of Cæsar he replied, what did he mean ?*

3. *a. num rēcentium injūriarum mēmōriam dēpōnere possum, am I able to lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*  
*b. respondit, num rēcentium injūriarum mēmōriam dēpōnere posse, he replied, could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*
4. *a. quid vērēmīnī, aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte dēspērātis, what do you fear, or why do you despair of your valor?*  
*b. quid vērērēntur aut cūr dē suā virtute dēspērarent, what did they fear, or why did they despair of their valor?*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, those marked *a* are Direct Questions, and have their verbs in the indicative (see 343). In the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse, marked *b*, these verbs have been changed to the subjunctive or to the infinitive. Note that rhetorical questions (Exs. 3 and 4) in the indicative in Direct Discourse are changed to the accusative with the infinitive in Indirect Discourse, if the subject is *first* or *third* person (Ex. 3); into the subjunctive, if the subject is *second* person (Ex. 4). Hence the rule:—

**356.** Interrogative Sentences generally take the subjunctive, but sometimes (especially when rhetorical) the infinitive with subject accusative.

Obs. Subjunctive Rhetorical Questions in Direct Discourse (see 344) remain, as a rule, in the subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. Questions of Deliberation (278) always retain the subjunctive.

## IMPERATIVE SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

### EXAMPLES.

1. *a. rēmīniscere vētēris incommōdī pōpuli Rōmānī, remember the ancient disaster of the Roman people.*  
*b. rēmīniscerētur vētēris incommōdī pōpuli Rōmānī, let him remember (said he) the ancient disaster of the Roman people.*
2. *a. cum lēgiōne venī, come with a legion.*  
*b. scribit Lābiēnō cum lēgiōne veniat, he writes to Labienus to come (lit., that he should come) with a legion.*

Obs. In the foregoing examples, note that those marked *a* have their verbs in the imperative; in the corresponding examples of Indirect Discourse, marked *b*, these imperatives have been changed to the subjunctive. Hence the rule:—

**357.** All Imperatives in Direct Discourse are changed in Indirect Discourse to the Subjunctive; the negative is *nē*.

Convert the following sentences into Indirect Discourse, and translate:—

## DIRECT DISCOURSE.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

## 1. Caesar certior factus est

Trēs jam cōpiarum partēs Hel-  
vētīi id flūmen trādūxērunt.

## Translation.

*Already the Helvetians have led  
three parts of their forces over that  
river.*

## 2. Liscus dicit

Sunt nōnnūlli quōrum auctōritās  
āpud plēbem plūrimū vālet.

## Translation.

*There are some whose influence  
prevails a great deal among the  
common people.*

## 3. Lōcūtus est Divitiacus

Ob eam rem ex civitāte prōfūgi  
et Rōmam vēnī, quod nēque  
jūrējūrandō nēque obsidibus  
tēnēbar.

## Translation.

*For this reason I fled from the state  
and came to Rome, because I was  
being held (i.e. refused to be held)  
neither by an oath nor by hostages.*

**OBS.** The pupil should note that clauses like the following, introduced by relative pronouns or by relative adverbs, are not strictly in Indirect Discourse; still, Indirect Discourse, in its widest application, may include indirect questions or any subordinate clause that contains a statement made on the authority of any other person than the writer (see 364).

## EXAMPLES.

1. **dīcam quod sentio** (relative clause), *I will tell that which I think.*
2. **dīcam quid intellēgam** (indirect question), *I will tell what I know.*

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English, and give the Rule for all Modes and Tenses : —

1. Puer dīcit, "Cūpio discēre." 2. Puer dīcit sē cūpēre discēre. 3. Pāx est compōsita. 4. Nuntius allātus est pācem esse compōsitam. 5. "Omnia pēriērunt," inquit Cæsar; "consūlite, mīlītēs, vestrae sālūtī." 6. Cæsar dīxit omnia pēriisse; mīlītēs suae sālūtī consūlērent. 7. Cæsar dīxit sē, postquam hostēs fūsi essent, castra mūnītūrum esse. 8. Ariōvistus dīxit, sē Aeduīs bellum nōn esse illātūrum. 9. Ariōvistus dīxit, sē Aeduīs bellum nōn esse illātūrum, sī stīpendium quōtannīs pendērent. 10. Anīmadvertit Cæsar ūnōs ex omnībus Sēquānōs nīhil eārum rērum fācēre, quōs cētēri fācērent, sed tristēs cāpīte dēmissō terram intuēri. 11. Dux dīxit sē intellēgēre quid ēgisset hostis.

Translate into Latin : —

1. Cæsar has assaulted the city. 2. The messenger said, "Cæsar has assaulted the city." 3. The messenger said that Cæsar had assaulted the city. 4. You are mistaken. 5. He thinks that you are mistaken. 6. I shall not wage war upon the Æduans. 7. He answered that he should not wage war upon the Æduans. 8. Cæsar said that the Helvetians had departed from their territories in order that they might obtain possession of all Gaul. 9. Cæsar said that he had sent the cavalry to sustain (*lit.*, in order that it might sustain) the attack of the enemy. 10. It is related that, when Cæsar had conquered Pompey, he crossed into Asia. 11. Ariovistus said that he would not wage war upon the Æduans, if they paid the tribute yearly. 12. The mountain is held. 13. He says that the mountain is held. 14. The messenger says that the mountain which he saw was held by the enemy. 15. Cæsar said that he would send the cavalry which he had with him to defend the mountain.

## NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

What is meant by Indirect Discourse? What is the law for tenses in Indirect Discourse? How is the tense of a verb in a subordinate clause determined? Give the rule for modes in Indirect Discourse. After what verbs may the Indirect Discourse be used? What change is made in pronouns in passing to Indirect Discourse? To what is the future in Direct Discourse changed in Indirect Discourse? To what the future perfect? Translate the following: *he hopes to come; he promises to write.* How does the English construction of such sentences differ from the Latin? What word in English introduces Indirect Discourse? Is it always necessary to use *that* in translating Indirect Discourse into English? Give the rule for imperative sentences when changed to Indirect Discourse.

## LESSON XCIX.

## RELATIVE SENTENCES.

**358.** Relative Clauses are introduced by relative pronouns and relative adverbs; the latter are called conjunctive adverbs.

Obs. A Relative Clause has the force of an adjective or adverb, limiting the antecedent; as, *puer qui lægit, the boy who reads = the reading boy.* The relative agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person, but the case depends on the construction of the relative sentence. (See 242.)

**359. RULE LXIV.**—A relative clause, having a definite antecedent, and adding merely a descriptive fact, takes the indicative.

## EXAMPLE.

*Caesar æquites quos Labienus adduxerat præmisit, Caesar sent ahead the cavalry which Labienus had brought up.*

**360. RULE LXV.**—Relative pronouns and relative adverbs take the subjunctive when they introduce clauses of *purpose, result, condition, cause, or concession.*

## PURPOSE.

OBS. The subjunctive with **quī** expresses a Purpose chiefly after verbs of *sending, giving, and choosing*, with reference to the *object* of the sentence; a Purpose with reference to the *subject* being expressed by **ut**, etc. If the construction be passive, then, of course, **quī** will refer to the subject.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **lēgātōs mīserunt quī pācem pētērent**, *they sent envoys to (who should, or that they might) sue for peace.*
2. **lēgātī missī sunt quī pācem pētērent**, *envoys were sent to (who should) seek peace.*

## RESULT.

1. Relative Clauses are often used to characterize an *indefinite* or *general antecedent*, especially after negatives, where the idea of result is not obvious.

## EXAMPLES.

1. **sunt quī dīcant**, *there are some who say.*
2. **nēmō est quī nōn cūpit**, *there is no one who does not desire.*

(1) A Relative Clause of Characteristic is used even when the antecedent is definite; but it is especially common —

- a. After **ūnus** and **sōlus**.
- b. After **dīgnus**, **indīgnus**, **idōneus**, and **aptus**.
- c. After comparatives with **quam**.

OBS. The Relative of Characteristic is equivalent to the Restrictive Relative with the subjunctive. The Relative of Characteristic has a tendency to take the subjunctive after indefinite and general expressions (for examples, see 324); but even then the indicative may be used when the statement is a definite fact, and not a general characteristic (i.e. with a definite antecedent): as, **sunt quī dīcunt impēria . . . nēquīsse pātī**, *there are some who assert*, etc. (i.e. *I know some who assert*, etc.). Particularly to be noted is the Restrictive Relative in such phrases as **quod sciam**, *so far as I know*; **quod mēmīnērim**, *as far as I remember*.

## EXAMPLE.

**nōn is sum quī hīs ūtar**, *I am not such a one as to use these things.*



## CONDITION.

**361. RULE LXVI.** — A Condition is sometimes introduced by the Indefinite Relative (*quī, quae, quod* = *sī quis, sī quī, etc.*), and the modes are used as in ordinary conditional clauses.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *haec quī videat, nōne cōgātur cōnfiterī deōs esse, if any one should see these things, would he not be compelled to admit that there are gods?*
2. *errat longē, quī crēdat, he greatly errs who supposes (i.e. if any one supposes, he greatly errs).*

## CAUSE.

**OBS.** Causal Clauses introduced by *quī* alone, or strengthened by *ut, utpōte, quippe*, generally take their verbs in the subjunctive, although the indicative is occasionally used.

## EXAMPLES.

1. *habeo sēnectūtī grātiā, quae mīhī sermōnis aviditatem auxit, I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.*
2. *miseret tuī mē quī (= cum tū) hunc tantum hōmīnem faciās inimicum tibi, I pity you since you (in that you) make so great a man as this inimical to you.*
3. *habeo sēnectūtī grātiā, quae mīhī sermōnis aviditatem auxit, I cherish gratitude to old age, which (because it) has increased my love of conversation.*

**OBS.** In Cicero the mode with *quippe quī* is the subjunctive; in Sallust, the indicative.

## CONCESSION.

*absolvite Verrem, quī (= cum is) sē fateātur pecūniās cēpisse, acquit Verres, although he confesses (should confess) that he has taken bribes.*

**362. RULE LXVII.** — Relative Clauses in Indirect Discourse, like other dependent clauses, take the subjunctive.

## EXAMPLE.

*nuntiātum est equitēs quī praemissī essent revertisse, it was announced that the horsemen who had been sent in advance had returned.*

a. A Relative Clause, even in Indirect Discourse, may take the indicative, if it contains a statement on the authority of the narrator (= the present speaker or writer), or if it is a mere circumlocution.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. **Caesar per explorātōrēs certior factus est, ex eā parte vici quam Gallis concēsserat, omnēs noctū discēssisse,** *Cæsar was informed through his scouts that all of them had withdrawn during the night from that quarter of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.*
2. **quis nēget hæc omnia quæ vidēmus deōrum pōtestāte administrārī,** *who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods?*

OBS. The statement on the authority of the present speaker or writer is equivalent to saying that the statement is a *fact*; hence, the indicative is used. The relative clause **quam . . . concēsserat**, although standing in Indirect Discourse, is in the indicative, because it is an *explanation* given by the writer himself (Cæsar). The relative clause **quæ vidēmus**, may be considered as explanatory (*i.e.* it is a *circumlocution*), and although introduced into the Indirect Discourse, the verb (**vidēmus**) is in the indicative, because the manner of making the assertion is not important enough to rise into consideration; hence, the verb remains in the mode in which it would naturally be, *viz.* the indicative. The statement is virtually made on the authority of the *present* speaker, because he does not think it worth while to shift the responsibility; *i.e.* it often depends merely upon the feeling of the writer whether he will use the indicative or subjunctive.

#### INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES.

OBS. In Latin we often find a *clause subordinate to another clause which is itself subordinate*. When the first subordinate clause is a subjunctive (or an infinitive) clause, then the subjunctive is used in the second subordinate (or *intermediate*) clause, because anything depending on a potential is itself necessarily potential. The verb in the second subordinate clause is said to be in the subjunctive *by attraction*. The verb in the second subordinate clause may be in the indicative, but, if the clause (intermediate) is in Indirect Discourse, its verb is naturally in the subjunctive (as in the foregoing lesson), unless the clause is *merely explanatory*, *i.e.* a *circumlocution* (362. Obs.) containing a statement which is regarded

as true independently of the quotation. The verb is then in the indicative: thus, *dicit sē vidēre ea quae video*, he says that he sees what I see (in fact); whereas *quae videam* would mean (he says that he sees) what as he alleges I see; *quae video* is the intermediate clause; so *nēmō tam pōtēns est ut omnia quae vōlit efficere possit*, no one is so powerful as to be able to accomplish all that he wishes; *vōlit* is so closely connected with *ut possit*, etc., as to form an essential part of the result, and is, therefore, attracted into the subjunctive. Hence, relative clauses of characteristic in Indirect Discourse (or restrictive clauses), dependent on the subjunctive, would have their verb in the subjunctive, while clauses containing a *circumlocution* or *explanations* of the narrator, i.e. a merely explanatory or parenthetical clause, or one that introduces a *fact* (on the authority of the narrator), may be in the indicative. Hence:—

#### ATTRACTION OF MODE.

**363. RULE LXVIII.**—A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it depends on, and forms an essential part of, an infinitive or subjunctive clause.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *respondit sē id quod in Nervii fecisset facturum*, he replied that he would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii.
2. *vēreor nē, dum mīnuere vōlim, lābōrem augeam*, I fear lest, while I am wishing to lessen the toil, I may increase it.
3. *tanta rērum commūtātiō facta est, ut nōstrī etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcūbuissent, proelium rēdintegrarent*, so great a change of affairs was brought about that our men, even those who had fallen worn out with wounds, renewed the battle.

#### PARTIAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**OBS.** The term *Indirect Discourse* is strictly applied to clauses (or citations) dependent on some word of *saying, thinking*, and the like (as *dico, rēpondeo, nuntio, aīo, arbitror*, while *inquam* introduces in prose Direct Discourse). In a more general sense, the term Indirect Discourse may be used to designate all clauses which indirectly express the words or thoughts of any person other than the speaker or narrator; and even the past thoughts or words

of the speaker or narrator himself may take this construction. On this principle, indirect questions and dependent constructions following verbs of *wishing, desiring, etc.*, as well as final clauses, may be explained as Indirect Discourse, the indirect relation often being confined to a dependent clause, and not extending to the whole sentence; as, *nōva nupta flet quod ire necesse sit, the bride is weeping because she must go (says she)*. This sentence in Indirect Discourse is: *nōva nupta dicit sē fīre quod ire necesse sit*. Hence —

#### INFORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**364. RULE LXIX.**—A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it expresses, though not in formal indirect discourse, the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer.

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus rēliquisset mīhī dōnāvit*,  
*he gave to me all the books which (as he said) his brother had left.*
2. *Sōcrātēs accūsātus est quod corrumpēret iuventūtem*,  
*Socrates was arraigned because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth.*
3. *Aedui questī sunt quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum pōpūlārentur*,  
*the Aedui complained because (as they said) the Harudes were laying waste their territory.*

Obs. 1. The constructions following verbs of *wishing, desiring, commanding, permitting, caring, striving, hindering, fearing*, and the like, may be explained as Informal Indirect Discourse (usually called *pētitiō obliqua*).

#### EXAMPLES.

1. *nīhil indignius est quam eum qui culpā cāreat supplicio nōn cārere*,  
*nothing is more unbecoming than that he who is free from fault should not be free from punishment.*
2. *mīlitēs misit, ut eōs qui fugerant persequerentur*,  
*he sent soldiers to (who should) pursue those who had fled (i.e. the fugitives).*

Obs. 2. Note, in the foregoing examples, that the relative clause *qui cāreat* (see 361), depending on an infinitive, has its verb in the subjunctive by the ordinary rule; in Ex. 2, the clause *qui fugerant* has its verb in the indicative, because it is regarded as parenthetical, i.e. it is a circumlocution (see 362. a).

## Supplementary Examples : —

1. **nōn dūbito quān nōva nupta fleat quod ire nēcesse sit,**  
*I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.*
2. **prīmum pōsuit eam (causam) dē quā mōdo dixi, quae orta esset ex praesēnsiōne rērum fūtūrārum,** *he first mentioned that of which I have just spoken (direct statement), which (according to him) had its origin in a presentment of the future.*
3. **nēscire quid antēquam nātus sis accidērit, id est semper esse puērū,** *not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy.*
4. **Ariovistus dixit sē obsidēs quōs ab Aeduīs hāberet nōn redditūrum.**
5. **Caesar negāvit sē Helvētiis quod postulāvit dāre posse.**
6. **nuntiātum est ēquītēs quī praemissi essent rēvertisse.**
7. **dixit oppidum, quod vidēs, Ariovisti fuisse.**

## EXERCISES.

Translate into English, and give the Rule for all Modes and Tenses : —

1. Caesar dat nēgōtium Sēnōnibus, ūti ea quae āpud Belgās gērantur<sup>1</sup> cōgnoscant, sēque dē his rēbus certiōrēm fāciant.
2. Caesar grāviter eōs accūsāt quod ab iis nōn sublēvētur<sup>1</sup> praesertim cum eōrum prēcibus adductus bellum suscepērit.<sup>1</sup>
3. Helvētīi, auctōritāte Orgētōrigis permōtī, constituērunt ea quae ad prōficiscendum pertinērent<sup>1</sup> comparāre.
4. Deus est, quī mundum rēgit.
5. Hostēs lēgātōs misērunt, quī<sup>2</sup> pācem pētērent.<sup>1</sup>
6. Nēmō tam pōtēns est ut omnia quae vēlit<sup>1</sup> effīcere possit.<sup>1</sup>
7. Dignus est quī laudētur.
8. Damna māiōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestimārī possint.<sup>1</sup>
9. O fortunāte adūlescēns, quī (= cum tū) tuae virtūtis Hōmērū praecōnem invēnēris.<sup>1</sup>
10. Absolvite<sup>3</sup> virū, quī<sup>4</sup> (= cum is) fāteātur<sup>1</sup> pecūniās cēpisse.<sup>1</sup>
11. Haec quī videat,<sup>5</sup> nōne cōgātur<sup>1</sup> fātērī deōs esse.
12. Caesar ab Aeduīs frūmentum flāgitābat,<sup>1</sup> quod essent publicē polliciti.<sup>6</sup>

Translate into Latin : —

1. The boys who study will learn. 2. The farmer sent men to plough the field. 3. There were some who thought the man should<sup>7</sup> be condemned to death. 4. The boys said that they would give you whatever they had (then). 5. Would not the man who<sup>5</sup> should see these things be forced to confess that there are gods. 6. No one can be king of the Persians (*Persarum*) who has not first<sup>8</sup> learnt<sup>9</sup> the discipline of the Magi (*Magorum*). 7. Who could (*possit*) love him whom he fears? 8. He promised to give<sup>10</sup> what I had asked. 9. The lieutenant, on-his-return<sup>11</sup> to Cæsar, reported what<sup>12</sup> he had seen in the enemy's camp.

#### NOTES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Explain mode and tense.
2. Relative of Purpose.
3. *Acquit.*
4. *Though he, etc.*
5. **Qui vīdeat** = **si quis vīdeat**, *if any one were to see.*
6. The subjunctive refers to the promises as made by the Æduans.
7. Use **condemnandum esse**.
8. *First* = **ante**.
9. **Qui nōn percēperit** = **nisi percēperit**, *unless he has learned, etc.*
10. **Sē dātūrum**.
11. **Rēversus**.
12. = *that which*.

What is a relative clause? Mention the various classes of relative clauses. What will be the mode of a verb (in Indirect Discourse) in a relative clause that depends on an infinitive clause or another relative clause? May the verb in the second relative clause ever be in the indicative? Why has this verb a tendency to be in the subjunctive? Define an intermediate clause. Point out the intermediate clause in the following: *He says that he sees what I see.* Mention the various classes of relative clauses. Explain the meaning of *circumlocution*. When is a relative clause equivalent to a circumlocution? What is meant by informal indirect discourse?

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

---

Translate into Latin : —

1. The waves on the shores [of the sea] are high. 2. Volsinii, a town of the 'Tuscans, was consumed<sup>1</sup> by lightning. 3. Neither you nor I have done this. 4. You and he praise the streams of the country. 5. The man said one thing and the boy another.<sup>2</sup> 6. Homer is called the king of poets. 7. The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus. 8. Hear much,<sup>3</sup> speak little. 9. After his death the people repented of their judgment. 10. Cæsar kept demanding corn of the Ædui. 11. The elephant is said to live two hundred years. 12. Augustus died at Nola. 13. He wandered about the banks of the river Po and the shores of the Adriatic Sea. 14. A good man forgets all injuries. 15. At what price does he give lessons?<sup>4</sup> 16. It is not lawful for any man<sup>5</sup> to lead an army against his country. 17. Having learned these things, Cæsar returns to the fleet. 18. What o'clock is it? 19. Is that your fault or mine? 20. He asked whether that was your fault or mine. 21. If they (shall) give hostages, Cæsar will make peace with them. 22. Can anybody do this? 23. Can somebody do this? 24. Plato lived eighty-one years. 25. Wherefore it pleased him to send<sup>6</sup> legates to Ariovistus, to demand<sup>7</sup> from him that he should appoint some place central with respect to both of them for a conference, (saying) that he wished to treat with him concerning the republic, and the highest interests of both. 26. On the 10th of April we set out for the province. 27. Is this said to have been done by night or by day? 28. The Germans have not entered a house for fourteen years. 29. It is of great consequence<sup>8</sup> to me<sup>9</sup> that I should see you.

30. On the last day of December he set sail,<sup>10</sup> and arrived at Athens on the 10th of January. 31. In the first of the spring the consul came to Ephesus, and, having received the troops from<sup>11</sup> Scipio, he made<sup>12</sup> a speech<sup>13</sup> in-presence-of<sup>14</sup> his soldiers (in which), after extolling their bravery, he exhorted them to undertake<sup>15</sup> a new war with<sup>16</sup> the Greeks, who had (as he said) helped Antiochus with auxiliaries.

1. Use **concrēmātum est**.

2. Use **aliud . . . aliud**.

3. Use the plural.

4. Lit. *teach*.

5. Use **licet nēmīni**.

6. See **321**.

7. See **321**. Obs.

8. See **315**. 3. (2).

9. See **315**. 3. (2), *a*.

10. Use **solvit**.

11. Use **ā**.

12. Use **hābuit**.

13. Use **contionem**.

14. Use **apud**.

15. Use **ad** with the ger. of **accipere**.

16. Use **cum**.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES.

### I. *SUM* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

[Learn the principal parts and meaning of **absum**,<sup>1</sup> **adsum**, **dēsum**, **insum**, **intersum**, **obsum**,<sup>2</sup> **praesum**, **prōsum**, **possum**, **subsum**,<sup>3</sup> **sūpersum**.]

Translate into Latin: —

1. God is present in all places. 2. They profit neither themselves nor others. 3. They were not able to profit me. 4. He has been absent from home six months. 5. This cannot profit you, but injures you and your friends. 6. A leader was wanting to the army. 7. The cavalry profited our army. 8. He was present in the battle. 9. They were able to be present. 10. They governed the city for ten years.

1. For euphonic changes, see 7. and ff.

2. Principal parts: **obsum**, **obesse**, **offui**.

3. Principal parts: **subsum**, **subesse**, no perf.



II. *EO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

[Learn the principal parts and meaning of *abeo*, *adeo*, *ante-eo*, *circumeo*, *coeo*, *exeo*, *ineo*, *intēreo*, *introeo*, *obeo*, *pěreo*, *prae-eo*, *praetēreo*, *prōdeo*, *rēdeo*, *sūbeo*, *transeo*, *vēneo*.]

Translate into Latin : —

1. The soldiers crossed the river. 2. He was surrounded by the fleet of the enemy. 3. The merchants came to sell their goods. 4. Hannibal returned to his native country. 5. They went forth from their territories. 6. They formed the plan of entering the city. 7. Cæsar approached the city. 8. *In the beginning of spring* we will return to you. 9. He died at Rome. 10. The dog barks at the passers-by.<sup>1</sup> 11. Bring me aid or I shall perish. 12. The soldiers attacked the enemy *while crossing* the river.

1. Lit. *those passing by*.

III. *FERO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

[Learn the meaning and the principal parts of *affēro*, *rēfero*, *antefēro*, *aufēro*,<sup>1</sup> *confēro*, *diffēro*, *infēro*, *offēro*, *effēro*, *tollo*, *dēfēro*, *prōfēro*, *transfēro*.]

Translate into Latin : —

1. He wages war against Rome. 2. Hannibal transferred the war into Italy. 3. We preferred peace to war. 4. Verres removed gold and silver from Sicily. 5. The soldiers retreated and betook themselves to the mountain. 6. The Romans intrusted the chief command to Cæsar. 7. Friends often differ from each other.

1. *l* before *f* becomes *u*.

## IV. CASES.

1. Thou and my friend have written the letter. 2. Cæsar, the leader of the army, has waged war in Italy and Gaul. 3. I who am encouraging you cannot (encourage) myself. 4. He is ashamed of his cruelty. 5. I am weary of life.

6. The wise man will teach his son justice. 7. The people made Cæsar consul. 8. Every tenth man was chosen. 9. Every sixth man was chosen. 10. All the best men (lit., each best man) were chosen. 11. They fear this enemy. 12. Hannibal crossed the Alps with his army. 13. The river goes through the midst of the city. 14. This, lastly (*ad extrēmum*), I particularly (*māgnōpère*) ask you. 15. We ought not to conceal our opinions from our friends. 16. He leads his army over the river. 17. Cæsar leads the cavalry over the bridge. 18. The people appoint him general. 19. O wolf, excellent guardian, as the saying is (*ut ajunt*), for the sheep (*gen.*). 20. The Romans were eager for glory. 21. One man (*dat.*) must not fight with (*cum*) two. 22. What pleases you also pleases me. 23. This thing is unlike that. 24. The life which we enjoy is short. 25. We pity those who repent of their faults. 26. We love those who have repented of their faults. 27. *When these things had been done, and the whole of Gaul had been subdued*, the nations which dwelt beyond the Rhine sent ambassadors to (*ad*) Cæsar. 28. Cicero went to Athens. 29. The ambassadors came from Carthage. 30. The men fled to Rome. 31. The soldiers departed from Italy. 32. Setting forth (*prōfectus*) from Carthage, he made for (*pētēre*) Italy. 33. He was a brave man at home and in war. 34. He will return home in the evening. 35. When my son returns from the country, I will send him to (*ad*) you. 36. We perceive that snow is white. 37. It is said that snow is white. 38. I believe that the souls of men are immortal. 39. Who was the man? 40. I will tell you who the man was. 41. The wall is two hundred feet long. 42. I will send you a letter.

---

V.

1. No brave man shudders at the enemy. 2. Who was present (*intēresse*) at your conversation? 3. Against the Tarentines, who were in the lowest part of (*ultimus*) Italy,

war was declared. 4. Plato died in (his) eighty-second year, while writing. 5. Romulus called the city after (e) his name, Rome. 6. Have you been at Athens? 7. He asked the boy whether he wished to return to his father. 8. Philosophy heals the mind. 9. The soldiers lie on the ground. 10. The soldiers fight with their companions. 11. The soldiers fight with the sword. 12. Cæsar was stripped of his property. 13. The art of carefully educating boys is difficult. 14. The art of governing the State is very difficult. 15. The enemy fortified their camp *after they* had crossed the river. 16. Wolves are like dogs. 17. Only a few are deserving of praise. 18. Thou art free from faults. 19. A bad man is never free from fear. 20. The deeds of the general are worthy of a triumph. 21. Relying on thee, we have undertaken this business. 22. Cicero was very much devoted (*amāns*)<sup>1</sup> to Pompey. 23. The letter is full of good promise (*spēs*). 24. You have freed the city from danger and the citizens from fear. 25. As (*ut*) a shore without a harbor cannot be safe for ships, so (*sic*) a heart (*ānīmus*) without fidelity cannot be stable for friends. 26. My older brother is in his thirty-third year; the younger, in his twenty-fifth; my oldest sister is in her eighteenth; my youngest, in her twelfth.

1. With *gen.*

---

## VI. MOODS.

1. Is that your fault or ours? 2. He asked whether that was your fault or ours. 3. What are you doing? 4. I know what you are doing. 5. I shall hear what you are doing. 6. I knew what you were doing. 7. I had learned what you were doing. 8. I had learned what you were going to do. 9. I learned what you were doing. 10. I learned what you were going to do. 11. Let us remember. 12. My father takes care that I am well educated, actively exercised, thoroughly accomplished, and carefully instructed.

13. My father took care that I was well educated, actively exercised, thoroughly accomplished, and carefully instructed. 14. If the boy studies diligently, he will learn rapidly. 15. If the boy had studied diligently, he would have learned more rapidly. 16. If the boy should study diligently, he would learn rapidly. 17. When the war was ended,<sup>1</sup> ambassadors from all the States (*gen.*) came to Cæsar. 18. When the boy was taught, he was silent. 19. When the enemy had assaulted the town, all the citizens were filled with great fear. 20. The enemy were assaulting the town, when they saw our cavalry. 21. While I was writing, you were reading and my brother was playing. 22. While the leader was drawing up his forces, the enemy surrounded the city. 23. When the leader had drawn up his forces, he ordered them to assault the city. 24. Our soldiers are led out in (*in*) the line of battle before the enemy fortify their camp. 25. I do not doubt but that the soldiers fought bravely. 26. The boy was punished because he did not obey the teacher. 27. The messenger said that "The commander was drawing the soldiers up in line of battle while the enemy were fortifying their camp." 28. The messenger said that the commander had led his soldiers out of the city before that the enemy had fortified their camp. 29. The soldiers who were sent by Cæsar fortified their camp, and then crossed the river to attack the enemy. 30. He issued a proclamation (*edico*) that no one<sup>2</sup> of the soldiers should fight with the enemy. 31. The soldiers fought so bravely that no one<sup>3</sup> of the enemy escaped. 32. Would not the (man) who<sup>4</sup> sees these things be compelled to confess that there are gods? 33. O fortunate youth, who<sup>5</sup> hast found a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess. 34. Cæsar sent the soldiers to<sup>6</sup> fortify the camp. 35. There were some who<sup>7</sup> pitied him. 36. The joy was greater than what men could receive (*cāpio*). 37. He was a suitable man to send. 38. He deserves to be praised. 39. He came into the garden for the sake of taking a walk. 40. God has made

the animals for the sake of man, as, for instance (*ut*), the horse for riding (*vēhī*), the ox for ploughing. 41. Man is naturally eager to learn. 42. The soldiers were eager to fight. 43. Wrapping-paper (*charta emporētica*) is worthless (*inūtilis*) for writing. 44. I fear he has not received the letter. 45. I fear that, if I give this letter to him, he will open it (*solvēre*). 46. (It is) by obedience (*obsēquium*) (that) you have brought it about (*efficēre*) that no one is dearer to the king than you. 47. After the war was finished the consul returned to Rome. 48. Although the ground (*lōcus*) was unfavorable (*inīquus*), nevertheless Cæsar determined to attack the enemy. 49. Although I have asked you to come to me, nevertheless I know that you cannot help me. 50. As the consul was hastening<sup>1</sup> to Rome, the enemy overtook (*consēquī*) his army. 51. The soldiers crossed the river without any hesitation.<sup>8</sup> 52. Divide your troops *without weakening them*.<sup>9</sup> 53. He divided my troops *without dividing his own*.<sup>10</sup> 54. The consul cannot cross the river *without dividing his army*.<sup>11</sup> 55. No army can be divided *without being weakened*.<sup>12</sup> 56. We cannot let him go without giving him money. 57. He departed without accomplishing his mission (*rēs*). 58. Can you condemn the army without also condemning the general? 59. He received the letter,<sup>13</sup> and,<sup>14</sup> without opening (*rēsolvēre*) it, laid it down. 60. You have written (*do*) many letters to Rome without writing any<sup>15</sup> to me.

1. Translate this clause in two different ways, 259.

2. Use *nē quis*. 3. Use *ut nēmō*.

4. *Quī vīdeat = sī quis vīdeat*. 5. 324. 6. 321. 7. 324.

8. (1) *Nihil dūbītantēs*, 260; (2) *nēque quidquam dūbītāvērunt*; (3) *nūlla interpōsītā dūbītātiōne*; (4) *sīne ullā dūbītātiōne*. 9. *Nē dēbilitēs*.

10. (1) *Cum suās nōn dīvidēret*; (2) *suīs nōn dīvisīs*.

11. (1) *Nisi exercītum dīvisērit*; (2) *nisi exercītū dīvisō*.

12. (1) *Quīn dēbilitētur*; (2) *ut nōn dēbilitētur*.

13. 259. f. 14. 260. f. 15. *Cum nullās*.

# GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

---

## AGREEMENT OF VERBS, NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.

### SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE (P. 53).

1. The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative case.

### AGREEMENT OF VERBS (P. 54).

2. A finite verb agrees with its subject-nominative in number and person.

### APPOSITION (P. 60).

3. A noun used to describe another noun or pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case.

### PREDICATE NOUN (P. 100).

4. A noun in the predicate, denoting the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with it in case.

### AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES (P. 203).

5. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

### AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES (P. 66).

6. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

### PREDICATE ADJECTIVE (P. 100).

7. A predicate adjective agrees with its subject in gender, number, and person.

## GENITIVE.

## GENITIVE WITH NOUNS (P. 61).

8. A noun limiting the meaning of another noun, and denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES (P. 115).

9. Many adjectives are followed by the genitive to complete their meaning.

## PARTITIVE GENITIVE (P. 198).

10. Words denoting a part are followed by the genitive denoting the whole.

## PREDICATE GENITIVE (P. 103).

11. A noun in the predicate, denoting a different person or thing from the subject, is put in the genitive.

1. Certain adjectives of quantity — as **māgnī**, **parvī**, **plūris**, **mīnōris** — are used to denote indefinite price.

## GENITIVE WITH VERBS (P. 294).

12. Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, and *forgetting*, — **rēcōrdor**, **mēmīnī**, **rēmīnīscor**, and **oblīviscor**, — are followed by the genitive (sometimes the accusative).

1. The genitive is used (p. 295)

(1) With **mīśēreor**, **mīśērēscō**.

(2) With the impersonals **rēfert** and **intērest**.

(3) The impersonals **mīśeret**, **paenītet**, **pīget**, **pūget**, and **taedet**, take the genitive of the object with the accusative of the person.

(4) Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *condemning*, and *acquitting*, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime (p. 294).

(5) **Sum**, and verbs of *valuing*, take the genitive to express the price or value indefinitely (p. 295).

## DATIVE.

## INDIRECT OBJECT (P. 62).

13. The indirect object of an action is put in the dative

1. With intransitive and passive verbs.
2. With transitive verbs, in connection with the direct object.

## DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS (P. 164).

14. The dative of the indirect object is used with most intransitive verbs signifying *to favor, please, trust, assist*, and their contraries; also, *to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon*, and *be angry*.

## DATIVE OF PURPOSE OR END (P. 170).

15. The dative is used with *sum* and a few other verbs to denote the purpose or end, usually with another dative of the person or thing affected or interested.

## DATIVE OF POSSESSOR (P. 242).

16. The dative of the possessor is used with the verb *sum*.

## DATIVE OF AGENT (P. 258).

17. The dative of the agent is used with the gerundive to denote the person interested in doing the action.

## DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS (P. 173).

18. The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super*, and sometimes *circum*.

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES (P. 114).

19. The dative is used after adjectives to denote the object to which the quality is directed.



## ACCUSATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

## DIRECT OBJECT (P. 55).

**20.** The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

## SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (P. 217).

**21.** The subject of the infinitive mode is put in the accusative.

## TWO ACCUSATIVES. — PERSON AND THING (P. 156).

**22.** Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing* take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing.

## TWO ACCUSATIVES. — SAME PERSON OR THING (P. 159).

**23.** Verbs of *naming, calling, choosing, making, reckoning, regarding, esteeming, showing,* and the like, take two accusatives of the same person or thing.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE (P. 182).

**24.** Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

## NAME OF THE PLACE TO WHICH (P. 188).

**25.** The name of the place *whither*, or *to which*, regularly requires the preposition *in* or *ad*.

1. But with names of towns and small islands, and with *dōmum, dōmōs*, and *rūs*, the preposition is omitted.

## ACCUSATIVES IN EXCLAMATIONS.

**26.** The accusative, either with or without an interjection, may be used in exclamations.

## COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.

**27.** Intransitive verbs often take an accusative of cognate, or kindred meaning (the accusative, if a noun, being usually accompanied by an adjective or pronoun).

1. To this head belongs the adverbial use of the accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives with intransitive verbs. If such verbs are used transitively, an accusative of the person may stand with this adverbial accusative.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER COMPOUNDS.

**28.** Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, süper,** and **trans,** become transitive, and take the accusative.

## VOCATIVE (P. 75).

**29.** The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

## ABLATIVE PROPER.

## PLACE FROM WHICH (P. 210).

**30.** The place *whence*, or *from which*, is denoted by the ablative with a preposition — **ā, ab, dē, or ex** (p. 234).

1. Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition (p. 234); also **dōmō, rūre,** and sometimes **hūmō.**

## SEPARATION, CAUSE, SOURCE, ORIGIN (P. 210).

**31.** Separation, cause, source, and origin, are denoted by the ablative with or without a preposition.

1. **Fido** (w. dat. also), **confido, diffido,** and **frētus** and **contentus** are followed by the ablative (p. 210).

2. Compounds with **ā, ab, dē, ē, ex,** denoting separation from a person or place, take the ablative when used figuratively; but, in a local and literal sense, they require a preposition with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF AGENT (P. 131).

**32.** The voluntary agent after a passive verb is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab.**

## INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

## MEANS AND INSTRUMENT (P. 287).

**33.** The means and instrument are denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

1. **Utor, fruor, fungor, pōtior, vescor,** and their compounds, are followed by the ablative (p. 253).

## ABLATIVE OF MEASURE (P. 287).

**34.** The ablative without a preposition is used to denote the standard by which anything is measured.

## MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE (P. 281).

**35.** The ablative is used with comparatives, and words implying comparison, to denote the measure of difference.

## ABLATIVE OF PRICE (P. 283).

**36.** The price is expressed by the ablative when it is a definite sum.

1. **Dignus** and **indignus** are followed by the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (P. 278).

**37.** A noun, adjective, or verb may be followed by the ablative to denote in what respect its signification is taken.

## ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES (P. 112).

**38.** The comparative degree is followed by the ablative when **quam**, *than*, is omitted.

## ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL (P. 288).

**39.** The material of which anything is made is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ex** or **dē**; but **constāre**, *to consist*, sometimes omits the preposition.

1. **Opus** and **ñsus**, signifying *need*, are followed by the ablative of the thing needed (p. 288).

2. Most verbs and adjectives signifying *plenty* and *want* are followed by the ablative (308. Obs. 1).

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER (P. 289).

**40.** The ablative of manner generally takes the preposition **cum**, unless it has a modifying adjective or genitive (when **cum** may be omitted).

## ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT (P. 289).

41. The ablative of accompaniment takes the preposition **cum**, except in a few military and other phrases.

## ABLATIVE OF QUALITY (P. 269).

42. A noun denoting quality, quantity, or description, and having an adjective joined with it, may be put in the genitive or in the ablative.

## LOCATIVE.

## PLACE IN WHICH (P. 234).

43. The name of the *place where*, or *in which*, regularly requires **in** with the ablative.

## NAMES OF TOWNS (P. 234).

44. Names of towns and small islands, and also **dōmus**, **rūs**, and a few other words omit the preposition, and the name of the *place where*, or *in which*, takes the locative.

## TIME (P. 167).

45. The time *when*, or *within which*, is put in the ablative; time *how long*, in the accusative.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (P. 222).

46. A noun or pronoun, with a participle or an adjective, or two nouns, may be put in the ablative, to express the time or circumstance of an action.

## INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE MODES.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

47. The indicative mode asserts action or being as a fact, or inquires after a fact.

## SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE (P. 217).

48. The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, *hearing*, and the like.

## INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT, OBJECT, OR COMPLEMENT (P. 217).

**49.** The infinitive may be used as the subject, object, appositive, or complement of a verb.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

## GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION (P. 227).

**50.** Instead of the gerund with its object in the accusative, the gerundive is generally used, the noun taking the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with the noun in gender, number, and case.

1. The gerund governs the same case as its verb, but is itself governed like a noun (225 ff.).

## SUPINE.

## FORMER SUPINE (P. 232).

**51.** The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion, to express the purpose of the motion.

## LATTER SUPINE (P. 232).

**52.** The supine in **-ū** is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful, agreeable, easy* or *difficult, worthy* or *unworthy, honorable* or *base*, and the nouns *fās, nēfās*, and *ōpus*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

(P. 246).

**53.** The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express a *wish, command, exhortation, prohibition*, or *concession*; also, in questions of *doubt* or *deliberation*, and in *mild* or *modest assertions*.

## MODES AND TENSES IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES (PP. 302, 309, 347).

**54.** A primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; and a secondary tense is followed by a secondary. (319, 322. Obs., 350. 1 and 2.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE (P. 306).

**55.** Final clauses take their verbs in the present or imperfect subjunctive, according as the leading verb is in a primary or a secondary tense.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT (P. 309).

**56.** Consecutive clauses take their verbs in the subjunctive mode, the tense being determined by the regular rules for sequence of tenses. (See 322. Obs.)

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (P. 317).

**57.** Conditional sentences with *sī*, *nīsi*, *nī*, *sīn*, take —

*Simple Present and Past Conditions.*

1. Any present or past tense of the indicative in both clauses when nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition.

*Future Conditions.*

2. The future indicative in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a *distinct* and *vivid* manner; the present (or perfect subjunctive) in both clauses, to represent the supposed future case in a less *distinct* and *vivid* manner.

*Unreal Present and Past Conditions.*

3. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses, to represent the supposed case as *unreal*, or *contrary to fact*. The imperfect denotes *present time*, and the pluperfect *past*.

## COMPARATIVE CLAUSES (P. 320).

**58.** Comparative clauses, introduced by *ut*, *ūtī*, *sicut*, *quēmadmōdum*, etc., and followed by the demonstrative particles *ita*, *sic* (*so*), etc., regularly take the indicative or the subjunctive as in independent sentences.

1. Comparative clauses, introduced by *ac sī*, *ut sī*, *quam sī*, *quāsi*, *tanquam*, *tanquam sī*, *vēlut*, *vēlut sī*, are, in fact, conditional clauses, of which the conclusion

is omitted or implied, and therefore take the subjunctive like conditional sentences; but the tense is determined by the regular rules for sequence of tenses.

#### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (P. 322).

**59.** Concessive clauses are introduced by concessive conjunctions, — *although, granting that*, — and take the indicative or the subjunctive (according to the principles stated on p. 321 f.).

#### CAUSAL CLAUSES (P. 323).

**60.** Causal clauses, introduced by **quod, quia, quōniam, quandō**, take the indicative when the reason assigned is stated as a fact, and indorsed by the speaker or writer.

1. Causal clauses introduced by **cum** or the relative **quī** regularly take the subjunctive.

2. Causal clauses introduced by **quod, quia, quōniam**, take the subjunctive (in Indirect Discourse, **348**), to state the reason as the *assertion or opinion of some one else than the speaker or writer*.

#### TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

##### ANTECEDENT ACTION (P. 326).

**61.** Temporal clauses, introduced by **postquam, post-eā quam, ūbi, ūt, ūt primum, ūbi primum, sīmul āc**, etc., take the indicative (commonly the aorist indicative or historical present).

##### CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION (P. 321).

**62.** **Dum, dōnec, quoad**, *while, as long as*, take the indicative (any tense).

1. **Dum, dōnec, quoad**, *until*, take the indicative in the statement of a *fact*, the subjunctive when *purpose* is expressed (*i.e.* if the accomplishment of the purpose is the limit of the action).

## SUBSEQUENT ACTION (P. 327).

**63. Antēquam** and **priusquam**, *before*, are used with any tense of the indicative, except the imperfect and pluperfect, to express the mere priority of one event to another.

1. **Antēquam** and **priusquam** are used with the subjunctive to express (1) the *intentional* priority of one action to another (*i.e.* when the action is *purposed* or *desired* by the subject of the leading verb), (2) or when its non-occurrence is expressed or implied.

## CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM.

## CUM TEMPORAL (P. 329).

**64. Cum** temporal (= *when*), introducing a clause that defines the *mere time* of an action, may be used with all the tenses of the indicative.

## CUM HISTORICAL (P. 330).

**65. Cum**, meaning *when*, is used in historical narration with the imperfect subjunctive for contemporaneous action, with the pluperfect subjunctive for antecedent action.

## CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CUM (P. 330).

**66. Cum** causal (= *since*) and **cum** concessive (= *although*) may be used with any tense of the subjunctive.

## INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES.

## DIRECT QUESTIONS (P. 338).

**67.** Direct simple questions are generally introduced by interrogative words, and, as a rule, take their verbs in the indicative.

1. Direct simple questions may take the subjunctive when they express *doubt* or *deliberation*, or imply a negative *opinion* on the part of the speaker or writer (278. 1, 3).



## INDIRECT QUESTIONS (P. 339).

**68.** Indirect questions take their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the regular rule for sequence of tenses (see **319**).

## DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE (P. 343).

**69.** In passing from direct to indirect discourse, principal clauses, if declarative, are changed to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and subordinate clauses to the subjunctive.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES (P. 355).

**70.** A relative clause, having a definite antecedent, and adding merely a descriptive fact, takes the indicative.

**71.** Relative pronouns and relative adverbs take the subjunctive when they introduce clauses of *purpose*, *result*, *condition*, *cause*, or *concession*.

## ATTRACTION OF MODE (P. 359).

**72.** A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it depends on, and forms an essential part of, an infinitive or subjunctive clause.

## INFORMAL INDIRECT DISCOURSE (P. 360).

**73.** A relative or other subordinate clause may take the subjunctive when it expresses, though not in formal indirect discourse, the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer.

## ADVERBS.

## USES OF ADVERBS (P. 119).

**74.** Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

## CONJUNCTIONS (P. 176).

**75.** Conjunctions connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences.

# READING LESSONS.

## I. FABLES.

NOTE. — The figures in the following sections refer to the rules on p. 370 ff.

### 1. THE KID AND THE WOLF.

Căpella,<sup>1</sup> stâns<sup>6</sup> in tectō dōmūs,<sup>8</sup> lūpum<sup>20</sup> vīdit<sup>2</sup> praetēreuntem, et lūdificāvit. Sed lūpus, “Nōn tū,” inquit, “sed lōcus tuus, mē lūdificat.”

Saepe lōcus et tempus hōmīnēs tīmīdōs audācēs reddit.

### 2. THE BOY BATHING.

Puer, balneum pētēns in flūviō, aquā paene extinctus est. Et vidēns viātōrem quendam, clāmāvit, “Subvēnī mihī!”<sup>14</sup> Sed hic exprōbrāvit puērō<sup>18</sup> tēmēritātem. Puellūlus autem dīxit, “Prīmum subvēnī, deinde rēprēhendēre<sup>49</sup> licet.”

### 3. THE FOX AND THE LION.

Vulpēs vīdit leōnem rētibus<sup>33</sup> captum, et stāns prōpe, lūdificāvit eum īnsōlenter. Leō autem, “Nōn tū,” inquit, “mē lūdificās,<sup>2</sup> sed mālum quod in mē incīdit.”

### 4. THE ASS IN THE LION'S SKIN.

Asīnus, pellem<sup>27</sup> leōnis indūtus, circum currēbat, cētēra ānīmālia<sup>20</sup> terrēns. Et cum vulpem vidēret, eam quōque terrēre<sup>49</sup> cōnātus est. Sed haec, āsīnī vāgītū<sup>46</sup> audītō, “Scīto,” inquit, “mē quōque terrītā fūtūrā fuīsse nīsi tē vāgientem audīsem.”<sup>57</sup>

### 5. THE HOUND AND THE LION.

Cānis vēnātīcus<sup>6</sup> leōnem vīdit, et īnsēcūtus est. Cum autem leō sē vertēret, āc rūgīret, cānis mētuēns retrorsum

fūgit. Tum vulpēs, cōspicāta, “O mālum cāput!” inquit;  
“Tēne<sup>21</sup> leōnem sectārī? cūjus<sup>5</sup> nē vōcem quīdem tōlērāre  
pōtuistī.”

#### 6. THE WOLF AND THE LAMB.

Lūpus īnsēcūtus est āgnum. At hic in templum cōnfūgit.  
Lūpō autem āgnum invōcante, et mīnitante pontīficem eum  
sacrīfīcātūrum, rēspondit āgnus, “Māllem quīdem deō sācer  
esse quam ā tē trūcīdārī.”

#### 7. THE FARMER AND THE SNAKE.

Agrīcōla sēnex, hiēmis tempōre, serpentem invēnit gēlū  
rīgentem, et misērēscēns sub veste condīdit. Mox serpēns,  
incālēscēns, et indōlem suam rēcūpērāns, bēnēfactōrem mō-  
mordit interfēcitque; quī mōriēns dīxit, “Justa pātiōr, quī<sup>5</sup>  
ānīmālī<sup>13</sup> imprōbō vītā servāvērīm.”<sup>71</sup>

#### 8. THE WIDOW'S HEN.

Vīdua quaedam gallīnam hābuit, quae singūla ōva cottīdiē  
pēpērit. At rāta, sī plūs hordēī<sup>19</sup> gallīnae<sup>13</sup> dēdisset,<sup>57</sup> hanc  
bīnā cottīdiē ōva pārītūram, īta fēcīt. Sed gallīna, pinguis  
facta, nē singūla quīdem postea pārēre vālēbat.

### II. LIFE OF CÆSAR.

#### CÆSAR IS PROSCRIBED, BUT PARDONED BY SULLA.

1. G. Jūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā gēnītus fāmiliā,<sup>31</sup> annum  
āgēns sextum et dēcīmum, pātrē amīsīt. Paulō post Cor-  
nēliam dūxit ūxōrem, cūjus cum pāter Sullae<sup>19</sup> esset īnīmīcus,  
vōluit Sulla Caesārem compellēre<sup>49</sup> ut eam dīmīttēret; nēque  
id pōtuit effīcēre. Ob eam causam Caesar bōnīs<sup>31</sup> spōliātus,  
cum ētiam ad mortem quaerērētur, mūtātā veste, noctū ēlapsus  
est ex urbe, et, quamquam tunc quartānae morbo lābōrābat,  
prōpe per singulās noctēs lātēbrās commūtāre cōgēbātur; et  
comprēhensus ā Sullae libertō, vix datā pēcūniā<sup>33</sup> ēvāsīt.

Postrēmō per prōpinquōs et affīnēs suōs vēniam impētrāvit, diū rēpūgnante Sulla, quī cum dēprēcāntibus ornātissimīs vīrīs dēnēgasset, atque illī pertināciter contendērent victus tandem dīxit, eum, quem salvum tantōpēre cūpērent, āli-quandō optimātium partibus,<sup>15</sup> quās simul dēfendissent, exī-tiō<sup>15</sup> fūtūrum, multōsque in eō puērō īnesse<sup>48</sup> Māriōs.

#### CÆSAR'S CAPTURE BY THE PIRATES.

2. Caesar, mortuō Sullā et compōsitā sēditione cīvīli, Rhō-dum sēcēdere<sup>49</sup> stātuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō, tunc clāris-simō dicendī māgistrō, ōpēram dāret; sed in ītinēre ā pīrātīs captus est, mansitque āpud eōs quadrāgintā diēs.<sup>24</sup> Per omne autem illud spātium ita sē gessit, ut pīrātīs<sup>20</sup> terrōrī<sup>15</sup> pārīter ac vēnēratiōnī<sup>15</sup> esset. Intērim cōmitēs servōsque dīmīsērat ad expēdiendās pēcūniās, quībus rēdimērētur. Vigintī tālenta pīrātae postūlāvērant; ille vērō quinquāgintā dātūrum<sup>48</sup> sē spōpondit. Quībus nūmērātis, expōsitus est in litōre. Caesar libērātus cōnfestim Milētum,<sup>25</sup> quae urbs proximē ābērat, prō-pērāvit; ibīque contractā classe, stantēs adhuc in eōdem lōcō praedōnēs noctū adortus, āliquot nāvēs, mersīs āliīs,<sup>46</sup> cēpit, pīrātāsque ad dēditiōnem rēdactōs eō affēcit suppliciō, quod<sup>5</sup> illīs saepe per jōcum mīnātus ērat, cum ab iīs dētīnērētur; crūcibus<sup>28</sup> illōs suffigī jussit.

#### CÆSAR'S QUÆSTORSHIP IN SPAIN.

3. Caesar quaestor<sup>3</sup> factus in Hispāniam prōfectus est; cumque Alpēs transīret, et ad cōnspectum paupēris cūjusdam vīcī cōmitēs ejus per jōcum inter sē dispūtārent, an illīc ētiam esset ambītiōnī<sup>16</sup> lōcus; sēriō dīxit Caesar, mālle sē ibī prīmum esse quam Rōmae<sup>44</sup> sēcundum. Ita ānīmus dōmī-nātiōnis<sup>9</sup> āvidus ā primā aetāte rēgnum concūpiscēbat, semperque in ōre hābēbat hōs Eurīpīdis, Graecī poetae, ver-sus: *Nam sī viōlandum est jūs, rēgnandī grātiā viōlandum est; āliīs rēbus pietātem cōlās.*<sup>53</sup> Cum vērō Gādēs,<sup>25</sup> quod est Hispāniae oppīdum, vēnisset, vīsā Alexandrī<sup>8</sup> māgnī imāgīne

ingēmuit, et lācrimās fūdit. Causam quaerentibus āmīcīs, “Nōnne,” inquit, “īdōnea dōlendī causa est, quod nīhildum mēmōrābile gessērim, eam aetātem ādeptus, quā<sup>45</sup> Alexander jam terrārum orbem subēgērat?”

#### LEADER OF THE DEMOCRATIC PARTY.

4. Caesar in captandā<sup>50</sup> plēbis grātiā et ambiendīs<sup>50</sup> hōnōribus patrimonium effūdit; aere āliēnō oppressus ipse dicēbat, sibi<sup>16</sup> ōpus esse mīlliēs sestertium,<sup>10</sup> ut hābēret nīhil. Hīs artibus cōsūlātum ādeptus est, collēgaque eī dātus Marcus Bibūlus, cui<sup>14</sup> Caesāris cōsilia haud plācēbant. Inītō māgistrātū<sup>46</sup> Caesar lēgem agrāriam tūlit, hoc est, de dīvidendō ēgēnis cīvibus<sup>13</sup> agrō publicō; cui lēgī<sup>14</sup> cum sēnātus rēpūgnāret, Caesar rem ad pōpulum dētūlit. Bibūlus collēga in fōrum vēnit, ut lēgī<sup>18</sup> fērēndae<sup>50</sup> obsistēret; sed tanta commōta est sēditiō, ut in cāput cōsūlis cōphīnus stercōre<sup>39</sup> plēnus effundērētur, fascēsque frangērentur. Tandem Bibūlus, ā sātellitibus Caesāris fōrō<sup>31</sup> expulsus, dōmī<sup>44</sup> sē continēre per rēliquum annī tempus coactus est, cūriāque abstīnēre. Intereā ūnus Caesar omnia ad arbitrium in rēpublicā administrāvit; unde quīdam hōmīnēs fācētī, quae eō annō gesta sunt, nōn, ut mōs ērat, cōsūlibus<sup>46</sup> Caesāre et Bibūlō acta esse dicēbant, sed Jūlio et Caesāre, ūnum cōsūlem nōmīne et cōgnōmīne prō duōbus appellantēs.

#### PROCONSUL IN GAUL.

5. Caesar functus cōsūlātū<sup>33</sup> Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Gessit autem nōvem annīs,<sup>45</sup> quībus in impēriō fuit, haec fērē. Galliam in prōvinciae Rōmānae formam rēdēgit; Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incōlunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum<sup>10</sup> ponte fabricātō aggressus māximīs affēcīt clādibus.<sup>33</sup> Britānōs antea ignōtōs vīcit, iisque<sup>14</sup> pēcūniās et obsidēs impērāvit; quō in bellō multa Caesāris facta ēgrēgia narrantur. Inclīnante in fūgam exercītū, rāpuit ē mānū mīlitis fūgientis scūtum, et in prīmam āciem vōlitāns pūgnam rēstituit. In āliō proeliō

âquîlifêrum terga vertentem faucibus<sup>33</sup> comprêhendit, in contrâriam partem rêtrâxit, dextêramque ad hostem prôten-dens: "Quorsum tû," inquit, "âbîs? Illîc sunt, quîbus cum dimicâmus." Quô factô militîbus ânimôs addidit.<sup>13</sup>

#### CÆSAR BEGINS THE CIVIL WAR.

6. Caesar cum adhûc in Galliâ dêtînêrêtur, nê imperfectô bellô discêderet, postulâvit ut sîbî licêret, quamvis absentî, îterum cōsûlâtum pêtêre;<sup>49</sup> quod eî â sênâtû est nêgâtum. Eâ rê commôtus in Itâliam rêdiit, armîs injûriam acceptam vindicâturus; plûrimisque urbibus<sup>46</sup> occupâtis Brundisium contendit, quô Pompêius cōsûlêsq̃ue cōnfûgêrant. Tunc summae audâciae fâcînus Caesar êdîdit: â Brundisiô Dyrrâchium inter oppôsîtâs classês grâvissimâ hiême<sup>45</sup> trânsiit; cessantîbusque cōpiîs, quâs subsêquî jussêrat, cum ad eâs arcessendâs<sup>50</sup> frustrâ mîsisset, mōrae<sup>19</sup> impâtiêns castrîs noctû êgrêditur, clam sôlus nâvicûlam cōscendit obvôlûtô câpite, nê âgnoscerêtur. Mâre, adversô ventô vêhêmenter flante, intûmescêbat; in altum tâmen prôtînus dirîgî nâvigium jûbet; cumque gûbernâtor paene obrûtus fluctibus<sup>33</sup> adversae tempestâtî cêderet: "Quid tîmês?" ait; "Caesârem vêhis."

#### CÆSAR DEFEATS POMPEY AND SUBDUES THE EAST.

7. Deinde Caesar in Thessâliam prôfectus est, ubî Pompêium Pharsalicô proeliô fûdit, fûgientem pêrsecûtus est, eumque<sup>21</sup> in îtinêre cōgnôvit occîsum fuisse. Tum bellum Ptôlêmaeô,<sup>18</sup> Pompêiî interfectorî,<sup>3</sup> intûlit â quô sîbî quôque însidiâs pârârî vîdêbat; quô victô, Caesar in Pontum trânsiit, Pharnâcemque, Mîthridâtis filium rêbellantem aggressus intrâ quintum ab adventû diem, quattuor vêrô, quîbus in cōspectum vênêrat, hōrîs, ûnô proeliô prôflîgâvit. Quam victôriæ cêlêritâtem inter triumphandum nôtâvit, înscriptô inter pompae ornâmenta trium verbôrum titûlô, *Vênî, vîdî, vîcî*. Sua deinceps Caesârem ubîque cômîtâta est fortûna.

Scipionem et Jūbam, Nūmīdiae rēgem, rēliqiās Pompēianārum partium in Africā rēfōventēs, dēvicit. Pompēiī libērōs in Hispānia sūpērāvit. Clēmēter ūsus est victōriā,<sup>33</sup> et omnībus,<sup>14</sup> quī contrā sē arma tūlērant, pēpercit. Rēgressus in urbem, quinquē triumphāvit.

CÆSAR IS DECLARED PERPETUAL DICTATOR, BUT IS SOON  
AFTER ASSASSINATED.

8. Bellis cīvīlibus cōfectis, Caesar, dictātor<sup>3</sup> in perpētuum creātus, āgēre insōlentius coepit. Sēnātum ad sē vēnientem sēdēns excēpit, et quemdam, ut assurgēret mōnentem, irātō vultū<sup>40</sup> rēspēxit. Cum Antōnius, Caesāris in omnībus expeditiōnibus cōmes, et tunc in cōsūlātu collēga, eī<sup>18</sup> in sellā aureā sēdentī prō rostris diādēma, insigne rēgium, impōnēret, nōn vīsus est eō factō offendī.<sup>49</sup> Quāre cōnjūrātum est in eum ā sexāgintā amplius virīs,<sup>32</sup> Cassiō et Brūtō dūcibus cōspirātiōnis. Cum igitur Caesar Idibus<sup>45</sup> Martiis in sēnātum vēnisset, assidentem spēcīe officiī circumstētērunt, illicōque ūnus ē cōnjūrātis, quāsi āliquid rōgātūrus, prōpius accessit, rēnuentīque tōgam ab utrōque ūmērō apprēhendit. Deinde clāmantem, “Ista quidem vīs est,” Cassius vūlnērat paullō infrā jūgūlum. Caesar Cascae brāchium arreptum graphiō trājēcit, cōnātusque prōsīlire āliud vulnus accēpit. Cum Marcum Brūtum, quem locō filiī hābēbat, in sē irruentem vīdisset, dīxit: “Tū quōque, fili mī!” Dein ūbī ānimadvertit undīque sē strictis pūgiōnibus pētī, tōgā cāput obvolvit, atque ita tribus et vīgintī plāgis<sup>33</sup> cōnfossus est.

CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

9. Erat Caesar excelsā stātūrā<sup>42</sup> nīgris vēgētisque oculis,<sup>42</sup> cāpite<sup>42</sup> calvō quam calvitii dēformitātem aegrē fērēbat, quod saepe obtrectantiūm jōcis esset obnōxia. Itāque ex omnibus hōnōribus sibi ā sēnātū pōpūlōque dēcrētis nōn āliud rēcēpit aut ūsurpāvit libentius, quam jūs laureae perpētuo gestandae. Eum vīnī<sup>9</sup> parcissimum fuisse nē inīmici quīdem nēgārunt;

unde Cătō dīcēre sōlēbat, ūnum ex omnībus Caesārem ad ēvertendam rempublicam sōbrium accessisse. Armōrum<sup>9</sup> et ēquītandī pēritissīmus ērat; lābōris ultrā fidem pātiēns; in agmīne nōnnunquam ēquō, saepius pēdibus anteībat, cāpīte dētectō, sive sōl, sive imber esset. Longissīmās viās incredībili cēlērītate cōnfēcīt, īta ut persaepe nuntiōs dē sē praevenērīt, nēque eum mōrābantur flūmīna, quae vel nandō<sup>33</sup> vel innīxus inflātīs ūtrībus<sup>33</sup> trāiciēbat.

### III. THE HELVETIAN WAR.

[*From Woodford's Epitome of Caesar's Gallic War.*]

#### CÆSAR'S DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs. Unam incōlunt Belgae, āliam Aquītānī, tertiam Celtae,<sup>1</sup> quī<sup>5</sup> linguā<sup>33</sup> nōstrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,<sup>37</sup> institūtīs, lēgībūs inter sē diffērunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Gārumna flūmen dīvidit, ā Belgīs Matrōna et Sēquāna. Fortissīmi<sup>6</sup> sunt Belgae, prop- tēreā quod proximī sunt Germānīs,<sup>19</sup> quī trāns Rhēnum incō- lunt, quībuscum cōtīnenter bellum gērunt. Helvētīi quōque rēliquōs Gallōs virtūte<sup>37</sup> praecēdunt, quod fērē cottīdiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt. Una pars īnitium cāpit ā flūmīne Rhōdānō; cōtīnētur Garumnā flūmīne, oceānō, finī- bus Belgārum. Attingit ētiam flūmen<sup>3</sup> Rhēnum. Vergit ad septentrīōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finībūs ōriuntur, pertinent ad īnfēriōrem partem flūmīnis Rhēnī, spectant in septentrīōnēs et ōrientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Gārumnā flū- mīne ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem ōceānī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertīnet, spectat inter occāsum sōlis et sep- tentrīōnēs.

#### ORGETORIX AND HIS PLAN OF EMIGRATION.

2. Apud Helvētīōs nōbīlissīmus<sup>6</sup> et dītissīmus fuit Orgē- tōrix. Is conjūrātīōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt, et cīvītātī<sup>14</sup> per- suāsīt, ut dē finībūs suīs cum omnībūs cōpiīs exīrent. Fācīlius



eīs persuāsīt, quod undīque lōcī nātūrā<sup>33</sup> Helvētiū continentur : ūnā ex parte flūmīne Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit ; altērā ex parte, monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquānōs et Helvētiōs ; tertiā, lācū Lēmannō et flūmīne Rhōdānō, quī Prōvinciam nōstram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī, cōstituērunt ea quae<sup>5</sup> ad prōficiendum pertinērent compārāre,<sup>40</sup> jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum nūmērū coēmēre, sēmentēs quam māximās faciēre, cum proximīs cīvitatibus āmicītiā cōfirmāre. In tertium annum prōfectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

EMBASSY OF ORGETORIX TO THE NEIGHBORING STATES.

4. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās<sup>50</sup> Orgētōrix dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscepit. In eō itinēre persuādet Casticō, Sēquānō, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod<sup>5</sup> pāter ante hābuērat. Itemque Dumnōrigī Aeduō, quī māximē plēbī acceptus ērat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet. Inter sē jūsjūrandum dant, et tōtius Galliae sēsē pōtiri posse spērant. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs<sup>13</sup> ēnuntiāta. Orgētōrigem ex vinculis causam dicēre coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sēqui oportēbat, ut ignī<sup>33</sup> crēmārētur. Diē cōstitūtā<sup>45</sup> Orgētōrix ad jūdiciū omnem suam fāmiliā, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque cōndūxit. Per eōs sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas, ob eam rem incitāta, armīs jū suū exsēqui cōnārētur, Orgētōrix mortuus est.

THE ROUTE SELECTED.

5. Post ējus mortem nihīlōmīnus Helvētīi id quod cōstituērāt faciēre<sup>40</sup> cōnantur. Ubī sē pārātōs esse<sup>48</sup> arbitratī sunt, oppīda sua omnia, vicōs, privāta aedificia incendunt. Trium mensium mōlita cibāria quemque dōmō efferre jūbent. Erant omnīnō itinēra duo, quibus<sup>5</sup> itinēribus<sup>33</sup> dōmō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquānōs, angustum et difficīle, inter

montem Jūram et flūmen Rhōdānum; altērum per prōvinciam nōstram multō facilius atque expeditius, proptēreā quod Rhōdānus nōnnūllis lōcīs<sup>43</sup> vādō<sup>33</sup> trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allōbrōgum est Gēnāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnibus rēbus<sup>46</sup> ad prōfectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhōdānī omnēs convēniant. Cacsārī cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe prōficisci, et in Galliam ultēriōrem contendit. Pontem jūbet rēscindī.<sup>40</sup>

#### CÆSAR RECEIVES AN EMBASSY FROM THE HELVETII.

6. Ubī dē ejus adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs<sup>7</sup> facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī<sup>71</sup> dicērent ‘sibi<sup>16</sup> esse in ānīmō sine ūllō mālēficiō īter per prōvinciam faciēre.’ Caesar ā lacū Lēmannō ad montem Jūram mūrum fossamque perdūcit. Nēgat sē posse<sup>48</sup> īter ūllī per prōvinciam dāre.<sup>40</sup> Rēlinquēbātur ūna per Sēquānōs via, quā, Sēquānīs invītīs, propter angustias īre nōn pōtērant. Hīs<sup>14</sup> cum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnōrigem mittunt, ut, eō dēprēcātōre,<sup>46</sup> impētrārent. Dumnōrix āpud Sēquānōs plūrimum pōtērat, et Helvētīīs<sup>19</sup> erat āmicus, quod Orgētōrigis filiā in mātīmōnium dūxerat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquānīs impētrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre pātiantur.

#### THE ÆDUI AND OTHER TRIBES COMPLAIN TO CÆSAR OF THE ENCROACHMENTS OF THE HELVETII.

7. Caesar in Itāliam māgnīs itīnērībus contendit, duāsque ibī lēgiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et in ūltēriōrem Galliam, per Alpēs, īre contendit. In finēs Vōcontiōrum diē septimō pervēnit; inde in Allōbrōgum finēs, ab Allōbrōgibus in Sēgusiānōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhōdānum primī. Helvētīi jam per angustias et finēs Sēquānōrum suās cōpiās trānsdūxērant, et Aeduōrum āgrōs pōpūlābantur. Aeduī, cum sē<sup>20</sup> dēfendēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Cacsārem mittunt rōgātum<sup>51</sup> auxilium. Eōdem tempōre Aeduī Ambarri, cōnsanguīneī<sup>8</sup> Aeduōrum, Cacsārem

certiorem faciunt, sēsē, dēpōpūlātīs agrīs, nōn faciē ab oppidīs vim hostium prōhibēre. Item Allōbrōgēs, quī trāns Rhōdānum vicōs possessionēsque hābēbant, fūgā<sup>38</sup> sē ad Caesārem rēcipiunt. Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi<sup>17</sup> stāuit, dum in Santōnōs Helvētīū pervenīrent.

CÆSAR SURPRISES AND ROUTES ONE CANTON OF THE HELVETII  
AT THE RIVER ARAR.

8. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquānorum in Rhōdānum influit, incredibīlī lēnitāte,<sup>40</sup> ita ut oculīs, in ūtram partem fluat, iudicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi, rātibus et lintribus junctīs, trānsībant. Ubī Caesar certior factus est trēs cōpiārum partēs Helvētiōs<sup>21</sup> trānsdūxisse, quartam fērē partem citrā flūmen esse, dē tertiā vigiliā ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum trānsiērat. Eos impēditōs aggressus, māgnam eōrum partem concēdit. Rēliqūi sēsē in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tīgūrīnus :<sup>3</sup> nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus Lūcium Cassium cōsulē interfēcērat, et ējus exercitum sub jūgum mīserat. Ita, quae pars cālāmītatem pōpūlo<sup>18</sup> Rōmānō intulērat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

CÆSAR CROSSES THE RIVER ARAR AND RECEIVES A  
SECOND EMBASSY FROM THE HELVETII.

9. Hōc proeliō factō, rēliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsēquī posset, pontem in Arāre faciendum cūrat, atque ita exercitum trānsdūcit. Helvētīi, rēpentinō ējus adventū commōti, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūjus lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō<sup>45</sup> Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuērat. Is ita cum Caesāre ēgit : ‘ Sī pācem pōpūlus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciēret, in eam partem itūrōs, ūbī Caesar eōs<sup>21</sup> esse vōluisset ; sī bellō persēquī persēvērāret, rēmīniscērētur et vētēris incommodī<sup>12</sup> pōpūlī Rōmānī, et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum ; sē ita ā patribus mājōribusque suis dīdicisse, ut māgis virtūte

quam dölö contendērent. Quāre, nē committēret, ut is lōcus, ubī cōstitissent, ex cālāmītātē pōpūli Rōmānī nōmen cāpēret.'

THE HELVETII, ENCOURAGED BY THE SUCCESS OF THEIR  
CAVALRY, PREPARE TO ATTACK CÆSAR'S ARMY.

10. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: <sup>6</sup> 'Sibi<sup>16</sup> minus dūbītātīōnis dārī, quod eās rēs, quās commēmōrassent, mēmōriā<sup>33</sup> tēnēret. Sī vētēris contūmēliae<sup>12</sup> oblīviscī vellet, num rēcentium injūriārum mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse? Tāmen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, ūti ea<sup>13</sup> quae polliceantur factūrōs intelligat, et sī Aeduīs dē injūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intūlērīnt, itē, si Allobrogibus sātisfāciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem factūrum.' Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā mājōribus suis īnstītūtōs esse, ūti obsidēs accipēre, nōn dāre cōsuēvērint; ējus rei pōpūlum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc responsō dātō, discessit. Postērō diē castra ex eō lōcō mōvent. Idem fācit Caesar. Equitātum omnem praemittit, quī<sup>5</sup> vīdeant, quās in partēs hostēs īter fāciant. Quī āliēnō lōcō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et paucī dē nōstrīs cadunt. Helvētiī audācius subsistēre, nōnnunquam nōstrōs lācessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac sātis hābēbat in praesentiā hostem rāpīnīs<sup>31</sup> prōhibēre. Ita diēs<sup>24</sup> circīter quīndēcim īter fēcērunt, ūti, inter nōvissimum hostium agmen et nōstrum primum, nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milīb<sup>38</sup> passuum intēresset.

THE ÆDUI NEGLECT TO FURNISH THE CORN THEY HAD  
PROMISED AND CÆSAR CALLS THE GALLIC CHIEFS TO  
A COUNCIL.

11. Intērim cottīdiē Caesar Aeduos<sup>22</sup> frūmentum, quod<sup>5</sup> essent publicē pollicītī, flāgitāre. Nam, propter frīgōra, nōn mōdo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn ērant, sed nē pābūli quīdem sātis māgna cōpia suppētēbat. Eō autem frūmentō,<sup>33</sup> quod flūmīne Arāre nāvīb<sup>40</sup> subvērēt, minus ūtī<sup>40</sup> pōtērat,

quod iter ab Arāre Helvētiī āvertērant, ā quībus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: conferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubī sē diūtius dūci intellexit, et diem instāre, quō diē frumentum<sup>21</sup> milītibus mētiri oporteret, convōcātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs hābēbat, in hīs Divitiācō, et Liscō, quī summō māgistrātui<sup>18</sup> praeērat, grāviter eōs accūsāt, quod ab iīs nōn sublēvētur; praeertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum prēcibus adductus, bellum suscepērit. Tum dēnum Liscus prōpōnit: ‘esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās āpud plēbem plūrimum vāleat; hōs<sup>21</sup> sēditionsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere,<sup>48</sup> nē frumentum cōnfērant. Ab iisdem nōstra cōnsilia hostibus ēnuntiārī; hōs ā sē coercēri nōn posse. Quīn ētiam, quod rem Caesārī ēnuntiārit, intellēgere sese quantō id cum pēriculō fēcērit, et, ob eam causam, quamdiū pōtuerit, tēcuisse.

LISCUS INFORMS CAESAR THAT IT IS OWING TO THE TREACHERY OF DUMNORIX THAT SUPPLIES ARE NOT FURNISHED.

12. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Dumnōrigem,<sup>21</sup> Divitiāci frātem, dēsīgnārī<sup>48</sup> sentiēbat; sed quod, plūrībus praesentibus, eās rēs jactārī nōlēbat, cēlērīter cōncilium dīmittit, Liscum rētinet; dīcit libērius atque audācius. Eādem sēcretō ab āliīs quaerit; rēpērit esse vērā: ‘ipsum esse Dumnōrigem summā audāciā,<sup>42</sup> māgnā āpud plēbem propter libērālītātem grātiā, cūpīdum nōvārum rērum;<sup>9</sup> complūrēs annōs<sup>24</sup> omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō prētiō rēdempta hābēre; proptēreā quod, illō licente, contrā licēri audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus suam rem fāmi-liārem auxisse, māgnū nūmērū ēquitātis semper circum sē hābēre. Fāvēre Helvētiīs<sup>14</sup> propter affīnītātem, odisse Caesarē et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū pōtēntia ējus dēmīnūta, et Divitiācus frāter in antīquū lōcū grātiaē atque hōnōris sit rēstitūtus. Si quid accīdat Rōmānīs, summam in spem rēgnī per Helvētiōs obtīnendī vēnīre; impēriō pōpūli Rōmānī, nōn mōdo de rēgnō, sed ētiam de eā quam hābeat grātiā, dēspērāre.

DIVITIACUS BESEECHES CÆSAR NOT TO TAKE SEVERE MEASURES AGAINST HIS BROTHER.

13. Cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēdērent, sātis esse causae arbitrābātur, quāre in eum aut ipse ānimadverteret, aut civitātem ānimadvertēre jūberet. Hīs omnibus ūnum rēpūgnābat, quod Divitiāci frātris summum in pōpulum Rōmānum stūdium, summam in sē vōluntātem, ēgrēgiam fidem, justitiam, tempērantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ējus suppliciō Divitiāci ānimum offendēret vērēbātur. Itāque, priusquam quicquam cōnārētur,<sup>63</sup> Divitiācum<sup>48</sup> ad sē vōcārī jūbet; sīmul commōnēfacit quae, ipsō<sup>46</sup> praesente, in conciliō Gallōrum sint dicta; et ostendit quae sēpārātīm quisque dē eō āpud sē dīxērit. Divitiācus multīs cum lācrimīs obsēcrāre coepit, nē quid grāvius in frātrem stātuēret: ‘scīre<sup>49</sup> sē<sup>21</sup> illa esse vēra, sese tāmen et āmōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commōvērī. Quod sī quid ei<sup>13</sup> ā Caesāre grāvius accidisset, cum ipse eum lōcum āmīcītiaē āpud eum tēnēret, nēmīnem existimātūrum nōn suā vōluntāte factum, quā ex rē fūtūrum, ūtī tōtīus Galliae<sup>8</sup> ānimī ā sē āvertērentur.’ Caesar ējus dextram prendit; Dumnōrigem ad sē vōcat; frātrem ādhibet; quae in eō rēprēhendat ostendit; mōnet ut in rēlīquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet.

CÆSAR PREPARES TO ATTACK THE HELVETII.

14. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior<sup>6</sup> factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia<sup>24</sup> passuum ab ipsius castrīs octo, quālis esset<sup>68</sup> nātūra montis et quālis in circūitū adscensus, quī cōgnoscērent<sup>71</sup> mīsīt. Rēnuntiātum est facīlem esse. Dē tertiā vīgiliā Tītum Lābiēnum, lēgātum, cum duōbus lēgiōnibus summum jūgum montis adscendēre jūbet. Ipse de quartā vīgiliā eōdem itinēre, quō hostēs iērant, ad eōs contendit; ēquitātumque omnem ante sē mittit.

## CÆSAR'S PLAN IS DEFEATED BY THE MISTAKE OF CONSIDIUS.

15. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Tītō Lābiēnō tēnēretur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus abesset, nēque aut ipsiūs adventūs, aut Lābiēni, cōgnītus esset, Cōnsīdius, ēquō admissō, ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem, quem ā Lābiēnō occūpārī vōluērit, ab hostibus<sup>32</sup> tēnērī; id sē ex Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnībūs cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in prōximum collem subducit, āciem īnstruit. Lābiēnus, ut ērat eī praeceptum (ut undīque ūnō tempōre in hostēs impētus fiēret), monte occūpātō, nōstrōs expectābat, proeliōque abstīnēbat. Multō dēnīque diē, per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit montem ā suis tēnērī, et Cōnsīdium, perterrītum, quod<sup>4</sup> nōn vīdisset prō vīsō rēnuntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō, hostēs sēquītur; et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

## TO SECURE SUPPLIES CÆSAR TURNS ASIDE FROM THE PURSUIT OF THE HELVETII.

16. Postrīdiē ejus diēi quod omnīnō bīduum supērat, cum exercitūi frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum duōdēvigintī ābērat, rei frumentāriæ<sup>18</sup> prospiciendum existimāvit, ac Bibracte<sup>25</sup> ire contendit. Helvētīi, seu quod perterrītōs Rōmānōs discēdere existimārent, sive quod rē frumentāriā<sup>31</sup> interclūdī posse cōfidērent, itīnere conversō, nōstrōs ā nōvissimō agmīne īnsēquī ac lācessere coepērunt.

## CÆSAR PREPARES FOR A GENERAL ENGAGEMENT.

17. Postquam id ānīmum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit, ēquitātumque, quī sustīnēret hostium impētum, mīsīt. Ipse intērim in colle mediō triplicem āciem īnstrūxit. Sarcinās in ūnum lōcum cōferri, et

eum ab iis, quī in sup̄eriore aciē cōstitērant, mūnīrī jussit. Helvētī, cum omnibus suis carrīs sēcūtī, impēdimenta in unum locum cōtulērunt. Ipsī cōfertissimā aciē,<sup>46</sup> rējectō nōstrō ēquitātū, phālange factā, sub primam nōstram aciē successērunt. Caesar, primum suō<sup>46</sup> deinde omnium rēmōtīs<sup>46</sup> ēquīs, ut spem fūgae tollēret, cōhortātus suōs, proelium commisit. Milītēs, ē locō sup̄eriore pilīs missīs, faciē hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disjectā, glādiīs dēstrictīs in eos impētum fēcērunt.

#### CÆSAR TOTALLY DEFEATS THE HELVETII IN A FIERCE BATTLE.

18. Gallīs<sup>15</sup> māgnō erat impēdimentō,<sup>15</sup> quod, plūribus eorum scūtīs<sup>46</sup> unō ictū<sup>33</sup> pilōrum trānsfixīs et cōligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, nēque ēvellēre, nēque, sinistrā impēditā, sātis commōdē pūgnāre pōtērant. Tandem vulnēribus dēfessī, et pēdem rēferre et, quod mōns sūberat circīter mille passuum, eō sē rēcipēre coepērunt. Captō monte, et succēdentibus nōstrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī agmen hostium claudēbant, ex itinēre nōstrōs aggressī, circumvēnēre; et id cōspicātī Helvētī, quī in montem sē rēcēpērant, rursus instāre et proelium rēdintēgrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartītō intulērunt; prima et sēcunda aciēs, ut victīs<sup>14</sup> ac submōtīs rēsistēret; tertia, ut vēnientēs excipēret. Ita ancīpītī proeliō diū atque acriter pūgnātum est.

#### THE HELVETII RETREAT TO THE TERRITORY OF THE LINGONES.

19. Diūtius cum nōstrōrum impētūs sustinēre nōn possent, altērī sē, ut coepērant, in montem rēcēpērunt; altērī ad impēdimenta et carrōs suōs sē cōtulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vespērum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem videre nēmō pōtuit. Ad multam noctem etiā ad impēdimenta pūgnātum est, proptēreā quod prō



vallō carrōs objēcērant. Impēdimentīs castrīsque nōstrī pōtītī sunt. Ibī Orgētōrīgīs fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circīter mīlia hōmīnum centum et trigintā superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte iērunt: in finēs Lingōnum diē<sup>45</sup> quartō pervēnērunt, cum, et propter vulnēra milītum et sēpultūram occīsōrum, nōstrī eōs sēquī nōn pōtuissent. Caesar ad Lingōnēs littērās nuntiōsque mīsīt, nē eōs frūmentō nēve āliā rē jūvārent. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnībūs cōpiīs eōs sēquī coepit.

THE HELVETII MAKE TERMS WITH CÆSAR AND RETURN  
TO THEIR COUNTRY.

20. Helvētīi, omnium rērum inōpiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēdītiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum sē ad pēdēs prōjēcissent, suppliciterque lōcūtī pācem pētissent, atque eōs in eō lōcō, quō tum essent, adventum suum exspectāre jussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, pōposcit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs rēvertī jussit; et quod, omnībūs frūgībūs āmissīs, dōmī<sup>46</sup> nīhil ērat, Allobrōgībūs impērāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam fācērent; ipsōs oppīda vicōsque, quōs incendērant, restituēre jussit, quod nōluit eum lōcum<sup>21</sup> vācāre,<sup>48</sup> nē, propter bōnītātem agrōrum Germānī in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent.

THE NUMBER OF THE HELVETII BEFORE AND AFTER THEIR  
MIGRATION.

21. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tābūlae rēpertae sunt, littērīs Graecīs cōnfectae, quībūs in tābūlis nōmīnātīm rātiō cōnfecta erat, quī nūmērus dōmō<sup>30</sup> exīssēt<sup>68</sup> eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et itēm sēpārātīm puērī, sēnēs, mūliērēsque. Summa omnium fuērat ad mīlia trēcentā sexāgintā et octo. Eōrum, quī dōmum rēdiērunt, rēpertus est nūmērus mīlium centum et dēcem.

## NOTES.

### I. FABLES.

1. *stāns*, present participle, see *sto*; *dōmūs*, genitive, fourth declension, see 174; how does it differ in meaning from *dōmī*? — *praetēreuntem* (see *praetēreo*) agrees with *lūpum*, object of *vidit*. Account for the position of *inquit*. Is *nōn tū*, etc., direct or indirect discourse? How is *lōcus* declined in the plural? *Ans.* *lōcī*, *m.*, means *places in books*; *lōca*, *n.*, *places*; *gen.* *lōcōrum*, *dat.* *lōcīs*, *acc.* *lōcōs*, *m.*; *lōca*, *n.*, etc.

2. *Subvēnī* (imperative), *help*. — *puērō*, etc., *reproached to the boy his rashness*, or, as we say, *he reproached the boy for his rashness*. — *rēprēhendēre* (infinitive), *to reprove*. — *licet*, *it is permitted*, i.e. *you may reprove*.

3. *captum* is a partic., from *cāpio*, agreeing with *leōnem*. — *mālum* (nominative), understand *mē lūdificat*.

4. *pellem indūtus*, *having put on the skin*; *induor*, although passive in form, is used in a middle or reflexive sense, as, *I clothe*, i.e. *I put clothing on myself*, and may be followed by the accusative. — *vidēret*: why subj.? — *cōnatus est*, a deponent verb; see 282. — *haec*, i.e. *vulpes*. — *audīssem* for *audīvissem*; see 89. 2.

5. *tēne . . . sectārī*, *you hunt a lion?* *tē* is the subject of *sectārī*; *ne* asks the question. — *nē . . . quidem*, *not even: whose voice even you could not endure*; *nē quidem*, *not even*, always have the emphatic word between them.

6. *hic*, *he*. — *lūpō*, *abl.* — *pontificem sācrificātūrum*, *sc. esse*, *that the priest would*, etc. For the construction in indirect discourse, see 348 ff. — *māllem*, *I would rather*.

7. *tempōre*; why ablative? — *Justa*, *justly*, *lit. just things*; see 83. 4.

8. *pēpērit*, see *pārio*. — *rāta hanc pāritūram (esse)*, *thinking that she would lay*; see 348. — *plūs hordeī*, *more barley*; see 237.

## II. LIFE OF CÆSAR.

[For a sketch of Cæsar's life, see p. 402.]

1. **annum . . . dēcimum**, being in his sixteenth year. — **paulō post . . . ūxōrem**, a little while after he married Cornelia; **dūcere ūxōrem**, to marry, is said of the husband only. — **cūjus . . . inimicus**, since her father was unfriendly to Sulla: how does **inimicus**, as a noun, differ from **hostis**? — **ut eam dīmitteret**, to divorce her, lit. that he should divorce her. — **bōnis**, property. — **cum . . . quaerērētur**, when he was even sought for in order to be put to death: what kind of a clause is this? why imperfect subj.? on what verb does it depend? — **mūtātā veste**: what does this participle denote? how is the ablative absolute rendered (259)? — **quartānae**, supply **fēbris**, lit. sick with the disease of quartan ague; **lābōrābat**. — **per prōpinqūs**, etc., by means of his relations. — **quī . . . dēnēgasset**, when he would have refused it to the distinguished men who begged for it; **dēnēgasset**, see 338. — **āliquandō . . . fūtūrum**, will ruin (lit. be for a ruin) the party of the aristocracy, etc.: give the synonyms of **cūpio**; of **puer**.

2. Sulla died B.C. 78. — **mortuō**, 282. — **sēcēdere**, to retire. — **per ōtium**, at (his) leisure. — **dicendī**, of oratory. — **ōpēram dāret**, might give (his) attention. — **SYN. māneo**, remain, whether for a long or short time; **commōror**, remain for some time in a place, sojourn; **hābito**, dwell permanently. — **sē gessit**, he conducted himself. — **ut . . . esset**: does this clause denote purpose or result? why is **esset** in the impf. subj.? — Give the syns. of **intērim**. — **ad . . . pēcūniās**, to get money: the gerundive sometimes denotes purpose. — **servus**, **mancipium**, **fāmulus**, all mean a slave; **servus**, as one politically inferior; **mancipium**, a salable commodity; **fāmulus**, a family possession. — **SYN. cōmes**, companion, a fellow-traveller; **sōcius**, a companion, member of the same society; **sōdālis**, a companion in amusement or pleasure. — **quibus rēdīmērētur**: does this relative clause denote purpose or result? — **Milētus**, a flourishing city of Ionia. — **proximē āberat**, was at the nearest distance off. — **SYN. poena**, general word for punishment; **supplicium** (**supplicio**, kneel), a severe punishment (the criminal kneeling for the blow); **cruciātus** (**crux**, cross), torture, as of one on the cross; **tormentum** (**torqueo**, twist), a racking torture, to extort confession.

3. **quaestor . . . factus**, **fio**, in the sense of to be made, appointed, is used as the passive of **fācio**. — **inter sē**, together. — **concūpiacēbat**, desired earnestly, coveted. — **in ōre hābēbat**, lit. had in his mouth, i.e. kept repeating. — **cōlās**, see 278. 1. (1). — **quod**: a relative generally agrees in gender with a noun in its own clause. — **mēmōrābile**: a partitive genitive could not be used after **nihil**; only neuter adjectives of

second declension are so used. — *orbis terrarum* must be used in preference to *terra*, when there is a decided reference to other lands.

4. in . . . *hōnōribus*, in soliciting the favor of the plebeians, and in canvassing for the magistracies (honors). — *dicēbat* . . . *sestertium*, lit. he used to say that there was need to himself of 1,000 times 100,000 *sestertii*, — 100,000,000 *sestercēs*, or nearly \$4,000,000; *sestertium*, gen. plur. used for *sestertiōrum*. — *ut hāberet nihil*: after he had freed himself from debt, there would be nothing left of his own. — *cōsūlātum*: every Roman citizen who aspired to the consulship had to pass through a regular gradation of public offices, and the age in which he was eligible to each was fixed by the *Lex Annalis*, B.C. 180, as follows: for the *Quæstorship*, which was the first of the magistracies, one must be twenty-seven years of age; for the *Ædileship*, thirty-seven; for the *Prætorship*, forty; and for the *Consulship*, forty-three. (See Leighton's *Roman History*, p. 185, note 4.) — *initō* . . . *tūlit* (see *ineo*), when he had entered upon the office *Cæsar* proposed, etc. — *ēgēnis cīvibus*, among needy citizens. — *ut* . . . *obstīteret*, that he might oppose the law's being enacted. — *fōrō*, from the forum. The Forum was situated between the Capitoline and Palatine hills; it was the chief place of public business (see L.'s *Rom. Hist.*, p. 385). There were other *fōra*, but this was distinguished as *Forum Rōmānum*, or as *Forum*, being the most important. — *dōmī sē continēre*, to remain at home. — *cūriā*, from the senate-house: *sēnātus*, the senate, either the senators or the place where they met; *cūria*, the building where the senators assembled. — *quidam*, some. — *nōn ut mōs erat*, not as was the custom; *mōs*, an established custom, especially of a nation; *cōsuetūdo*, habit, which results in a settled usage (*mōs*); *caerimōnia*, a religious ceremony. — *cōsūlibus Cæsāre et Bibulō*, in the consulship of *Cæsar* and *Bibulus*. The year was generally designated at Rome in this way; the name of the consuls for the year being put in the ablative absolute with *cōsūlibus*. This was the year B.C. 59. In this case the two names (*nomen*, i.e., *Julius*; *cōgnōmen*, *Cæsar*) of *Cæsar* are used.

5. A consul, after his term of office expired, was usually sent as proconsul to govern a province; by Sulla's laws, a consul must remain in Italy during his term of office, and then might be sent to govern a province (L.'s *Rom. Hist.*, p. 182). *Cæsar* departed to his province in B.C. 58 (L.'s *Rom. Hist.*, p. 308). — *gessit* . . . *fērē*, during the nine years in which he was in power he accomplished in substance the following. — *primus Rōmānōrum*, first of the Romans. — *ponte fābricātō*, by constructing a bridge. — *māximis* . . . *clādibus*, he made a great slaughter. — *iīs*, from them. — *quō in bellō*, in this war. — *inclinante in*

*fūgam, giving way.* — *SYN. scūtum, any shield; clipeus, a round shield; parma, similar to clipeus, but smaller, a buckler; ancile, an oval shield.* — *in primam āciem, to the front* (L. Rom. Hist., p. 370). — *terga ver-tentem, turning his back* (to the enemy), *fleeing.* — *illīc sunt, there are those.* — *ānimōs, courage.*

6. *adhūc, still.* — *ut . . . absentī, that it should be permitted to him, although absent; what is the subject of licēret?* It was a law that every candidate for the consulship should appear before the magistrate in the city, and have his name entered on the official list of candidates before election (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 322). — *vindicātūrus, to avenge.* — *Brundisium, a town in Calabria, was the port from which those going from Rome to Greece, or the East, embarked; Dyrrāchium, a city on the coast of Illyricum.* — *cessantibus cōpiis, his forces delaying; what does this participle denote?* — *flante, blowing.* — *in altum, out into the deep sea.* — *dirigī, to be steered.* — *cēdēret, would yield.* Cæsar had sailed from Brundisium with only 20,000 men (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 380). Owing to the vigilance of the enemy the rest of Cæsar's army was unable to follow him. His position was thus critical; cut off from the rest of his army, and threatened by a force three times superior to his own. In his impatience he attempted to sail in a fisherman's boat across the Adriatic to Brundisium, for his reinforcements, but the storm compelled him to turn back. In a short time the remainder of the army succeeded in crossing; at the battle of Pharsalus (in Thessaly), Pompey's army was totally defeated (B.C. 48). (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 326 ff.)

7. *fūgentem, (him) fleeing.* — *eumque . . . fuisse, and on the way he learned that he had been killed.* — *SYN. cōgnōsco, learn* (something beforehand); *āgnōsco, recognize* (something before known). — *Ptōlēmaeō, against Ptolemy.* The war against Ptolemy is called the Alexandrine war (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 332). — *quattuor . . . profligāvit, but he conquered him in one battle within four hours after he had come; the relative quibus is in the ablative, agreeing with its antecedent, hōris.* — *inter triumphandum, during his triumph.* After a successful campaign, the victorious general was awarded, by the decree of the senate, the honor of a triumph. He entered the city in a chariot drawn by four horses, preceded by the captives and spoils of war, and followed by his soldiers. After passing along the *Via Sacra*, he ascended to the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus to offer sacrifices (L.'s Rom. Hist., p. 181, n. 2). — *Pompeianārum partium, of the Pompeian party.* The battle was fought at Thapsus, in Africa, in B.C. 46. — *in Hispāniā: the two sons of Pompey, Cnæus and Sextus, had collected a large army in Spain. After a hard-fought battle Cæsar completely defeated them at Munda* (B.C. 45).

8. *coepit* has passive perf. and infinitives, 305. 1. — *quemdam*, for *quemdam*. — *assurgēret*, why imperfect subj. ? — *eī . . . sēdenti*, on him sitting in the golden chair. — *rēgium*, royal. — *ā sexagintā . . . virīs*, by more than sixty men. — *cōnjūrātum est*, a conspiracy was formed. — *Idibus Martiīs*, on the Ides of March, i.e. the 15th. — *assidentem . . . circumstētērunt*, they stood around him sitting, under pretence of paying honor. — *quāsi . . . rōgātūrus*, as if to ask something. — *clāmantem*, sc. *eum*, i.e. *Caesārem*. — *arreptum*, which he had seized. — *quem . . . hābēbat*, whom he had regarded as his son.

9. *erat . . . stātūrā*, *Cæsar* was of, etc., see 292. — *agrē fērēbat*, grieved (on account); *quod . . . obnoxia*, it was often the subject for the jokes of his slanderers. — *sibi*, to him. — *laureæ gestandæ*, of wearing a crown of laurel. — *eum . . . fuisse*, that he was. — *inimīci*: give the synonymes. — *nē* and *quidem* enclose the emphatic word as in the text. — *ad . . . rempublicam*, to overturn the republic. — *anteibat*, see *anteo*. — *dētectum*, uncovered: see *dētēgo*. — *sive . . . esset*, whether it was sunshine or rain. — *SYN. plūvia*, rain (general word); *imber*, rain (heavy, pouring shower); *nimbus*, rain (from dark clouds). — *longissimās viās*. *Cæsar* was noted for the rapidity of his movements; he is said to have travelled at the rate of one hundred Roman miles per day, equal to about ninety-two English miles. — *innixus . . . utribus*, resting upon inflated bags.

### III. THE HELVETIAN WAR.

#### SKETCH OF CÆSAR'S LIFE.

*GAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR* was born, by the common account, in the year B.C. 100 (or, by a probable reckoning, two years earlier), and was assassinated in the year B.C. 44, at the age of fifty-six. The earlier date of his birth is consistent with the fact that he was *Quæstor* in B.C. 68, *Ædile* in B.C. 65, *Prætor* in 62, and *Consul* in 59, since one was not eligible to these offices, according to the *Lex Annalis*, until he had entered upon the age of thirty-seven, forty, and forty-three respectively. But *Cæsar* was most likely exempted by a special act, as *Pompey* and many other prominent political leaders had been (from the *Lex Annalis*). *Cæsar* sprang from an old patrician family, but the circumstances of his early life brought him into close connection with the *Marian*, or democratic, party; for his aunt *Julia* had married *Marius*, and he himself, when but a boy of seventeen, had taken the daughter of *Cinna*, one of the *Marian* leaders, for his wife. At the bidding of *Sulla*, when dic-

tator, Cæsar had refused to divorce his wife, as Pompey had done. His name was then placed upon the list of the proscribed, which means that he could be killed by any partisan of Sulla who happened to see him, and his property would be confiscated, a large reward being first paid to the assassin. Cæsar fled at once from the capital, and concealed himself among the Albans hills, until, by the intercession of the vestal virgins, and many prominent men among the nobility, Sulla was induced to grant a pardon. "You wish it," said Sulla, "and I grant it; but in this boy there are more than one Marius." Cæsar, however, would not accept pardon, and so long as Sulla lived, he avoided the capital. While in Asia Minor, he distinguished himself at the siege of Mytilene (or Mitylene), winning the civic crown for saving the life of a citizen. When the news of Sulla's death reached him, he returned to Rome; but, seeing that there was no prospect at present of the popular party regaining power, he decided to withdraw again from the capital, and to devote himself at Rhodes to the study of oratory, in which he had already gained some renown. On his way thither he was captured by pirates, with whom the Mediterranean Sea at that time swarmed, because the government at home had been for many years so inefficient and lax. The pirates demanded twenty talents — nearly twenty-five thousand dollars — for his ransom. "It is too little," said Cæsar; "you shall have fifty; but once free, I will crucify you." And he kept his word; for no sooner had he gained his liberty than he manned some vessels, overpowered the pirates, and conducted them to a neighboring city as prisoners.

On his return to Rome, Cæsar used every means to increase his popularity. His affable manners, and still more his unbounded liberality, won the hearts of the people. At the age of thirty-five (assuming the earlier date) he was Quæstor in Further Spain (B.C. 68). Two years later (B.C. 65) he was Curule Ædile, an office which gave him a good opportunity to win the favor of the people, because he was to have charge of the public games and exhibitions. As Ædile, Cæsar not only embellished the forum and public buildings, and exhibited three hundred and twenty pairs of gladiators equipped in silver, but in all the diversions of the theatre, in the processions and public tables, he far outshone the most ambitious of his predecessors. His prodigality was frightful, his debts enormous, amounting at this time to more than one hundred million sesterces — nearly five million dollars. When the chief pontiff died (B.C. 63), the most illustrious men of the state sought the office. Cæsar, however, did not give way to them, although Catulus, one of his opponents, who had been Consul,

and was now a prominent member of the senate, fearing to be defeated by one so much inferior in rank, station, and age, offered Cæsar large sums of money to pay his debts, if he would withdraw from the contest. On the morning of the election, Cæsar is reported to have said to his mother, who would gladly have had him withdraw from the struggle, "I shall this day be either chief pontiff or an exile."

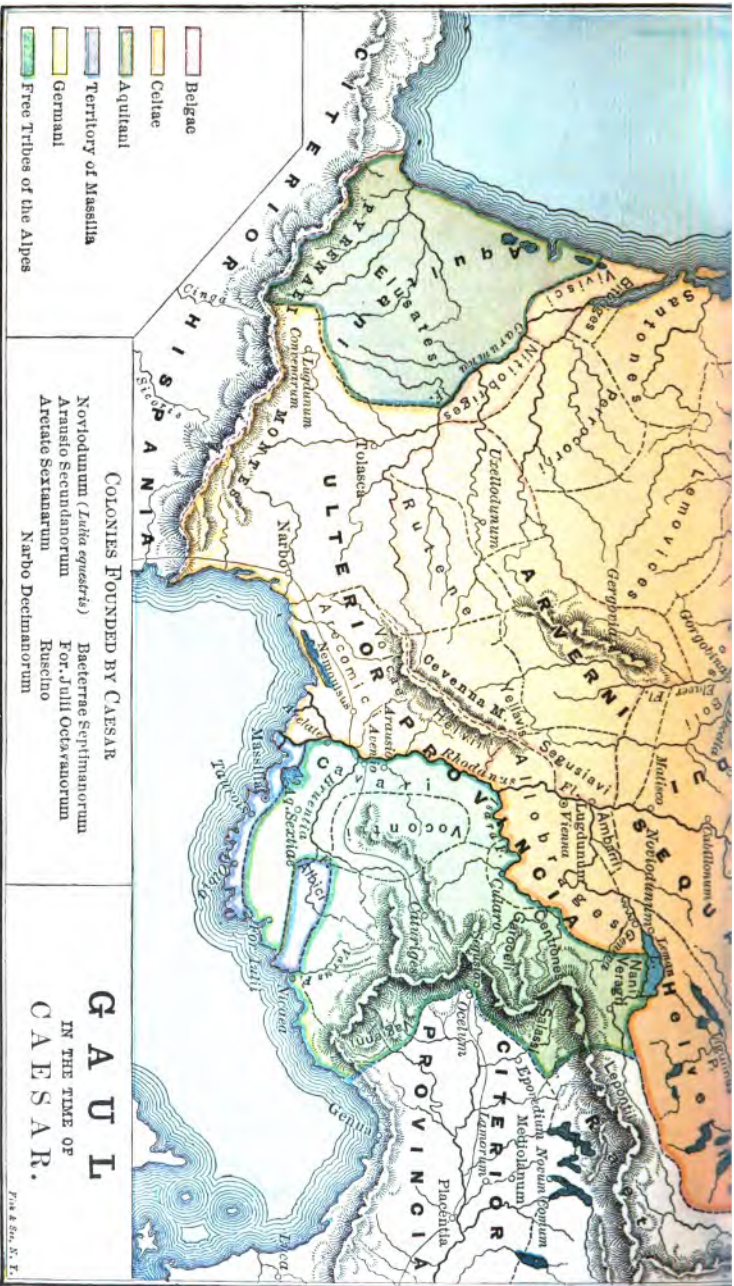
The next year Cæsar was Prætor, and as Proprætor he went, at the end of his year of office, to govern Spain. Before his departure, his old friend Crassus, the richest man at Rome, had to pay a part of his debts, and to stand security for the rest to the amount of nearly a million of dollars. Cæsar is reported to have said in his reckless way that he needed a hundred million sesterces to be worth just nothing at all. In Spain he displayed that civil and military ability which afterwards made him famous. It must have been a strange sight to see this dissolute spendthrift, this profligate demagogue, with his countenance pale and white, withered before its time by the excesses of the capital, this delicate and epileptic man, walking at the head of his legions, and fighting as the foremost soldier with the wild tribes of Lusitania.

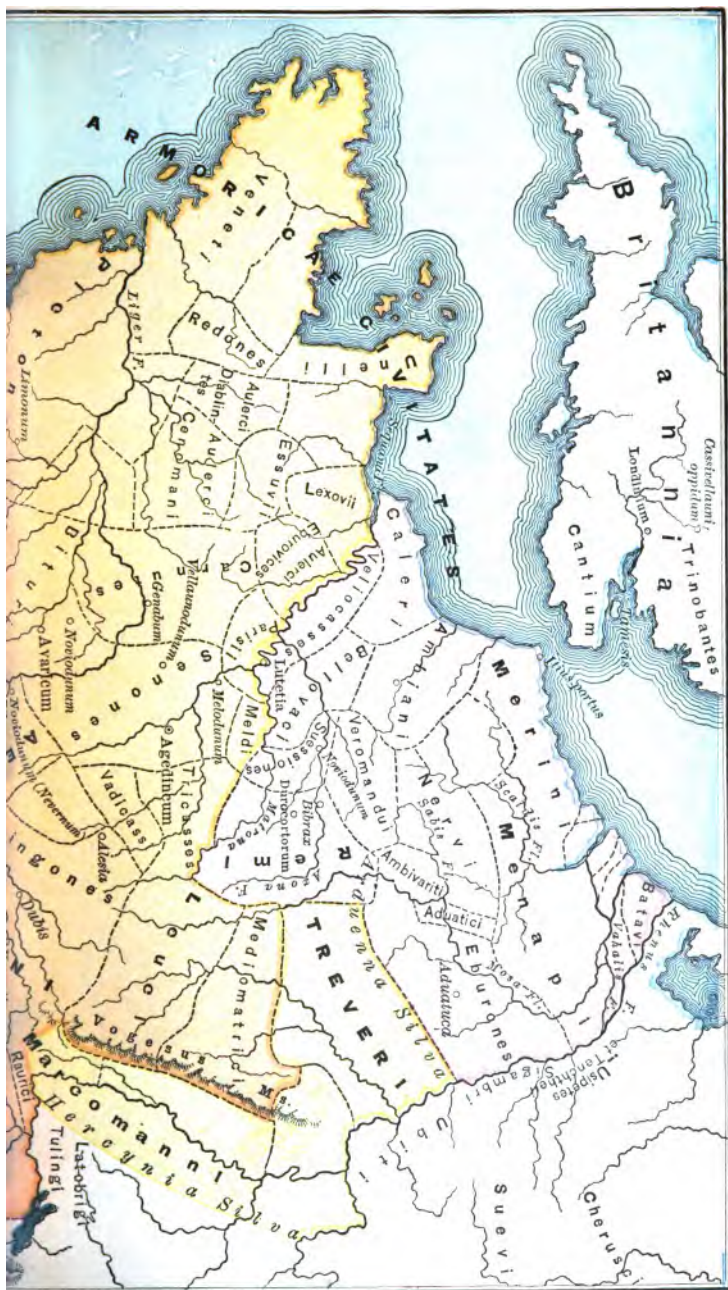
On his return to Rome, Cæsar found Pompey, who had just completed the Mithridatic war in the East, and was arranging for his triumphal entry into the city, at variance with the senate. Cæsar at once saw his opportunity; he formed a political coalition with Pompey and Crassus, one part of the bargain being that Cæsar should have the consulship for the next year (B.C. 59), and after that the government of Gaul for five years. In accordance with this programme, Cæsar was entrusted, at the expiration of his consulship, with the command of Cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum, and the province of Narbo, or simply *provincia*, with three legions, for a term of five years. Cæsar had now attained his object. As Proconsul of Cisalpine Gaul, he could watch the progress of affairs in the capital, while the threatening movements of the tribes in Gaul opened to him the prospect of subjugating the country and training an army for the impending civil war, for Cæsar no doubt then clearly saw that a struggle between himself and Pompey for the chief power at Rome was inevitable.

For a long time the Romans had felt the importance of possessing Gaul, but as yet no systematic effort had been made to extend their dominion in that quarter farther than occupying the seaboard between the Alps and Pyrenees (B.C. 121). The climate of Gaul was healthful, the soil rich and fertile, and the intercourse with Rome easy by land and sea. Roman merchants and farmers had already emigrated









1  
t  
s  
P  
n  
to  
w  
el  
to  
th  
G  
th  
Ho  
La  
do  
fie.  
rer  
cal  
abe  
pun  
Pro  
eig

in great numbers to Gaul, and disseminated Roman culture and civilization to such an extent that many of the tribes could transact business with Roman ambassadors in the Latin language. The centre of this civilization and refinement was the old Greek city Massilia; also the resort of those who had been banished from the capital. The merchants stationed there carried on an extensive trade with the interior of Gaul, and even with Britain. They transported their wares up the Rhone and Saone, and thence by land to the Seine and Loire, or across to the Garonne, and so to the Atlantic. This intercourse produced a close connection between the tribes from the Rhone and the Garonne to the Rhine and the Thames. Cæsar saw how essential the possession of this country was to the Roman state, and that to its conqueror was offered the prospect of surpassing the fame of Camillus and Marius.

Of the population of Gaul, the Ædui had entered into an alliance with Rome, while the Belgæ in the north, and the Sequani in the south, sought an alliance with the Germans. The Ædui, relying on the assistance of Rome, imposed heavy tolls on the navigation of the Saone. The Sequani complained bitterly of this, and thinking that the Roman government was too much occupied with its own contentions at home to furnish its clients assistance, determined to rid themselves of the influence of Rome, and punish the Ædui. For this purpose they invited the German prince, Ariovistus, with about 15,000 men, to their assistance. The Ædui were defeated, and forced to pay tribute to the Sequani, to give hostages, and to swear never to wage war for their recovery, or to solicit the aid of Rome. Divitiacus, the chief magistrate of his clan, alone refused to sign the treaty, and fled to Rome to ask assistance. Ariovistus now invited other tribes across the Rhine, and demanded land to settle them on; the whole frontier of Gaul, from the sources of the Rhine to the ocean, was threatened by the invasion of the German tribes. These tribes so pressed upon the Helvetians, who were hemmed in on the south and the west by the Alps, Lake Geneva, and the Jura Mountains, that they determined to abandon their country to the Germans, and seek larger and more fertile fields in the west. Cæsar, on the expiration of his consulship, had remained in the vicinity of the capital until he accomplished his political schemes. But when the news reached him that the Helvetii had abandoned their homes, and were advancing upon Geneva with the purpose of crossing the Rhone and forcing their way through the Province, he hastily made his preparations, reached the Rhone in eight days, and by skilful negotiations delayed the advance until a

line of entrenchments had been constructed from Lake Geneva to the Jura Mountains. Defeated in the attempt to cross the river in this direction, the Helvetii were compelled to take their way along its right bank, and thus make their journey westward by a more northerly route. Cæsar hastily collected his forces, followed up the left bank of the Saone, cut to pieces in a fierce battle a part of the Helvetian army, and pursued the remainder to Bibracte, where he defeated them in a terrible battle, and compelled the survivors to return to their native country and rebuild their homes.

1. *Gallia*: *Gaul* extended from the Pyrenees and the Gulf of Lyons on the south to the British Channel and German Ocean on the north. It was bounded on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the east by the Rhine and Italy. It was called *Trānsalpīna* (i.e. *beyond the Alps*), to distinguish it from *Cisalpīna* (i.e. *on this side of the Alps*), in northern Italy. It included France, Belgium, part of Switzerland and Holland, and the part of Germany west of the Rhine. In the division which Cæsar here makes he does not include the southeast part, called *Gallia Narbonensis*, or commonly *Prōvincia*, whence the modern name Provence. The Roman dominion in the *Prōvincia* was secured by the establishment of *Narbo Marcius*, a Roman colony on the Atax, in B.C. 121.

The most remote Roman towns towards the west and north were Lugdunum, Convenarum (or Convenae), Tolosa, Vienna, and Geneva. The country was well provided with roads and bridges. The commerce on the Rhone, Garonne, Loire, and Seine was considerable and lucrative, and extended even into Britain. The people were tall, of fair complexion and of sanguine temperament, fond of fighting, but easily discouraged. They were skilled in working copper and gold. Copper implements of excellent workmanship, and even now malleable, have been found in the tombs in many places in Gaul. The Romans are said to have learned from them the art of tinning and silvering. The Gauls, or as they called themselves the Celts, had attained so much skill in mining, that the miners, especially in the iron-mines on the Loire, acted an important part in sieges. There was no political union among the different clans, no leading canton for all Gaul, no tie, however loose, uniting the whole nation under one leadership. Sometimes one canton would extend its power over a weaker one, as the Suessiones in the north, the maritime cantons in the west, the two leagues in the south, one headed by the Ædui, the other by the Sequani; but the Celts as a nation lacked political unity, and the cantons, for the most part, existed independently

side by side. In matters of religion they had long been centralized. The association of Druids embraced the British islands, all Gaul, and perhaps other Celtic communities. The Druids had a special head elected by the priests themselves, special privileges, as exemption from taxation and military service, and an annual council.

The Province in Cæsar's time extended from the Pyrenees to the Alps on the coast, and was bounded on the east by the Alps, on the west by the **Mons Cevenna** (Cevennes), southward from the latitude of **Lugdunum** (Lyons), and on the north (where it narrowed off) by the Rhone, from the western extremity of Lake Geneva to the junction of the Rhone and Saone. — **omnis**: Cæsar means all of Gaul, except that part which had been subdued by the Romans, in opposition to **Gallia** in the limited sense of one of the three divisions. — **est divisa**, lit. *has been divided*; usually translated *is divided*, as this form in English expresses a completed action, the participle being used as an adjective. — **trēs** is placed at the end of the sentence as being the significant word, indicating the number of divisions. — **ūnam**: supply **partem** as object of **incōlunt**. — **āliam**, *another* (part.): if Cæsar had been enumerating them in order, he would have used **altēram** or **sēcundam**. — **tertiam** . . . **appellantur**, *the third, those who are called in our language Gauls*. — **īnstitūtis**, *in customs*; when three or more nouns stand together, the conjunctions may be omitted altogether, or used between the first and second, and second and third, etc. — **inter sē**, *among themselves* or *from one another*. — **dividunt** is to be supplied after **Mātrōna et Sēquāna**. — **proptēreā quod**, *because* (lit. *because of this*); distinguished between **proptēreā**, *for this reason*, and **praetēreā**, *besides*. — **Germānis**, *to the Germans*. — **incōlunt**, *dwell*. Give the synonymes of **bellum**. — **quōque**, *also*; the ablative of **quisque** is **quōque**. — **virtūte**, *in valor*; **virtūs**, from same root as **vir**, means *manhood*. — **ūna pars**, *one part*, of the main divisions of Gaul, i.e. **Gallia Celtica**. — **flūmine**, etc.: notice that the connectives are omitted. — **finibus**: **finis**, *limit*; plur., **fīnēs**, *limits*, often applied to what is included in those limits, *territory*. — **ad**, *towards*. — **Belgæ**; hence the modern *Belgium*. — **īnfēriōrem partem**, i.e. *towards the mouth of the river*. — **ad**, *near to*. — **spectat inter occāsum sōlis**, *it looks between the setting of the sun*, i.e. *it looks northwest*, i.e. from the Province.

2. **āpud**, *among*; **āpud** with the name of a person often means *at the house of*; with the name of an author, *in the writings of*. — **nōbīlissimus**, see 141. — **dītissimus** from **dīs** (149. 4). — **Is** is expressed because it is emphatic. Note the position of the word **Orgetōrix** at the end of the sentence, to give prominence to the name. — **SYN.**

*nōbilis*, *clārus*, *illustris*, denote distinction: *clārus* is one celebrated for his deeds; *illustris*, for his rank or character; *nōbilis*, for his noble birth; *cēlēber* and *inclūtus* (*inclītus*) denote *celebrity*, are generally used of things, not of persons. — *cīvitātī*, the state, i.e. the people, all the inhabitants of a state under one government; it is here the indirect object of *persuāsit*, while the clause introduced by *ut* is the direct object (321. 1). — *exirent* is plural on account of the plural implied in *cīvitās*; why in the imperf. subj.? — *continentur*, are hemmed in. — *ūnā ex parte*, on one side. — *Helvētium*, see *Helvētius*. — *altissimō*; *altus*, high, when reckoned from below; *deep*, when from above downward. — *tertiā*, sc. *ex parte*. — *lācū Lēmānnō*: now Lake Geneva. — The pupil should be required to describe the rivers and give the situation of the places mentioned in the text.

3. *adductī*, induced. — *pertinērent* is in the subjunctive, because it is implied that these things belonged to their departure in the opinion of the *Helvētians*; which (as the *Helvetians* thought), pertained to their departure (364). — *jūmentōrum* (from same root as *jungo*, *jūgum*) is both pack and draught animals. — *sēmentēs . . . fācere*, to make as large sowings as possible; for the force of *quam* with the verb *possum* in connection with the superlative, see 151. Obs. 3. — *proximus* has no positive; its place is supplied by *prōpinquus*. — in . . . *cōfirmant*, they fix by law upon their departure for the third year.

4. *Ad cōficiendās*, to accomplish: *con* is here intensive; it usually means, in composition, together. In how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin (321. 3, Obs. 1)? — *dēligitur*: *dēligo*, to choose in general (not to be undecided in one's choice); *ēligo*, choose, in the sense of selecting from several. — *Sēquānō*, the *Sequanian*. — *ut rēgnum . . . occūpāret*: this clause is the direct object of *persuādet*, prevails upon; *persuādet* is in the historical present, and may therefore be followed by the imperfect subjunctive (320. 6). Give the synonyms of *rēgnum*. — *plēbī*, to the plebeians (see L.'s *Rom. Hist.*). — *ut idem cōnārētur*, that he should strive for the same thing. — *tōtius*, all. — *SYN. omnis*, all (without exception), in opposition to *nēmō*; *ūniversī* (*ūnus-vertō*, lit. turned into one, i.e. the parts brought into unity), all collectively, in opposition to *singūlī*; *cunctī*, all united together in opposition to *dispersī*; *tōtus*, the whole, in opposition to separate parts; whereas *intēger* (*intango*, lit. untouched), uninjured, still whole. — *ea rēs*, this design, lit. this conspiracy. — *ut*, when. — *ex . . . dīcēre*, to plead his cause in chains; lit. out of chains, i.e. (being) in chains. — *damnātum*, sc. *eum*, translate, it was necessary that the punishment should follow him condemned, namely, that he should be burned; the clause *ut ignī crēmārētur* explains *poenam* (342).

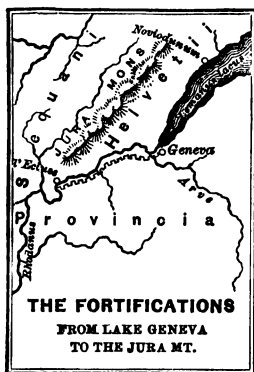


3); for this use of the subjunctive, see 323. 5. — **SYN.** *ignis*, fire; *flamma*, flame; *incendium*, a conflagration; *ignis* is the cause, *flamma*, the effect. — *fāmiliam*, household. — *clientēs*, for the relations between client and patron at Rome, see L.'s Rom. Hist.; here the word is applied to the retainers of the Helvetian chief. — *obaerātōs*, debtors. — *per eōs sē eripuit*, by means of them he rescued himself; for the force of *per*, see 248. Obs. 1. — *incītāta*, incensed. — *jūs suum exsēquī*, to enforce (lit. follow out) their authority.

5. *nihilōminus*, lit. the less by nothing, i.e. nevertheless. — **SYN.** *cōnor*, try, attempt; *mōlior* (*mōlēs*), undertake a difficult work; *nītor* (lit. lean upon), strive. — **SYN.** *aedificium* is a general word for buildings of all kind; *dōmus*, the house as the residence and home of the family; *aedēs* (pl.) also means a dwelling-house, composed of several apartments. — *incendo*, *accendo*, *inflammo*, all mean to set on fire; *incendo*, from within; *accendo*, from a single point, as to light a lamp; *inflammo*, to put into a blaze, either from within or without; *succendo*, set on fire from beneath; *crēmo*, destroy by burning. — *trium mensium* (genitive), for three months. — *quemque*, each one; *jūbent*, for the construction after *jūbeo*, see 342. 1. (2). — *quibus itinēribus*: the noun to which the relative refers is sometimes repeated, as in this case; this repetition of the antecedent is necessary when there are two nouns preceding, and it might be difficult to determine to which the relative referred; the relative clause is consecutive, and takes the subjunctive, see 322. — The pupil should be required to trace this route on the map. — *altērūm*, the other (of the two). — *lōcis*, for the omission of the preposition, see 270. 2. c. — *vādō trānsitur*, is crossed by a ford. — *Allōbrōgum*. The Allobroges dwelt on the south side of Lake Geneva next to the Helvetii, where the Rhone flowed from the lake. — *ad Helvetiōs pertinet*, extends (across) to the Helvetii. The Helvetii occupied a greater part of what is now Switzerland. — *diem dicunt*, they appoint a day; for the repetition of the antecedent, see note above. — *convēniant*, are to assemble: the indicative means that they are assembling; what does this relative clause denote, purpose or result? — Describe the Rhone. — *mātūrat*, hastened, the historical present; what is the object of *mātūrat*? — *ab urbe* (270. 2, Obs. 2), from the city, i.e. Rome. Cæsar had obtained previously to the expiration of his consulship (B.C. 59) the provinces Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum with three legions for five years; afterwards Transalpine Gaul was added with another legion. He set out from the city as proconsul in the spring of B.C. 58. — *Galliam ultēriōrem*, Farther Gaul, i.e. Gaul beyond the Alps, or Transalpine Gaul.

6. *certiōrēs factī sunt*, were informed. — **SYN.** *légātus*, an ambassa-

*dor*, a lieutenant; *ōrātor*, one who pleads a cause, an envoy, an orator; *rhētor*, one who gives lessons in rhetoric, a rhetorician. — *quī dicērent*, to say, lit. who should say, a relative clause denoting purpose. — *sibi esse in ānimō*, that it was their intention, lit. that it was to them in mind: what is the subject of the verb *esse*? What is the object of *dicērent*? — *sine ūllō mālēficiō*, without (doing) any harm. The Helvetii had two ways by which they could go from home, one through the narrow pass between Mount Jura and the banks of the Rhone; the other by the fords of the Rhone, which led directly into the Province. In order to prevent the Helvetii from taking the latter route, Cæsar drew a line of fortifications on the southern side of the river, from Lake Geneva to



the Jura mountains, a distance of about eighteen miles. To accomplish this work, Cæsar had the 10th legion = 5000, and about 5000 or 6000 new levies = 10,000 or 11,000 infantry. — *nēgat sē posse*, he says he cannot; *nēgo* is generally used in preference to *dīco nōn*. — *ūna* is emphatic, one only. — *ut . . . impētrārent*, that, he being the intercessor, they might obtain (their request). — *plūrimum pōtērat*, was able to accomplish a great deal (Rule 27). — *āmicus*, friendly. — *in mātīmōnium dūxerat*, had married; when speaking of a man taking a wife, *dūcere (uxōrem)* was used, i.e. he leads her to his house; of a woman taking a husband, *nūbere* was used, lit. *nūbere sē*

*virō*, to veil herself for a husband, — an allusion to the veil worn during the marriage ceremony. — *itāque*, therefore; *itāque* means *and so*. — What is the object of *impētrat*?

7. in *Italiām*, into Italy, i.e. into Cisalpine Gaul. — *duās lēgiōnēs cōscribit*: the 11th and 12th, and the three (the 7th, 8th, and 9th) legions in winter-quarters at Aquileia, in Illyria; one legion (the 10th) was already on the Rhone = six in all = about 25,000 men. The Allobroges and Vocontii were both in the province. — *jam*, at this time, i.e. while Cæsar was absent collecting troops. — *Angustiās*, the narrow pass between the Jura and the Rhone. — *SYN. pōpūlor*, to ravage (by pillage and fire); *vasto*, to lay waste; *dēpōpūlor*, utterly to ravage. — *Aeduī Ambarri*, the Ædui near the Arar (or Saône). — *rōgātum*, to ask, see 266. — *dēpōpūlātis*, the use of the participle of the deponent verb in a passive sense, see 279. a; the way led through the *Pas-de-l'Écluse*.

— *sēsē . . . nōn facile . . . prōhibēre*, *that they with difficulty could ward off*, etc. — *sē . . . rēcipiunt*, *betake themselves*. — *nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi stāuit*, *he thought he ought not to wait*.

8. *flūmen est Arar*, *there is a river (called) Arar*; now the *Saône*. It unites with the Rhone at the city of Lugdunum (*Lyons*), about seventy miles from Lake Geneva. — *quod* agrees with *flūmen* (Rule 5). — *incrēdibili . . . possit*, *with incredible smoothness of current, so that it cannot be determined by the eyes in what direction it flows*; *lōnitāte*, *smoothness*, contrasted not only with the Rhone, but with the rapidity of the rivers in Italy. — *possit*, 322. — *rātibus et lintribus junctis*, the ablative absolute to supply the place of the perfect active participle; *lintribus*, *small boats*; these were boats made of logs hollowed out. — *trānsībant*, *were now crossing*; note the force of the imperf. — *Helvētiōs trānsdūxisse*, *that the Helvetians had*, etc. In Napoleon's *Cæsar*, this place of crossing the Saone is said to have been at Châlons sur Saône; according to Göler, near Lyons, between Trevoux and Villefranche. — *citrā flūmen*, *on this side of the river*, i.e. on the east side. — *dē tertiā vigiliā*, *just at the beginning of the third watch*. The Romans divided the night into four watches (the first beginning at sunset), each of three hours; the third watch began at midnight and extended (it now being the month of June) to 2 o'clock A.M. — *aggressus* has the sense of a perfect active participle, the verb being deponent. — How does *concidit* differ from *concidit*? — *is pāgus*, *this canton*, in the neighborhood of Zürich. — *appellābatur*, from *appello*, *name*, also *to speak to*; *vōco*, *call*, *summon*; *nōmino*, *name*, in the sense of appointing or electing; *cītō*, *quote*. — *L. Cassium*, this defeat was in B.C. 107. — *cōnsūlem*, see L.'s *Rom. Hist.*, p. 50. — *sub jūgum*. It was considered the lowest degree of military disgrace for the Roman soldiers to be obliged to pass under the yoke. The yoke was formed by placing two spears upright in the ground, and fastening a third across the top of the other two; under this the conquered army must pass in token of subjugation. — *ea . . . persolvit*, *was the first to suffer punishment*; *princeps* is equivalent to *prima*.

9. *consēqui*, *to overtake*. — *in Arāre*, *over and upon*, i.e. a *floating bridge*. — *fāciendum*, 286. — Why is *ējus* used, not *suō*? — *lēgātōs*, in diplomatic language, an *ambassador* or *envoy*; in military affairs, *lieutenant*, i.e. the commander of one or several legions; the tribunes still ranked as formerly, among the higher officers of the legion, but their duties were in *Cæsar's* time limited more to the management of the internal affairs of the legion. Neither did a tribune take the place of a *lēgātus* in case the latter was disabled, but a *quaestor*, who also outranked the tribunes. — *cūjus . . . fuit*, *the chief of which embassy was Divico*. — *bellō*

*Cassiānō*, in the war with *Cassius*, i.e. in B.C. 107, when the consul *Cassius* was the commander. — *ēgit*, argue, discourse. — *SYN. dux*, a leader, a general; *ductor*, a guide; *impērātor*, a commander or emperor. — *pācem* and *bellō* are placed prominently to mark them as significant words. This section is an indirect discourse (348), depending on *dīcēns* (saying) implied in *ēgit*. Compare the form of direct discourse under 348. For the use of the future indicative or present subjunctive, see 326. 2, and 355 ff. — *rēmīniscērētur . . . incommōdī*, he should remember both the old overthrow (lit. inconvenience); this refers to the defeat of *Cassius*. — *nē committēret*, he should not bring it to pass; *committēre ut* often forms a periphrase like *efficēre* (see 342. 3); *nē commīsēris* (350), in direct discourse.

10. *his*, sc. *légātīs*. — *sibī . . . dārī*, that the less doubt is given to him; *minus*, subj. acc. of *dārī*, following *respondit*. — *tēnēret mēmōriā*, held in memory; remembered. — *vētēris contūmēliae*, former insult. — *factūrōs*, sc. *Helvētīōs*. — *Aeduīs* is governed by *sātisfāciant*. — *ipsīs* (see 354. 4): the dative follows the compound, *intūlērint*, 203. — *sātisfāciant*, pay damages. The direct discourse (355) would be: *mihī minus dūbitātiōnis dātur, quod eās rēs, quās commēmōrāvistis, mēmōriā tēneo. Sī vētēris contūmēliae obliviscī vōlo, num possum rēcentium injūriarum mēmōriam dēpōnēre? Tāmen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihī dābuntur (dentur), utī ea, quae pollicēmīnī, vōs esse factūrōs intelligam, et sī Aeduīs dē injūriis quās ipsis sociisq̄ue eōrum intūlistis, item sī Allōbrōgibus sātisfāciētis, vōbīs cum pācem fāciam. — hōc responsō dātō = cum hoc responsum dēdisset. — idem*, neut.; the masculine is *idem*. — *quī vīdeant*: what does this relative clause denote, cause, purpose, etc. (360)? — *vīdeant* is plur., because *ēquitātum* implies *ēquitēs* as the subject. — *quī*, these, i.e. *ēquitēs*. — *āliēnō lōcō*, in an unfavorable place, lit. a place better for the other party; for the omission of the preposition, 270. 2. c. — *audācius*, still more boldly. — *ac . . . praesentiā*, and deemed it sufficient for the present. — *ita*, in such a way. — *nōvissimum āgmen*, the part of the army nearest to those pursuing, i.e. the rear. — *nōstrum primum*, our front, or van; supply *āgmen*. — *nōn . . . intēresset*, not more than five or six miles (each day) intervened; the distributives *quīnis* and *sēnis* imply that this was the constant difference between the armies.

11. *intērim*, give the *syns.* — *cottīdiē*, every day, is used of things that are daily repeated; in *singulōs diēs*, daily, of those things which from day to day are making advance. — *quod . . . flāgitāre*, kept demanding . . . which they had promised in the name of the state; *flāgitāre*, the historical infinitive, equivalent to *flāgitābat*; *pollicitī essent* refers to the prom-

ise as made by the *Ædui*, see 364. — *frīgōra*, the cold climate, the plural is emphatic; the plural of words relating to the weather was often used, as, *sōlēs*, sunbeams; *nīvēs*, falls of snow. — *nōn mōdo* followed by *sed* (*ētiam*), not only . . . but also, places the emphasis on the last; when both sentences are negative, *nōn mōdo*, [*nōn*] . . . *sed nē quidem* (= *sed etiam nōn*), the second *nōn* in the first clause is omitted if both sentences have the same verb, and the verb is in the second clause; if both clauses have their own verb, as in the text, both negatives are used; *nē* . . . *quidem*, *nē* and *quidem* enclose the emphatic word. — *pābūli*, green fodder. — *suppētēbat*, was at hand. — *autem*, besides. — *quod* . . . *subvērāt*, which he had brought up the river *Arar* in vessels. — *diem* . . . *Ædūi*, the *Ædui* kept putting him (*Cæsar*) off from day to day. — *dūcere*, historical infinitive. — *cōnferri* . . . *dicere*, they kept saying that it was collecting, was coming in, was close by; the subject of *cōnferri*, *comportāri*, and *adesse* is *frumentum*; they all depend on *dicere*. — *sē diūtius dūci*, that he was being put off too long. — *frumentum*. The Roman soldier received no meal or bread as his monthly allowance, but merely the grain, which he had to pound and make into bread for himself; 4 *modii* of wheat (about 50 pounds) were given monthly to each foot-soldier (nearly a bushel, if we reckon a bushel at 60 pounds); 12 *modii* of wheat and 42 *modii* of barley to each horseman. Sometimes the Roman soldier carried a supply of food for 17 days (*Ammian.: Hist. Libr. 17*), and occasionally sufficient for a longer time; a supply for only 5 days is mentioned as an exception (*Plut. Sert. 13*). Regularly the price of the corn was deducted from the soldier's pay, which for legionaries = 225 *denarii* = about \$37 to \$40. A *modius* of corn cost less than a *denarius* (see *L.'s Rom. Hist.*, p. 374). — *quī* . . . *præerat*, who held the chief magistracy; *quī* refers to *Liscus*. — Why is *ab* expressed before *iis*? why is *sublervetur* in the subjunctive? why present subjunctive? — *SYN.* *dēmum*, at length (not till now); *dēnique*, finally (in short); *tandem*, at last (after many efforts); *postrēmō*, lastly (last in order). — *prōpōnit*, set forth, introduces the indirect discourse (348) which follows. — *plūrimum vāleat*, is very powerful; *vāleat*, what would this be in the direct discourse? — *seditiōsā* . . . *ōratiōne*, by seditious and wicked speeches. — *nē frumentum cōferant*, from contributing the corn; *cōferant* is plural on account of the collective noun *multitūdō* preceding. — *nōstra* in the direct discourse would be changed to *vestra*. — *ā sē*, by himself; *ā mē* in the direct discourse. — *quīn etiam* . . . *enuntiāverit*, moreover our plans are disclosed; *quīn etiam*, nay even. — *intelligere* . . . *fecērit*, he was well aware with how great peril he did that. — *SYN.* *intellēgo*, understand by means of reflection; *sentio*, per-

ceive by the senses or by the mind. — *quamdiū pōtuerit*, as long as he had been able. — *SYN. tāceo*, utter no word, be silent, pass over in silence; *sileo*, make no noise, be still.

12. *Dumnōrigem . . . dēsīgnārī*, that *Dumnorix* was meant. *Dumnorix* led the national party among his people, as opposed to Rome, while his brother *Divitiacus* favored an alliance with the Romans. — *plūribus praesentibus* (abl. abs.), lit. more being present, or in the presence of so many. — *eās rēs jactārī*, that these matters should be agitated; *jactārī*, a frequentative from *jacio*. — Give the syns. of *concilium*. — *rēpērit esse vēra*, he finds (that these statements) things are true. — *ipsum . . . audāciā*, that it was *Dumnorix* himself, a man of the greatest boldness. — *cūpidum nōvārum rērum*, desirous of a revolution. — *complūrēs . . . hābēre*, that he has farmed for many years all the revenues of the *Ædui* at a low price. — *SYN. vectigal*, tithes (*dēcūma*), on agricultural produce; *tribūtum*, an extraordinary property tax, levied in the tribes, and paid back when the exigency was passed; *scriptūra*, rent of the pasture lands; *portōrium*, harbor duties originally, afterwards applied to tolls paid on transit of merchandise. The revenues among the Romans were not collected directly, but were farmed out (or leased) by the censors to contractors called *publicānī*, who paid a fixed sum into the treasury, and collected the taxes for their own use; they so abused their privileges, that the name *publican* became a term of reproach. — *illō licente*, he bidding, i.e. when he bid. — *audeat*, see 348. — *rem familiārem*, private property. *Dumnōrix* is the subject of *fāvēre* and *ōdisse*. — *SYN. pōtentia*, power as an attribute of a person: *pōtestās*, power as of a magistrate, power to do anything; *dītio* (see *dicio*), power, jurisdiction. — *siquid . . . Rōmānīs*, if anything then should happen to the Romans, i.e. in case of any disaster. — *obtinendī*, see 264. 1. — *impēriō*, under the government, ablative of time and cause. — *dē rēgnō*, of royal power.

13. *certissimae rēs*, the most undoubted facts. — *ānimadvertēret*, should punish him. — *unum rēpugnābat*, one consideration opposed. — *sumum . . . stūdiū*, the very great attachment towards the Roman people; the clause *quod*, etc., is in apposition with *unam*, and might be introduced by *namely*. — *vōluntātem*, good will, as a friend; *stūdiū*, attachment, zeal, as a partisan. — *ējus* refers to *Dumnorix*. — *vērēbātur*, give the synonymes. — *itāque . . . cōnārētur*, therefore before he attempted anything: for the subjunctive, see 337. — *commōnēfācit*, reminds, lit. warns. — *ipsō (354. 4) praesente*, when he himself was present, i.e. *Divitiacus*. — *dē eō*, concerning him, i.e. *Dumnorix*. — *apud sē*, before himself, i.e. *Cæsar*. — *nē quid . . . stātueret*, that he should not determine anything too severe against his brother. — *scīre . . . vēra*, (saying) that he knew those

things were true. — SYN. *pōpūlus*, the people, originally only the patricians, came to include the plebeians; *plebs*, common people, opposed to the patricians; *vulgus*, the ignorant multitude. — *quod . . . accidisset*, because if anything too severe should be done to him by Cæsar; *accidisset* represents, in indirect discourse, the fut. perf. indic. (*accidērit*) by sequence of tenses (see 326. 2). — *eum locum*, that place = so high a place. — *apud eum*, i.e. Cæsar. — *fūtūrum*, it would happen, see 349. — *animī*, the affections. — *frātre* *adhibet*, he has his brother present.

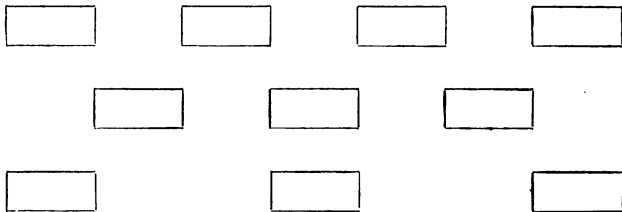
14. *explōrātōribus*: SYN. *explōrātor*, a scout; *spēcūlātor*, a spy; *ēmīssārius*, a secret agent. — *mīlia passuum* = 4854 ft., a little less than an English mile = 5280 ft. — *quālis . . . adscensus*, what kind of an ascent it was by a circuitous route, i.e. at various parts of its circuit. — *quī cōgnōscērent*, *misit*, he sent (persons) to ascertain; *quī cōgnōscērent* denotes the purpose (see 324); the antecedent of *quī* is the object of *misit*: what is the object of *cōgnōscērent*? — *fācilem*, sc. *adscensum*. — *dē quarta vīgiliā* = about 2 o'clock A.M. — *eōdem itinēre*, along the same route. — *quō*, by which (271).

15. *primā lūce*, at daybreak. — *summus mōns*, the summit of the mountain. — *ipse*, and when he himself, sc. *cum*. — *passibus* (see 215. 1); a Roman pace was the distance from where the heel is raised to where it is set down again = 5 Rom. ft. = nearly 4.6 Eng. ft.; a Rom. mile = 4840 ft., an Eng. mile = 5280 ft. — *nēque . . . Lābiēnī*, and (when) neither his own approach nor that of Labienus. — *equō admissō*, with his horse at full speed. — *vōluerit*, in indirect discourse (348). — *sē* is the subject of *cōgnōvisse*. — *ex . . . insignibus*, by the Gallic arms and ornaments; *insignibus*, lit. devices on the shields and helmets. — *subducit*, draws off. — *ut eī praeceptum*, as he had been instructed. What is the subject of *praeceptum erat*? — *expectābat*, continued to look out: imperfect, see 317. 3. — *multō dēnique diē*, at last, when much of the day had passed. — *prō visō*, as seen; lit. for seen. — What is the object of *rēnuntiāsse*? — *quō cōnsuērat intervallō*, with the usual distance; *intervallō* is the antecedent of *quō*.

16. *diē* is gen. after the adverb *postridiē*. — *mētiri*, to measure out. — *rei . . . existimāvit*, he thought he must look out for supplies, sc. *sibi esse*. — *Bibracte* = Mont Beuvray. — *seu . . . existimārent*, because they believed that the Romans, being terrified, were departing; the subjunctives *existimārent* and *cōfidērent*: sometimes the subjunctive is used after *quod*, *quia*, with verbs of saying, thinking, etc., although the idea expressed is that of the writer, and the reason assigned is his own. Roby explains this subjunctive in 1746, and rem.s.; Vaniček, 527, anm. 2. Cæsar's army was composed of four veteran legions, and two legions

newly levied; viz.: the 10th, which he had found in the Province, the old legions (7th, 8th, and 9th) which he had brought from Aquileia, and the two new ones (11th and 12th) raised in Cisalpine Gaul = very nearly 38,000 legionaries. To these must be added 4000 cavalry, raised in the Province and among the *Ædui*, and nearly 20,000 auxiliaries, making a total of 59,000 or 60,000. This estimate does not include the men assigned to other duties, as working the machines, taking care of the baggage, the army servants, etc. In the engagement Cæsar did not employ the two legions newly raised. The Helvetians had about 79,000. For the time denoted by the infinitive, see 349; *discēdere* here is the imperfect infinitive.

17. *postquam id ānimum advertit*, after that Cæsar perceives this; *id* is governed by *ad* in composition. — *in colle mēdiō*, on the middle of the hill, i.e. midway up the hill. — *triplicem āciem*: the triple line of battle was formed with the four veteran legions, viz.: the 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th. The arrangement was such that one legion (probably the 10th) formed the right wing, two legions the centre, and one legion the left wing; the legions were in the same line. This is of importance, because the triple line of Cæsar is commonly misunderstood; if the legion is considered as the tactical unit, there is but one line; but the cohorts of each legion were arranged in three lines. The celebrated *triplex āciēs* is, then, the order of battle, according to which the ten cohorts, of which each legion was made up, were stationed in three lines, one behind the other; ordinarily four being in the front line, three in the second, and three in the third, a suitable space being left between the cohorts. The arrangement of the cohorts of the legion when in line of battle will be understood from the following diagram:—



In Cæsar's line of battle, then, the four legions formed a front line of sixteen cohorts, a second line of twelve, and a third line of twelve.—*sarcinās*, each soldier's baggage; in this sense used only in the plural: each soldier carried besides his personal baggage and trenching tools



provisions for a number of days. The various articles of baggage were bound into bundles (*sarcinae*), and then bound to the upper end of a pole (*furca*) 5 or 6 feet long. On the march this pole was carried on the shoulder, and rested, during a halt, on the ground. The poles were an invention made by Marius, and were hence called by the soldiers "Marius' mules" (*mulī Mariāni*). The weight carried by a soldier, aside from his food and extra clothing, was 35 to 50 pounds; the entire weight (including provisions and clothing) was, as stated above, not far from 60 to 75 pounds. *sarcinae* means originally both baggage and packs, or burdens; it was used sometimes to signify the packs carried by the soldiers (*Bel. Gal.* II. 17), sometimes for the heavy baggage (*Bel. Civ.* I. 81); here it is used for both. The *impēdimenta* were the heavy baggage, tents, engines of war, etc., which were carried in wagons or on horses. — *eum*, sc. *lōcum*. — *in sūpēriōre āciē*, in the upper line (the rear), i.e. those on the top of the hill, the two legions of newly levied soldiers. — *cōnfertissimā āciē*, in very close array. — *phālānge factā*: the phalanx consisted of a large body of men in solid mass, with their shields raised above their heads, locked and overlapped so as to form a close fence. — *sub . . . successērunt*, they advanced close up to our front line. — *prīmum . . . ēquīs*, first his own horse. — *pīlis*: the *pīlum* was a shaft of wood, a little more than six feet long, with a sharp iron head projecting about nine inches; fragments of *pīla* have been found at Alise. — *perfrēgērunt*, broke through, see *perfringo*. — *eā disiectā*, when this (phalanx) was broken apart.

18. *Galliis . . . impēdimentō*, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls. — *plūribus eōrum scutīs*, several of their shields, see synonymes of *scūtum*. — *cum . . . inflexisset*, when the iron (head) became bent. Their shields were locked over their heads, and overlapped one another; a javelin would pierce through more than one, and bind them together. Movements of their left hands, in which the shield was held, were thus impeded. — *pōdem rēferre*, to fall back. — *eō*, thither. — *captō monte*, the mountain being reached. — *succēdentibus nōstris*, our men coming close up below. — *āgmen . . . claudēbant*, closed the enemy's line of march. — *ex itinēre*, on the march. — *circumvērēre*, perfect tense, third person, plural. — *Rōmānī . . . intūlērunt*, the Romans turned, and advanced in two divisions: the Romans indicated the movements of their armies by terms derived from the *signum*, the standard: thus *signa convertēre*, to turn; *signa cōferre*, to engage; *signa inferre*, to advance; it was the third line that wheeled about and advanced, while the first and second opposed the Helvetians who had been driven back. — *ut . . . rēsistēret*, that it might resist those (who had been) conquered and driven back:

for the subjunctive, see 321. — *ancipitī proeliō*, in a double conflict (lit. *two-headed*).

19. *altērī . . . altērī*, the one party . . . the other party, referring to the Helvetians, and to the Boii and Tulingi respectively. — *ab hōrā septimā*, from one o'clock in the afternoon; the day began at sunrise, and ended at sunset; the end of the sixth hour was noon. — *pūgnātum sit*, the battle raged, see 313. 1. — *āversum hostem*, an enemy turned about. — *ad multam noctem*, till late at night. — *prō vallō*, for a rampart; the vallum was composed of the dirt heaped up (*agger*) from the ditch (*fossa*) against the stakes (*vallī*). — *eāque tōtā nocte*, during that whole night, 196. — *nōstrī*, sc. *militēs*. — *pōtuissent*, see 338. — *littērās*, a letter. — *nē . . . rē jūvarent* (ordering), that they, etc.

20. *quī cum*, when they. — *suppliciter lōcūtī*, speaking suppliantly. — *quō tum essent*, where they then were; the subjunctive is used to indicate that Cæsar did not know where they were. — *pāruērunt*, they obeyed. — *quī perfūgissent*, which had fled to these, i.e. whatever, etc., see 361. — *ut . . . faciērent*, lit. that they should supply them with corn, i.e. to supply, etc. — *ipsōs*, them, emphatic, used to distinguish the Helvetii from the *Allobrogibus* (354. 4).

21. *tābūlae*, lists. — *littēris Graecis cōfectae*, made out in Greek letters, which had been learned in Greek Massilia. — *ratiō cōfecta erat*, an account had been kept. — *quī nūmērus . . . eōrum*, what number of them. — *possent*, see 364. — *summa*, the sum.

The following brilliant description of the battle near Bibracte is from Mommsen's History of Rome (vol. iv. p. 253, Eng. ed.): "The two armies posted themselves on two parallel chains of hills; the Celts began the engagement, broke the Roman cavalry which advanced into the plain, and ran onward against the Roman legions posted on the slope of the hill, but were there obliged to give way before Cæsar's veterans. When the Romans, thereupon following up their advantage, descended in their turn to the plain, the Celts again advanced against them, and a reserved Celtic corps took them at the same time in the flank. The reserve of the Roman attacking column was pushed forward against the latter; it forced it away from the main body upon the baggage and the barricade of wagons, where it was destroyed. The bulk of the Helvetic host was at length brought to give way, and compelled to beat a retreat in an easterly direction, — the opposite of that towards which their expedition led them. This day had frustrated the scheme of the Helvetii to establish for themselves new settlements on the Atlantic Ocean, and handed them over to the pleasure of the victor; but it had been a hot day also for the conquerors."

# INDEX.

[The references are to *pages*; figures or letters in parentheses to *paragraphs*. The index is very full, and will aid pupils greatly if they are taught to consult it.]

**A**, sound of, 28; *ā* or *ab* (prep.), 64, 171; after *pēto* or *postūlo*, with abl. of agent after passives, 130, 211; with gerund, 229.

**ABLATIVE**, 48, 97; rule of position, 98; ending *-ābus*, 56; in *-e*, 92; *-i*, 92; in *-i* of adjec., 109, 111; in *-e* of adjectives, 109, 111; in *-ūbus*, 141; after prepositions, 172. **SYNTAX**, 97, 130; of crime, 294; duration of time, 182; uses of, 209; abl. proper, 209; instrumental abl., 209; locative abl., 209; gen. rule for abl. proper, 210; compounds with prep., 210; abl. of cause, 210; or with prep., 210; instrumental abl.: (1) means or instrument, 131, 287; (2) measure, 287; (3) difference, 281, 288; (4) distance, 182, 288; (5) price, 283, 288; (6) abl. of time with adverbs, 288; (7) material, 288; (8) manner, 289, accompaniment, 289; (10) quality and characteristic, 289; of agent, 130, 211; of time, 167; abl. absolute, 222; meaning of, 222; of quality, 269; specification, 278; of difference, 281.

Ablative absolute, 222.

*-ābus*, in dative plural of 1st declension, 56.

*ābūtōr*, 287.

*ac*, see *atque*.

Accent, rules of, 33.

*accīdit*, synopsis of, 291.

Accompaniment, abl. of, with *cum*, 152.

**ACCUSATIVE**, 55; in *-im*, 88, 92; pl., in *-is*, 88; after prepositions,

64; as objects, 55; with verbs of remembering, etc., 294; with impers., 294; with *jūro*, etc., 164. **SYNTAX**, 55; as direct object, 55; with verbs of feeling, 294; after compounds, 173; with impers., 294; cognate, 373; two accusatives, 158; passive use, with verbs of asking, 156; adverbial, 373; duration of time and extent of space, 167, 182; with *per*, 183; as subject of infinitive, 217; in indirect discourse, 343; in substantive clauses, 334 f.; of gerundive, 226 f.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, 294.

*āc sī*, 321.

Active voice, 8, 39-119; how to convert to passive, 136.

*ad*, 63, 173; meaning *near*, 237; in comps., 173.

**ADJECTIVES**, 5; defined, 66; position, 67; like nouns, 67; inflection of, 66; of 1st and 2d decls., 66, 68; model for parsing, 67; of 3d decl., 105, 107; of two or three terminations, 108; of one termination, 108; the inflection of comparatives, 111; cases of, used as adverbs, 123; model for parsing, 112; gen. with, 114; dat. with, 114; adj. clauses, 297; adjectives in *-quus*, 114. **COMPARISON**, 110, 111; construction with comparatives, 112; comparison by adverbs, 116; rule of agreement, 66; rule of gender, 66, 105; position, 67; demonstratives as adj., 199; neut. adjs. as nouns,

- 67; superlatives, 110 ff.; with gen., 115; with dat., 114; model for parsing, 67.
- adjūro** with acc., 164.
- ADVERBS**, defined, 12, 119; classified, 13, 122, 124; illustrated, 12; how formed, 122, 124; compared, 12, 124; position of, 119; numeral, 119, 180; derived from adjectives, 123; classification of, of place, of time, etc., 13, 124; model for parsing, 125.
- Adverbial accusative**, 373.
- Adverbial clauses**, 297.
- Adverbial phrases**, 12, 13, 119.
- Adversative conjunctions**, 175.
- adversus** (prep.), 173.
- Agent**, abl. of, with **ā** or **ab**, 130, 211; dat. of, 258; agreement, 53; of subject, 53; of predicate, 54.
- ālo**, infl. of, 286.
- al, -ar**, as neut. endings, 87 ff.
- ālīquis**, infl. of, 207.
- ālius**, infl. of, 177.
- Alphabet**, 23; vowels and diphthongs, 23; consonants, 23, 24, 25; classification of, 24; see table, 25.
- alter**, infl. of, 177.
- Alternative questions**, 338, 32; answer to, 338.
- ambo**, infl. of, see **duo**.
- Although**, 322.
- ambio**, 280.
- amnis**, gender of, 95.
- an, anne, annōn**, 338 f.; **an** used after **nēscio**, **haud**, **scio**, **dūbīto an**, 340.
- Analysis of sentences**, 18, 189; directions for analyzing, 191; of verbs, 42, 44, 72, 120; of pass. voice, 127.
- Answer**, form of, 340.
- ante** with **quam**, 325, 328.
- Antecedent**, its use with relatives, 203; omitted, 203.
- Antepenult**, 30.
- antēquam**, 327; often written separate, 328.
- Aorist**, 37, 299; rendered like pluperfect, 326.
- Apodosis**, 314.
- Apposition**, 60.
- arbor**, gender of, 95.
- Arrangement of words**, 90.
- Article**, 6.
- As**, used as a rel. pron., 203.
- Asking**, verbs of, 156.
- Assimilation of consonants**, 24.
- atque**, 175.
- Attraction of mode**, 359.
- Attributive adjective**, 100.
- audeo**, 255.
- aut**, 175.
- Auxiliary verb**, 7, 100.
- ax**, adjective ending, 108; adjective in, with gen., 115.
- B**, sound of, 28.
- bam**, tense-ending, 44 ff.
- Bargaining**, verbs of, 283.
- belli**, locative, 235.
- bo**, verb-ending, 44 ff.
- bōnus**, declined, 66.
- bōs**, decl., 96.
- C = G**, sound of, 28; guttural, 25; for **qu**.
- cānis**, gender of, 95; gen. pl. of, 89.
- Cardinal numbers**, 180.
- cāro**, gender of, 95.
- Cases**, 4, 47, 48; general view of, 49; genitive, 48; dative, 48; accusative, 48; vocative, 48; ablative, 48; independent, 4.
- Case**, defined, 4; oblique cases, 48.
- Case-endings**, table of, 51, 58, 78, 88, 89.
- Case-suffix**, 46.
- causā**, used with gen., 210.
- Causal clauses**, 323, 324; **cum** and **qui**, causal, 324.
- Causal conjunctions**, 176, 323.
- cēlo**, with two accus., 156.
- Characteristic**, clause of, 40, 130, 133, 135, 138, 144, 151, 152; characteristic vowel, 40 ff.; sometimes dropped, 135, 139.
- Cities**, construction of, 234 ff.
- civis**, abl. sing. of, 92.

- CLAUSES**, defined, 190, 248; syntax of dependent, 296 ff.; subordinate, 176; conditional, 314 ff.; final, 306 ff.; consecutive, 309 ff.; comparative, 320; concessive, 321; causal, 323; temporal, 325 ff.; substantive, 333 ff.; interrogative, 337 ff.; as subject, object, or appositive, 325; relative, 355 ff.; intermediate, 358; in ind. disc., 347; with causal conjunctions, 176.
- Cognate accusative**, 373.
- Command**, expression of, 178, 248; in indirect discourse, 352; mild command, 248.
- Common gender**, 94.
- Comparative clauses**, 320 ff.; sequence of tenses, 321; in indirect disc., 321.
- Comparative conjunctions**, 176, 320.
- Comparative suffix**, 111.
- Comparatives**, inflection of, 106, 111; ways of, 110; stem of, 111; meaning of, 110, 113, 118; connective vowel, 130; construction of, 112.
- Comparison of adjectives**, 5, 62, 110, 114; ways of, 5, 110; irregular, 116; defective, 116; of adverbs, 114; construction of, 112; with **quam**, 112; model for parsing, 112.
- Complement with copula**, 18, 100.
- Complementary infinitive**, 217, 218.
- Completed action**, tenses of, 121.
- Complex sentences**, 189.
- Compound sentences**, 189.
- Compound words**, inflection of, 96, 142; verbs with dative, 173.
- Concessive conjunctions**, 176, 321; their use, 321, 323.
- Concessive clauses**, 322; in indirect disc., 347.
- Condemning**, verbs of, 294.
- cōnīcio**, written also **cōnjīcio**, 169.
- Conditional conjunctions**, 176.
- Conditional clauses**, 314; classified, 314 ff.; in ind. disc., 350.
- Conditional particles**, 314.
- CONDITIONS**, nature of, 314, 315; simple present and past, 314 f., 317; in ind. disc., 350; future, 314 f., 317; in ind. disc., 350; unreal present and past, 314 ff., 317; in ind. disc., 350; verbs of duty, etc., 358; in ind. disc., 350; disguised, 319; omitted, *id.*; in indirect discourse, 350 ff.; exception in sequence of tenses, 302, 316.
- cōnfido**, 210.
- Conjugation**, in English, 7; in Latin, 39, 40, etc.; characteristic vowel, 40; the four conjunctions, 41, 71; 1st conj., 41, etc., 126; 2d conj., 129, 132, 135, 137; 3d conj., 144, 146, 151; 4th conj., 165 ff.; how translated, 263; formation of, 42, 71; paradigms of four conjs., 259 ff.
- Conjunctions**, defined, 13; illustrated, 13; classification of, 13, 175; model for parsing, 176.
- Connecting vowel** (so called), 130.
- Connectives**, relative used as, 202.
- Consecutive clause**, 309; exception in sequence of tenses, 309; characteristic and result, 311; used after what, 310, 311.
- Consecutive conjunctions**, 176.
- Consonants**, classification of, 26; changes of, 26; double, 23; u a consonant, 24.
- Consonant stems**, 78, 161; 3d decl., 77; of adjec., 107.
- cōnstāre**, with abl., 288.
- cōnstat**, synopsis of, 291.
- contentus**, with abl., 210.
- Continued action**, see **Tenses**.
- Contraction of verbs**, 72.
- Coördinate clauses**, 298.
- Coördinate conjunctions**, 175.
- Copula**, 18, 99.
- Copulative conjunctions**, 175.
- cor**, gender of, 95.
- Countries**, names of, gender.
- Crime**, gen. of, 294.
- crīnis**, gender of, 95.
- cum**, prep., 172; used with abl. of pronouns, 172; appended to abl. of pers. pron., 194; in temporal clauses, 329; **cum inversum**, 329; causal,

324, 330; concessive, 322, 330; not used with certain abls., 289; iterative use, 329; historical, 330; translation of, 331.

**DATIVE** endings, 51, 58, 78; in *-ābus*, 56; in *-i*, 77; dat. of 4th decl., in *-ūbus*, 41. **SYNTAX**, 164; indirect object, 62, 164; used for the locative, 235; with intransitive verbs, 164; with transitive verbs, 62; uses of, with verbs meaning *favor*, etc., 164; with compounds of *ad*, *ante*, etc., 173; with compounds of *satis*, *bene*, etc., 164; of possession, 242; agency with gerundive, 258; of interest, 169; of purpose or end, 170; of advantage and disadvantage, 170; of apparent agent, 170; dat. reference, 170; dat. instead of gen., 170; with adjectives, 114; of fitness, 114; with impers. verbs, 204.

*dea*, inflection of, 56.

Declarative sentence, 74.

Declension, 46; of nouns, 49; how distinguished, 49; general rules for, 50; termination, 49; 1st decl., 51, 52; 2d decl., 57-63; stem, 57; case-endings, 58; nom. and voc. endings wanting in nouns in *-er*, 59; neut. nouns, 62; 3d decl., 77-93; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142.

Defective nouns, 83, 96, 142.

Defective verbs, 7, 285.

*dēlecto*, with acc., 164.

Deliberative subjunctive, 248, 348.

Definite, see Perfect.

Definite price, 283.

Demonstrative pronouns, use of, 199; used as personal pron., 198; as adjec. pron., 199; position of, 199; voc. wanting, 199; in ind. disc., 349.

*dēns*, gender of, 96.

Dental stems, 80.

Deponent verbs, 250; conjugation of, 251, 253; participles of, 252; abl. with, 253; synopsis of, 253 f.

*deus*, inflection of, 59; stem of, 59.

*dīc*, imper. of, 179.

*dīēs*, inflection of, 142; gender of, 142.

*difficilis*, comparison of, 116.

*diffido*, with abl., 210.

*dignus*, with abl., 288; with relative clause, 312.

Diphthongs, 23; sound of, 28; quantity of, 31.

Direct discourse, 342.

Direct object, 55.

Direct question, 338.

Disjunctive conjunctions, 175.

*dissimilis*, infl. of., 106; with gen. or dat., 114, 115; compar. of, 116.

Distance, acc. or abl., 182 f.

Distributive numerals, 180; how used with pl. nouns with a sing. meaning, 182.

*do*, infl. of, 56; irregular, 74.

*-do*, *-go*, feminine endings, 95.

*dōmī*, locative, 234 f.

*dōmōs*, *dōmum*, 118.

*dōmus*, inflection of, 140; gender of, 141.

*dōnec*, 326.

Dubitative subjunctive, 248.

*dūbīto an*, 340.

*dūbīto*, with *quā*, 336.

*dūc*, imperative of, 179.

*dum*, 326; in the sense of *while*, etc., 327; denoting purpose, 326, 327.

*dummōdo*, 318.

*duo*, inflection of, 181.

Duration, acc. of, 182.

*-dus*, participle in, 256 f.

*E*, prep., see *Ex*.

*ēdo*, infl. of, 280; irregularity of, 280; pass. of, 280.

Effecting, verbs of, 311.

*ēgeo*, with gen.

Emphasis, as affected by or affecting arrangement, 90.

Enclitic, 176.

Endings, of case, 51, 58, 88; of verbs, English method of pronunciation, 34-36.

English verb, forms of, 14-17.

*ēnim*, 176.

[42 f.

**eo**, irreg. verb, inflection of, 279; stem of, 279; intrans. compounds of, 279; trans. compounds, 279; pass. of, 280; perfect of, 280.  
**-er**, nom. ending, 59.  
**ergo**, 175.  
**-es**, as nom. ending, 88.  
**esse** and its compounds, 272; inflection of, 102; inflection of compounds, 272.  
**et . . . et**, both . . . and, 175.  
**ētiām**, in answers, 334.  
**ētiāmsī**, 322.  
**etsī**, 322.  
**EUPHONIC CHANGES**, 25; vowel weakening, 26; of 3d conj., 149, 154.  
**ēvēnit**, synopsis of, 291.  
**Exclamatory sentences**, 74.  
**Expletive**, 192.  
**F**, sound of, 28.  
**Fac**, imper. of, 179.  
**fācīlis**, comparison of, 116.  
**fācio**, 282; compounds of, 282.  
**fāri**, def. verb, 287.  
**fās**, with supine, 232.  
**Fearing**, verbs of (**nē** or **ut**), 307.  
**Feminine**, rule of gender, 95.  
**fer**, imper. of, 179.  
**fēro**, infl. of, 276; compounds of, 277; irregularity of, 277.  
**fido**, semi-deponent, 255; with abl., 210.  
**fillus**, infl. of, 58; voc. of, 48.  
**Fifth declension**, 142.  
**Filling**, verbs of, with ablative, 288.  
**Final clauses**, 298, 306; how translated, 306, 307; in indirect discourse, 347 f.  
**Final conjunctions**, 176, 306.  
**Final vowels**, quantity of, 86.  
**finis**, gender of, 95; abl. sing., 92.  
**Finite verb**, 9.  
**fio**, infl. of, 282; used as pass. of **fācio**, 282; compounds of, 282.  
**First conjugation**, formation, 41 ff.; inflection of, 41 ff.  
**First declension**, 51.  
**flāgīto**, constr. of, 156.

**fōns**, gender of, 95.  
**fōre ut**, 345.  
**Forgetting**, verbs of, 294.  
**fōrem**, 241.  
**Fourth conjugation**, formation of, 157 ff.; inflection, 157 ff.  
**frētus**, with abl., 210.  
**fruor, fungor**, with abl., 287.  
**FUTURE TENSE**, 10, 44, 109, 120, 130, 144; vowel changes, 145, 158.  
**FUTURE PERFECT**, 9, 10; syntax, 304; for simple future, 315; represented in subj., 304; in ind. disc., 304.  
**fūtūrum sit ut**, used instead of periphrastic form, 304.  
**G = c** (in early use), sound of, 28.  
**gaudeo**, 255.  
**GENDER**, 13; natural and grammatical, 47; common, 94; of 1st decl., 51; of 2d decl., 57, 62; of 3d decl., 94, 95; of 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142; gen. of indeclinable words, clauses, etc., 47, 334.  
**General truth**, 328.  
**General relatives**, 331, 357.  
**GENITIVE**, 48, 60; pl. in **-um**, 92; of 1st decl., 51; of 2d decl., 57, 59; of nouns in **-ius**, and **-ium**, 58; gender, 58; of 3d decl. in **-ium**, 92; in **-ius**, 177; of adjec., 66, 109. **SYNTAX**, 61; subjective, 162; objective, 162; possessive, 60, 162; in predicate, 103; partitive, 198; predicate gen., 103, 104; with adjectives, 115; with verbs, 294 f.; of memory, 295; of charge and penalty, 294; of feeling, 295; impers., 295; interest, 255; of plenty and want, 115; of value, 295; of gerundive, 228; of quality, 269.  
**GERUND**, 38, 225; not one of the principal parts of a verb, 38; nom. how supplied, 225; how formed, 226; endings of, 226; acc., how used, 226; its government, 227; equivalent gerundive forms, 227; of 3d and 4th conjugations, 255. **SYNTAX**, 228.

**GERUNDIVE**, 227; uses of gen., 227, 228; dat. 228; acc., 228; abl., 229; after what verbs used, 228; of 3d and 4th conjugations, 255; when not admissible, 228.

**grātīa**, with gen., 210.

Greek nouns, 52.

Guttural stems, of nouns, 17; of verbs, 148, 161.

**H**, spirant, 23; guttural, 24; sound of, 28.

**hic**, infl. of, 197; use of, 197, 198 f.

**Hindering**, verbs of, with **nē** or **quōmīnus**, 308; negative with **quīn**, 310; sequence of tenses, 310; after neg. indef. expressions, 310.

**Historical infin.**, 412.

**Historical present**, 303, 346.

**Historical tenses**, 302.

**Hoping**, verbs of, 345; with infin., 345.

**HORTATORY SUBJ.**, 248.

**hūmī**, locative, 235.

**I**, sound of, 27; **i** and **j** interchangeable, 24; **i** suppressed in **cōnīcio**, etc., 169; how pronounced between two vowels, 286; of perfect, 71.

**-i**, abl. in, 87, ff., 92.

**-i**, stems of nouns, 91; of adjectives, 105, 106.

**-ibam** = **-iēbam** (4th conj.), 221.

**īdem**, infl., 200; derivation of, 201; use, 201.

**Idōneus**, compared, 114; **Idōneus quī**, 312.

**-iēs** in 5th decl., 142 f.

**īgitur**, meaning of, 175.

**ignis**, gender of, 95; abl. sing., 92.

**-īi** in gen. of 2d decl., 58; contracted into **-i**, 58.

**ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, 175.

**ille**, inflection of, 197; use, 199.

**-im**, acc. ending in 3d decl., 88, 92.

**Imperative mode**, 9, 75, 177, 178; personal endings, 74, 178; negative with, 178; tenses of, 178; first person of, 179, 241; passive, 186.

**IMPERATIVE SENTENCES**, 74; implying condition, 319; in ind. disc., 352.

**IMPERFECT TENSE**, formation, 44, 130, 145, 152, 158; uses, 96, 37, 299, 121.

**IMPERSONAL VERBS**, 291; synopsis, 7, 291; classification, 292; passive of intrans., 293. **SYNTAX**, 294 f.; consec. clauses after impers., 311; acc. with infin. or **quod** with indic., 335; subst. clauses after impers., 335.

**in**, constr. of, 172; with expressions of time, 167.

**Incomplete action**, tenses of, 121.

**Increment of nouns**, 77.

**Indeclinable nouns**, 47; rule of gender, 47.

**Indefinite pronouns**, 207; indefinite second person, 328.

**Indicative mode**, meaning and use of, 8.

**indignus**, 288; relative clause with, 312.

**INDIRECT DISCOURSE**, 342; applied to what, 359; used after what verbs, 348; informal, 360; infin. in, 344; tenses in, 346; reflex. pronouns in, 348; conditional sentences in, 350; imperative sentences, 352; interrogative sentences, *id*.

**Indirect object**, 62.

**INDIRECT QUESTIONS**, 336, 337 f.

**Indo-European**, 21.

**Infinitive clause**, 334.

**Infinitive verb**, 347.

**INFINITIVE MODE**, 9, 213; meaning, 9; use, 213; formation, 40, 126, 129, 144, 157, 214; present infin., 40, 126, 129, 144, 157; infins. of active voice, 213; of pass. voice, 214; personal endings, 214. **SYNTAX**, 213; classification of uses of, 213; when in ind. disc., 346; subj. must as a rule be expressed, 346; as subject, 217; object, 217; complement, 217; with subj. acc., 216; as meaning purpose, 308; perfect,



- 345; future with *fōre ut*, 345; represents in ind. disc., 345; after *mēmīnī*, 345; subject of, must in ind. disc. be expressed, 346.
- INFLECTION**, defin. of, 46; termination of, 46 ff.
- informal ind. disc.**, 360; after what verbs, 360.
- inquam**, 286; position of, 286.
- Inseparable prepositions**, 174 (7).
- Intensive pronouns**, 200; in ind. disc., 349.
- inter sē**, 195.
- intērest**, constr. of, 295.
- Interjections**, defined, 14, 74.
- INTERMEDIATE CLAUSES**, syntax of, 358; merely explanatory, 358 f.
- Interrogative conjunctions**, 176; in ind. disc., 351.
- INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS**, 205; particles, 205, 337; implying condition, 319.
- Interrogative word**, 74; omitted, 337, 338, 339.
- Intransitive verbs**, 6, 119; dat. with, 164.
- io**, noun-ending, 95.
- io**, verb-ending of 3d conj., 168.
- ipse**, 200; infl. of, 200; use of, 200, 329; compared with *sē*, 200, 349.
- iri**, in fut. infin. passive, 232.
- is**, inflection of, 200; use of, 200 f.
- is**, acc. pl. ending, 88; gen. ending, 79; pl. cases of 2d decl., 158, 82.
- Islands**, names of, loc. use, 234.
- iste**, 197; use of, 197 f.
- It**, as sign of impersonals, 292.
- Itaque**, accent, see *Vocab.*
- iter**, infl. of, 96; gender of, 95.
- ius**, gen. sing. ending, 177; quantity, 177.
- J**, semi-vowel, 23; sound of, 28; = *i*, 24; interchangeable with *j*, 24.
- jūbeo**, with acc., 164; construction of, 334.
- Jūppīter** or **Jūpīter**, infl. of, 96.
- jūs**, gender of, 99.
- jūsjūrandum**, infl. of, 96.
- jūvēnis**, how compared, 117; gen. pl. of, 89.
- jūvo**, with acc., 164.
- K**, sound of, 28.
- Knowing**, constr. w. verbs of, 334.
- Knowledge**, adjs. of, w. gen., 115.
- L**, sound of, 28.
- Labial stems** (3d decl.), 77; gender of, 94.
- laedo**, with acc., 164.
- Latin language**, 21; origin and relationship, 21.
- Laws of euphony**, 149.
- Letters**, classification of, 24 f.
- libet**, impers., 292.
- licet**, synopsis of, 291.
- LINGUAL STEMS**, 77; gender of, 83.
- LIQUIDS**, see *Lingual*.
- Literature**, periods of Latin, 22.
- LOCATIVE CASE**, 48; locative ablative, 209, 234; locative forms, 96, 141, 188.
- lōcō**, without prep., 235.
- lōcus**, declen. of, 70; meaning in pl., 70.
- M**, sound of, 28; verb-ending, lost, 43.
- māgnī**, genitive of value, 283.
- Making**, verbs of, 159.
- mālo**, inflection of, 273.
- Material**, abl. of, 288.
- māterfāmiliās**, infl. of, 96.
- māxīme**, as sign of superl., 110.
- May**, potential, how expressed, 240.
- Means**, abl. of, 287.
- Measure**, abl. of, 287.
- mēdius** (middle part of), 415.
- mēmīnī**, infl. of, 285; with pres. infin., 345.
- mēridiēs**, infl. of, 142; gender of, 142.
- met**, enclitic, 193.
- meus** (voc. *mī*), 195.
- mille**, as adj. or as noun, 181; how infl., 181.
- millītiāe**, locative, 235.
- mīnōris**, gen. of value, 283.

- mīšēreor**, with gen., 295.  
**mīšēret**, 292; with acc. and gen., 295.  
 Modern languages derived from Latin, 22.  
**Modes**, 8, 239.  
**Mode-signs**, 243, 268; modes in dependent clauses, 297, 306 ff.; infin., 213 ff., 344.  
**Modification**, of words, 3; of subject or predicate, 190.  
**mōdo**, *dum mōdo*, with subj. in conditions, 318.  
**mōns**, gender of, 95.  
**Mood**, see *Mode*.  
**Motion**, expressed with prep., 172.  
**Mountains**, names of, gender, 47.  
**Mutes**, 23 ff.; mute stems (3d decl.), 78 ff.
- N**, sound of, 28; stems in *n*, 80.  
**Nasals**, 23.  
**nāvis**, abl. sing. of, 92.  
**nē**, with hortat. subj., 248; prohibitions, 248; final clauses, 306 f.; consecutive clauses, 308; with verbs of fearing, 307.  
*-ne*, enclitic, in questions, 75, 76, 244.  
**Necessity**, verbs of, 257.  
**necne**, 339.  
**nēfās**, with supine, 232.  
**Negative particle**, 76; as expressing *no* in answer to questions, 340.  
**nēgo**, better than *dico* ... **nōn**, 410.  
**nēmō**, use of, 165.  
**nē nōn**, 335.  
**nēque**, 175.  
**nēquis**, 207.  
**nē ... quīdem**, 412.  
**nescio an**, 340.  
**nescio quis**, 340.  
**NEUTER NOUNS**, 62 ff., 94 f.  
*-n* lengthens preceding vowel, 32.  
**nī, nīsi**, 314 ff.  
**nōlo**, 273 f.
- NOMINATIVE**, 4, 53; sign of, 77; formation from stem, 1st decl., 46, 51; 2d decl., 57, 59-63; 3d decl., 77, 78, 81, 82, 83, 85, 87; summary of rules for forming the nom. of 3d decl., 87; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142 f.  
**SYNTAX**: as subject, 53; pred. after *esse*, 100.  
**nōn**, in answer, 340.  
**nōn dūbīto quīn**, 323.  
**nōnne**, 75, 176.  
**nōn quia, nōn quod, nōn quīn**, 324.  
**nōster**, 194; in ind. disc., 349.  
**nōstri**, as obj. gen., 193.  
**nōstrum**, as partitive gen., 193.  
**Nouns**, defined, 1, 2; classified, 3; Latin nouns, 46; infl., 46; modification of, 47; paradigms, 51 ff.; rule of agreement, 60 ff.; model for parsing, 54; abstract and collective, 397; of 1st decl., 49 ff.; 2d decl., 57 ff.; 3d decl., 77 ff.; classification of, 77, 93; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142.  
*-ns* as adjective ending, 107 f.; gen. pl. of, 92; lengthens preceding vowel, 32.  
**nūllus**, inflec. of, 177; used for gen. and abl. of **nēmō**, 165.  
**num**, force of, 74, 206; in indirect questions, 339.  
**Number**, 2, 3, 10, 47; of nouns, *id.*; of adjectives, 66; of verbs, 10, 41 ff.  
**NUMERALS**, 180; classification of, 180.
- O**, sound of, 27; quantity of *o* final, 86.  
**O** in *āmo* = *a* and *o* and *m*.  
**O sī**, with subj. of wish, 248.  
**Object** defined, 4, 55; direct, 55; indirect, 62; model for parsing the objective, 56.  
**Object clauses**, 307.  
**Oblique cases**, 48; oblique disc., 342, 360.  
**ōdī**, 285.  
**offendo**, with acc., 164.  
**oportet**, 292.  
**Optative subjunctive**, 248.  
**opus**, *work*, infl. of, 81.  
**opus** and *usus*, *need*, with abl., 288.  
**Orātiō obliqua**, see *Indirect Discourse*.

- Order of words, 90.  
 Ordinal numbers, 180.  
**ordo**, gender of, 95.  
 -*os* for -*us*, in nom. sing. of 2d decl., 57.  
 Origin of Latin language, 21; how related, 21; where spoken, 21.
- P**, sound of, 28.  
**paenitet**, constr. of, 295.  
 Palatal consonants, 25.  
**pānis**, gen. pl. of, 89; gender of, 95.  
 Participial clauses, 219; implying condition, 319.  
 Participial stem, 38, 137.
- PARTICIPLES**, defined, 11; illustrated, 11, 38, 219; classified, 11, 219; infl. of, 38, 108, 109, 128; abl. in -*i*, 109; nom. and gen. pl., 109; how translated, 219, 223; in abl. abs., 222; voices of, 220; of trans. verb, 220; of intrans. verbs, 220; formation of, 220; infl. of, 221; directions for parsing, 223. **SYNTAX**, 219; time of, 221; of deponent verbs, 250; perf. pass., with passive meaning, 253; perf., 128; perf. act., how supplied, 224; perf. partic., denoting parentage, etc., 210; agreement of, 220; gerundive, 220, 226 ff.; neut. of the perf. in enumerating the principal parts of a verb, 155.
- PARTICLES**, defined, 74; interrogative and negative, 74. **SYNTAX** of, 248, 306 ff.; conditional, 315; temporal, 325.
- Parts of speech defined, 1-14.  
 Passive voice, 8, 119; analysis of, 120; origin, 121; pass. sign, 121.  
 Passive sign, 120, 121 ff.  
**pēlgāus**, neut., see *Vocab.*  
 Penalty, gen. of, 294.  
**pēnes**, 172.  
 Penult, 30; quantity of, 33.  
**per**, 64, 172; with expressions of time, 167, 183; for agent, 210; in composition, 174 (7).  
 Perfect stem, 10, 71; analysis, 72; synopsis of rules for forming, 161; in composition, 118.
- PERFECT TENSE**, 71; perfect definite, 37, 303; personal endings, 71, 133, 147, 161; used as present, 286; origin of, 134; *v* suppressed in perfect, 72; stem, how formed, 71, 133, 147, 165; of subj. in sequence of tenses, 301 f.
- PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS**, 256; act., 257; pass., 257; pass., how used, 294; meaning and formation of, 257; periphrastic forms in subordinate clauses, 303.
- Person, defined, 10; the first person is the first in order, 195.
- PERSONAL ENDINGS**, 42, 71, 120, 121, 123, 166; meaning of, 42, etc., 121; how formed, 166.
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS**, 5, 193 f.; retained in ind. disc., 349.
- Persons of verbs, 3, 10.  
*Pētiitō obliqua*, 360.  
**pēto**, with **ā** or **ab**, 156.  
 Phonetic changes, 25, 26, 154.  
 Phrases, 13, 173; defined, 191; adj. and adverb, 65; prepositional, 172.  
**pīget**, constr. of, 295.  
 Place, to which, 187, 234; relations of, require prep., 237; locative uses, 235.  
 Plenty, verbs of, 288.  
 Pleonasm, 4 (c).  
 Pluperfect, 10, 72; analysis of, 72.  
 Plural, of nouns, 3, 47, 51 ff.; of verbs, 10, 36, 39 ff.  
**plūris**, gen. of value, 283.  
**plūs**, inflection of, 106, 111.  
**pōsco**, constr. of, 156.  
**poenitet**, see **paenitet**.  
**pōns**, gender of, 95.  
**posse**, 270 f.  
 Possessive pronouns, 194; in ind. disc., 349.  
 Position, rules of, 90.  
**possum**, infl. of, 271; how formed, 271.  
**posteā**, 326.  
**postquam**, 326.  
**postūlo**, constr. with **ā** or **ab**, 156.  
 Potential mode, 9; how expressed, 240.

- Potential subjunctive, 248, 328.  
**pōtior**, with ablative, 287; with genitive, 287.  
**prae**, 172.  
**PREDICATE**, 18, 190; defined, 18, 190; after **esse**, 18, 100; agreement, 18, 100.  
**PREPOSITIONS**, 64, 171, 172; use of, 172, 173; inseparable, 174.  
**Present stem**, how formed, 40 ff.  
**PRESENT TENSE**, 9, 10; used for aorist, 303.  
**Preterite tenses**, 395.  
**Price**, abl., 283.  
**pridiſ**, loc., see 415 (16).  
**Primary tenses**, 300.  
**PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS**, 38, 126; neut. of the perf. partic., 155.  
**prior** used instead of **primus**, 182.  
**priusquam**, 327: often written separate, 328.  
**prō**, preposition, 172.  
**Prohibitions**, 178, 248.  
**Promising, etc.**, verbs of, 345.  
**PRONOUNS**, 5; defined and classified, 5, 172; infl. of, 193-207; personal and reflexive, 193, 194; rule for position of, 196; possessive, 194; demonstrative, 197; determinative, 200; relative, 202; interrog., 205; indefinite, 207; pronouns strengthened by *-met*, *-te*, etc., 193; reduplicative forms, 194; exs. illustrating use of, 195; rule for position, 196. **SYNTAX** of, 203.  
**PRONUNCIATION**, modes of, 27; Roman, 27, 28; phonetic, 27; English, 34.  
**prōsum**, infl. of, 272.  
**Protasis**, 304.  
**Proviso**, 318.  
**pūdet**, 295.  
**pūgnātur**, impers., synopsis of, 291.  
**PURPOSE**, 306; ways of expressing, 308.  
**Qu**, sound of, 28.  
**quaero** (**QUAERO**), irreg. verb, 286; constr. of, 156.  
**quam**, with superl., 118, 275; with compar., 112, 275; comparative particles, 320.  
**quamlibet**, 207; infl. of, see **Vocab.**  
**quamsi**, 320, 321.  
**quamvis**, 207; infl. of, see **Vocab.**  
**quantī**, gen. of value, 283.  
**QUANTITY**, general rules of, 31, 32, 86; of final vowels, 32, 86; of other syllables, see **Preface**.  
**quāsi**, 320, 321.  
*-que*, enclitic, 76; as conj., 175.  
**queo**, irreg. verb, 282, 286.  
**QUESTIONS**, 74, 206; single or double, 206; fact questions, 337; direct, 338; indirect, 339; rhetorical, 337; dependent and independent, 339; alternative, see double, 338; in indirect disc., 351 f.  
**quī**, relative, infl. of, 202; agreement of, 203; position of, 203; model for parsing, 203; general relative, 202; indefinite, 207, 209; expressing purpose, 306, 356; concessive, 322; with **nēscio**, 340; strengthened by *ut*, *ut pōte*, etc., 357.  
**quicumque** (**quicunque**), 212.  
**quia**, 176, 323.  
**quidam**, 205; indef., 207.  
**quidem**, 412.  
**quīn**, in consecutive clauses, 310; with verbs of hindering, 310; **nōn quīn**, 310.  
**quīs**, infl. of, 205; distinction from **quī** in use, 205, 207; compounds of, 205; indef. 207; with **nēscio**, 340.  
**quisnam**, 205.  
**quispiam**, 207.  
**quisquam**, 207.  
**quisquis**, 202.  
**quīvis**, 217.  
**quō**, in final clauses, 310.  
**quoad**, 326.  
**quod**, conj., 176; clauses with, 323, 324, 335; as acc. of specification, 373.  
**quod si**, see **Vocab.**  
**quōmīnus**, 308 ff.; with verbs of hindering, 308.  
**quōniam**, 323 f.

Quotation, 342.

quum, see cum.

R, sound of, 28; substitute for s, 82.

Reading Latin at sight, directions for, 211.

Reciprocal (*each other*), how expressed, 194 f.

rēcordor, 294.

Reduplication, 148; of pronouns, 194; in perf., 148, 161; lost, 148; in compounds, 148; reduplicated forms of pronouns, 194.

rēfert, with gen., 295.

Reflexive pronouns, 194 f., 348. SYNTAX of, 194, 348; in indirect discourse, 349; two reflexives, 349.

Reflexive verbs, 121; reflex. stem, 121. Regular verbs, 7, 54 ff.

RELATIVE CLAUSES, 5, 202, 203; how introduced, 355; force of, 355, 297 f., 355. SYNTAX, 203; concessive, 322, 355; in ind. disc., 357 f.; conditional, 355; characteristic and result, 356; as causal, 355; temporal, 355.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS, inflection of, 202; how trans. at beginning of a sentence, 203. SYNTAX, 203; rule of agreement, 202, 355; position, 203; how translated at the beginning of a sentence, 203; model for parsing, 203; omitted in Eng. but not in Latin, 203; *as* as a rel., 203.

rēspūblica, infl. of, 142.

Remembering, constr. with verbs of, 294.

rēmīniscor, 294.

rēs, infl. of, 142.

Restrictive relative, 356.

RESULT, clause of, 312, 356.

Rhetorical questions, 337; in ind. disc., 352.

rōgo, constr. of, 156.

Roman pronunciation, 27, 28.

Roman writers, 22.

Romance languages, origin of, 22.

Rules of syntax, 306 ff.; general rules of, 371.

rūs, constr. of, 234.

S, sound of, 28; as sign of nominative, 77-93; s of the nom. and voc. is sometimes dropped, 82; s becomes r, 82; s unites with c or g, 85.

SECOND CONJUGATION, formation of, 129 ff.

SECOND DECLENSION, nouns of, 57 ff. sed, 175.

Semi-deponents, 255.

Semi-vowels, 24.

sōnex, infl. of, 96; compar. of, 117.

SENTENCE, parts, 17; analysis of, 18, 191; classification of, 74, 189 ff., 296, 298; simple, 189; complex, 189, 190; compound, 189, 190; model for analyzing, 191.

SEPARATION, abl. of, 209.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 302; rules for applying, 304; in indirect discourse, 302, 346, 347 f.; after participles, 347; after infinitives, etc., 347.

sī, conj., 176; conditional, 314 ff., concessive, 322.

simul &c, 326.

Signs of quantity, 23; of accents, 33.

similis, infl. of, 106; with gen. or dat., 114, 115; compar. of, 116.

siquis, 207.

sōleo, 255.

sōlus, infl. of, 177; with rel. clause, 312.

sonants, 25.

Space, acc. of, 182.

Specification, abl. of, 278; acc. of, 373. See Cognate Accusative.

STEM, defined, 40; noun-stem, 46; how formed, 46; 1st decl. or a-stems, 49-52; 2d decl., 57; 3d decl., 77; 4th decl., 140; 5th decl., 142; verb-stems, 40; terminations of, 40; stem-characteristic, 40; 1st conj., 40; 2d conj., 130, 137; 3d conj., 144; 4th conj., 157; labial, dental, lingual, guttural, *u*-stems, of verbs, 148, 161; present verb-stems, 40, 126; perfect, 71, 126, 133, 146, 147; participial, 126, 137, 163, 165; stems classified and defined, 259 f.; stem-words, 82.

sub, 172.

**SUBJECT**, defined, 17, 53, 55; omitted, 42; plur. subj., 150; in indir. disc., 346; with verbs of promising, etc., 345.

**SUBJUNCTIVE MODE**, 9; paradigm of, 243, 245 f.; has no fut., how supplied, 256, 239; uses of, 239; analysis of, 243; personal endings, 243; tenses of, 240, 303; tenses wanting, 303; how translated, 240, 241, 244; classification of uses, 250; concessive, 248; hortatory, 248; optative, 248; dubitative, 248; potential, 248; negative with, 244, 248; four conjugations of, 245; pass. of, 246; in independent sentences, 248; in dependent clauses, 248; in rel. clauses, 248, 355 ff.; in intermediate clauses, 248, 358; in indirect discourse, 248, 243 ff.; in indirect questions, 339; how translated in indirect questions, 340.

**SUBORDINATE CLAUSES**, 190, 248, 291 ff.; how classified, 297 f.; in indirect disc., 342.

Subordinate conjunctions, 176.

**SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES**, defined and classified, 333; infinitive, 334; of purpose, 334; of result, 335; with quod, 335; ind. question, 336; gender of, 334.

subter, 172.

**Suffix**, defined, 46; of nouns, 46; of verbs, 42 ff.

sum, inflection of, 101, 102.

summus, compar. of, 117; meaning of, 118, 415.

sunt qui, 356.

sûper, 172.

**SUPERLATIVE**, defined, 5; of adjec., different ways of forming, 5; infl. of, 111; how trans., 113, 118; of adverbs, 124.

**SUPINE**, noun of 4th decl., 38, 231; meaning and use of, 231; not common, 232; not one of the principal parts of verbs, 232; government of, 232; dependence of, 232; uses of,

231; its government, 232; sup. in -um not common. Stem, 231; how formed, 231.

Surds, 25.

Syllabication, 29.

Syllables, rules for division of, 29, 34.

Synopsis of tenses, 73; of impersonal verbs, 91.

**SYNTAX**, 17, 53 ff. See each case and mode in index.

T, sound of, 28.

taedet, constr. of, 295.

tānquam, 321.

tānquam si, 321 f.

tantī, gen. of price, 283.

Teaching, verbs of, 156.

Temporal conj., 176; classification of, 325; clauses: (1) antecedent action, 326; (2) contemporaneous action, 326; (3) subsequent action, 327.

**TENSES**, 9; how classified, 9, 37; meaning, 9, 41, etc.; analysis of, 44; classification of, 299; denoting incomplete, complete, or indefinite action, 299; primary and secondary, 300; endings, 260 ff.; formation of, 260 ff. **SYNTAX**, 9 f., 299, 306 ff.; classification, 299; present, 299; imperf., 9 f., 299; future, 9 f., 299; perfect, 9 f., 299; pluperfect, 9 f., 299; future perfect, 9 f., 299; sequence of, 300 ff.; of infin., 344.

Tense-signs, 45 ff., 74, 121, 145, 243, 268.

Terminations, 46; of infl., 46, 51 ff.; of nouns, 51 ff.; of verbs, 40, 42 ff.

terrā marique, 235, 236.

That, uses of, 336; 306 ff.

**THIRD CONJUGATION**, verbs of, 144 ff.; formation of, 144 ff.; infl., 144-155; verbs in -io, 168.

**THIRD DECLENSION**, nouns of, 77 ff.; rules of gender, 47, 51, 57, 94, 95.

Though, see Although.

Threatening, infin. with, 345.

Time and place, construction of, 167, 182, 188, 234 ff.

**TIME**, when, 167; how long, 182.

tōtus, 177.

Towns, names of, gender of, 47; construction with or without preposition, 234 ff.

trāns, prep., 172; comps. of, with acc., 374.

Transitive verbs, 7, 119.

Translation of subjunctive, 241.

trēs, infl. of, 181.

turris, abl. sing. of, 92.

-tūs, noun-ending, 96.

U, sound of, 27; a consonant, 24; interchanged with v, 24.

ūbī, in temporal clauses, 326; ūbī primum, 326.

-ubus, case-ending in 4th decl., 141.

-ūdo, noun-ending, 96.

ūllus, infl. of, 177.

ūnus, infl. of, 181; in pl., 181; with pl. nouns of a sing. meaning, 181.

ūnus qui, with subj., 356.

ūnusquisque, 207.

-ūrus, future participle, 220; in indirect discourse, 346.

ūsus, need, with abl., 288.

ut, as concess., 322; comparative, 320; as final, 306; of result, 309; ut nō, 306; with subst. clauses, 333, 334; omission after, 337.

ut, when, 325, 326; ut primum, 326.

ūter, infl. of, 177.

ūterque, infl. of, 177.

ūtī, ūtīnam, with subj. of wish, 248; utī, comparative particle, 320.

ūtor, etc., with abl., 287; as transitive, 228.

utrum, 339; utrum . . . an, 338.

ut si, 320, 321.

V, sound of, 28; originally not distinguished from u, 28; interchangeable with u, 24; syncopated in perf., 72, 161.

Value, gen. of, 283.

vel, 175.

vēlut, 320, 321.

vēlut si, 320, 321.

Verb-stem, 40.

Verb, as complete sentence, 43.

VERBS, defined, 6; modification, 6, 36, 38; formation, 39 ff.; regular, 7; deponent, 253 f.; semi-deponent, 255; irregular, 7, 273; defective, 285; impersonal, 291; rule of agreement, 54. SYNTAX of, 54 ff.

Verbs of perceiving, declaring, etc., 217, 334, 348.

Verbal endings, 42, 44 ff., 130.

Verbals in -ax, 115; in -bilis, 115.

vērō, in answers, 340.

vescor, with abl., 253.

vespēri, 60, see Vocab.

vēto, with acc. and infin., 334.

vētus, infl. of, 109; compar., 116.

-vi, in perf., 71, 134. The i is part of the stem, 71.

vīs, infl. of, 96.

VOCATIVE, 48, 58 ff., 182; case, 15; like nom., 59, 62, 77; except in 2d decl., 57, 77; in -i of nouns in -ius, 58. SYNTAX, 75.

VOICE, 8, 119, 137; act. and pass., 8, 119; formula for converting act. to pass., 136.

vōlo, infl. of, 273.

VOWELS, 24; quality of, 24; open, close, medial, 24; vowel stems, 78, 161; characteristic vowel of the stem dropped, 139; vowel of the stem lengthened, 161; characteristic vowel changed, 130, 133, 135, 138, 144, 145, 147, 151, 154, 158, 160, 163, 179; characteristic vowel of stem shortened, 72.

W, not in Latin alphabet, 23; = v, 24.

Want, verbs of, 288.

Way by which, abl., 237.

Wish, expression of, 248.

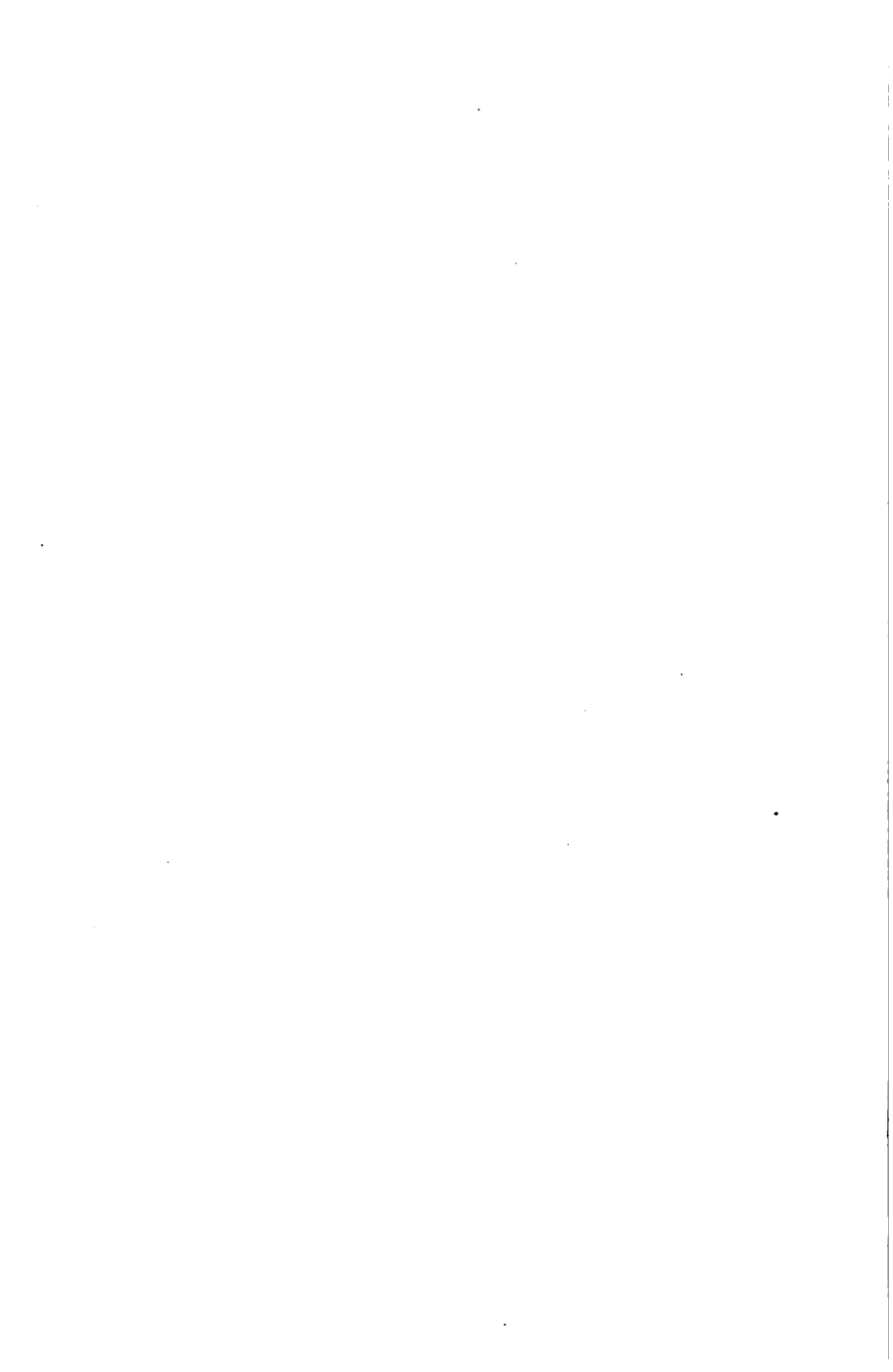
Winds, gen. of names of, 47.

Wishing, constr. with verbs, 334.

X, sound of, 28; lengthens preceding syllable, 32.

Y, sound of, 27.

Year, how expressed, 182, 222.





# VOCABULARY.

## I. — LATIN AND ENGLISH.

### ABBREVIATIONS.

a. . . . .	active.	indecl. . . . .	indeclinable.
abl. . . . .	ablative.	inch. . . . .	inchoative.
acc. . . . .	accusative.	intr. . . . .	intransitive.
adj. . . . .	adjective.	interj. . . . .	interjection.
adv. . . . .	adverb.	irr. . . . .	irregular.
conj. . . . .	conjunction.	m. . . . .	masculine.
comp. . . . .	comparative.	n. . . . .	neuter.
dat. . . . .	dative.	num. . . . .	numeral.
def. . . . .	defective.	part. . . . .	participle.
dep. . . . .	deponent.	perf. . . . .	perfect.
dim. . . . .	diminutive.	pl. . . . .	plural.
f. . . . .	feminine.	p.p. . . . .	perfect part.
gen. . . . .	genitive.	prep. . . . .	preposition.
imperat. . . . .	imperative.	pron. . . . .	pronoun.
impers. . . . .	impersonal.	tr. . . . .	transitive.

The quantity of vowels that are long or short by *position*, of diphthongs, and of short final syllables, is not given.

The references in the Vocabulary are to the sections of this book.

**ā, āb**, prep. with abl. (a only before consonants; **ab** before vowels and consonants), *from, by*; **ab sinistrā parte**, *on the left side*.

**ab-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum**, to put away, hide, conceal.

**ab-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-tum**, to lead from, withdraw.

**ab-eo, -ire, -ivī, or -itum** (298. Obs. 3), to go away, depart.

**ab-icio** (pronounced **ab-jicio**), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (**ab**; **jacio**), to throw away, abandon.

**ab-ēns, -entis**, part. (**ab-sum**), absent.

**ab-solvo, -solvēre, -solvī, -sōlū-tum**, to unbind, acquit.

**abs-que**, prep. with abl., *without, but for, except*.

**abs-tineo, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -ten-tum** (tēneo), to hold (one's self) off, abstain, refrain, spare.

**ab-sum, -esse, -fuī, irr.**, to be absent, to be wanting.

**āc**, see **at-que**.

**Acca Lārentia, -ae, f.**, the wife of the shepherd Faustulus, who reared Romulus and Remus.

**ac-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -ces-sum** (**ad**; **cēdo**), to go towards, approach.

**ac-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdī, no p.p.** (**ad**; **cādo**), to fall upon, happen, (w. dat. pers.) befall.

ac-cido, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum (ad; caedo), to cut into.  
 ac-cipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum (ad; cāpio), to take, accept.  
 ac-curro, -currere, -cūcurri and -curri, no p.p., to run to.  
 ac-cuso, -āre, -avi, -ātum (ad; causa), to accuse, blame.  
 ācer, -cris, -cre, adj., sharp, keen, eager, active.  
 āciēs, -ei, F., an edge; a line of battle, fierceness.  
 ācriter, adv. (ācer), sharply, keenly, fiercely.  
 ācus, -ūs, F. (ācuo), (a thing sharpened), a needle, pin.  
 ād, prep. with acc., to, towards, near to, at, besides.  
 ād-āmo, -āre, -avi, -ātum, to begin to love.  
 ad-do, -dēre, -didi, -ditum, to add, join, annex to.  
 ad-dūco, -dūre, -xi, -ctum, to lead to, bring to (of persons).  
 adf, see aff.  
 ād-hibeo, -hēre, -ui, -itum (ad; hābeo), to have in; to summon.  
 ad-huc, adv. (ad; hic), to this place, thus far, besides, as yet.  
 ād-īpiscor, -īpisci, -eptus sum, dep. (ad; āpiscor, 282), to obtain, win.  
 ad-jūvo, -jūvāre, -jūvi, -jūtum, to help, assist.  
 ad-mīnistro, -āre, -avi, -ātum, to manage, administer.  
 admīrā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (admīror), an admiring, admiration, wonder, surprise.  
 ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (282), to admire, wonder at.  
 ad-mitto, -mittēre, -misi, -missum, to let go, allow; admissō equō, at full gallop.  
 ad-mōneo, -hēre, -ui, -itum, to warn, urge, admonish.  
 ād-olē-sco, -olēscere, -olēvi,

-ultum, inch. (ād-oleo), to grow up, grow, increase.  
 ād-ōperio, -īre, -ui, -tum, to cover.  
 ād-ōrior, -ōriri, -ortus sum, dep., to rise up against; to attack, assault, begin.  
 ād-ōro, -āre, -avi, -ātum, to worship, respect, entreat, beg.  
 adp, see ads.  
 ads, see ass.  
 adspicio, see aspicio.  
 ād-tilēscens, -entis, part. (ād-ulesco), young; as noun, C., a young man, a young woman (from 15 to 30, and sometimes to 40 and later).  
 ad-sum, ādesse, affui (or adfui), to be near, be present, assist.  
 adven-tus, -ūs, M. (advēnio), a coming to, arrival.  
 adversārius, -a, -um, adj. (adversus), turned towards, fronting: as noun, M., an opponent, enemy.  
 adversus, prep. w. acc., opposite to, against, towards.  
 adversus, -a, -um, part. (adverto), turned towards, opposite; as noun, opponent.  
 ad-vertō, -hēre, -ti sum, to turn to or towards, to direct; ānimū advertēre, to observe, attend to; āminū advertēre in āliquem, to punish one.  
 aedēs, -is, F., a temple; pl., a house.  
 aedific-ium, -iī, N. (aedifico), a building.  
 aed-i-fico, -āre, -avi, -ātum (aedes; facio), to build.  
 Aedui, -ōrum, M., a tribe in Gaul between the Liger (modern Loire) and the Ārar (Saône).  
 Aeduus, -a, -um, an Āduan.  
 aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick, disabled.  
 aegrē, adv. (aeger), feeble; with difficulty, scarcely.

**aegrōtus**, a, -um, adj. (*aeger*), *sick, ill.*

**āēr**, -ēris, m. (acc. *aëra* and *aërem*), *the air, cloud, mist.*

**aes**, *aeris*, n., *copper, money, wages; aes aliēnum*, *another's money, i.e. a debt.*

**aes-tās**, -ātis, f., *summer.*

**aes-tīmo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*aes*), *to estimate, value* (304).

**aetās**, -ātis, f. (*aevum*), *age* (of old or young).

**af-fēro**, -ferre, -attūli, -allātum (ad; *fēro*), *to bring.*

**af-ficio**, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectum (ad; *fācio*), *to treat, affect, visit* (with punishment, etc.).

**af-finis**, -e, adj. (ad; *finis*), *bordering upon, adjacent to, kindred.*

**affin-itās**, -ātis, f. (*affinis*), *relationship by marriage, relationship, nearness.*

**ā-fōre**, fut. inf. of *absum*, *to be away, absent.*

**Āfrica**, -ae, f., *Africa*, especially the country near Carthage.

**āger**, -grī, m., *a field, territory.*

**agger**, -ēris, m., *a heap, mound, embankment.*

**ag-grēdior**, -grēdī, -gressus sum. dep. (ad; *grādior*), *to go to, approach, attack.*

**ag-men**, -īnis, n. (*āgo*), *that which is led, i.e. army* (on the march).

**a-gnosco**, -noscēre, -nōvī, -nī-tum (ad; *gnosco* = *nosco*), *to recognize, own, acknowledge.*

**agnus**, -ī, m., *a lamb.*

**āgo**, -ēre, -ēgi, actum, *to drive; to do; āgēre eum*, *to treat with; āgēre dē*, *talk over.*

**agr-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (*āger*), *of fields or public lands.*

**agr-i-cōla**, -ae, m. (*āger*; *cōlo*), *a cultivator of the land, a farmer.*

**āio**, def. (305, 2), *to speak, say.*

**ālacr-itās**, -ātis, f. (*ālacer*), *liveliness, eagerness, alacrity.*

**Alba**, -ae, f., *Alba (Longa)*, an ancient town of Latium, 20 miles S.E. of Rome, built by Ascanius, son of Aeneas.

**Alb-ānus**, -a, -um, adj. (*Alba*), *of or belonging to Alba; Alban.*

**albus**, -a, -um, adj., *white, fair.*

**Ālexander**, -drī, m. (*Defender of men*), son of Philip and Olympia, surnamed "the Great," the founder of the Macedonian Empire (B.C. 356-323).

**āli-ēnus**, -a, -um, adj. (*ālius*), *belonging to another person or thing; foreign, hostile; aes āliē-num*, *debt.*

**āliquamdiū**, adv. (*āliquis; diū*), *awhile, for some time.*

**āli-quandō**, adv. (*āliquis*), (of time past, future, or present), *at some time, at last.*

**āli-quantus**, -a, -um, adj. (*ālius; quantus*), *some, considerable.*

**āli-quis** (*āliqui*), -qua, -quid or -quod (*ālius; quis*), pron. indef. (247), *some one, some, any; āliquid*, *something.*

**āli-quot**, indef. num. adj., indecl. (*ālius; quot*), *some, a few.*

**ālius**, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other* (209); *ālius . . . ālius*, *one . . . another.*

**Allōbrōgēs**, -um, m., *a Gallic people, bounded on the north and west by the Rhodānus (Rhône), south by the Isāra (Isère), and extending eastward to the Alps.*

**ālo**, -ēre, -uī, altum, *to nourish, support, feed.*

**Alpēs**, -ium, f., *the Alps*; the high mountain range between Italia, Gallia, and Helvetia.

**alter**, -tēra, -tērum, adj. (209), *one of two, other, second; alter . . . alter*, *one . . . the other.*

**altitúdo, -dínis, F.**, *height, depth*.  
**altus, -a, -um, part. (álo)**, *high, deep*.

**alveus, -i, M. (alvus)**, *a channel, trough, skiff*.

**Ambarri, -órum, M. pl.**, *a people of Gaul*.

**amb-ió, -íre, -ívi or -íi, -ítum (eo)**, *to go about, canvass*.

**amb-i-ti-ó, -ónis, F. (ambio)**, *a canvassing, ambition*.

**ambo, -ae, -o, num. adj., both**.

**ambúlo, -áre, -ávi, -átum**, *to walk*.

**ám-ic-ítia, -ae, F. (ámicus)**, *friendship*.

**ám-ícus, -a, -um, adj. (ámó)**, *loving, friendly, kind*.

**ám-ícus, -i, M.**, *a friend*.

**ám-itto, -mittere, -mísi, -mísum**, *to let go, lose, destroy*.

**amnis, -is, M.**, *a river (large, deep stream)*.

**ámó, -áre, -ávi, -átum**, *to love*.

**ámor, -óris, M. (ámó)**, *love*.

**am-plector, -plecti, -plexus sum**, *dep., to wind around, embrace*.

**amplius, comp. adv. (amplē)**, *more, longer, further*.

**amplus, -a, -um, adj.**, *great, ample, spacious, grand, large*.

**Ámúlius, -i, M.**, *a king of Alba, brother of Numitor, and great-uncle of Romulus*.

**án, disjunctive inter. particle (345)**, *whether, or*.

**an-ceps, -cípitis, adj. (an; cáput)**, *two-headed, doubtful, critical*.

**angust-iae, -árum, F. (angustus)**, *narrowness, a narrow pass, defile*.

**angus-tus, -a, -um, adj. (ango)**, *narrow, scanty*.

**án-íma, -ae, F.**, *air, breath, life*.

**ánim-ad-vertó, -tère, -tí, -sum (ánimus; ad-vertó)**, *to turn the mind to, to attend to; ánima-d-vertère in aliquem, to punish one*.

**ánim-al, -ális, N. (ánima)**, *an animal (including man), living creature*.

**án-ímus, -i, M.**, *the soul, mind, disposition, temper, thought*.

**an-nón, conj., or not (345)**.

**annū-lus, -i, M.**, *ring*.

**annus, -i, M.**, *a year*.

**anser, -éris, M.**, *goose*.

**anteā, adv.**, *before*.

**ante-eo, -íre, -ívi or -íi, no p.p., N.**, *to go before, precede, excel*.

**antē-pōno, -ére, -pōsuí, -pōsi-tum**, *to place before, prefer*.

**ante . . . quam, conj.**, *before that*.

**ant-íquus, -a, -um, adj. (ante)**, *former, ancient, old*.

**Antónius, -i, M.**, *Marcus Antonius, the distinguished triumvir, conquered by Octavianus, at Actium, B.C. 31*.

**anxius, -a, -um, adj. (ango)**, *tormented, anxious, troubled*.

**áp-erio, -íre, -uí, -tum**, *to open, uncloze, show, reveal*.

**áper-tus, -a, -um, part. (áp-erio)**, *open*.

**Ápollōnia, -ae, F.**, *a town of Macedonia*.

**Ápollōnius, -i, M.**, *Apollonius, a celebrated rhetorician of Rhodes*.

**ap-pāreo, -ére, -uí, -ítum (ad; pāreo)**, *to appear, be visible*.

**ap-pello, -áre, -ávi, -átum (ad; pello)**, *to address, call, name*.

**ap-pēto, -pētère, -pētívi or -pētíi, -pētítum**, *to seek for*.

**ap-prēhendo, -ére, -dí, -sum (ad; prēhendo)**, *to seize, take hold of*.

**ap-prōpinquo, -áre, -ávi, -átum (ad; prōpinquo)**, *to approach*.

**Április, -is, M. (áp-erio)**, *April; the month in which the earth opens itself to fertility; as adj., of April*.

**apud**, prep. with acc., *with, near to, in the presence of*; **apud mē**, *at my house*.

**āqua**, -ae, F., *water*.

**āquila**, -ae, F., *the eagle*; *the standard of the Roman legion*.

**āquil-i-fer**, -ēri, M. (**āquila**; **fēro**), *an eagle-bearer, standard-bearer*.

**Āquitān-us**, -a, -um, adj., *Aquitanian*.

**Ārar**, -āris, M., a tributary of the Rhodānus in Gaul (now the Saône).

**ara-trum**, -ī, N., *a plough*.

**arbitrium**, -iī, N. (**arbitēr**), *a decision, judgment*; *power, will*.

**arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (**arbitēr**), *to hear, judge, think*.

**aro-eo**, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., *to inclose, keep off, prevent*.

**ar-cesso**, -ēre, -sivī, -sītum (ad; **cēdo**) (TO CAUSE to come), *to summon, call, invite*.

**arcus**, -ūs, M., *a bow, rainbow*.

**arguo**, -ēre, -uī, -ūtum, *to make clear, accuse*.

**ār-idus**, -a, -um, adj. (**āreo**), *dry*; N., *as noun, dry land*.

**Ariovistus**, -ī, M., a king of the Germans.

**arma**, -ōrum, N., *arms, defensive weapons*.

**armo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (arma), *to furnish with weapons, to arm, equip*.

**āro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to plough*.

**ar-rīpio**, -ēre, -rīpuī, -rēptum (ad; **rāpio**), *to snatch, seize*.

**arrōgā-na**, -ntis, part. (**arrōgo**), *assuming, haughty, proud*.

**arrōgan-ter**, adv. (**arrōgāns**), *assumingly, haughtily, proudly*.

**arrogantia** (**arrōgo**), -ae, F., *arrogance, haughtiness*.

**ars, artis**, F., *skill, ability, cleverness, invention*.

**Arvernī**, -ōrum, M., a people of Gaul, in the present Auvergne.

**ar-vum**, -ī, N. (**āro**), *cultivated land, a field*.

**arz, arcis**, F. (for arc-s from arceo), *a castle, citadel, tower*.

**a-scendo**, -scendēre, -scendi, -scensum (ad; **scando**), *to ascend, mount up, climb*.

**Asia**, -ae, F., *Asia, generally Asia Minor*.

**āsīnus**, -ī, M., *an ass*.

**asper**, -ēra, -ērūm, adj., *rough, harsh, violent*.

**a-spicio**, -ēre, -exī, -ectum (ad; **spēcio**), *to look at, to behold, see*.

**as-sideo**, -ēre, -ēdī, -essum (ad; **sēdeo**), *to sit near; to besiege*.

**as-surgo**, -gēre, -rēxī, -rectum (ad; **surgō**), *to rise up, stand up*.

**at**, conj., *but, yet*.

**Athēnae**, -ārum, F., *Athens, the chief city of Attica*.

**at-que** or **ac**, conj. [in the best writers **ac** is used only before a word beginning with a consonant], *and also, and besides, and*; **simul atque**, *as soon as*; **minus ac**, *less than*.

**ātrōx**, -ōcis, adj., *savage, fierce, cruel, atrocious*.

**Atticus**, a Roman name.

**at-tingo**, -ēre, -tīgī, -tactum (ad; **tango**), *to touch upon; border upon*.

**auctōr-itās**, -ātis, F. (**auctor**), *authority, power, influence*.

**audāc-ia**, -ae, F. (**audāx**), *courage, daring*.

**audāc-iter**, and **audāc-ter**, adv. (**audāx**), *boldly, courageously, daringly*.

**aud-āx**, -ācis, adj. (**audeo**), *daring, bold, courageous, violent*.

**aud-eo**, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep. (243), *to dare, venture*.

**audi-ēns**, -entis, part. (**audio**), *obedient to; as noun, M. or F., a hearer*.

**aud-io, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, to hear, listen.**

**au-fēro, -ferre, abstūlī, ablātum, irr. (ab; fēro), to carry away, remove (295. Obs. 2).**

**au-fūgio, -ēre, -fūgī, -fūgitum (ab; fūgio), to flee away.**

**augeo, -ēre, -auxī, -auctum, to increase, enlarge.**

**augūr-ium, -iī, N., predictions founded (in part) on the observation of birds; divination, prophecy, soothsaying.**

**aur-eus, -a, -um, adj. (aurum), golden.**

**auspic-ium, -iī, N. (auspex), an omen (taken from the watching of birds), an auspice; auspicia hābēre, to hold or take the auspices.**

**aut, conj. (205. 2), or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.**

**autem, conj. (205. 3), but, however, besides.**

**auxilium, -iī, N. (augeo), help, aid, assistance; auxilia, -ōrum, auxiliary troops.**

**ā-verto, -ēre, -tī, -sum, turn away from, avert, withdraw.**

**āvid-itās, -ātis, F., eagerness.**

**āv-īdus, -a, -um, adj. (āveo), eager, covetous.**

**āvis, -is, F., a bird.**

**āvus, -ī, M., a grandfather.**

## B.

**balneum, -ī, N. (pl. mostly balneae, -arum, F.), a bath.**

**Balticus, -a, -um, Baltic.**

**barbārus, -a, -um, adj., foreign, strange, barbarian; barbārī, -ōrum, M., foreigners, barbarians; a name applied first by the Greeks and afterwards by the Romans to people of other nations.**

**be-ātus, -a, -um, adj. (beo), happy, prosperous, fortunate.**

**Belgae, -arum, M., the Belgians, a warlike people dwelling in the north of Gaul.**

**b-ellum, -ī, N. (old form duellum) (duo) (a contest between two parties), war.**

**bēne, adv., well, finely, prosperously; bēne pugnāre, to fight successfully.**

**bēnē-factor, -ōris, M. (bēne; fācio), a benefactor.**

**bēnē-ficium, -iī, N. (bēne; fācio), well-doing, favor, benefit.**

**bībo, bībēre, bībī, no p.p., to drink. Bibracte, -is, N., Bibracte, the chief town of the Aedui.**

**Bibrax, -actis, N., Bibrax, a town of Gaul, in the territory of the Remi.**

**Bibūlus, -ī, M., Marcus Calpurnius, consul B.C. 59, colleague of Cæsar.**

**bī-duum, -tī, N. (bis; diēs), a space of two days.**

**bī-nī, -ae, -a, numeral distributive adj. (bis), two each, two by two.**

**bī-partitō, adv. (bis; pars), in two parts, two divisions.**

**bis, num. adv., twice.**

**Boīī, -ōrum, M., the Boii, a people of Gaul.**

**bōn-itās, -ātis, F. (bōnus), goodness, virtue, worth.**

**bōnus, -a, -um, adj., good (149. 4); as noun, bōnum, -ī, N., good; N. pl. as noun, bōnī (cf. 3. 4), good men; bōna, -ōrum, goods, property.**

**bōs, bōvis, com. gen. (121), an ox, a cow.**

**brāchium, -iī, N. (bracc-), an arm.**

**brēvis, -e, adj., short, small, brief.**

**Britannia, -ae, F., Britain.**

**Britannī, -ōrum, M., the inhabitants of Britain, Britons.**

**Britannicus, -a, -um, British.**

**Brundisium**, -ī, N., *Brundisium*, an ancient town of Calabria, in S. E. Italy, nearest seaport to Greece.

**Brūtus**, -ī, M., *Lucius Junius*, a founder of the Roman Republic, B.C. 509.

**Brūtus**, -ī, M., *Marcus*, a friend of Cicero, a conspirator against Cæsar; *Decimus*, a fellow-conspirator with the preceding.

## C.

**C.**, an abbreviation denoting *Gaius* (*Caius*); as a numeral, **c** = *centum*, *hundred*.

**cădo**, *cădere*, *cēcīdī*, *căsum*, to fall, happen, perish.

**caed-ēs**, -is, F. (*caedo*), slaughter, bloodshed, havoc.

**caedo**, -ēre, *cēcīdī*, *caesum* (*cădo*), (to cause to fall), to cut down, kill, strike.

**caelum**, -ī, N., sky, heaven.

**Caesar**, -āris, M., *Gaius Julius*, murdered by Brutus and Cassius, B.C. 44.

**călăm-ītās**, -ātis, F., disaster, calamity.

**calcar**, -āris, N., spur.

**calv-ītium**, -ī, N. (*calvus*), baldness.

**calvus**, -a, -um, adj., bald.

**campus**, -ī, M., a plain, field, level surface; **Campus Martius**, a grassy plain in Rome, along the Tiber, dedicated to Mars, where elections were held, exercise and recreation taken.

**cănis**, -is, com. gen., a dog; gen. pl. *cănūm* (109. N. 1).

**căno**, *cănere*, *cēcīnī*, no p.p., to sing, foretell, predict.

**canto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*căno*), intens., sing.

**căpel-la**, -ae, F. dim. (*căper*), a she-goat.

**căpio**, *căpere*, *cēpī*, *captum*, to take, seize (147).

**cap-tīvus**, -a, -um, adj. (*căpio*), taken prisoner, captive; as noun, **captīvus**, -ī, M., a prisoner.

**căput**, -ītis, N., the head.

**carcer**, -ēris, M., a dungeon, prison.

**căreo**, -ēre, -uī, -ītum, to be without, free from.

**carmen**, -īnis, N., a poem, song; an oracle.

**carrus**, -ī, M., a two-wheeled cart; cart, wagon.

**Carthāgo** (**Kar**), -īnis, F., *Carthage*, a city of N. Africa.

**cărus**, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.

**căsa**, -ae, F., a hut, cottage, cabin.

**Casca**, -ae, M., one of the conspirators against Cæsar.

**Cassi-ānus**, belonging to *Cassius*. **Cassius**, -ī, M., *Cassius*, a proper name; the chief conspirator against Cæsar.

**castel-lum**, -ī, N. dim. (*castrum*), a castle, fort.

**Castīcus**, -ī, M., *Casticus*, a Sequanian.

**castra**, -ōrum, N. pl., a camp.

**castrum**, -ī, N., a castle, fortress.

**că-sus**, -ūs, M. (*cădo*), a falling down; fall, chance, calamity.

**cătēna**, -ae, F., a chain, a fetter.

**Cătīlīna**, -ae, M., *Lucius Sergius Catilina*; a Roman who attempted an insurrection against his country.

**Cătō**, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Porcius Cato* (B.C. 93-45), the younger, who committed suicide after the battle of Thapsus.

**cătūlus**, -ī, M. dim., a young dog; whelp, puppy.

**causa** (*caussa*), -ae, F., a cause, reason; **causă**, for the sake of.

**cădo**, *cădere*, *cessī*, *cessum*, to go, yield, retreat.

**cōlēber**, -bris, -bre, adj., *frequented, celebrated.*

**cēler**, -ēris, -ēre, adj., *swift, fleet.*

**cēlēr-itās**, -ātis, F. (**cēler**), *swiftness, quickness, speed.*

**cēlēr-iter**, adv. (**cēler**), *swiftly, quickly, speedily.*

**cēlo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (185), *to hide, conceal.*

**Celtae**, -ārum, M., *the Celts; the inhabitants of Central Gaul.*

**censeo**, -ēre, -uī, -um, *to reckon, estimate; (of proceedings in Senate), vote, to give one's opinion.*

**centum**, adj., indecl., *a hundred.*

**centūria**, -ae, F. (**centum**), *a division of one hundred; a century, company.*

**centūriō**, -ōnis, M. (**centum**), *the commander of a century; a centurion.*

**certā-men**, -inis, N. (**certo**), *a contest, battle.*

**certiōrem** (acc.) **fācēre**, *to inform.*

**certō**, adv. (**certus**), *certainly.*

**certo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight, contend.*

**certus**, -a, -um, adj. (**cerno**), *determined, fixed, certain; resolved.*

**cesso**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens. (**cēdo**), *to delay, cease, linger.*

(**cēterus**), -a, -um, adj. (nominative singular M. not found), *the other, the rest.*

**ceu**, conj., *as, as if.*

**cibāria**, -ōrum, N. (**cibus**), *food, provisions, fodder.*

**Cicērō**, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Tullius Cicero, the greatest of Roman orators and writers (B.C. 106-43).*

**Cimbri**, -ōrum, M., *a people of Northern Germany.*

**cingo**, **cingēre**, **cinxi**, **cinctum**, *to gird, surround, besiege.*

**circā**, adv. and prep. with the acc., *around, about.*

**circēter**, adv. and prep. with the acc., *round about, near.*

**circū-tus**, -ūs, M. (**circumeo**), *a going around in a circle; a circuit, compass.*

**circum**, adv. and prep. with acc., *around, about, near.*

**circum-do**, -dāre, -dēdī, -dātum, *to put around, surround with, encompass; circumdāre mūrū urbī or urbem mūrō, to put a wall round the city, or to surround the city with a wall.*

**circum-fundo**, -fundēre, -fūdī, -fūsum, *pour around, (pass.) rush in on all sides.*

**circum-sto**, -stāre, -stētī, no p.p., *to stand around; to surround, beset, besiege.*

**circum-venio**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come around, encompass, invest.*

**cis**, prep. with acc., *on this side.*

**cītērior**, -us, adj. (150. 1), *on this side, hither; Gallia cītērior, hither Gaul, i.e., this side of the Alps.*

**cītō**, adv., *quickly, speedily, soon* (comp. **cītius**, sup. **cītissimē**).

**citrā**, prep. with abl. and adv., *on this side; before, within.*

**cīv-ilis**, -e, adj. (**cīvis**), *belonging to citizens, civil, courteous.*

**cīvis**, -is, com. gen., *a citizen.*

**cīv-itās**, -ātis, F. (**cīvis**) *citizenship; a city, state; freedom of the city.*

**clādēs**, -is, F., *disaster, slaughter.*

**clam**, adv., *secretly; prep. with abl., without the knowledge of.*

**clāmo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to cry out, call, proclaim.*

**clārus**, -a, -um, adj., *clear, bright, illustrious.*

**classis**, -is, F., *a fleet.*

**claudio**, -ēre, -sī, -sum, *to shut, close, surround, finish.*



- clēmen-ter**, adv. (**clēmens**), *mildly, gently, calmly.*
- cliēns, -entis**, com. gen. (**clueo**), *a client, retainer (one attached to a patron, and protected by him).*
- coelum**, see **caelum**.
- cō-ēmo, -ēmēre, -ēmī, -emptum** (con; **ēmo**), *to purchase together, to buy up.*
- coepī, coepisse**, def. (305. 1), *to begin, undertake.*
- co-erceo, -ēre, -uī, -itum** (con; **arceo**), *to enclose wholly; restrain.*
- cō-gīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (con; **āgīto**), *to think, meditate.*
- cō-gnōmen, -inis**, N. (con; **gnōmen = nōmen**), *a surname; as Marcus (praenōmen) Tullius (nōmen) Cicērō (cōgnōmen).*
- cō-gnosco, -gnoscerē, -gnōvī, -gnitum**, (con; **gnosco = nosco**), *to find out; in perfect tenses, know.*
- cō-go, cōgēre, cōgēī, coactum** (con; **āgo**), *to drive together, collect, force, compel.*
- cōhors, -hortis**, F., *a cohort (a company of 600 soldiers).*
- cōhortor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. (con; **hortor**), *to exhort, admonish.*
- col-lēga**, see **con-lēga**.
- col-ligo**, see **con-ligo**.
- collis, -is**, M., *high ground, a hill.*
- col-lōco**, see **con-lōco**.
- collōqu-ium**, see **con-lōquium**.
- col-lōquor**, see **con-lōquor**.
- cōlo, cōlērē, cōluī, cultum**, *to till, cultivate, cherish; to dwell.*
- cōmes, -itis**, com. gen. (con; **eo**), *a companion, associate.*
- cōmītor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. (**cōmes**), *to accompany, follow, attend.*
- commeā-tus, -ūs**, M. (**commeo**), *provisions, supplies.*
- com-mēmōro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (con; **mēmōro**), *to call to mind, mention.*
- com-mitto, -mitterē, -misi, -missum** (con; **mitto**), *to connect, join, commit.*
- commōdē, adv. (commōdus)**, *duly, properly, well.*
- com-mōdus, -a, -um**, adj. (con; **mōdus**), *fit, serviceable.*
- commōnē-fācio, -fācēre, -fēcī, -factum**, *to remind.*
- com-mōveo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum** (con; **mōveo**), *to move violently, shake; bellum commovēre, to stir up war.*
- com-mūnis, -e**, adj. (con; **mūnus**), *common, general.*
- com-mūto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (con; **mūto**), *to exchange, alter.*
- com-pāro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (con; **pāro**), *to put together, prepare, collect, compare.*
- com-pello, -pellēre, -pūllī, -pulsūm**, *to drive together, force.*
- com-pleo, -plērē, -plēvī, -plētum** (con; **pleo**), *to fill full.*
- complōrā-tiō, -ōnis**, F. (**complōro**), *a loud weeping, lamentation.*
- com-plūrēs, -a or -ia**, adj., *several together, very many.*
- com-pōno, -pōnēre, -pōsuī, -pōsītum** (con; **pōno**), *to put together or in order, to settle.*
- com-porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (con; **porto**), *to bring together, collect.*
- com-prēhendo, -ēre, -dī, -sum** (con; **prehendo**), *to catch hold of, seize; to perceive.*
- con-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cessī, -cessum**, *to grant, yield.*
- con-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cīsum** (con; **caedo**), *to cut to pieces, destroy, kill.*
- concīlio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**concīlium**), *to call together, make friendly, reconcile.*

**con-cilium, -iī, N.** (**con**; **cālo**, to call), a meeting, assembly, council.

**con-clāmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to cry out, to shout.

**con-cūpi-sco, -cūpiscēre, -cūpī-vī or -cūpīī, -cūpītum, inch.** (**con**; **cūpio**), to be very desirous of, strive after.

**con-curro, -cūrrēre, -currī or -cūcurrī, -cursum**, to run together, assemble, fight.

**concur-sus, -ūs, M.** (**concurro**), a concourse, assembly, attack.

**con-demno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**con**; **damno**), to condemn.

**con-dīc-iō, -ōnis, F.**, terms, condition.

**condītiō**, see **condīciō**.

**con-do, -dēre, -didī, -dītum**, to place together; to found, hide.

**con-dūco, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-tum**, to lead together, collect; to hire.

**cōnfēro, cōnferre, contūlī, col-lātum**, to bring together, collect.

**cōnfertus, -a, -um, part.** (**cōnfercio**, to cram together), close, crowded, crammed.

**cōnfestim, adv.** (**cōnfēro**), immediately, speedily.

**cōn-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum** (**con**; **fācio**), to accomplish, finish.

**cōn-fido, -fidēre, -fīsus sum** (248. 2, Obs. 3), to trust confidently, confide.

**cōn-firmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to make firm, establish, strengthen.

**cōn-fiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum**, dep. (**con**; **fāteor**), to confess.

**cōn-fōdio, -fōdēre, -fōdī, -fos-sum**, to dig; to pierce through, stab.

**cōn-fūgio, -fūgēre, -fūgī**, no p.p., to flee for refuge.

**cōn-grēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum**, dep. (**con**; **grādior**), to meet, encounter, contend, fight.

**con-gruo, -gruēre, -gruī**, no p.p., to agree with, meet.

**cōn-icio** (pronounced **con-jī-cio**), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (**con**; **jācio**), to throw together, throw, hurl; in **fūgam cōnīcēre**, to put to flight.

**con-jungo, -gēre, -xī, -ctum**, to join together, connect, unite.

**conjūrā-tiō, -ōnis, F.**, a swearing together, conspiracy.

**conjūrā-tus, -ī, M.** (**conjūro**), a conspirator.

**con-jūro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to swear together, conspire.

**conjux (conjunx), -ūgis, com. gen.** (**conjungo**), a wife, husband, a betrothed.

**con-lēga, -ae, M.** (**con**; **lēgo**), associate, colleague.

**con-ligo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**con**; **ligo**), to bind together; restrain.

**con-lōco (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to place together; to settle in a place; to give a woman in marriage.

**con-lōquium, -iī, N.**, a talking together, conversation, conference.

**con-lōquor, -ī, -cūtus, dep.**, converse, have a conference together.

**cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.**, to attempt, endeavor, try.

**cōn-sanguī-nus, -a, -um, adj.** (**con**; **sanguis**), related by blood, related.

**cōn-scendo, -dēre, -dī, -sum** (**con**; **scando**), to climb; (**nā-vēs**), embark.

**cōn-scribo, -bēre, -psī, -ptum**, to enlist, enroll, inscribe, write.

**cōnsen-sus, -ūs, M.** (**consentiō**), an agreement.

**cōn-sēquor, -quī, -cūtus sum**, dep., to follow after, overtake.

**cōn-sēro, -sērēre, -sērū, -sertum**, to join, unite, bring together; **pūgnam** or **proelium cōnsērēre**, to join battle; **mā-**

- num cōnsērere**, *to engage in a hand-to-hand conflict.*
- cōnsīdēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to examine, consider, observe carefully.*
- Cōnsīdiūs -iī**, M., *one of Cæsar's officers.*
- cōn-sīdo**, -sīdēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *to sit down together, encamp.*
- cōnsīlium**, -iī, N., *deliberation, advice, talent; cōnsīliō*, *on purpose, intentionally.*
- cōn-sisto**, -sistēre, -stītī, -stītum, *to stand still, make a stand.*
- cōnspec-tus**, -ūs, M. (**cōnspicio**), *a sight.*
- cōn-spicio**, -spicēre, -spexī, -spectum (**con; spēcio**), *to look at, behold, observe.*
- cōnspicor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep., *to see.*
- cōnspirā-tiō**, -ōnis, F. (**cōnspiro**), *an agreement, conspiracy.*
- cōnstan-tia**, -ae, F. (**cōnstans**), *firmness, constancy.*
- cōn-stituo**, -uēre, -uī, -ūtum (**con; stātuo**), *to place, make, determine.*
- cōn-sto**, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, *to stand together; consist of (308).*
- cōnsuē-sco**, -escēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *inch. (consueo), to be accustomed, be wont.*
- cōnsuē-tūdo**, -īnis, F. (**cōnsuētus**), *custom, habit, usage, intercourse.*
- cōnsul**, -ūlis, M., *a consul; one of the two chief magistrates of Rome, chosen yearly.*
- cōnsul-ātus**, -ūs, M. (**cōnsul**), *the office of consul, consulship.*
- cōnsūlo**, -ēre, -uī, -tum, *to deliberate, consider, advise, consult for; ālicuī cōnsulēre*, *to consult for one's interest; āliquem cōnsulēre*, *to consult, take advice of, one.*
- cōnsul-tum**, -ī, N. (**cōnsūlo**), *a decree, decision, resolve.*
- con-tendo**, -dēre, -dī, -tum, *to strive for, contend, fight; hasten.*
- conten-tiō**, -ōnis, F. (**contendo**), *a straining; dispute.*
- con-testor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to call to witness, invoke.*
- continen-ter**, adv. (**contīnens**), *moderately; continuously, without interruption.*
- con-tīneo**, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -tentum (**con; tēneo**), *to hold together, to hold in, keep back, restrain, confine.*
- con-tingo**, -tingēre, -tīgī, -tactum (**con; tango**), *to touch, border upon; impers., contingit mīhī*, *it is my lot (313).*
- contīn-uus**, -a, -um, adj. (**contīneo**), *unbroken, continuous.*
- contrā**, adv. and prep. with acc., *over against, opposite to.*
- con-trāho**, -hēre, -xī, -ctum, *to draw together, assemble, contract.*
- contrā-rius**, -a, -um, adj. (**contra**), *opposite, contrary, opposed, hostile.*
- contrōvers-ia**, -ae, F. (**contro-versus**), *controversy, dispute.*
- contūmē-lia**, -ae, F. (**contūmeo**), *abuse, insult; in pl., abusive epithets.*
- con-vēnio**, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come together, assemble; convēnīre āliquem*, *to accost one; convēnit*, impers., *it is agreed upon (313).*
- conven-tus**, -ūs, M. (**convēnio**), *a coming together; an assembly.*
- con-vertō**, -tēre, -tī, -sum, *to turn round, change, turn; convertēre in fugam*, *to put to flight.*
- con-vōco**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to call together, assemble, summon.*
- co-ōrior**, -ōrīrī, -ortus (**con; ori-or**), dep., 3 and 4 conj., *arise, break out (war).*
- cōphīnus**, -ī, M., *a basket.*
- cōpia**, -ae, F. (**con; ops**), *abun-*

- dance; pl., supplies, troops, wealth.
- cōpi-ōsus, -a, -um, adj. (cōpia), well supplied, abounding, plentiful, copious.
- cōquo, -ēre, cōxi, coctum, to cook.
- cōram, adv. and prep. with abl., openly; in the presence of, before.
- Cōrīnthus, -i, F., Corinth, a city of Greece.
- Cornēlia, -ae, F., the first wife of Caesar.
- cornū, -ūs, N., a horn; the wing of an army.
- corpus, -ōris, N., a body, corpse.
- cōtīdī-ānus or cōtīdī-ānus -a, -um, adj., daily.
- cōtīdīe or cōtīdīe (quōt-), adv., daily.
- crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, close, frequent.
- crēdo, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum (with dat. pers.), to trust; (with acc. and inf.), believe.
- crēmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to burn.
- creo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to bring forth, beget, create, elect.
- crē-sco, o-rē-scere, crēvī, crētum (creo), to grow, grow up, increase.
- crīnis, -is, M., the hair.
- crūciā-tus, -ūs, M. (crūcio), torture, torment.
- crux, -ūcis, F., a cross, torture.
- cūbo, -āre, -uī, -ītum, to lie down, recline.
- culpa, -ae, F., crime, fault, failure.
- culpo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (culpa), to censure, blame.
- cum, prep. with abl., with, together with, among.
- cum (quum), conj., when, since, although, though; cum . . . tum, both . . . and.
- cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to linger, hesitate, delay.
- cūpi-dē, adv. (cūpīdus), eagerly, zealously, ardently.
- cūpīd-itās, -ātis, F. (cūpīdus), a longing, desire, avarice.
- cūpīdus, -a, -um, adj. (cūpio), eager, desirous, covetous, fond.
- cūpio, -ēre, -ivī (or -ī), -ītum, to long for a thing, covet; to favor (with dat.).
- cūr, adv., why? for what reason?
- cūria, -ae, F., a curia, one of the thirty parts into which Romulus divided the Roman people; the senate-house.
- cūra, -ae, F. (quaero), trouble, care, attention, pains.
- Cūriātus, -ī, M., an Alban family name.
- cūro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (cūra), to care for; manage, govern; cure.
- curro, currere, cūcurī, cursum, to run, hasten.
- currus, -ūs, M., a chariot.
- cur-sus, -ūs, M. (curro), a running, race, journey, voyage.
- custōs, -ōdis, M., guard, watchman.

## D.

- damno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (damnum = fine, damage), to condemn, pass sentence on; damnāre cāpītis, to condemn to death.
- damnum, -ī, N., loss.
- dē, prep. with abl. (the subject of thought), of; (of place), down from, from; (of time), during, at, concerning.
- dea, -ae, F. (dat. and abl. pl. de-ābus), a goddess.
- dē-beo, -bēre, -buī, -bītum (dē; hābeo), to owe, be bound, be due; with an infinitive after it, translate it by ought, must, etc.; impers., dēbet, ū behooves, ought (313).
- dēcem, num. adj. indecl., ten.
- Dēcem-ber, -bris, M. (dēcem), the tenth month of the Roman

- year, reckoned from March;  
*December.*
- dēcember**, -bris, adj., of *December.*
- dē-certo**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to fight earnestly, to contend for.
- dēcet**, **dēcēre**, **dēcuit**, no p.p., impers., it is becoming (313).
- dēc-imus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., the tenth.
- dēcrē-tum**, -ī, N. (**dēcerno**), a decree, decision.
- dēc-us**, -ōris N. (cf. **dēcet**), that which is becoming, ornament.
- dēdēcus**, -ōris, N., dishonor, disgrace.
- dēd-itiō**, -ōnis, F. (**dē-dātiō**), a giving one's self up, a surrender.
- dē-dūco**, -dūcēre, -dūxi, -ductum, to lead away, withdraw; mislead, seduce.
- dē-fendo**, -dēre, -dī, -sum, to ward off, avert; to defend.
- dē-fēro**, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum, irr., to bear or bring from, so report; land (of ships); accuse.
- dē-fētiscor**, -fētiscī, -fessus sum, dep., to become tired out; to grow faint.
- dein**, see **deinde**.
- dein-ceps**, adv. (**dein**; **cāpio**), one after the other, successively; thereafter.
- deinde**, adv., then, afterward, secondly.
- dē-icio** (pronounced **de-jicio**), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (**dē**; **jācio**), to throw down, dislodge, deprive.
- dēleo**-to, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intens. (**dēlicio**), to delight, please, amuse.
- dēleo**, -lēre, -lēvi, -lētum, to wipe out, to abolish, destroy.
- dē-ligo**, -ligēre, -lēgi, -lectum (**dē**; **lēgo**), to choose out, select.
- dē-ligo**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to bind together, bind up.
- dē-mīnuo**, -mīnuēre, -mīnuī, -mīnūtum, to lessen, diminish.
- dē-mitto**, -mittēre, -misi, -missum, to let or bring down, cast down, dismiss.
- dēmum**, adv. (*nethermost*), at last, at length, only; **tum dēmum**, then at length.
- dēn-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (**dēni**), consisting of or containing ten.
- dēn-ārius**, -iī, M., a Roman silver coin (containing originally ten asses), equal to about sixteen cents.
- dē-nēgo**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to deny, reject, refuse.
- dēni**, -ae, -a, num. distributive adj. (**dēcnī**), ten each, ten at a time, by tens, ten.
- dēni-que**, adv., at last, finally.
- dēns**, *dentis*, M., a tooth.
- dē-pello**, -pellēre, -pūli, -pulsus, to drive from, repel.
- dē-pōno**, -pōnēre, -pōsi, -pōsitum, to lay aside; give up.
- dēprēcā-tor**, -ōris, M. (**dēprēcōr**), an interceder, intercessor.
- dē-prēcōr**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to beseech, pray against, deprecate, beg.
- dē-scendo**, -dēre, -dī, -sum (**dē**; **scando**), to come down, descend.
- dē-sēro**, -ēre, -uī, -tum, to desert, abandon.
- dē-signo**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to mark out, appoint, choose.
- dē-silio**, -sillire, -silui, -sultum (**dē**; **sālio**), to leap down.
- dē-sisto**, -sistēre, -stīti, -stītum, to leave off, give over, desist.
- dē-spēro**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to be hopeless, despair of.
- dē-spondeo**, -dēre, -dī, -sum, to promise, to betroth.
- dē-stringo**, -stringēre, -strinxī, -strictum, to unsheath, draw (the sword).

**dē-sum, -esse, fui, to be away; to fail, be wanting (293. 4).**

**dēsūper, adv. (dē, from; sūper, above), from above.**

**dē-tēgo, -tēgere, -texi, -tectum, to uncover, expose; discover, reveal.**

**dē-terreo, -terrere, -terruī, -territum, to frighten off, deter.**

**dē-tīneo, -tīnere, -tīnuī, -tentum (dē; tēneo), to hold off, detain, hinder.**

**dē-trāho, -trāhere, -trāxi, -tractum, to draw off, withdraw.**

**dētrī-mentum, -ī, N. (dētēro), loss, damage, defeat.**

**deus, -ī, M. (176. 1), a god, divinity, deity.**

**dē-vinco, -vincere, -vici, -victum, to conquer, vanquish.**

**dē-voro, -āre, -avi, -ātum, to gulp down, devour, consume.**

**dexter, -tra, -trum, and -tēra, -tērum, adj., to the right, on the right side, right.**

**dextēra, -ae, F., the right hand.**

**diādēma, -ātis, N., a royal head-dress, diadem.**

**dīc, imperat. of dīco, say.**

**dīco, dīcere, dīxi, dictum, to speak, say, name, appoint, plead; dicitur, it is said.**

**dictā-tor, -ōris, M. (dicto), dictator; a supreme magistrate, elected by the Romans only in seasons of emergency, when his power was absolute, and lasted for six months.**

**dict-ito, -āre, -avi, -ātum, intens. (dicto), to say or plead often, declare.**

**dīc-to, -āre, -avi, -ātum, intens. (dīco), to say often, dictate, prescribe.**

**dīc-tum, -ī, N. (dīco), a saying, a word, command.**

**diēs, -ei, M. (175. 2), a day of 24 hours; daylight; in diēs, daily, with an idea of constant in-**

**crease; ad diem, at the appointed time.**

**dif-fēro, differre, distūli, dilātum, to delay; meaning to differ; no perf. nor p.p.; inter sē diffēre, to differ from each other (295, Obs. 2).**

**difficil-e, adv., with difficulty.**

**dif-ficilis, -e, adj. (dis; facilis), hard, difficult.**

**difficul-tās, -ātis, F. (difficilis), difficulty, trouble.**

**dif-fīdo, -fidere, -fīsus sum, semidep. (dis; fīdo, 248. 2, (Obs. 8), to mistrust, despair.**

**dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy of (307, Obs. 4).**

**diligēns, -entis, part. (dīligo), careful, attentive, diligent.**

**dīlīgen-tia, -ae, F., diligence, carefulness.**

**dī-līgo, -līgere, -lēxi, -lectum (dis; lēgo), to value highly, esteem, love.**

**dī-mīco, -āre, -avi or -uī, -ātum, to fight, contend.**

**dīmīdus, -a, -um, half; as a noun, dīmīdium, the half.**

**dī-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, to send forth, dismiss, adjourn.**

**dī-rīgo, -rīgere, -rēxi, -rectum (dis; rēgo), to direct, guide.**

**dīs, dītis, adj., see dives.**

**dis-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, to go apart, depart.**

**disc-īpulus, -ī, M. (disco), a learner, scholar, pupil.**

**disco, discere, didici, no p.p., to learn.**

**dīs-īcio (pronounced dis-jicio), -icere, -jēcī, -jectum (dis; jacio), to tear asunder, scatter; break down.**

**dī-spērgo, -spērgere, -spersi, -spersum (dī; spargo), to scatter about, disperse.**

**dis-plīceo, -plīcere, -plīcui, -plī-**

- cĭtum** (**dis**; **plăceo**) (with dat.), to displease.
- dis-pūto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to discuss; argue.
- dissēns-iō**, -ōnis, F. (**dissentio**), difference of opinion, disagreement, quarrel.
- dissīdium**, -ī, N., discord.
- dis-similis**, -e, adj., unlike, dissimilar.
- dītor**, **dītissimus**, comp. and superlative of **dīves**.
- diū**, adv. (**diēs**), by day, a long time, long ago; comp., **diūtius**; superlative, **diūtissimē**.
- dīv-es**, -itis, adj., rich (the nom. and acc. of the neut. pl. do not occur; comp., **dīvītor** or **dītior**; superlative, **dīvītissimus** or **dītissimus**).
- Dīvicō**, -ōnis, M., **Divico**, a Helvetian leader.
- dī-vido**, -vidēre, -vīsi, -vīsum, to separate, divide, distinguish.
- Dīvitiācus**, -ī, M., **Divitiacus**, an Æduan chief.
- do**, **dāre**, **dēdī**, **dātum** (75. N. 3), to give; **finem dāre**, to put an end to.
- dōceo**, -ēre, -uī, -tum, to teach.
- doo-tus**, -a, -um, part. (**dōceo**), learned, versed, experienced.
- dōleo**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to feel pain, lament, be sorry for.
- dōl-or**, -ōris, M. (**dōleo**), pain, anguish, anger.
- dōlus**, -ī, M., guile, fraud, deceit.
- dōm-i-cil-ium**, -iī, N. (**dōmus**), a habitation, dwelling, abode.
- dōminā-tiō**, -ōnis, F. (**dōminor**), rule; despotism.
- dōmīnus**, -ī, M. (**dōmo**), a master, lord, chief; owner.
- dōmo**, -āre, -uī, -itum, to subdue, vanquish, overcome, conquer.
- dōmus**, -ī or -ūs, F. (174), a house, home; **dōmī**, at home.
- dōneo**, conj., as long as, while; until (334).
- dōno**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**dōnum**), to give (with acc. of thing and dat. of person, or acc. of person and abl. of thing).
- dōnum**, -ī, N. (**dō**), a gift, present.
- dormio**, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, to sleep, rest.
- Dūbis**, -is, M., a river of Gaul.
- dūbitā-tiō**, -ōnis, F. (**dūbito**), a doubting, doubt, hesitation.
- dūbito**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens. (**duo**, through old form, **dubo**), to doubt, hesitate.
- dūbins**, -a, -um, adj. (**duo**), doubtful (145); as noun, **dūbium**, -ī, N., doubt.
- dū-centī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**duo**; **centum**), two hundred.
- dūco**, **dūcere**, **dūxi**, **ductum**, to lead; put off, consider, think; **mūrum dūcere**, to build a wall; **uxōrem in matrīmōnium dūcere**, to marry (a woman).
- dulcis**, -e, adj., sweet, agreeable.
- dum**, conj., while, so long as, until, provided that (334).
- dum-mōdo**, conj., provided that, if only (327).
- Dumnōrix**, -īgis, M., **Dumnorix**, an Æduan chief.
- duo**, -ae, -o, num. adj., two (213).
- duō-dēcim**, num. adj., indecl., twelve.
- duō-dē-vigintī**, num. adj., indecl., two from twenty, eighteen.
- Dyrrāchium**, -iī, N., a sea-coast town of Illyria, formerly called Epidamnus (now Durazzo).

## E.

- ē**, ex, prep. with abl., out of, from, of; **ex itinēre**, on the march; **ex equō**, on horseback.
- ē-dīco**, -dīcere, -dīxi, -dictum, to declare, publish; order.

- ēdo, ēdere** or **esse, ēdi, ēsum** or **essum** (299), *to eat*.
- ēdo, -dere, -didi, -ditum**, *to give forth, publish, exhibit, display*.
- ēdūco, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum**, *to lead forth, march out troops*.
- ēdūco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to bring up, rear, educate*.
- ef-fēro, efferre, extūli, ēlātum**, irreg. (**ex; fēro**), *to carry forth, to bring forth, publish* (295).
- ef-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum** (**ex; fācio**), *to make out, bring to pass; to effect* (323. 3).
- ef-fundo, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum** (**ex; fundo**), *to pour out or forth; to overflow; squander; effundere sē, to spread out*.
- ēgē-nus, -a, -um, adj.** (**ēgeo**), *in want, destitute, needy*.
- ēgo, mei, pron., I; pl. nōs** (229).
- ēgrēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum**, dep. (**ex; grādior**), *to go out, go forth, leave*.
- ēgrēg-ius, -a, -um, adj.** (**ē; grēx**), (*out of the herd*), *excellent, remarkable*.
- ē-icio** (pronounced **ē-jicio**), **-icē-re, -jēcī, -jectum** (**e; jācio**), *to cast, thrust or drive out, expel, banish; ēicere sē, to rush out*.
- ē-lābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum**, dep., *to slip away, escape*.
- ē-lātus, -a, -um, part.** (**effēro**), *exalted, lofty, high*.
- ēlōgāns, -ntis, adj.**, *elegant*.
- ēlōquent-ia, -ae, f.** (**ēlōquens**), *a being eloquent, eloquence*.
- ē-mīneo** (**ex; mīneo**), **-āre, -uī**, no sup., *to stand out, excel*.
- ēmo, ēmere, ēmī, emptum**, *to buy* (304).
- ēnim, conj.** (strengthened form of **nam**, *for*; placed after the first word or words), *for, indeed, in fact* (205. 5).
- ē-nuntio** (**cio**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to divulge; to report*.
- eo, ire, ivī or iī, itum, irreg.**, *to go* (298).
- eō, adv.** (**is**), *thither; to that place, so far; therefore*. With comparatives, *by so much, so much, the; quō . . . eō, the . . . the*.
- eōdem, adv.** (**īdem**), *to the same place, the same way*.
- Epicūrēus, -a, -um, adj.** *Epicurean*.
- ēpistūla, -ae, f.**, *a letter, epistle*.
- ēques, equītis, m.** (**ēquus**), *a horseman, rider; pl., ēquītēs, cavalry; also the knights, the equites, as an order in the state*.
- ēques-ter, -tris, -tre, adj.** (**ēques**), *belonging to horsemen, equestrian*.
- ē-quīdem, adv.**, *verily, truly*.
- ēquītā-tus, -ūs, m.** (**ēquito**), *a riding, cavalry*.
- ēquīt-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**ēques**), *to be a horseman; to ride*.
- ēquus, -ī, m.**, *a horse, steed*.
- ergō, adv.** (205. 4), *therefore, accordingly*.
- ē-rīpio, -rīpēre, -rīpuī, -reptum** (**e; rāpio**), *to snatch away, rescue; ērīpēre sē, to snatch one's self away, to escape*.
- ē-rūd-īo, -īre, -ivī or -iī, -itum** (**e; rūdis**), *to free from rudeness, educate, instruct*.
- et, conj.** (205), *and, also, too, as; et . . . et, both . . . and, not only . . . but also*.
- ētiam, conj.**, *and also, besides, likewise*, (205. 5); *certainly, yes; with comparatives, still; māgis etiam, still more*.
- et-si, conj.**, *even if, although* (331); *yet, but*.
- Eurīpides, -is, m.**, *a celebrated Athenian tragic poet*.
- ē-vādo, -dēre, -sī, -sum**, *to go forth, to escape from*.
- ē-vello, -vellēre, -vellī or -vulsī, -vulsum**, *to tear out, remove*.
- ē-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum**,



- to come out; come to pass, turn out.
- ē-vertō, -tēre, -tī, -sum,** to turn, drive or thrust out; to overthrow, destroy.
- ex** or **ē** (**ē** only before consonants), prep. with abl., out of, from, of.
- ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cesum,** to go out, withdraw; to exceed.
- excell-ēns, -entis,** part. (**ex-cello**), high, lofty, excellent.
- excel-sus, -a, -um,** part. (**ex-cello**), elevated, lofty, high.
- ex-cipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum** (**ex; cāpio**), to take out; to receive; to succeed.
- ex-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsī, -clūsum** (**ex; claudio**), to shut out, exclude.
- ex-cōlo, -cōlere, -cōlui, -cultum,** to cultivate; to improve.
- exemplum, -ī, N. (exīmo),** a sample.
- ex-eo, -ire, -ivī or -īī, -itum,** irreg., to go out (from life), withdraw (298).
- ex-erceo, -ēre, -uī, -itum** (**ex; arceo**), to exercise, practise; **nēgōtium exercēre**, to follow a business.
- exercitā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (exercīto),** exercise, practice.
- exero-itus, -ūs, M. (exerceo),** trained body of men; an army.
- ex-igo, -igere, -ēgī, -actum** (**ex; āgo**), to lead out, to drive forth, expel; exact; finish; pass; **āliquīd ab āliquō exīgere**, to demand any thing from any one.
- existimā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (existīmo),** a judging, judgment, opinion, character.
- ex-istīmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**ex; aestīmo**), to judge, think, esteem.
- exī-tium, -īī, N. (exeo),** destruction.
- ex-pēdio, -ire, -ivī or -īī, -itum** (**ex; pēs**), (to free the feet from), to extricate, disengage; set free.
- expēdit, impers.,** it is profitable, useful (313).
- expēdi-tiō, -ōnis, F. (expēdio),** an expedition, excursion.
- expēdi-tus, -a, -um,** part. (**expēdio**), unimpeded, passable, without baggage.
- ex-pello, -pellere, -pūllī, -pulsum,** to drive out, eject, expel.
- experg-iscor, -pergisci, -perrectus sum,** dep. (**expergo**), to be awakened; to awake.
- ex-pērior, -pēriī, -pertus sum,** dep. (**ex; pērior**, obsolete), to try; attempt.
- ex-pio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to atone for, expiate.
- explōrā-tor, -ōris, M. (explōro),** a searcher out, scout, spy.
- ex-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitum,** to lay or put out, set forth; explain; to set on shore, disembark.
- expōs-itiō, -ōnis, F. (expōno),** a setting forth, exposition; a narration.
- ex-prīmo, -prīmēre, -pressī, -pressum** (**ex; prēmo**), to press out; describe, express, utter.
- ex-prōbro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**ex; prōbrum**), to reproach.
- ex-pūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to take by assault; to storm, capture.
- ex-quīro, -rere, -sivī, -situm** (**ex; quaero**), to search diligently.
- ex-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus sum,** dep., to follow out, execute.
- ex-specto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to await, expect; fear.
- ex-spīro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to breathe out; expire.
- ex-stinguo, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum,** to put out, extinguish; to kill, destroy; **aquā extinctus**, drowned.

**exsul-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, in-**  
tens. (**ex; sālio**), to leap up; re-  
joice exceedingly.

**ex-ter (tērus), -ēra, -ērūm, adj.**  
(**ex**), outside, foreign, strange;  
comp., **exterior**, outer, exte-  
rior; superlative, **extrēmus** or  
(**extimū**), outermost, last.

**ex-timēscō, -timēscere, -timui,**  
no p.p., v. A. and N., fear  
greatly, dread.

**ex-tollo, -tollere, no perf., no**  
p. p., to lift up, raise up, exalt.

**extrā, adv., and prep. with acc.,**  
on the outside, beyond.

## F.

**fā-ber, -brī, M. (fācio), a carpen-**  
ter, smith, artisan.

**fābrīco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (fā-**  
ber), to frame, make, construct,  
build.

**fābrīcor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,**  
to frame, build, fashion.

**fā-būla, -ae, F. (for), a story,**  
fable.

**fācētus, -a, -um, adj., courteous.**

**fācīl-e, adv. (fācīlis), easily.**

**fāc-īlis, -e, adj. (fācio), easy,**  
courteous, affable (149. 2).

**fāc-īnus, -ōnis, N. (fācio), a deed,**  
crime.

**fācio, fācere, fēcī, factum, to**  
make, do; passive, **fio, fierī,**  
**factus sum, to be made, to be-**  
come (302); **castra fācere, to**  
pitch camp; **impers., fit, it hap-**  
pens, is usual; **fiat, so be it.**

**fao-tio, -ōnis, F. (fācio), a mak-**  
ing; a party, faction.

**fac-tum, -ī, N. (fācio), a deed, act,**  
exploit.

**fallo, fallere, fēfellī, falsum, to**  
deceive.

**fal-sus, -a, -um, part. (fallo),**  
false.

**fāmīl-ia, -ae, F. (fāmulus, a**  
servant), family-servants, retain-  
ers; family, household; **pāter**  
**fāmiliās or fāmiliae, master of**  
a family.

**fāmīl-āris, -is, M. (fāmilia), of**  
the household; subst., a friend.

**fās, indecl., N. (for), (that which**  
is right in the sight of heaven),  
divine law; right (267).

**fascis, -is, M., a bundle, parcel;**  
**fascēs, pl., a bundle of rods**  
and an axe carried by the lic-  
tors before a chief magistrate,  
with which criminals were  
scourged and beheaded; the  
fascēs.

**fāteor, fātēri, fassus sum, to**  
confess.

**fā-tum, -ī, N. (for), destiny, fate,**  
calamity.

**faucēs, -ium, F. (found in the**  
sing. only in the abl.; fauce),  
the throat, gullet; a defile, pass.

**Faustulus, -ī, M., Faustulus, the**  
shepherd who brought up  
Romulus and Remus.

**fāveo, fāvēre, fāvī, fautum, to fa-**  
vor, protect.

**Fēbruārius, -iī, M., February.**

**fēlīc-iter, adv. (fēlīx), auspī-**  
ciously, favorably.

**fēlīx, -īcis, adj. (feo, to produce),**  
fruitful; happy, fortunate.

**fēra, -ae, F. (fērus), a wild ani-**  
mal, wild beast.

**fērē, adv., nearly, generally.**

**fēro, ferre, tūlī, lātum, irreg.**  
(295), to bear, bring, endure;  
bring forth; tell, relate; raise,  
exalt; **fērunt, they say; fertur,**  
it is said; **auxīlium ferre, to**  
bring aid; **injūriās ferre, to**  
inflict injuries; **ferre lēgem,**  
to propose a law.

**fēr-ōx, -ōcis, adj. (fēro), bold,**  
fierce.

**ferrum, -ī, N., iron; sword, arms.**

- fessus**, -a, -um, adj., *wearied, tired, fatigued, weak, feeble.*
- festino**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, to *hasten, hurry, accelerate.*
- fīd-ēs**, -ei, F. (**fīdo**), *trust, faith, confidence, belief, credit; promise, engagement, word.*
- fīdo**, **fīdēre**, **fīsus** sum, semi-dep. (283 and 248. 2, Obs. 3), *to trust, confide.*
- fīlia**, -ae, F. (dat. and abl. pl., sometimes **fīliabus**; 75. N.), *a daughter.*
- fīlius**, -ii, M. (vocative sing., **fīli**; 75. 5), *a son.*
- fīn-lo**, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum (**fīnis**), *to limit, bound, finish.*
- fīnis**, -is, M. and F., *a boundary, limit, end; finēs, pl., *the borders (of a territory), territory.**
- fīn-ītimī**, -ōrum, M. (**fīnis**), *neighbors; masc. pl. of fīnītimus.*
- fīo**, pass. of **fācio** (302).
- fīāgīto**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to demand fiercely; to importune* (185. 2).
- flecto**, **flectēre**, **flexi**, **flexum**, to *bend, direct.*
- fleo**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *to weep, cry.*
- flē-tus**, -ūs, M. (**fleo**), *a weeping.*
- fio**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to blow; blow away.*
- fīorē-na**, -ntis, part. (**fīoreo**), *flourishing, prosperous.*
- fīor-eo**, -ēre, -ui, no p. p. (**fīōs**), *to bloom, to be prosperous.*
- fīōs**, **fīōris**, M., *a blossom, flower.*
- fluctus**, -ūs, M. (**fluo**), *wave, a billow, surge.*
- fīū-men**, -inis, N. (**fluo**; that which flows along), *a river.*
- fluo**, -ēre, -xi, -xum, *to flow; disappear.*
- fīūv-lus**, -ii, M. (**fluo**), *a river, running water, stream.*
- fōdio**, **fōdēre**, **fōdī**, **fossūm**, to *dig.*
- foed-us**, -eris, N. (**fīdus**), *a league, treaty, compact, agreement.*
- for**, **fārī**, **fātus** sum, dep. (305. 2, c), *to speak, say.*
- fōre**, fut. inf. of **sum**.
- fōris**, -is, F., *a door, gate* (gen. pl., **fōrum**).
- for-ma**, -ae, F., *shape, form, beauty.*
- for-sit-an**, adv., *perhaps (fors; sit; an).*
- fort-as-se**, adv. (**forte**; **an**; **sit**), *perhaps, by chance.*
- forte**, adv. (**fors**), *by chance, perhaps.*
- for-tis**, -e, adj. (**fēro**), *strong, powerful, courageous, brave.*
- fort-iter**, adv. (**fortis**), *strongly, powerfully, boldly, valiantly.*
- fōrum**, -ī, N., *a market place, public square, forum; a long open space in Rome, between the Capitoline and Palatine hills, surrounded by porticoes and the shops of bankers.*
- fos-sa**, -ae, F., *a ditch, trench.*
- frango**, **frangēre**, **frēgi**, **fractum**, *to break; (of ships) to wreck.*
- frāter**, **frātris**, M., *a brother.*
- frētus**, -a, -um, adj., *relying upon.*
- frīgus**, -ōris, N. (**frig** in **frigeo**), *cold, coldness.*
- frōns**, **frondis**, F., *a leaf; leaves, foliage.*
- fructu-ōsus**, -a, -um, adj. (**fructus**), *fruitful, advantageous.*
- fruc-tus**, -ūs, M., *fruit, profit, advantage, income.*
- frūges**, -um, F. pl. (**frūx**), *fruits of the earth, crops.*
- frūment-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (**frūmentum**), *of corn; rēs frūmentāria*, *corn, provisions.*
- frū-mentum**, -ī, N. (**fruor**), *corn, grain.*
- fruor**, **frui**, **fructus** and **fruitus** sum, dep., *to enjoy* (280).
- frustrā**, adv., *without effect, in vain.*

**fūg-a, -ae, F.** (**fūgio**), a flight, exile, banishment.  
**fūgio, fūgere, fūgi, fūgitum**, to flee or fly; to run away; escape.  
**fulg-ur, -ūris, N.** (**fulgeo**), lighting, brightness.  
**funda, -ae, F.**, sling.  
**fund-itor, -tōris, M.** (**funda, a sling**), one who slings, a slinger.  
**fundo, fundere, fūdī, fūsum**, to pour; scatter, rout; **lacrimās fundere**, to shed tears; **hostēs fundere**, to rout the enemy; **fundī**, to be poured out, to flow.  
**fungor, fungī, functus sum, dep.**, to perform (280).

## G.

**Gādēs, -ium, F.**, a colony in southern Hispania (Cadiz).  
**Gaius (Caius), -iī, M.**, a Roman name.  
**Galba, -ae, M.**, Galba, a Roman emperor; a chief of the Suesiones.  
**gālea, -ae, F.**, a helmet.  
**Galli, -ōrum, M.**, Gauls, the people of Gaul.  
**Gallia, -ae, F.**, Gaul.  
**Gall-icus, -a, -um, adj.** (**Gallia**), Gallic.  
**gall-īna, -ae, F.** (**gallus, a cock**), a hen.  
**Gallus, -a, -um, adj.**, Gallic; as subst., a Gaul.  
**Garumna, -ae, M.**, a river of Gaul (now Garonne).  
**gaudeo, gaudere, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep.** (283), to rejoice.  
**gaud-ium, -iī, N.** (**gaudeo**), joy, gladness, delight.  
**gēlu, -ūs, N.**, cold, frost, chill.  
**gēmīnā-tus, -a, -um, part.** (**gēmīno**), doubled, double.  
**gē-mīnus, -a, -um, adj.** (**gēno**, to bring forth), twin, double.  
**Gēnāva, -ae, F.**, Geneva (on Lake Geneva, at its outlet into the

Rhone), a city of the Allobroges.  
**gēner, -ērī, M.**, a son-in-law.  
**gēn-itus, -a, -um, part.** (**gīgno**), begotten, born.  
**gēnū, -ūs, N.**, the knee.  
**gēnus, -ēris, N.**, birth, race, kind.  
**Germānī, -ōrum, M. pl.**, the Germans.  
**Germania, -ae, F.**, Germany.  
**Germānus, -a, -um, adj.**, German.  
**gēro, gērere, gessī, gestum**, to carry, wear, bear, do, transact, carry on; **sē gērere**, to conduct one's self; **bellum gērere**, to carry on war; **rēs gestae**, deeds, exploits.  
**ges-tō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.** (**gēro**), to bear, carry, have.  
**gīgno, gignere, gēnuī, gēnītum**, to beget, produce (283, 3).  
**glādius, -iī, M.**, a sword.  
**glōria, -ae, F.**, glory, fame; ambition, bragging.  
**glōri-or, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.** (**glōria**), to glory, boast.  
**Gn. (Cn.)**, **Gnæus**, a Roman name.  
**Graecus, -a, -um, adj.**, Greek.  
**Graecus, -ī, M.**, a Greek.  
**grāphium, -iī, N.**, a writing-style.  
**grāt-ia, -ae, F.** (**grātus**), favor, regard; **grātiæ, pl.**, thanks; **agere grātiās**, to give thanks; **facere grātiām**, to grant pardon, forgive; **grātiā**, with the gen., for the sake of, on account of; **eā grātiā**, for this or that reason, on this or that account.  
**grāt-ūlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.** (**grātus**), to wish joy, congratulate; to give thanks.  
**grātus, -a, -um, adj.**, pleasing; grateful.  
**grāvis, -e, adj.**, heavy, weighty; important, grave, violent.  
**grāv-iter, adv.** (**grāvis**), heavily, severely, weightily; elaborately.

**grex, grēgis, m.,** a flock, herd, drove; troop, company.

**gubernā-tor, -ōris, m. (gūberno),** a steersman, pilot; ruler, governor.

**gūberno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to steer or pilot a ship; govern.

## H.

**hābeo, hābēre, hābuī, hābitum,** to have; to esteem; **bēne sē hābēre,** to be well; **sic hābēre,** to be even so; **hābērī prō,** with abl., to be regarded as.

**hāb-īto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.,** (hābeo), to have possession of, to inhabit; to dwell.

**Haeduus,** see **Aeduus.**

**haereo, haerēre, haesi, haesum,** to hold fast, stick.

**Hannibal, -ālis, m., Hannibal,** the son of Hamilcar, leader of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War.

**Hārūdēs, -um, m. pl., Harudes,** a German tribe in Gaul.

**haud, adv.,** not at all, not (negating single words).

**Helvētia, -ae, f., Helvetia,** modern Switzerland.

**Helvētī, -ōrum, m. pl., Helvetians,** a people of Gallia.

**Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian,** of the Helvetii; **āger Helvētius,** the territory of the Helvetii.

**hērī, or hēre, adv., yesterday, lately.**

**heu, interj. (an exclamation of pain or grief),** oh! ah! alas!

**Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland.**

**hib-ernus, -a, -um (hiems), adj.,** wintry; **hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl. (sc. castra),** winter-quarters.

**hic, haec, hoc, pron. demonstr. (234. 2),** this, this of mine; he, she, it; the latter opposed to **ille; hōc,** on this account.

**hīc, adv.,** here, hereupon.

**hiemo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (hiems),** to pass the winter.

**hiems (-mps), -ēmis, f.,** the winter.

**hinc, adv. (hīc),** from this place; from this time, hereafter; hence; **hinc . . . hinc,** on the one hand . . . on the other.

**Hispania, -ae, f., Spain.**

**Hōmērus, -ī, m., Homer;** the great epic poet of Greece.

**hōmo, -īnis, com. gen.,** a human being; a man or woman, a mortal.

**hōnor (-os), -ōris, m.,** honor, repute; **hōnōrēs, pl.,** offices of honor, public offices.

**hōnōrific-ē, adv. (hōnōrificus),** comp. **hōnōrificentius,** sup. **hōnōrificentissimē,** with honor, in an honorable manner.

**hōnōr-ī-ficus, -a, -um, adj.,** (hōn-or; fācio), bringing honor, honorable; comp. **hōnōrificentior,** sup. **hōnōrificentissimus.**

**hōra, -ae, f.,** an hour. (The Romans divided their day into twelve intervals from sunrise to sunset; hence their hour varied in length at different seasons of the year).

**Hōrātius, -ī, m.,** (a), the name of the three brothers, in the time of Tullus Hostilius, who fought against the Alban Curatī; (b) Horatius Cocles, who, in the war with Porsenna, defended a bridge single-handed; (c) Horace, a Roman poet.

**hordeum, -ī, n.,** barley.

**horreo, horrēre, horruī, no p.p.,** to bristle; to tremble, shudder; to dread.

**horr-or, -ōris, m. (horreo),** a bristling; a shaking; dread, horror; religious awe.

**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to incite, cheer, exhort, urge.*  
**hortus**, -ī, M., *a garden.*  
**hospitium**, -iī, N. (*hospes*), *a place of hospitality, inn.*  
**hostis**, -is, com. gen. (108), *a stranger, an enemy.*  
**hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj. (*homo*), *pertaining to man, human; courteous, civilized.*  
**hūmērus**, see *ūmērus*.

## I.

**ībi**, adv., *in that place, there.*  
**ībidem**, adv., *in the same place.*  
**īco**, *īcēre*, *īcī*, *īctum*, *to strike, hit, smite, stab; foedus īcēre, to make or conclude a treaty.*  
**īctus**, -ūs, M. (*īco*), *a blow, thrust.*  
**īdem**, *eādem*, *īdem*, pron., *the same, very* (238. 2); *īdem quī, the same as.*  
**īdōneus**, -a, -um, adj., *meet, proper, suitable* (145).  
**īdūs**, -ūum, F. pl., *the Ides; the fifteenth day of the months March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth day of the remaining months.*  
**īgitur**, conj. (205. 3), *then, thereupon; therefore, consequently.*  
**īgnis**, -is, M., *fire* (108).  
**īgnōsco**, -gnōscēre, -gnōvī, -gnōtum (in; gnōsco = nōsco, with dat.), *to pardon, forgive, excuse, overlook.*  
**īgnōtus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; gnōtus = nōtus), *unknown.*  
**īllātus**, or *īnlātus*, see *īnfēro*.  
**īlle**, -a, -ud, pron. demonstr. (234. 3), *that, that yonder; hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the one . . . the other.*  
**īllīc**, adv. (*īlle; ce*), *in that place, there.*

**īllīcō**, adv. (in; *lōcō*), *on the spot, instantly, there.*  
**īmāgo**, -īnis, F., *an image or likeness, statue, picture.*  
**īmber**, -bris, M., *a shower of rain.*  
**īmātūrus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; *mātūrus*), *unripe, immature.*  
**īmō** (*īmō*), adv., *on the contrary; no indeed, yes indeed.*  
**īmōrtālis**, -e, adj. (in; *mōrtālis*), *undying, immortal.*  
**īm-par**, -āris, adj. (in; *par*), *uneven, unequal, not a match for.*  
**īm-patiēns**, -entis, adj. (in; *pātiēns*), *not able to bear, impatient.*  
**īmpēdī-mentum**, -ī, N. (*īmpēdio*), *a hindrance, impediment; impedimenta, -ōrum, N. pl., baggage.*  
**īm-pēdio**, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītum (in; *pēs*), *to entangle, hinder, impede.*  
**īmpēdī-tus**, -a, -um, part. (*īmpēdio*), *hindered, impeded.*  
**īm-pello**, -pellēre, -pūlī, -pulsūm (in; *pello*), *to push against; urge on, impel.*  
**īm-pērā-tor**, -ōris, M. (*īm-pēro*), *general, commander (in chief).*  
**īm-perfectus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; *perfectus*), *unfinished, imperfect.*  
**īm-pēr-ium**, -iī, N. (*īm-pēro*), *a command; authority; empire, government.*  
**īm-pēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; *pāro*), *to command; govern, rule over; īmpērāre obsīdēs ālicuī, to demand hostages from any one.*  
**īm-pētro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; *pātro*), *to accomplish; to make a request and have it granted.*  
**īm-pētus**, -tūs, M., *an attack, assault, onset; impetuosity.*  
**īm-plōro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; *plōro*), *to invoke with tears, call to one's assistance; to implore.*

- im-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitum** (in; pōno), to place upon; place on; impose upon; **finem impōnere**, to make an end; mount (men on horses).
- im-porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, bring in, import.
- im-prīmis**, adv. (in; prīmis), in the first place, chiefly, especially.
- im-prōbus, -a, -um**, adj. (in; prōbus), wicked, bad.
- im-pūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (in; pūgno), to fight against, attack.
- in**, prep. with acc. and abl. (200. 3), 1. with acc., in, into, against; in diēs, from day to day; 2. with abl., in, before, in the presence of.
- in-cālēscō, -cālēscere, -cālui**, no p. p., inch. (in; cāleo), to grow warm or hot.
- in-cendo, -dēre, -dī, -sum**, to set on fire; inflame, irritate.
- in-certus, -a, -um**, adj., uncertain, unreliable, hesitating.
- in-cīdo, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cāsum** (in; cādo), to fall in with, attack; to happen; in mentiōnem incīdere, to mention accidentally; impers., (314. 3), incīdit, it happens, with dat.
- in-cīpio, -cīpere, -cēpi, -ceptum** (in; cāpio), to begin, undertake.
- in-cīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to set in rapid motion; to incite, spur on.
- in-clāmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to call upon for assistance; to invoke; revile.
- in-clīno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to bend down, incline, yield, give way; in fūgam inclīnāre, to be on the point of fleeing; inclīnārī, to be on the point of falling.
- incōla, -ae**, com. gen. (incōlo), an inhabitant, resident.
- in-cōlo, -cōlere, -cōlui**, no p. p., to dwell or abide in a place, to inhabit.
- in-cōlūmis, -e**, adj., uninjured, safe and sound.
- in-commōdum, -ī**, N., trouble, misfortune, defeat.
- in-crēdībīlis, -e**, adj. (in; crēdo), incredible, extraordinary.
- in-crēpo, -āre, -āvī or -uī, -ātum or -ītum**, to make a noise, rustle; rebuke; to clash.
- in-cūso, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (in; causa), to accuse, blame.
- in-dīco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (in; dīco, to make known, and so point), to point out.
- in-dīgnus, -a, -um**, adj., unworthy (307. Obs. 4).
- ind-ōles, -is**, f. (ōlesco, to grow), inborn or native quality, nature.
- in-dulgeo, -dulgere, -dulsī, -dultum** (in; dulcis), to be courteous, kind; to indulge, humor, give way to; concede, allow, grant.
- in-duo, -duere, -duī, -dūtum**, to put on, assume, clothe; in pass., induī vestem, to put on a garment.
- in-eo, -ire, -īvi or -īi, -ītum**, irreg., to go into, enter; inire consiliū, to form a plan; inire foedus, to make a treaty; inire grātiā, to get into the good graces of (298. Obs. 3).
- in-ermis, -e**, adj., (in; arma), unarmed, defenceless.
- in-ers, -ertis**, adj. (in; ars), unskilled; idle.
- in-fāns, -antis**, adj. (in; for), speechless; very young. As noun, com. gen., an infant, babe.
- in-fēlix, -icis**, adj., unhappy.
- in-fērior, -ius**, adj. (comp. of infērus, 150. 2), lower, later, inferior.
- in-fēro, inferre, intūlī, illātum** (inlātum), irreg. (295. Obs. 2), to carry in or into; in-

- ferre signa**, to advance the standards, attack; **Inferre pēdem** or **grādum**, to advance, attack; **sē Inferre**, to betake one's self, go.
- In-fērus**, -a, -um, adj. (comp. **in-fērior**, sup. **Infimus** or **Imus**), low, nether. As noun, **Infērī**, -ōrum, M. pl. (the inhabitants of the lower regions), the dead.
- Infesto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**Infestus**), to attack, molest, infest.
- In-festus**, -a, -um, adj. (old part. of **Infēro**), hostile; unsafe.
- Infimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superlative of **Infērus**), the lowest, last, lowest part of.
- In-flecto**, -flectēre, -flēxī, -flexum, to bend down; warp; affect.
- In-flo**, -flāre, -flāvī, -flātum, to blow into; inflate.
- In-fluo**, -fluēre, -flūxī, -fluxum, to flow into, flow upon, flow.
- Infrā**, adv. and prep. with acc., below, beneath, under, underneath.
- in-gēns**, -entis, adj. (in; **gēns**, beyond its kind, so), great, vast.
- Inicio** (pronounced **in-jicio**), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (in; **jācio**), to throw or cast into, cast upon or against; infuse into, inspire; **Inicēre mētum ālicuī**, to inspire one with fear.
- In-imicus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; **āmicus**), unfriendly, hostile. As noun, M., a private enemy or foe.
- In-iquus**, -a, -um, adj. (in; **aequus**), unequal, unjust; unkind.
- Ini-tium**, -iī, N. (**ineo**), a beginning, commencement; origin.
- injūri-a**, -ae, F. (**injūrius**), injury, violence; insult, injustice.
- in-nāscor**, -nāscī, -nātus sum, dep., to be born in; spring up in.
- in-nitor**, -nītī, -nīsus or -nīxus sum, dep., to lean or rest upon, support one's self by.
- in-nōcēns**, -entis, adj., harmless; blameless, innocent; disinterested.
- Inōp-ia**, -ae, F. (**Inops**), poverty, need, want.
- inquam**, def. (305. 2 b), I say.
- In-scribo**, -scribēre, -scripsī, -scriptum, to write upon, inscribe; indicate.
- In-sēquor**, -sēquī, -sēcūtus sum, dep., to follow after, pursue.
- In-sideo**, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum (in; **sēdeo**), to sit in; sit upon, settle upon; to get possession of, occupy.
- Insid-iae**, -ārum, F. pl. (**Insideo**), an ambush; artifice, plot; per **Insidiās**, by stratagem, craftily.
- Insidi-or**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (**Insidia**), to lie in wait for, watch for, expect.
- Insign-e**, -is, N. (**Insignis**), a distinctive mark; badge (of office), a signal; ensign; in pl., **Insignia**, -ium, badges of honor, decorations, ornaments.
- In-signis**, -e, adj. (in; **signum**), remarkable, distinguished, extraordinary.
- In-silio**, -silīre, -siluī, no p.p. (in; **sālio**), to leap or spring into; to leap or spring upon.
- In-sinuo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (in; **sinus**), to penetrate or enter anywhere by winding in; insinuate; with **sē**, work one's way into.
- Insōlen-ter**, adv. (**Insōlens**), unusually; haughtily, insolently.
- In-stituo**, -stituēre, -stitūī, -stitūtum (in; **stātuo**), to arrange, educate.
- Institū-tum**, -ī, N. (**Instituto**), custom, arrangement; in pl., institutions.
- In-sto**, -stāre, -stātī, -stātum, to stand upon; approach; harass.



**In-struo, -struere, -struī, -strutum**, to erect; teach; set in order, arrange (of troops); clothe, array, ornament.

**In-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum**, to become accustomed; to accustom or habituate one to a thing.

**In-sūla, -ae, F. (in; sālum, the sea)**, an island.

**In-sum, -esse, -fuī, irreg.**, to be in or upon, to belong to.

**In-tactus, -a, -um, adj. (in; tango)**, untouched, unharmed; pure, chaste.

**In-tēger, -gra, -grum adj. (in; tango)**, untouched; sound, whole, unhurt; fresh (of troops); blameless, pure; **ex integrō**, afresh.

**Intel-lēgō, -lēgēre, -lēxī, -lectum (inter; lēgō)**, to distinguish between, to perceive; understand.

**inter**, prep. with acc., between, among, during, in the midst of; **inter sē differre**, to differ from each other; **dāre inter sē**, to interchange.

**inter-cēdō, -cēdēre, -cēssī, -cessum**, to go between; to be, stand, or lie between, intervene; protest (as tribune).

**inter-clūdo, -clūdēre, -clūsī, -clūsum (inter; claudō)**, to shut off, cut off, hinder; surround.

**inter-dīcō, -dīcēre, -dīxī, -dictum**, to forbid, interdict, prohibit; **āliquīd interdīcēre ālicuī**, or **āliquē āliquā rē**, to exclude one from, to forbid one the use of anything; **interdīcēre ālicuī āquā et ignī**, to forbid one the use of fire and water, i.e., to deprive one of civil rights, to banish.

**inter-eā, (acc. pl. N.)**, adv., meanwhile.

**inter-est, impers. (313)**, it concerns, is of interest, is important; **interest meā, 315. 3 (2)**, it is my concern; **interest omnium**, it is the interest of all.

**interfec-tor, -ōris, M. (interficio)**, a slayer, murderer.

**inter-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (inter; facio)**, to destroy, kill.

**intēr-im, adv. (inter; im = eum)**, in the meantime, meanwhile.

**intērior, -ius, adj., comp. (150.1)**, inner, interior.

**intērī-tus, -ūs, M. (intēreo)**, destruction, ruin.

**inter-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -missum**, to discontinue, intervene.

**inter-pello, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to interrupt, hinder; urge.

**inter-rumpo, -rumpēre, -rūpī, -ruptum**, to break asunder, break down.

**inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, irreg.**, to be between, intervene, be present at; **interest, impers.**, see **interest**.

**inter-vallum, -ī, N.**, space between, interval, distance.

**intrā, adv. and prep. with acc.**, within, under (with numerals).

**in-tueor, -tuērī, -tuītus (-tūtus) sum, dep.**, to look at, contemplate.

**in-tūmēscō, -tūmēscēre, -tūmuī**, no sup., to begin to swell, to swell or rise up, increase; to be elated; swell with rage.

**In-ūsītātus, -a, -um, adj.**, unusual, extraordinary.

**in-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum**, to come upon, find; invent.

**in-vicem, adv. (in; vicis)**, by turns, alternately, one another.

**in-victus, -a, -um, adj.**, unconquered; invincible.

**in-vīdeo, -vīdēre, -vīdī, -vīsum**, to look spitefully at; envy.

- in-vītus, -a, -um, adj. (in; vōlo),** unwilling, reluctant.
- in-vōco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to call** on or upon; invoke; implore.
- ipse, -a, -um, pron. (238. 3), self,** very; himself, herself, itself.
- īra, -ae, F., anger, wrath, ire.**
- īrā-cundus, -a, -um, adj. (īra),** prone to anger, irritable.
- īr-ascor, īrascī, īrātus sum, dep. (īra), to be angry, be in a rage.**
- īrā-tus, -a, -um, part. act. (īrascor), angry, angered.**
- ir-rīdeo, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum (in; rīdeo), to laugh in ridicule; ridicule.**
- ir-rumpo, -rumpēre, -rūpī, -rūptum (in; rumpo), to break in, burst in.**
- ir-ruo, -ruēre, -ruī, no p.p. (in; ruo), to rush in or into; attack furiously, assault.**
- is, ea, id, pron. (238. 1), this, that; he, she, it; is quī, the man who, such a one that; in eō esse, to be on the point of.**
- iste, -ta, -tud, pron., this of yours, that near you; this, that; that fellow (in contempt) (234. 2).**
- ita, adv., thus, so; to such an extent; ita . . . ut (with subj.), in such a manner . . . that.**
- Itālia, -ae, F., Italy.**
- Itā-que, conj. (205. 4), and so; therefore, accordingly.**
- Item, adv., in like manner; so also.**
- īter, Itinēria, N. (eo), journey, march, route (121); ex Itinēre, on the march; māgnis Itinēribus, by forced marches.**
- Itērum, adv., again, a second time.**
- Itūrus, -a, -um, part. from eo.**
- J.**
- jāceo, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., to lie, lie prostrate, lie dead.**
- jācio, jācēre, jēcī, jactum, to throw, cast.**
- jactā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (jācio), a throwing; boasting.**
- jact-īto, -āre, no perf., no p.p., frequentative (jactō), to pour forth frequently; to make a great display.**
- jac-to, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, frequentative (jācio), to throw; talk about.**
- jam, adv., now, already, presently, at length; with a negative, as jam nōn, no longer.**
- jam-diū, adv., long ago, already, for a long time.**
- jānua, -ae, F. (jānus), a door, gate.**
- jānu-ārius, -a, -um, adj. (jānus), of or belonging to January. As noun, M., January.**
- Jānus, -ī, M., an ancient Latin divinity, represented with two faces, one in front, the other behind.**
- jōcus, -ī, M. (in pl., also jōca, -ōrum), a jest, joke.**
- Jōvis, gen. of Jūpiter.**
- Jūba, -ae, M., a king of Numidia.**
- jūbeo, jūbēre, jussī, jussum, to order, command.**
- jūdex, -īcis, com. gen. (jūs; dīco), a judge, umpire.**
- jūdic-ium, -iī, N. (jūdicō), a judgment, trial, court.**
- jū-dīco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (jus; dīco), to judge, determine.**
- jūg-ūlum, -ī, N., -us, -ī, M. (jungo) (that which joins), that which joins the shoulders and neck; the throat.**
- jūg-um, -ī, N. (jungo), a yoke; team; a summit (of a mountain).**
- Jūlius, -iī, M., Julius, the name of a Roman gens; especially Gaius Julius Cæsar, and his adopted son, Gaius Julius Cæsar Octavianus Augustus.**
- Jūlius, -iī, M., the month of July; so called after Julius Cæsar.**

**Jūlius**, -a, -um, adj., of *July*.

**jū-mentum**, -ī, n. (*jungo*), a *beast of burden*.

**jungo**, *jungere*, *jungi*, *junctum*, to *join*, *harness*; *societātem jungere*, to *form a partnership*.

**jūnior**, -us, adj., *comparative* (*jūvenis*, 150. 3), *younger*.

**Jū-pīter**, see *Jūppīter*.

**Jū-ppīter**, *Jōvis*, m. (121), *Jupiter*, son of *Saturn*, brother and husband of *Juno*, king of gods.

**Jūra**, -ae, m., a chain of mountains extending from the *Rhine* to the *Rhone*.

**jūre**, abl. of *jūs*, used adverbially, *by right*, *justly*.

**jūro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to *swear*, *take an oath*.

**jūs**, *jūris*, n., *justice*, *law*; *court of justice* (acc. pl. wanting).

**jūsjurandum**, *jūrisjurandī*, n. (121), an *oath*.

**just-ē**, adv. (*justus*), *rightly*, *justly*.

**jūvēnis**, -is, adj., com. gen. (109. n. and 150. 3), *young*, *youthful*; as subst., *jūvēnis*, -is, com. gen. (gen. pl. *jūvēnum*), a *young man* or *woman* (between 17 and 45 or 46).

**jūven-tūs**, -ūtis, f. (*jūvēnis*), *youth*, the *season of youth*.

**jūvo**, *jūvāre*, *jūvī*, *jūtum*, to *help*, *aid*.

**juxtā**, prep. with acc., *near to*, *near*; as adv., *near by*, *in like manner*, *alike*.

## K.

**Kālendae** (*Cal*), -ārum, f., *Calends*, the *first day of the month*.

**Karthāgō** (*Car*), -īnis, f., *Carthage*; a celebrated city of *Africa*.

## L.

**L**, an abbrev. for *Lucius*.

**Lābiēnus**, -ī, m., *Labienus*; an officer of *Cæsar* in *Gaul*, who afterwards went over to *Pompey*.

**lābōro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*lābor*), to *toil*, *labor*.

**lāc**, *lactis*, n., *milk*.

**lācer**, -ēra, -ērum, adj., *torn*, *mangled*, *maimed*.

**lācesso**, -essēre, -essivī, or -essī, or -essī, -essitum, to *provoke*, *excite*, *assail*, *attack*.

**lacrima**, -ae, f., a *tear*; *lacrimās dare*, to *weep*.

**lācus**, -ūs, m., a *lake*.

**laedo**, *laedere*, *laesi*, *laesum*, to *strike*, *injure*; *annoy*, *violate*.

**laetor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (*laetus*), to *feel joy*, *be glad*.

**lambo**, -ēre, -ī, no p.p., to *lick*, *lap*.

**lānio**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to *rend*, *tear in pieces*.

**lāpis**, -īdis, m., a *stone*, a *stone* (placed at the end of every 1000 paces), a *mile-stone*.

**lāqueus**, -ei, m., a *noose*, *halter*, *snare*.

**lāt-ē**, adv. (*lātus*), *widely*; *far and wide*.

**lāt-ēbra**, -ae, f., (*lāteo*), a *hiding-place*, *lurking-place*.

**lāter**, -ēris, m., a *brick* or *tile*.

**latro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to *bark*, *yelp*; *bark at*.

**latro**, -ōnis, m., a *robber*, *highwayman*.

**lātus**, -a, -um, adj., *broad*, *wide*.

**lātus**, -ēris, n., the *side*, *flank*, *body*, *lungs*; *lātēris* or *lātērum dōlor*, *pain in the side*, *pleurisy*.

**lā-tus**, -a, -um, part. (*fēro*), *borne*, *carried*.

**laudo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (*laus*), to *praise*.

**laurea**, -ae, f., a *laurel-tree*; *laurel-crown*.

- laus, laudis, F.,** *praise, glory; laudēs, fame.*
- lĕgā-tiō, -ōnis, F.,** *an embassy, legion.*
- lĕgā-tus, -ī, M. (lĕgo),** *an ambassador, lieutenant, messenger.*
- lĕg-iō, -ōnis, F. (lĕgo),** *a legion; consisting of between 4200 and 6000 men.*
- lĕgiōn-ārius, -a, -um, adj. (lĕgio),** *of or belonging to a legion; legionary.*
- lĕgo, lĕgĕre, lĕgī, lectum,** *to gather, select; read.*
- Lĕmannus, -ī, M.,** *Lake Geneva.*
- lĕn-itās, -ātis, F. (lĕnis),** *softness, smoothness.*
- leō, -ōnis, M.,** *a lion.*
- lĕx, lĕgis, F. (lĕgo),** *law, precept.*
- lĕbent-er, adv. (lĕbens),** *willingly, cheerfully, gladly.*
- lĕbeo, -ĕre, -uī, -itum,** *to please; lĕbet, impers. (314. 2), it pleases, it is agreeable.*
- lĕber, -ĕra, -ĕrum, adj., free, unrestricted; in pl., lĕbĕrī, -ōrum, M. (the free members of the household), children.**
- lĕber, -brī,** *the inner bark of a tree; a book (since the bark of a tree was used as material for writing upon).*
- lĕbĕrāl-itās, -ātis, F. (lĕbĕrālis),** *generosity, liberality.*
- lĕbĕr-ĕ, adv. (lĕber),** *freely, frankly.*
- lĕbĕrī, -ōrum, M. pl. (see lĕber).**
- lĕbĕro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (lĕber),** *to free, liberate, acquit (248).*
- lĕber-tās, -ātis, F. (lĕber),** *freedom, liberty; candor.*
- lĕber-tus, -ī, M. (lĕbĕro),** *a freed-man.*
- lĕbet, lĕbĕre, lĕbuit or lĕbītum est, impers. (314. 2),** *it pleases.*
- lĕceor, -ĕrī, -ītus sum, dep.,** *to bid (at an auction).*
- lĕcet, lĕcĕre, lĕcuit or lĕcītum est, impers. (314. 2),** *it is allowable, permitted; one may, can; lĕcet vĕnias, you may come.*
- lĕcet, conj. (206. 4),** *although, though, even if.*
- lĕc-tor, -ōris, M. (lĕgo),** *a lictor; an attendant granted to a magistrate as a sign of official dignity.*
- lĕgnum, -ī, N.,** *wood; pl. fire-wood.*
- lĕnĕā-mentum, -ī, N. (lĕnea, a line),** *a line; pl., drawings, features, lineaments.*
- lĕngōnĕs, -um, M. (acc. pl. lĕngō-nās),** *a people in Celtic Gaul.*
- lingua, -ae, F.,** *the tongue; language.*
- linter, -tris, F.,** *a boat, skiff, wherry.*
- Liscus, -ī, M.,** *Liscus, an Æduan chief.*
- littĕra (lĕtĕra), -ae, F.,** *a letter (of the alphabet); littĕrae, pl., an epistle, literature.*
- lĭtus (littus), -ōris, N.,** *the sea-shore, shore, coast, beach.*
- lōcus, -ī, M. pl., lōcī or lōca, M. and N. (87. N. 2),** *a place.*
- long-ĕ, adv. (longus),** *far off: much, by far (comp. longius; superlative, longissimĕ).*
- longus, -a, -um, adj.,** *long; tall; distant, tedious.*
- lōquor, lōquī, lōcūtus sum, dep.,** *to speak.*
- lūceo, lūcĕre, lūxī, no p. p.,** *to shine, be evident.*
- Lūcius, -ī, M.,** *a Roman name.*
- lū-crum, -ī, N. (luo),** *gain.*
- lūd-īcrum, -ī, N.,** *sport; show, public games.*
- lūd-ī-fico, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (lū-dus; fācio),** *to make sport of; mock.*
- lūd-ī-ficor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. (lūdus; fācio),** *to make sport of; to mock.*

**lūdo, -dēre, -si, -sum (lūdus), to play.**

**lūdus, -i, m., a play, game, pastime; school; in pl., public games, shows.**

**lūgeo, lūgēre, lūxi, no p. p., to lament; mourn for.**

**lūna, -ae, f. (lūceo), (the shining one), the moon.**

**lūpus, -i, m., a wolf.**

**lūsus, -ūs, m. (lūdo), a playing; sport, amusement, game.**

**lūx, lūcis, f. (lūceo), light, day-light; prima lūx, day-break.**

### M.

**M**, as an abbrev. for *Marcus*.

**M**, as an abbrev. for *Mānius*.

**maereo (moer-), -ēre, no perf., no p.p., to grieve, lament.**

**māgis, comp. adv., more, rather.**

**māgister, -tri, m., a master, chief, leader.**

**māgistr-ātus, -ūs, m. (māgister), a magistracy, office, magistrate.**

**māgnific-ē, adv. (magnificus), nobly, magnificently, splendidly, richly (comp. māgnificentius; superlative, māgnificentissimē).**

**māgn-i-ficus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. magnificentior; superlative, magnificentissimus), (māgnus; faciō), noble, grand.**

**māgn-itūdo, -inis, f. (māgnus), greatness, size, bulk.**

**māgnus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. mājor; superlative, māximus), great, large (149. 4); nātū mājor, greater in birth, older.**

**Maius, -i, m., the month of May.**

**mājōrēs, -rum, m. pl. (mājor), ancestors.**

**māl-e, adv. (comp. pējus; superlative, pessimē), (mālus), badly.**

**mālē-dīco, -dīcēre, -dīxi, -dictum, to speak ill of, revile (193. 2).**

**mālē-fic-ium, -i, n., evil deed, crime.**

**mālo, malle, māluī, no p. p., irreg. (294), (māgis; vōlo), to wish rather, prefer.**

**mālum, -i, n. (mālus), evil, misfortune, calamity, damage.**

**mālus, -a, -um, adj. (comp. pējor; superlative, pessimus), evil, wicked (149. 4).**

**mandā-tum, -i, n. (mando), a charge, order, commission.**

**mand-o, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (mānus; do), to commit into one's hands, to command.**

**māneo, mănēre, mansī, mansum, to stay, remain, stop; wait for, await.**

**mānifestus, -a, -um, adj., clear, plain, evident, manifest.**

**mānus, -ūs, f., a hand; band (of troops), force (174).**

**Marcellus, -i, m., Marcellus, a Roman name.**

**Marcus, -i, m., a Roman name.**

**māre, -is, n., the sea; māre internum, the Mediterranean.**

**mār-itīmus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the sea; maritime; cōpiāe mārītīmae, naval forces. As noun, mārītīma, -ōrum, n. pl., places on the sea-coast.**

**Mārius, -i, m., Gaius Marius (157-86 B.C.); the conqueror of Jugurtha, and chief of the popular party at Rome. He was consul seven times.**

**Mārs, -tis, m., the fabled father of Romulus; the god of war, of husbandry, of shepherds and seers.**

**Martius, -a, -um, adj. (Mārs), of Mars; of or belonging to March.**

**Martius, -i, m., the month of March.**

- māter**, -tris, F., a mother; **māter-fāmilīās**, or **māterfāmilīae**, the mistress of a house (121).
- mātr-īmōnium**, -iī, N. (**māter**), wedlock, marriage; in **mātr-īmōnium dūcere**, to marry (used only of a man marrying a woman).
- mātr-ōna**, -ae, F. (**māter**), a married woman, wife, matron.
- Mātrōna**, -ae, M., a river in Gaul (now the *Marne*).
- mātūr-ē**, adv. (**mātūrus**), early, speedily, quickly (comp. **mātūrius**; superlative, **māturrimē** and **māturissimē**).
- mātūr-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**mātūrus**), to make ripe, ripen; hasten.
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, adj., ripe, mature; excellent; seasonable.
- māxim-ē** (**maxūm-**), adv. (**māximus**), in the highest degree; very; mostly, chiefly.
- māximus**, -a, -um, adj., superlative of **māgnus**, greatest.
- Māximus**, -ī, M., a Roman name.
- mē-cum**, with me (230. 3).
- mēdiōcriter**, adv., moderately.
- mēdium**, -iī, N., the middle, midst; the presence or sight; **ē mēdiō tollere**, to put out of the way.
- mēdius**, -a, -um, adj., middle, mid; half way; intervening, intermediate.
- membrum**, -ī, N., a limb; division.
- mēmīnī**, -isse, N., def. (305. Obs. 3), to remember, recollect.
- mēmor**, -ōris, adj., mindful.
- mēmōrā-bilis**, -e, adj. (**mēmōro**), memorable; worthy of mention.
- mend-āx**, -ācis, false, deceitful.
- mēns**, **mentis**, F., the mind, understanding, intellect, reason.
- mensa**, -ae, F., a table; (that which is put on table), food.
- mensis**, -is, M., a month.
- mentior**, -īrī, -itus sum, dep., to lie.
- mercā-tor**, -ōris, M. (**mercor**), a trader, merchant.
- mer-cēs**, -ēdis, F. (**merx**), hire, wages, salary; bribe.
- mergo**, **mergere**, **mersī**, **mersum**, immerse; sink, overwhelm; destroy.
- mēri-diēs**, -ēī, M. (**mēdius**; **diēs**) (175. 2), midday, noon; the south.
- mēr-itus**, -a, -um, part. (**mēreor**), deserving.
- mētior**, **mētīrī**, **mensus sum**, dep., to measure, deal out (rations).
- mētor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to measure, mark off.
- Mettius**, -iī, M., a Roman name.
- mētuo**, **mētūere**, **mētui**, no p. p., (**mētus**), to fear; be afraid.
- me-us**, -a, -um, pron. possessive (**mē**) (vocative sing. masc., **mī**, rarely **meus**), my, mine, belonging to me.
- migro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to depart, migrate, go away.
- miles**, -itis, com. gen., a soldier, a foot-soldier.
- Milētus**, -ī, M., a city of Caria in Asia Minor.
- mīlia**, -ium, N. pl., see **mille**.
- mīlīt-āris**, -e, adj. (**mīles**), of or belonging to a soldier or the soldiers; military; **rēs mīlītāris**, military science.
- mīlīt-ia**, -ae, F. (**mīlīto**), military service; warfare.
- mille** (**mīle**), numeral adj. indecl., a thousand (213. 2). As noun, used only in the nom. and acc. sing. (**mīle**), and in pl. N., **mīlia** (**millia**), -ium, a thousand; followed by the partitive gen., as **mīlia pas-suum**, a thousand paces, one mile.
- mill-ies** (**-iens**), adv. (**mille**), a thousand times.

**Milō, -ōnis**, Milo, a friend of Cicero.

**mīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep., to jut forth; threaten, menace.

**mīnor, -us**, adj. comp. (*parvus*), less. As noun, **mīnorēs, -um**, com. gen. pl., descendants.

**mīnuo, -uēre, -uī, -ūtum**, to lessen, diminish, lower, reduce; to grow less.

**mīnus**, adv., less; **sī mīnus**, if not (*pārum, mīnus, mīnimē*).

**mīror, -rārī, -rātus sum**, dep., to admire; to wonder at (279. 2).

**mīr-us, -a, -um**, adj. (*mīror*), wonderful, extraordinary.

**mīser, -ēra, -erum**, adj., wretched, unfortunate; sick, ill.

**mīser-eor, -ērī, -ītus or -ertus sum**, dep. (*mīser*), to pity, feel pity for, commiserate.

**mīserē-aco, -scēre**, no perf., no p. p., inch. (*mīserēo*), to feel pity, have compassion for.

**mīseret, mīserēre, mīserītum**, impers. (314. 2), it distresses, stirs pity; **mīseret mē**, I pity.

**Mithridātēs, -is**, M., Mithridates the Great, king of Pontus, who waged war with the Romans, and, being at last conquered by Pompeius, stabbed himself.

**mōdo**, adv., only, merely; at all; just now; **mōdo . . . mōdo**, now . . . now, at one moment . . . at another; **nōn mōdo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also; **mōdo**, with the subjunctive mood, if only, provided that.

**mōdus, -ī**, M., a measure or standard; bounds, limits, end; way, manner, method, mode; **ad mōdum**, in **mōdum**, with the gen., after the manner of; like; **mōdō flūminis**, like a river; **hunc in mōdum**, after this

fashion; **nūllō mōdō**, by no means.

**moenia, -ium**, N. pl., defensive walls, city walls; fortifications.

**mōlēs, -is**, F., a mass, mole; dam; difficulty.

**mōlestus, -a, -um**, adj., troublesome, irksome, annoying.

**mōlo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum**, to grind.

**mōneo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum**, to admonish, warn; punish; teach.

**mōn-s, montis**, M., a mountain.

**monstro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (*monstrum*), to show, point out.

**mon-strum, -ī**, N. (*mōneo*), a divine omen; a monster.

**mōra, -ae**, F., a delay; obstacle.

**morbus, -ī**, M., a sickness, disease; affliction.

**mordeo, mordēre, mōmordī** (*mēmordī*), **morsum**, to bite; hurt.

**mōrior, mōrī** (*mōrīrī*), **mortuus sum**, dep. (fut. part., *mōrītūrus*), to die, decay.

**mōror, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. (*mōra*), to tarry, stay, loiter; hinder.

**mor-s, mortis**, F. (*mōrior*), death.

**mōs, mōris**, M., usage, custom; in pl., customs, character; **ex mōre**, according to custom.

**mō-tus, -ūs**, M. (*mōveo*), a moving.

**mōveo, mōvēre, mōvī, mōtum**, to move, set in motion; take away, remove; influence; **arma mōvēre**, to take arms; **bellum mōvēre**, to undertake war.

**mox**, adv., presently, soon, directly; afterwards, then.

**mūlier, -lēris**, F., a woman, female.

**mult-ītudo, -dīnis**, F. (*multus*), a great number, multitude; a crowd.

**mult-ō**, adv. (*multus*), much, far; by far, by much; **multō post** or **ante**, long after or before.

**multus, -a, -um**, adj. (comp.

**plūs**; superlative, **plūrimus**),  
*much, many* (149. 4).  
**mundus**, -i, M., *the universe; the world, the earth*.  
**mūn-io**, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum  
 (moenia), *to fortify, build*.  
**mūnī-tiō**, -ōnis, F. (mūnio), *a fortification, rampart*.  
**mūrus**, -i, M., *a wall*.  
**mūs**, -ūris, com. gen., *a mouse*.  
**musca**, -ae, F., *a fly*.  
**mū-to**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens.  
 (mōveo), *to change; exchange*  
 (304).

## N.

**nac-tus**, -a, -um, part. (nancis-  
 cor), *having obtained*.  
**nam**, conj., *for* (205. 5).  
**nam-que**, conj., *for, for indeed, for truly*.  
**nanc-iscor**, nanciscī, nactus or  
 nactus sum, dep., *to get, re-  
 ceive; find*.  
**nāns**, -antis, part. of **no**.  
**narro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to tell,  
 relate, narrate, recount*.  
**nāscor**, nāscī, nātus sum, dep.,  
*to be born* (248. 3).  
**nā-to**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (no), *to  
 swim*.  
**nā-tūra**, -ae, F. (nascor), *nature;  
 disposition, character; nātūrā,  
 naturally*.  
**nauta** (nāvīta), -ae, M., *a sailor,  
 seaman*.  
**nāv-icūla**, -ae, F., dim. (nāvis),  
*a small vessel; boat, skiff*.  
**nāvig-ium**, -iī, N. (nāvigo), *a  
 sailing; vessel, ship, boat*.  
**nāvis**, -is, F. (acc., nāvem or  
 nāvim; abl., nāve or nāvī), *a  
 ship; nāvis longa, a ship of  
 war*.  
**nē**, adv. and conj., 1. adv., *not, no;  
 nē . . . quidem, not even* (the  
 word or phrase emphasized

always between the **nē** and  
**quidem**); 2. conj., *that not, lest;*  
*in final clauses, that not, lest;*  
*with verbs of fearing, that or  
 lest* (321. 2 & 278. 1 (1)).  
**-ne**, interrog. and enclitic particle,  
*whether* (in direct questions **ne**  
 is not to be translated, except  
 by laying emphasis upon the  
 word to which it is joined).  
**nec**, see **nēque**.  
**nēcessāri-ō**, adv. (nēcessārius),  
*necessarily, unavoidably*.  
**nē-ces-se**, neut. adj. (found only  
 in nom. and acc. sing.) (**nē;**  
**cēdo**), *unavoidable, necessary*.  
**nēcess-itās**, -ātis, F. (nēcesse),  
*necessity; force*.  
**nēcess-itūdo**, -inis, F. (nēcesse),  
*closely bound; intimacy; close  
 relationship*.  
**nec-ne**, conj., *or not*.  
**nēco**, -āre, -āvī(-uī), -ātum, *to kill*.  
**nē-dum**, conj., *by no means, much  
 less; not to say, much more*.  
**nē-fās**, N. indecl., *that which is  
 unlawful* (267).  
**nēg-līgo**, -līgēre, -lēxi, -lectum  
 (nec; lēgo), *to neglect, disre-  
 gard*.  
**nēgo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to say  
 no; deny, refuse*.  
**nēg-ōtium** -iī, N. (nec; ōtium),  
*a business, occupation; diffi-  
 culty; matter; nullō nēgōtiō,  
 without trouble*.  
**nē-mō** (in place of gen. **nēmīnis**,  
**nullus** is used; in place of abl.  
**nēmīne**, **nullō**, M., or **nullā**,  
 F., is used), M. and F. (**nē;**  
**hōmo**), *no one, nobody; nēmō  
 nōn, every body, all; nōn nē-  
 mō, some*.  
**nēpos**, -ōtis, M. and F., *a grand-  
 son, a grand-daughter, a nephew*.  
**nē-que** or **nec**, conj., *and not;*  
**nēque** (nec) . . . **nēque** (nec),  
*neither . . . nor*.



**ně-quis**, -qua, -quod or (subst.)  
-quid, indef. pron., *lest any,*  
*that no one* (246).

**Nervii**, -ōrum, M., *The Nervii*, a  
people of Belgic Gaul.

**ne-scio**, -scire, -scivi or -scii,  
-scitum, *not to know, to be*  
*ignorant of.*

**neuter**, *neutra*, *neutrum* (gen.  
*neutrus*), *neither* (209).

**ně-ve** (neu), *and not, nor; neve*  
... *neve, neither* ... *nor.*

**nex**, *nēcis*, F. (*nēco*), *death,*  
*murder, slaughter.*

**nī**, conj., *if not, unless* (326).

**nīger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *black,*  
*dark, dusky.*

**nīhil** (nīl), N., indecl., *nothing,*  
*not at all; nīhil hābeo quod,*  
*I have no reason that; nōn nī-*  
*hil, something; nīhilōminus,*  
*nevertheless.*

**nīhil-dum**, adv., *nothing as yet.*

**nīhilō**, adv. (with comparatives),  
*by nothing, no; nīhilō mājor,*  
*no greater.*

**nīhilōminus**, adv., *see nīhil.*

**nīl**, *see nīhil.*

**nī-si**, conj., *if not, unless* (326).

**nītor**, *nīti*, *nīsus* or *nīxus sum*,  
dep., *to rest upon, rely upon; to*  
*strive, endeavor.*

**nīx**, *nīvis*, F., *snow* (121).

**no**, *nāre*, *nāvi*, no p.p., *to swim,*  
*float.*

**nō-bilis**, -e, adj. (*gnosco*), *that*  
*can be known; famous, noble.*

**nōbil-itās**, -ātis, F. (*nōbilis*),  
*celebrity, fame; the nobility,*  
*nobles.*

**nōceo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum (with  
dat.), *to harm, hurt, injure.*

**noctū**, abl. (used adverbially),  
*by night.*

**nōlo**, *nōlle*, *nōlui*, irreg. (*non;*  
*vōlo*) (294), *not to wish, be*  
*unwilling.*

**nō-men**, -inis, N. (*nosco*), *a*

*name; renown; nōmen hā-*  
*bēre, to be famous.*

**nōminā-tim**, adv. (*nōmīno*), *by*  
*name, expressly.*

**nōmīno**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*nō-*  
*men*), *to name; nominate.*

**nōn**, adv., *not, no.*

**Nōnae**, -ārum, F. (*nōnus*), *the*  
*Nones; the fifth day in every*  
*month of the year, except*  
*March, May, July, and Octo-*  
*ber, in which it was the seventh.*  
*So called because it was the*  
*ninth day before the Ides.*

**nōn-dum**, adv., *not yet.*

**nōn-ne**, interrog. particle (91. 1.  
b), *not?*

**nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um, adj., *some,*  
*several.* As noun, *nōnnūllī*,  
-ōrum, M. pl., *persons, several.*

**nōn-nunquam** (-numquam),  
adv., *sometimes, occasionally.*

**nō-nus**, -a, -um, adj. (*nōvem*),  
*the ninth.* As noun, *nōna*,  
-ae, F., *the ninth hour of the*  
*day, i.e., the third hour before*  
*sunset, at which hour business*  
*was ended at Rome.*

**nōs**, *nōstrum* or *nōstrī*, pl. of  
*ēgo, we* (239. 1).

**nōsco** (*gnōsco*), *nōscēre*, *nōvī*,  
*nōtum*, *to become acquainted*  
*with; learn; nōvī*, perf. with  
pres. meaning, *I know; nōvē-*  
*ram, I knew* (305. Obs. 2).

**nōs-ter**, -tra, -trum, possess.  
pron. (*nōs*), *our, our own, ours*  
(231); in pl., *nōstrī*, -ōrum,  
M., *our men, our troops.*

**nōto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*nōta*),  
*to mark, indicate; designate.*

**nō-tus**, -a, -um, part. (*nōsco*),  
*known.*

**nōvem**, num. indecl. adj., *nine.*

**Nōvem-ber**, -bris, M. (*nōvem*),  
*November; the ninth month of*  
*the old Roman year (which*  
*began in March).*

**Novembris**, -e, adj., of *November*.  
**nōvī**, see **nōsco**.

**nōvus**, -a, -um, adj., *new*; *recent*, *strange*; **nōvae rēs**, *revolution*; the comparative of this adj. is wanting, superlative **nōvissimus**, *latest*, *last*; **nōvissimum agmen**, *the rear*.

**nox**, **noctis**, F., *night*; *darkness*.  
**nūbēs**, -is, F., *a cloud*.

**nūbo**, **nūbēre**, **nūpsī**, **nūptum** (**nūbes**), *to veil one's self*, *marry* (used only of a woman marrying a man, and governs the dative), see **mātrīmōnium**.

**nūllus**, -a, -um, adj. (**nē**; **ūllus**) (**209**), *not any*, *none*, *no*.

**num**, interrog. particle (**91. 1. c**), *whether*?

**nūmēro**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**nūmērus**), *to count*, *number*; *esteem*.

**nūmērus**, -ī, M., *a number*; *a multitude*.

**Nūmīdia**, -ae, F., *a country of northern Africa* (now *Algeria*).

**Nūmītor**, -ōris, M., *a king of Alba*, brother of *Amulius* and grandfather of *Romulus* and *Remus*.

**numquam** (**nunquam**), adv. (**ne**; **umquam**), *at no time*, *never*; **nōn nunquam**, *sometimes*.

**nunquam**, see **numquam**.

**nuntio** (**nuncio**), -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**nuntius**), *to announce*, *declare*.

**nuntius** (-cius), -ī, M., *a messenger*; *news*, *tidings*.

**nū-per**, adv. (**nōvus**), *recently*.

## O.

**Ō**, interj., *O! oh!*

**ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of*, *for*; **quam ob rem**, *wherefore*, *accordingly*.

**ōb-aer-ātus**, -a, -um, adj. (**ob**; **aes**), *involved in debt*. As noun, **ōbaerātus**, -ī, M., *a debtor*.

**ōb-ēdio**, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītum (**ob**; **audio**) (with dat.), *to give ear to*; *obey*.

**ōb-eo**, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, *to go towards*, *meet*, *die*.

**ob-īcio** (pronounced **ob-jicio**), -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (**ob**; **jacio**), *to cast in the way*; *reproach*.

**oblī-tus**, -a, -um, part. (**obliviscor**), *having forgotten*; *forgetful*.

**oblīviscor**, **obliviscī**, **oblītus** sum, dep., *to forget*.

**ob-nōxius**, -a, -um, adj. (**ob**; **nōxa**), *frail*; *liable*; *obedient*.

**ob-ruo**, -ruere, -ruī, -rūtum, *to overwhelm*; *crush*.

**ob-sēcro**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**ob**; **sācra**), *to beseech*, *supplicate*.

**obses**, -īdis, M. and F., *a hostage*.

**ob-signo**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to seal*, *seal up*; *attest*.

**ob-sisto**, -sistere, -stītī, -stītum, *to oppose*, *hinder*, *obstruct*.

**ob-sto**, -stāre, -stītī, *to stand against*, *oppose*, *hinder*.

**ob-stringo**, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, *to bind*.

**ob-tīneo**, -tīnere, -tīnuī, -tentum (**ob**; **tēneo**), *to hold*, *possess*, *occupy*; *last*.

**ob-trecto**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (**ob**; **tracto**), *to disparage*; *injure*, *thwart*.

**ob-vius**, -a, -um, adj. (**ob**; **via**), *meeting in the way*, *so as to meet*; **obvium ire ālicuī**, *to meet one*.

**ob-volvo**, -volvēre, -volvī, -vōlūtum, *to wrap around*, *muffle up*; *cover*, *disguise*.

**occā-sus**, -ūs, M. (**occīdo**), *a fall*, *setting*; *death*, *overthrow*.

**oc-cīdo**, -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cīsum

- (ob; caedo), to strike down, kill.
- oc-cīdo, -cīdēre, -cīdī, -cāsūm (ob; cādo), to fall down; perish, die; to go down, set.
- oc-cūlo, -cūlēre, -cūluī, -cultum (ob; cūlo), to cover, hide, conceal.
- oc-culto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (intens. of occūlo), conceal.
- occul-tus, -a, -um, part. (occūlo), hidden, concealed, secret; in occultō, in secret.
- oc-cūpo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob; cāpio), to take, seize, lay hold of; occupy, enter.
- oc-curro, -currere, -curri (rarely cūcurri), -cursum, to run towards, run to meet; meet, oppose.
- Ōceānus, -ī, M., the ocean.
- Ocēlum, -ī, N., a town in Cisalpine Gaul (*Oulx* in Piedmont).
- oc-ior, -ius, comp. adj. (superlative, *ocissimus*), quicker, sooner, earlier (150. 1).
- oct-āvus, -a, -um, adj. (octo), the eighth.
- octin-gentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (octo; centum), eight hundred.
- octō, num. adj. indecl., eight.
- Octō-ber, -bris, M. (octo), October (originally the eighth month of the Roman year, reckoning from March). As adj., *Octobris*, -e, of October.
- octō-dēcim, num. adj. indecl. (octo; dēcim), eighteen.
- octō-gintā, num. adj. indecl., eighty.
- ōcūlus, -ī, M., an eye.
- ōdī, ōdīsse, defect (305. 1); to hate, dislike.
- ōd-ium, -iī, N. (ōdī 305. 1), hatred.
- of-fendo, -fendēre, -fendī, -fensum (ob; fendo, obsolete), to strike, injure; make a mistake.
- of-fic-ium, -iī, N. (ops; fācio), a kindness; duty; business.
- ōlim, adv., formerly; hereafter; long ago; sī ōlim, if ever.
- omn-inō, adv. (omnis), altogether, wholly; at all; generally.
- omnis, -e, adj., every, all. As subst., *omnēs*, -ium, com. gen., all persons; *omnēs ad finem*, all to a man.
- ōnērārius, -a, -um, adj., of burden (as a ship).
- ōnēro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ōnus), to load, overload.
- ōnus, -ēris, N., a load, burden, weight.
- ōpēra, -ae, F. (ōpēror), pains, work, labor; *ōpērā*, by all means; *ōpēram dāre alicui*, to attend to; *meā ōpērā*, by my aid.
- ōpēs, see ops.
- oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers. (314. 2), it is necessary, needful, proper; I (thou, she, &c.) must or ought.
- oppīdum, -ī, N., a town (other than Rome, which was called *Urbs*).
- op-pōno, -pōnere, -pōnuī, pōsitum (ob; pōno), to place against, set opposite, oppose, allege.
- op-portūnus, -a, -um, adj. (ob; portus), fit, seasonable.
- op-primo, -primere, -pressī, -pressum (ob; prēmo), to crush, overwhelm, subdue.
- op-pugno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (ob; pugno), to attack, assault.
- ops, ōpis, F. (nominative and dat. sing. wanting), power, might, strength; in pl., *ōpēs*, -um, wealth, resources, power.
- optīmātēs, -um or -ium, M. pl., the principal men; the nobility.
- optīm-ē, adv. (superl. of bēne), excellently.

**optimus, -a, -um, adj.** (superl. of **bōnus**), *best*.

**opus, -eris, N., work, labor, task.**

**opus, N. indecl.** (308. Obs. 2), *that which is necessary, need.*

As *adj., needful, necessary.*

**ora, -ae, F., a border, coast, shore, region, district.**

**orā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (ōro), a speaking, speech; oration.**

**orā-tor, -ōris, M. (ōro), a speaker, orator, ambassador.**

**orbis, -is, M., a circle; orbis terrarum, the whole world, the globe; (in war) a hollow square.**

**orbis, -a, -um, adj., deprived, bereft.**

**ordō, -inis, M. (ordior), an arranging, rank, line; ordine, ex ordine, in ordinem, in order, in turn; extrā ordinem, out of order, irregularly; ordo equester, the equestrian order, the knights.**

**Orgētōrix, -igis, M., Orgetorix, a Helvetian noble.**

**ori-ens, -entis, part. (ōrior), rising. As noun, M., the east; the rising sun.**

**ōrior, ōrī (ōrīrī), ortus sum, dep. (248. 3), to arise, originate from; to begin.**

**ornā-mentum, -ī, N. (orno), an ornament, decoration, equipment; in pl., jewels.**

**ornā-tus, -a, -um, part. (orno), adorned, ornamented.**

**ōro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ōs), speak, espec., to pray, beseech.**

**ōs, ōris, N., the mouth, the face, countenance; speech.**

**os-tendo, -tendēre, -tendī, -tensum or tentum (ob; tendo), to show, display; declare; prae-mia ostendēre, to offer rewards.**

**ōtium, -iī, N., leisure, freedom from business; quiet.**

**ōvis, -is, F., a sheep.**

**ovo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to exult, rejoice, triumph in an ovation.**

**ovum, -ī, N. (āvis) (belonging to a bird), an egg.**

## P.

**P.,** an abbreviation of *Publius*.

**pā-bŭlum, -ī, N. (pasco), food (for animals); fodder.**

**Pādus, -ī, M., the Po.**

**paene, adv., nearly, almost.**

**paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, no p. p., impers. (314. 2), it repents, with acc. of person and gen. of thing, or infinitive in place of thing; paenitet mē factī, I repent of the action; paenitet mē fecisse, I repent having done it.**

**pāgus, -ī and -ūs, M., a canton, village.**

**pālam, adv., openly, publicly; as prep. with abl., before, in the presence of.**

**pall-īdus, -a, -um (palleo), pale. pālūdāmentum, -ī, N., a military cloak.**

**pā-lus, -ī, M., a stake, prop, pale. pando, pandēre, pandī, passum, to spread out, extend, throw open; passis crinibus, with dishevelled hair.**

**pango, pangēre, pēgī, (panxī, pēpīgī) pactum (panctum), to fasten, fix in; settle.**

**pānis, -is, M., bread, loaf.**

**pār, \*pāris, adj. (gen. pl., pārium), equal, equal to; as subst., pār, pāris, M., a match for; also pār, pāris, N., a pair.**

**parco, parcēre, pēpercī (parsī), no p. p., to spare.**

**parcus, -a, -um, adj., sparing, frugal, thrifty.**

**pār-ens, -entis, M. and F. (gen.**

pl., **părentum** and **părentium**) (**părio**), *a parent; father, mother.*  
**păreo**, -ere, -ui, no p. p., *to appear, obey (with dat.).*  
**părio**, **păre**re, **pěpěri**, **partum**, *to procure; bring forth, lay, beget.*  
**păr-iter**, adv. (**păr**), *equally, in like manner, as well.*  
**păro**, -ăre, -ăvi, -ătum, *to procure, prepare, provide.*  
**pars**, **partis**, F., *a part, portion; party; ex omni parte, in all respects; năllă ex parte, in no respect.*  
**partus**, -ūs, M. (**părio**), *a bearing, birth; offspring.*  
**parvŭ-lus**, -a, -um, adj. dim. (**parvus**), *very small, petty, slight; young.* As noun, **parvŭ-lus**, -i, M., *a little boy; parvŭ-la*, -ae, F., *a little girl.*  
**parvus**, -a, -um, adj. (comp. **minor**, superl. **minimus**), *small, little (149. 4).*  
**pas-sus**, -ūs, M. (**pando**), *a step, pace; pace (as measure of length, consisting of five Roman feet); mille passuum, a thousand steps, one mile.*  
**păs-tor**, -ōris, M. (**pasco**), *a feeder, shepherd.*  
**păter**, -tris, M., *a father.*  
**păter-fămiliās**, **patris-fămiliās**, M., *a father of a family, master of a household.*  
**păti-ēns**, -entis, part. (**pătior**), *suffering, patient; unyielding; pătiēns ōnēris, able to bear a burden.*  
**pătior**, **pătī**, **passus sum**, dep., *to bear, suffer, allow.*  
**pătr-ia**, -ae, F. (**păter**), *fatherland, native country, native place.*  
**pătr-icius**, -a, -um, adj. (**păter**), *patrician, noble.*  
**pătr-imōnium**, -ii, N. (**păter**), *an estate inherited from a father; patrimony; fortune.*

**paucus**, -a, -um, adj., *few, some (generally plural); pauca or pauci, -ōrum, *a few words; a few persons, etc.*  
**paulō**, adv. (**paulus**), *by a little, a little, somewhat.*  
**paulus** (**paullus**), -a, -um, adj., *little, small.*  
**pauper**, -ēris, adj., *poor, needy (comp. paupērior, superl. pauperrimus).*  
**pauper-tās**, -ătis, F. (**pauper**), *poverty.*  
**păx**, **păcis**, F. (that which binds), *peace; favor; păce tuă, with your permission.*  
**pēcŭ-nia**, -ae, F. (**pēcus**, -ŭdis), *money, riches, wealth.*  
**pēcus**, -ōris, N., *a herd, flock; cattle.*  
**pěd-es**, -itis, M. (**pes**; **eo**) (one that goes on foot), *a foot-soldier; infantry.*  
**pějor**, -us, adj. (comp. of **mă-lus**), *worse.*  
**pellis**, -is, F., *a skin, hide; a garment (made of skin).*  
**pello**, **pellēre**, **pěpŭli**, **pulsum**, *to strike; expel.*  
**pendeo**, **pendēre**, **pěpendī**, **pen-sum**, *to hang, be suspended.*  
**per**, prep. with acc., *through, during, by means of.*  
**pěr-ăgo**, -ăgēre, -ăgi, -actum, *to finish, complete.*  
**pěr-ăgro**, -ăre, -ăvi, -ătum (**per**; **ăger**), *to lead through; finish; (with conciliŭm) hold.*  
**per-cipio**, -cipēre, -cěpi, -cep-tum (**per**; **căpio**), *to take in, learn; (of harvests) to gather; seize.*  
**percunctă-tiō** (**contătio**), -ōnis, F. (**percunctor**), *an inquiring of; an inquiry.*  
**per-dŭco**, -dŭcēre, -dŭxi, -duc-tum, *to lead through, conduct; draw out, extend.**

**perēgrīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.,**  
to travel about or in foreign lands.

**per-eo, -īre, -ī (-ivī), no p. p., irr.**  
(to go through), to perish, die.

**per-fēro, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum,**  
irr., to carry through, convey;  
accomplish; suffer, endure.

**per-ficio, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum**  
(per; fācio), to make (com-  
pletely); finish; effect.

**per-fringo, -frīngere, -frēgī, -frac-**  
**tum (per; frango), to break**  
through; to shatter.

**perīcūl-ōsus, -a, -um, adj. (perī-**  
**cūlum), full of peril; dangerous.**

**perīcūlum (-clum), -ī, N. (pē-**  
**rior, obsolete), a trial; risk,**  
danger.

**perī-tus, -a, -um, adj. (pērior,**  
obsolete), experienced, skilful.

**per-māgnus, -a, -um, adj., very**  
great, very large.

**per-mitto, -mittēre, -mīsī, -mis-**  
**sum, to let through; permit.**

**per-mōveo, -mōvēre, -mōvī,**  
**-mōtum, to move deeply.**

**pernic-īēs, -ī (-also -īī), F. (per-**  
**nēco), destruction, ruin, over-**  
throw.

**per-paucus, -a, -um, adj., very**  
little, very few.

**per-pētor, -pētī, -pessus sum,**  
dep. (per; pātior), to endure.

**perpētu-ō, adv. (perpētus),**  
constantly, perpetually.

**perpētu-um, adv. (perpētus),**  
forever, perpetually.

**perpētus, -a, -um, adj., continu-**  
ing; constant, lasting.

**per-saepe, adv., very often.**

**per-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēcūtus**  
**sum, dep., to follow after, pur-**  
sue.

**persēvēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**  
(persēvērus), to persist, perse-  
vere (in anything).

**per-solvo, -solvēre, -solvī, -sō-**  
**lūtum, to pay (fully), render.**

**per-stringo, -stringēre, -strinxī,**  
**-strictum, to bind firmly, fasten;**  
seize; wound slightly; censure.

**per-suādeo, -suādēre, -suāsī,**  
**-suāsum, to convince, persuade.**

**per-terreo, -terrēre, -terrui, -ter-**  
**ritum, to frighten or terrify**  
thoroughly.

**pertināc-ia, -ae, F. (pertinax),**  
perseverance, obstinacy.

**pertināc-iter, adv. (pertinax),**  
firmly, stubbornly.

**per-tineo, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, no p. p.**  
(per; tēneo), to stretch, extend;  
have reference to.

**per-turbo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to**  
confuse utterly; to disturb.

**per-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ven-**  
**tum (to come through to), to**  
arrive at, reach.

**pēs, pēdis, M., the foot; pēdibus,**  
on foot.

**pessimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl.**  
of mālus), worst.

**pestis, -is, F., a plague, pest.**

**pēto, pētēre, pētīvī, pētītum, to**  
aim at, go to; hence, to ask  
(185. 2).

**phalanx, -angis, F., a band of sol-**  
diers, phalanx.

**Pharnācēs, -is, M., king of Pontus,**  
defeated by Cæsar.

**Pharsāl-icus, -a, -um, adj.**  
(Pharsālus), of Pharsalus,  
Pharsalian.

**pi-ētās, -ātis, F., (pius), piety;**  
love, gratitude.

**pīget, pīgēre, pīguit and pīgi-**  
**tum est, impers. (314. 2), it**  
vexes, annoys, troubles; **pīget mē**  
**ālīcūjus rei, I dislike, a thing.**

**pīlum, -ī, N., a javelin (a heavy**  
javelin of the Roman infantry,  
which they hurled at the enemy  
at the beginning of an action,  
and then used their swords).

**pinguis, -e, adj., fat, fertile;**  
stupid.

**pīrāta**, -ae, M., a sea-robber, pirate.  
**plāceo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, to please;  
**plācet**, impers. (314. 2), it  
 pleases.

**plāga**, -ae, F., a blow, stroke.

**plān-itiēs**, -iēi (-ae), F. (**plānus**),  
 level ground, plain.

**plēbs**, **plēbis**, F. (**pleo**), the com-  
 mon people.

**plē-nus**, -a, -um, adj. (**pleo**, to  
 fill), full, filled; complete.

**plū-rim-us**, -a, -um, adj. (superl.  
 of **multus**), very much; most;  
 as adv., **plū-rim-um**, mostly.

**plūs**, **plūris**, adj. (comp. of **mul-**  
**tus**), more. As noun in pl.,  
**plūres**, -ium, M., several.

**plūs**, adv., more, too much.

**poena**, -ae, F., punishment, pen-  
 alty; **poenās dāre**, to pay the  
 penalty, be punished; **poenās**  
**sūmere**, to inflict punishment.

**poen-itet**, see **paenitet**.

**poēta**, -ae, M., a poet.

**pol-liceor**, -licēri, -licitus sum,  
 dep. (**pōr**-, **liceor**), to offer,  
 promise.

**pompa**, -ae, F., a procession;  
 suite, retinue; parade, pomp.

**Pompēi-ānus**, -a, -um, adj.  
 (**Pompēius**), of Pompey, Pom-  
 peian.

**Pompēius**, -i, M., Gneius Pom-  
 peius Magnus; a Roman gen-  
 eral and rival of Cæsar; de-  
 feated at Pharsālus, B.C. 48.

**pōmum**, -i, N., fruit.

**pōne**, adv. and prep. with acc.,  
 after, behind, back.

**pōno**, **pōnere**, **pōui**, **pōsitum**,  
 to put, place, set, lay; **castra**  
**pōnere**, to pitch camp.

**pōns**, **pontis**, M., a bridge.

**pontifex**, -ficis, M. (**pōns**; **fā-**  
**cio**), a high-priest, pontiff.

**Pontus**, -i, M., the Black Sea  
 (**Pontus Euxinus**), also a  
 region about the Black Sea.

**pōpūlor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.  
 (**pōpūlus**), to lay waste, pil-  
 lage.

**pōpūlus**, -i, M., a people, nation.

**porta**, -ae, F., a gate, door.

**porto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to carry.  
**posco**, **poscere**, **pōposci**, no  
 p. p., to beg, demand (185. 2).

**posses-siō**, -ōnis, F. (**possi-**  
**deo**), a possessing, possession;  
 property.

**pos-sum**, **posse**, **pōtūi**, irr.  
 (**pōtis**; **sum**), to have the  
 power, can, be able (293);  
**plū-rim-um posse**, to have very  
 great influence.

**post**, adv., and prep. with acc.,  
 behind, back, after, beneath.

**post-eā**, adv., afterwards, here-  
 after.

**postea-quam**, conj., after that,  
 when (333).

**postērior**, -ius, adj. (comp. of  
**postērus**), after, later; infe-  
 rior; latter.

**post-ērus**, -a, -um, adj. (**post**),  
 coming after, following, next,  
 ensuing, future. As noun, **pos-**  
**tērī**, -ōrum, M. pl., descendants,  
 posterity.

**post-hāc**, adv., after this, here-  
 after, henceforth.

**post-quam**, conj., after that,  
 after, as soon as, when (333).

**postrēm-ō**, adv. (**postrēm-us**),  
 at last, lastly, finally.

**postr-i-diē**, adv. (**postērus**;  
 . **diēs**), on the day after, on the  
 next day.

**postūlo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to  
 ask, demand (185. 2).

**pōtēns**, -entis, part. (**possum**),  
 able, powerful, strong.

**pōtent-ātus**, -ūs, M. (**pōtēns**),  
 rule, dominion, command.

**pōtent-ia**, -ae, F. (**pōtēns**),  
 might, power.

**pōt-ior**, -irī, -itus sum, dep.

- (*pōtis*), to become master of, take possession of (306. 2).
- pōtis*, -e, adj. powerful; able; possible.
- pōti-us*, adv., comp. of *pōtis*, rather, preferably, more.
- prātum*, -ī, N., pasture, meadow.
- prae*, adv., and prep. with abl., before; in front of, in composition, before, very.
- prae-cāveo*, -cāvēre, -cāvī, -cautum, to guard against beforehand; be on one's guard.
- prae-cēdo*, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, to go before, precede; surpass, excel.
- praeceptor*, -ōris, M., instructor.
- prae-cīpio*, -cīpere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*prae*; *cāpio*), to take in advance; direct, order.
- prae-clārus*, -a, -um, adj., very clear; excellent, celebrated.
- prae-cō*, -ōnis, M., a crier, herald.
- prae-dīco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to make known (before one), publish; boast.
- prae-dīco*, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, to foretell, predict; warn, command.
- prae-dītus*, -a, -um, adj. (*prae*; *do*), gifted, endowed with (308. Obs. 4).
- praedō*, -ōnis, M. (*praedor*), one that plunders, a plunderer.
- prae-mitto*, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, to send before, dispatch in advance.
- prae-pōno*, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitum, to put in command.
- prae-scribo*, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, to write down beforehand, command, prescribe.
- praescrip-tum*, -ī, N. (*praescribo*), a precept, order, rule.
- prae-sēns*, -entis, adj. (*prae*; *sum*), present.
- praesent-ia*, -ae, F. (*praesēns*), presence; readiness; in *praesentiā*, at present, now.
- prae-sertim*, adv. (*prae*; *sēro*), especially.
- praesid-ium*, -iī, N. (*praesideo*), a sitting down before; guard; protection.
- praestāns*, -antis, part. (*praesto*), pre-eminent, excellent, distinguished, extraordinary.
- prae-sto*, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, to stand before; surpass; *praestat* (314. 3), it is better.
- prae-sum*, -esse, -fui, irr., to be in front, be in command of, govern; *summae rerum praesesse*, to have the supreme command.
- praeter*, adv. and prep., along by, past, beyond; except, beside.
- praeter-eo*, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go past; pass by.
- praetēri-tus*, -a, -um, part. (*praetēreo*), past, gone by, departed. A noun, *praetērīta*, -ōrum, N. pl., the past.
- praetex-ta*, -ae, F. (*praetexo*), the "toga praetexta," a mantle (with purple border, worn by magistrates and children).
- praetōr-ium*, -iī, N. (*praetor*), a general's tent.
- praetōr-ius*, -a, -um, adj. (*praetor*), of the praetor.
- prae-vēnio*, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come before; anticipate, prevent; surpass.
- prēcī*, *prēcem*, *prēce*, in pl., *prēcēs*, -um, F., prayer, request.
- prēhendo*, -dēre, -dī, -sum, to seize, grasp, snatch.
- prēmo*, *prēmēre*, *pressī*, *pressum*, to press, press hard on.
- prendo*, see *prehendo*.
- prētium*, -iī, N., money; price.
- prex*, see *prēcī*.
- prī-die*, adv. (*prae*; *dies*), on the day before.



**prīm-ō**, adv. (**prīmus**), *at first, in the beginning, first, firstly.*

**prīm-um**, adv., *first, in the first place, for the first time; quam prīmum*, as soon as possible.

**prī-mus**, -a, -um, adj., superlative (**prae**, **prior**, **prīmus**), *first, foremost* (see **perior**).

**prīn-ceps**, -cīpis, adj. (**prīmus**; **cāpio**), *first*. As noun, com. gen., *chief ruler, emperor; prīncipēs*, M. pl., *chiefs, princes*.

**prīncip-ātus**, -ūs, M. (**princeps**), *the chief place, supremacy, dominion; prīncipātum tēnēre*, to be at the head of.

**prior**, **prīus**, adj., comp. (**prae**, **prior**, **prīmus**), *former, previous, prior, first* (of two) (150. 1).

**prīstinus**, -a, -um, adj., *former, early, primitive, pristine.*

**prīus** . . . **quam**, conj., *before that, before, sooner; priusquam nōn*, not until.

**prīus**, comp. adv., *before, sooner.*

**prīvo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**prīvus**), *to deprive of, bereave.*

**prō**, prep. with abl., *before, in front of, for, in behalf of; according to, as.*

**prōb-ē**, adv. (**prōbus**), *rightly, well, properly, fitly.*

**prōb-o**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ap-prove, prove.*

**prō-bus**, -a, -um, adj. (**prō**), *good, excellent, upright.*

**Prōca** or **Procās**, -ae, M., *Proca, a king of Alba.*

**prō-cēdo**, -cēdēre, -cessī, -ces-sum, *to go forward, proceed.*

**prō-cēr-itās**, -ātis, F., *height, tallness.*

**Procillus**, -ī, M., a Roman name.

**prō-clāmo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to call or cry out.*

**prōcul**, adv., *far, distant, remote.*

**prō-curro**, -currēre (-cūcurrī),

-currī, -cursum, *to run forth, rush forward; go on, advance.*

**prō-d-eo**, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -ītum, irreg. (**pro**; **eo**), *to go forth; advance.*

**prō-d-o**, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum, *to place forth; publish, betray; mēmōriā prōdītur*, it is handed down by memory.

**prō-dūco**, -dūcēre, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *to lead forth; protract.*

**proellum**, -īī, N., a battle, combat, contest.

**prōfec-tiō**, -ōnis, F. (**prōfici-scor**), *a going away, setting out, departure.*

**prōfec-tō**, adv. (**pro**; **factum**), *actually, indeed, truly.*

**prōfec-tus**, -a, -um, part. (**prōfici-scor**), *having set out, gone.*

**prō-fēro**, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum, irreg., *to carry or bring forward; to reveal.*

**prō-ficio**, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum, *to do beforehand; advance; effect.*

**prō-fic-iscor**, -fici-scī, -fectus sum, dep. inch. (**prō**; **fācio**), *to make way forward, start; march, travel.*

**prō-flīgo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to strike to the ground; conquer.*

**prō-fūgio**, -fūgēre, -fūgī, no p. p., *to flee forth, escape.*

**prō-grēdior**, -grēdī, -gressus sum, dep. (**pro**; **grādior**), *to go forth; go forward, proceed.*

**prō-hībeo**, -ēre, -uī, -ītum (**pro**; **hābeo**), *to hold back, hinder; prohibit.*

**prō-icio** (pronounced **prōjicio**), -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum (**pro**; **jācio**), *to throw forward; throw down; reject.*

**prō-lābor**, -lābī, -lapsus sum, dep., *to slip forward, fall down.*

**prō-lāto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, in-tens., *to lengthen; extend.*

**prō-mōveo, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, to move forward, advance, promote.

**prōpe**, adv. and prep. with acc. (**prōpius, prōximē**), near, nigh; near by; nearly; about.

**prō-pensus, -a, -um**, inclined.

**prōpēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (prōpērus)**, to hasten.

**prōpinquo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (prōpinquus)**, to hasten, accelerate; come nigh; approach.

**prōp-inquus, -a, -um, adj. (prōpe)**, near, neighboring; akin; similar. As noun, M., a relative, kinsman.

**prōpior, -ius (gen. -ōris)**, adj., comp. of stem contained in **prōpe**, nearer; superlative, **prōximus, -a, -um**, nearest, last (150. 1).

**prō-pōno, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsītum**, to place or lay before; set forth; determine; **mihī prō-pōsītum est (313)**, I have determined.

**prop-ter**, adv. and prep. with acc. (**prōpe**), near; on account of, because.

**proptēr-eā**, adv., on this account, therefore; **proptēreā quod**, because.

**prōpul-so, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, intens. (**prōpello**), to ward off, repulse; avert.

**prō-silio, -sillire, -silluī**, no p. p. (**prō; sāllo, -ire, sālūī, or -īī, sultum**), to leap forth; spring up, spring forth.

**prosper, -era, -erum (86. 2)**, fortunate.

**prō-spicio, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum (pro; spēcio)**, to look out; to provide for anything (with acc.).

**prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, (293. 3)**, to benefit, profit.

**prō-tinus (tēnus)**, adv. (pro;

**tēnus**), straightforward, immediately.

**prōvincia, -ae, F.**, a province; a field of duty of the consuls, usually a territory out of Italy, acquired by the Romans, and brought under Roman rule.

**prō-vōco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to call forth, challenge, summon; exasperate; **prō-vōcāre ad pōpūlum**, to appeal to the people.

**prōxim-ē**, adv. (**prōximus**), nearest, very near, next (**prōp, prōpius, prōximē**).

**prōxim-ō**, adv. (**prōximus**), quite recently, very lately.

**prōximus, -a, -um, adj.**, the nearest, next; **in prōximō**, close by, near at hand.

**prūdēns, -entis** (contracted from **prōvidēns**), foreseeing; discreet; prudent.

**Ptolēmaeus, -ī, M.**, Ptolemy, king of Egypt.

**public-ē**, adv. (**publicus**), publicly; on account of the state.

**publicus, -a, -um, adj. (pōpūlus)**, belonging to the people or state, public, common.

**Publius (Crassus), -ī, M.**, a Roman name.

**puel-la, -ae, F. dim. (puer)**, a girl, maiden.

**puell-ūlus, -ī, M. dim. (puellus)**, a little boy.

**puer, -ērī, M.**, a boy, child, (until 17); pl., children.

**pūgiō, -ōnis, M.**, a dagger, dirk, poniard.

**pūgna, -ae, F.**, a battle, dispute.

**pūgn-āx, -ācis, adj. (pūgno)**, fond of fighting, warlike, combative; quarrelsome.

**pūgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pūgna)**, to fight, engage.

**pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj.**, beautiful, fair, handsome.

**pūnio**, -īre, -vī and -ī, -itum (poena), to punish; avenge.

**pūto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to think, consider, reckon, believe.

**Pŷrēnaeus**, -a, -um, adj., only with montēs, the Pyrenees Mountains.

## Q.

**Q.** or **Qu.**, an abbreviation for *Quintus*.

**quadrāg-ēsīmus**, -a, -um, adj. (quadrāgintā), fortieth.

**quadr-ā-gintā**, num. adj. indecl. (quātuor), forty.

**quadr-in-gentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. (quātuor; centum), four hundred.

**quaero** (old form *quaeso*), **quae-rēre**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, to seek; search; strive for (185. 2); **quaeritur**, the question is.

**quaes-tor**, -ōris, M. (*quaero*), a *quaestor* (treasurer or quartermaster).

**quālis**, -e, interrog. and rel. adj.: 1. interrog., of what sort; 2. rel., of which sort; such as; tālis . . . quālis, such . . . as.

**quam**, interrog. and rel. adv., how; (in comparisons) as, than; (used to strengthen superlatives) **quam māximus**, as great as possible.

**quam-diū**, as long as.

**quam-ob-rem**, interrog. and rel. adv., for which or what reason, wherefore, why?

**quam-quam**, conj., though, although; however, and yet (329).

**quam-vīs**, adv. and conj. (vīs fr. vōlo), however, however much, although (322. 1).

**quantus**, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj.: 1. interrog., how great? 2. rel., as great, as, such; in abl., **quantō** (as adv.), by how much,

by as much as; **quantō māgis**, how much more.

**quā-propter**, adv., for what, why, wherefore?

**quā-rē**, interrog. and rel. adv. (quae; rēs), from what cause, wherefore, why?

**quart-āna**, F. (*quartus*), the *quartan* *ague* (recurring every fourth day).

**quāsi**, adv. (*quam*, as; *si*, if), as if, just as, as it were (330).

**quāter**, num. adv., four times.

**quātuor**, num. adj. indecl., four.

**quattuor** (*quātuor*), -dēcim, num. adj. (*quātuor*; dēcem), fourteen.

-que, enclitic conj., and, also.

**quēror**, **quēri**, **questus sum**, dep., to complain of, lament.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, interrog., rel., and indef. pron.: 1. interrog., which, what; 2. rel., who, which, what (240 & 245); 3. (after *si* and *nē*) any; *idē quī*, the same as.

**quīa**, conj., because (332).

**quī-cumque**, **quae-cumque**, **quod-cumque**, indef. relative pron. (240. 1), whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever.

**quid**, see **quīs**.

**quī-dam**, **quae-dam**, **quod** (subst., **quid**), **dam**, indef. pron., a certain one, somebody, something (246); **quīdam hōmīnēs**, some persons.

**quīdem**, adv., indeed, at least; **nē . . . quīdem**, not even (the word or phrase that **nē . . . quīdem** modifies always comes between **nē** and **quīdem**).

**quī-libet**, **quae-libet**, **quod** (**quid**), **libet**, indef. pron., any one you please, any one (246).

**quīn**, conj. (**quī**; **nē**), who . . . not, that not, but that; from (after

verbs of hindering); **quā**  
**etiam**, *moreover, nay even.*  
**Quinctius**, -i, m., *Quintius*, a  
 Roman name.  
**quin-dēcim**, num. adj. indecl.  
 (*quinque*; *dēcem*), *fifteen.*  
**quin-gentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj.  
 (*quinque*; *centum*), *five hun-*  
*dred.*  
**quin-gintī**, see **quin-gentī** (cen-).  
**quī-nī**, -ae, -a, num. distributive  
 adj. (*quinque*), *five each, by five.*  
**quīnqu-ā-gintā**, num. adj. in-  
 decl. (*quinque*), *fifty.*  
**quinque**, num. adj. indecl., *five.*  
**quīnqu-iēs**, adv. (*quinque*), *five*  
*times.*  
**quin-tus**, -a, -um, num. adj.  
 (*quinque*), *the fifth.*  
**Quintus**, -i, m., see **Cātūlus**.  
**quippe**, adv. and conj., *surely,*  
*certainly, indeed; for indeed.*  
**quis**, *quae*, *quid* (**quod**), inter-  
 rog. and indef. pron.: 1. inter-  
 rog., *who, what, which; quid*  
*(used adverbially), how? why?*  
*wherefore? (245 and 246);*  
 2. after **sī** and **nē**, indef., **sī**  
**quis**, *if any one; nē quis*, *lest*  
*any one, that no one.*  
**quis-nam**, *quae-nam*, *quid-nam*  
 (**quod**-), interrog. pron., *who,*  
*pray? which, pray? what,*  
*pray?*  
**quis-piam**, *quae-piam*, *quod-*  
*piam*, and (subst.) *quid-piam*  
 or *quip-piam*, indef. pron.,  
*any one, any (246).*  
**quis-quam**, *quae-quam*, *quic-*  
*quam* (**quid-quam**), indef.  
 pron., *any, anything.* As noun,  
*any one (246).*  
**quis-que**, *quae-que*, *quod-que*  
 (subst., *quic-que*, *quid-que*),  
 indef. pron., *each (246).*  
**quis-quis**, *quae-quae*, *quod-*  
*quod* or *quic-quid* or *quid-*  
*quid*, indef. pron., *whatever,*

*whatsoever.* As noun, *whoever,*  
*whosoever; every one, each one.*  
**quī-vīs**, *quae-vīs*, *quod-vīs*  
 (subst., *quid-vīs*), indef. pron.,  
*any one or what you please (246).*  
**quō**, adv. and conj., interrog. and  
 rel., *whither, to what place; conj.,*  
*wherefore, why; in order that*  
*(321, Obs. 2).*  
**quo-ad**, adv., *how long; conj.,*  
*as long as, until.*  
**quod**, conj., *that (332); because;*  
*quod sī*, *but if.*  
**quō-mīnus**, conj. (**quō**, neut.  
 abl. of rel. pron., **quī**; **mīnus**,  
*less*), *that thereby the less, that*  
*not, from (with part.) (322).*  
**quō-mōdō**, adv., *in what manner.*  
**quon**, *dam*, adv., *formerly, once;*  
*sometimes, some day, ever.*  
**quōn-iam**, adv. (**quom = quum**  
 = **cum**; **jam**), *seeing that, since*  
*(332).*  
**quōque**, conj., *also, too* (placed  
 after the word it affects).  
**quorsum**, adv. (**quō**; **versus**),  
*whither; to what purpose.*  
**quot**, indecl. interrog. and rel.  
 adj.; 1. interrog., *how many;*  
 2. rel., *as many; quot . . . tot,*  
*as many . . . so many.*  
**quōtannis** (**quot**; **annus**), *every*  
*year.*  
**quōtīd-iānus**, -a, -um (see **cot-**  
**tīd-iānus**, or **cōtīd-iānus**), *every*  
*day, daily.*  
**quōt-i-diē** (see **cottīd-** or **cō-**  
**tēd-**), adv. (**quōt**; **diēs**), *daily,*  
*every day.*  
**quōtus**, -a, -um, interrog. adj.,  
*one of how many, what in num-*  
*ber; quōta hōra*, *what time;*  
*what o'clock.*  
**quum** or **quom**, see **cum**.

## R.

**rādīx**, -īcis, f., *a root; foot* (of  
 a hill).

**răp-ăx, -ăcis**, adj. (**răpio**), *grasping, greedy, rapacious*.  
**răp-idus, -a, -um**, adj. (**răpio**), *swift, quick, rapid; violent, hasty*.  
**răp-ina, -ae, f.** (**răpio**), *robbery; plunder, booty*.  
**răpio, -ere, -ui, -tum**, to snatch away, seize; hurry off.  
**ră-tiō, -ōnis, f.** (**reor**), *a reckoning, account; estimate; list*.  
**rătis, -is, f.**, *a float, raft, vessel (made of logs fastened together)*.  
**ră-tus, -a, -um**, part. (**reor**), *having supposed; established*.  
**rē-bello, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to wage war again; revolt; renew hostilities.  
**rēcēns, -entis**, adj., *fresh, recent*.  
**rēcipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum** (**re; cāpio**), to receive back; receive; recover; **rēcipere sē dōmum**, to return home.  
**rēcordor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. (**re; cor**), to call to mind, remember, recollect (315. 1).  
**rēc-reo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to make anew; to renew; refresh, recruit.  
**rēc-cūp-ero (-cūp-ero), -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**re; cāpio**), to regain, recover.  
**rēc-cūso, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**re; causa**), to decline, reject, refuse.  
**red-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum**, to give back, return; with two accs., to make, cause to be.  
**red-eo, -ire, -iī, -ītum**, to go or come back, return.  
**red-igo, -igere, -ēgī, -actum** (**red; āgo**), to drive back; reduce; compel.  
**red-imo, -imere, -ēmī, -emp-tum** (**red; ēmo**), to buy back; buy up (304); farm.  
**red-intēgro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to renew (again), restore, renew.

**rē-dūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum**, to lead back, bring back.  
**rē-fēro, -ferre, -tūllī, -lātum**, irr., to carry back; restore; **grātiam rēferre**, to show gratitude, repay a favor; **rēferre pēdem**, to retreat; **rēferre sē**, to return.  
**rē-fert, -ferre, -tūlit**, impers. (315. 3 (2)) (**rēs; fēro**), it concerns; is of importance.  
**rē-fōveo, -fōvere, -fōvī, -fōtum**, to warm again; restore, revive.  
**rē-fūgio, -fūgere, -fūgī, no p. p.**, to flee back, escape, retreat.  
**rēg-ina, -ae, f.** (**rex**), *a queen*.  
**rēg-iō, -ōnis, f.** (**rēgo**), *direction; boundary-line; a territory, district, region*.  
**rēg-ius, -a, -um**, adj. (**rēx**), *kingly, royal, regal*.  
**rēgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**reg-num**), to rule, govern, reign.  
**rēg-num, -ī, n.** (**rēgo**), *guide; dominion, rule, royalty*.  
**rēgo, rēgere, rēxī, rectum**, to direct, rule, govern; guide.  
**rē-grēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum**, dep. (**re; grādior**), to go back, retreat.  
**rēgūla, -ae, f.** (**rēgo**), *rule*.  
**rē-icio** (pronounced **rē-jicio**), **-icere, -jēcī, -jectum** (**re; jacio**), to throw back; force back; reject; postpone.  
**rē-lābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum**, dep., to sink back; fall back.  
**rē-linquo, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum**, to leave behind; leave; appoint.  
**rēliq-uae, -arum, f. pl.** (**rēlinquo**), *the remains, relics*.  
**rēliq-uus, -a, -um**, adj. (**rēlinquo**), *remaining*. As noun, **rēliquum, -ī, n.**, *the rest, remainder; rēliquum est* (313), it remains, follows.  
**Rēmī, -ōrum, m. pl.**, *the Remi, a tribe in Gaul*.

- rē-mīn-iscor, -isci**, no perf., dep. (re; root **man-**), to recall to mind, recollect, remember (315. 1).
- rē-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum**, to send back, remit; dismiss.
- rē-mōveo, -mōvere, -mōvi, -mōtum**, to move back, remove.
- rēmūs, -i, m.**, an oar.
- Rēmūs, -i, m.**, Remus, the twin brother of Romulus.
- rē-nūntio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to bring back word, report, announce.
- rē-nuo, -nuere, -nuī**, no p. p., to deny, reject, refuse.
- reor, rēri, rātus sum**, dep., to believe, think, suppose.
- rēpent-e, adv.** (**rēpens**), suddenly, unexpectedly.
- rēpent-inus, -a, -um, adj.** (**rēpens**), sudden, unexpected.
- rē-perio, rēperire, rēpperī, rēpertum** (re; **pārio**), to find out, ascertain, discover.
- rē-peto, -petere, -petīvi, -petitum**, to recommence, demand, exact.
- rē-prēhendo, -prēhendere, -prēhendī, -prēhensum**, to hold back; seize; censure.
- rē-pūdio, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**rē-pūdium**, a separation), to cast off; reject.
- rē-pugno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to fight against, oppose, resist.
- rē-quiro, -quirere, -quisīvi or -quisiī, -quisitum** (rē; **quae-ro**), to seek again; require; need.
- rēs, rei, f.**, a thing, circumstance, business; **rē**, in reality, in fact; **rēs familiāris**, private property; **rēs militāris**, military business, science of war; **rēs gestae**, deeds, exploits; **rēs hūmānae**, human affairs.
- rē-scindo, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum**, to cut off; break down; abolish.
- rē-servo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to keep back; save, reserve.
- rē-sisto, -sistere, -stīti**, no p. p., to stand back, stay behind; resist (with dat.).
- rē-spicio, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum** (re; **spēcio**), to look back; regard.
- rē-spondeo, -spondere, -spondī, -sponsum**, to answer, reply, respond.
- rēspon-sum, -i, n.** (**rēspondeo**), an answer, reply, response.
- rēs-publica, rei-publicae, f.** (175. 2), the state, commonwealth, republic.
- rē-spuo, -spuere, -spuī**, no p. p., to spit back; reject.
- rē-stituo, -uere, -uī, -ūtum** (re; **stātuo**), to set up again, restore.
- rēte, -is, n.**, a net, snare.
- rē-tineo, -tinere, -tīnuī, -tentum** (re; **tēneo**), to keep back; restrain; preserve.
- rē-trāho, -trāhere, -trāxi, -tractum**, to draw back, withhold, check; keep or drag back.
- rētro, adv.** (**rē**), backwards, back; formerly.
- rētro-rsum, adv.** (**rētro**; **ver-sum**), back, backwards.
- re-us, -i, m.**, **rea, -ae, f.** (**rēs**), a party to an action; one who is accused or arraigned; a defendant, prisoner.
- rē-vello, -ēre, -velli, -vulsus**, pull or tear away.
- rē-vertor, -verti, -versus sum**, dep., to turn back, return.
- rēx, rēgis, m.** (**rēgo**), a ruler, king.
- Rhēa Sylvia, -ae, f.**, daughter of Numitor, and mother of Romulus and Remus.
- rhēda, -ae, f.**, a four-wheeled carriage; a carriage, chariot.
- Rhēnus, -i, m.**, the Rhine.

**Rhōdānus**, -ī, M., the *Rhone*, a river in Gaul.

**Rhōdus** (-os), -ī, F., *Rhodes*; an island near the coast of Asia Minor.

**riċeo**, **riċere**, **riċī**, **riċum**, to laugh; laugh at.

**riċeo**, **riċere**, no perf., no p. p., to be stiff or numb, to stiffen.

**riċa**, -ae, F., the bank (of a stream).

**riċus**, -ī, M., a brook, stream.

**rōgo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to ask, question; propose (a law) (185. 2).

**Rōma**, -ae, F., *Rome*.

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj. (**Rōma**), *Roman*; of *Rome*. As noun, M., a *Roman*.

**Rōmūlus**, -ī, M. (**Rōma**), the founder and first king of *Rome* (B.C. 753-717).

**rōsa**, -ae, F., a *rose*.

**rōs-trum**, -ī, N. (**rōdo**), a bill, beak; the curved end of a ship's prow, ship's beak.

**Rūfus**, -ī, M., *Rufus*, a *Roman* name.

**rūdo**, -īre, -ivī -itum, to roar (as a lion); bray.

**rūmor**, -ōris, M., common talk, hearsay, rumor.

**rūpēs**, -is, F. (**rumpo**), a cliff, steep rock.

**rursus** (-sum), adv. (contracted from **rēversus**), turned back; back; in turn, again.

**rūs**, **rūris**, N. (in pl. found only in nom. and acc.), the country; lands, fields; farm, estate; **rūrī**, in the country; **rūre**, from the country (270. 1 and 2).

## S.

**sācer**, **sācra**, **sācrum**, adj., holy, sacred; accursed. As noun, **sācra**, -ōrum, N. pl., sacred rites, sacrifice.

**sācer-dōs**, -ōtis, com. gen. (**sācer**; **dō**), a priest; priestess.

**sācrifici-um**, -iī, N. (**sācrifico**), a sacrifice.

**sācr-i-fico**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**sācer**; **fācio**), to sacrifice; offer in sacrifice.

**saepe**, adv., often, frequently; comp. **saeplus**; super. **sae-pissīme**.

**saepe-nūmērō**, adv., oftentimes, over and over again.

**saevus**, -a, -um, adj., raging, mad; fierce, cruel, severe.

**sāgitta**, -ae, F., an arrow.

**sāgitt-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (**sāgitta**), of or belonging to an arrow.

As noun, **sāgittārius**, -iī, M., an archer, bowman.

**saltus**, -tūs, M., a forest pasture; woodland pasture.

**sālūs**, -ūtis, F. (**salvus**), health, safety.

**sālūto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**sālūs**), to greet, salute.

**salve** see **salveo**.

**salvus**, -a, -um, adj., saved, preserved, sound, well, unhurt.

**sancio**, **sancire**, **sancī**, **sanc-tum**, to render sacred; to confirm, ratify.

**sān-ē**, adv. (**sānus**), truly.

**sāno**, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum (**sānus**), to make sound, heal.

**Santōnī**, -ōrum, M., the *Santoni*, a people of Gaul.

**sāpiēns**, -entis, part. (**sāpio**), wise, judicious.

**sāpien-ter**, adv. (**sāpiens**), wisely, discreetly.

**sāpient-ia**, -ae, F. (**sāpiēns**), wisdom, prudence.

**sarcīna**, -ae, F., a package, bundle; pl., baggage, packs.

**sātelles**, -ītis, com. gen., an attendant; accomplice; in pl., life-guards, an escort.

**sātis**, adv., enough, sufficiently;

- sātis hābere**, to deem it sufficient.
- sātis-facio, -facere, -feci, -factum**; in pass., **sātis-fio, -fiēri, -factus sum**, to satisfy (193.2).
- scelus, -ēris**, N., a crime, sin, enormity.
- schōla, -ae**, F., a school; dissertation.
- scient-ia, -ae**, F. (**sciēns**), a knowing; knowledge, science, skill.
- scilicet**, adv. (**scio**; **licet**), evidently, certainly.
- scindo, scindere, scidi, scissum**, to cut, tear, rend, split, cleave.
- scio, scire, scivi, scitum**, to know, understand, perceive.
- Scipio, -onis**, M., Scipio, the name of a celebrated family in Rome, the most famous of which were the two conquerors of the Carthaginians, **Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major**, and **Publius Cornelius Scipio Emilianus Africanus Minor**.
- scriba, -ae**, M. (**scribo**), a clerk, secretary, scribe.
- scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum**, to write, compose; **scribere leges**, to draw up laws.
- scrip-tor, -oris**, M. (**scribo**), writer.
- scutum, -i**, N., a shield; defence, protection.
- sē, see sui** (230).
- sē-cēdo, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum**, to go apart, separate, withdraw; secede; retire.
- sē-cerno, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum**, to put apart; to separate; discern.
- sēco, -āre, -ui, -tum**, to cut.
- sēcrēt-ō, adv. (sēcrētus)**, apart, separately; in secret.
- sēcrēt-us, -a, -um, part. (sēcerno)**, separate; secret, private.
- sec-tor, -ārī, -ātus**, dep. intens. (**sēquor**), to follow eagerly, hunt, pursue.
- sēc-undus, -a, -um, adj. (sēquor)**, following; hence, the second; (as not opposing) favorable; **sēcundō flūmine**, down stream.
- sēd, conj.**, but, yet (205.3).
- sēdeo, sēdere, sēdi, sessum**, to sit; be encamped, settle.
- sēd-ēs, -is**, F. (**sēdeo**), a seat; abode; settlement.
- sēd-i-tiō, -ōnis**, F. (**sēd**; **eo**), dissension, civil discord, sedition.
- sēditi-ōsus, -a, -um, adj. (sēditio)**, seditious.
- Sēgusiānī (-āvī), -ōrum**, M., the Segusiani, a people west of the Rhone.
- sella, -ae**, F. (**sēdeo**), a seat, chair, stool.
- sēmel**, num. adv., once, a single time, once for all; **nōn sēmel**, not once alone, several times; **sēmel atque iterum**, once and again, repeatedly.
- sēmentis, -is**, F. (**sēmīno**, to sow), a sowing.
- semper**, adv., ever, always, at all times, for ever.
- sēn-ātus, -ūs**, M. (**sēnex**), a council of elders; the senate (gen. sing., sometimes **sēnātī**).
- sēnec-tūs, -tūtis**, F., old age.
- sēnex, sēnis**, adj. (nom. and acc. of the neuter pl. in the positive, and of the neuter sing. in the comp., are wanting), old, aged (150.3). As noun, **sēnex, -is**, com. gen., an aged person, an old man, an old woman (from 40 and upwards); comp. **sēnex, sēnior, māximus nātū**.
- sēni, -ae, -a**, num. distributive adj. (**sēx**), six each, six.
- sēnior, -ius**, adj. (comparative of **sēnex**), older, elder.



**Sēnōnēs** (or **Sēnōnēs**), -um, M. pl., a people of Gaul.

**sentent-ia**, -ae, F. (**sentio**), a *thinking, an opinion*.

**sentio**, -tīre, -sī, -sum, to *discern, perceive, observe, know*.

**sēpārā-tim**, adv. (**sēpāro**), *asunder, apart, separately*.

**septem**, num. adj. indecl., *seven*.

**Septen-triō**, -ōnis, M., also pl., **Septen-triōnēs**, -um (**septem**; **triō**), *the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear; hence, the North*.

**sept-imus**, -a, -um, num. ordinal adj. (**septem**), *the seventh*.

**septuā-gintā**, num. adj. (**septem**), *seventy*.

**sēpul-tūra**, -ae, F. (**sēpēlio**), a *burying, funeral obsequies, sepulture*.

**Sēquāna**, -ae, F., *the Sequāna*, i.e. the Seine.

**Sēquānus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sequani* (a tribe of Gaul); M. pl., **Sēquānī**, -ōrum, *the Sequani*; M. sing., **Sēquānus**, -ī, a *Sequanian*.

**sēquor**, **sēqui**, **sēcūtus sum**, dep., *to follow, pursue* (283).

**sēri-ō**, adv. (**sērius**, *earnest*), *in earnest, seriously*.

**sermō**, -ōnis, M., *talk, speech*.

**sēr-ō**, adv. (**sērus**), *late, too late*.

**serp-ēns**, -entis, M. (**serpo**), a *snake, serpent*.

**serv-ilis**, -e, adj. (**servus**), *slavish, servile*.

**serv-itūs**, -itūis, F. (**servus**), *slavery, servitude*.

**servo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to save, preserve; keep*.

**servus**, -ī, M., a *slave, servant*.

**sēsē**, reduplicated form of **sē**, acc. of **sui**.

**ses-tertius**, -a, -um (**sēmis-tertius**), *two and a half; (subst.) sestertius*, -ī, M., a *sesterce* =

two and a half asses = about four cents; **sestertium**, -ī, N. (gen. pl. used as a subst.), *one thousand sesterces* (about \$40); **dēciēs sestertium**, 1,000,000 sesterces (\$40,000).

**seu**, see **sive**.

**sex**, num. adj. indecl., *six*.

**sex-ā-gintā**, num. adj. indecl. (**sex**), *sixty*.

**sex-centī**, -ae, -a, num. adj. (**sex**; **centum**), *six hundred*.

**sex-dēcim** (**sēdēcim**), num. adj. indecl., *sixteen*.

**sex-tus**, -a, -um, num. ordinal adj. (**sex**), *the sixth*.

**sī**, conj., *if, whether*; **quod sī**, *but if*; **sī quis**, *if any one*; **sī quid**, *if anything* (206. 3).

**sīc**, adv., *in this manner, so, thus*.

**siccus**, -a, -um, adj., *dry, thirsty; in siccō*, *on dry land*.

**sīcut** (and **sīc-ut**), adv., *so as, just as, as; as if*.

**signum**, -ī, N., a *mark, sign; (military) standard; signal*.

**silva**, -ae, F., a *wood, forest*.

**similis**, -e, adj., *like, resembling, similar* (149. 2).

**simul**, adv. (**similis**), *at the same time; simul atque or ac*, *as soon as*.

**simūlo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**similis**), *to pretend* (a thing is what it is not; see **dissimūlo**), *to feign, counterfeit, simulate*.

**sīn**, conj. (**sī**; **nē**), *but if, if on the contrary* (326).

**sīne**, prep. with abl., *without*.

**singūlī**, -ae, -a, num. distributive adj., *one to each, single*.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *on the left hand or side; awkward; unlucky*.

**sinistra**, -ae, F. (**sinister**), *the left hand*.

**sīno**, **sīnēre**, **sīvī**, **sītum**, *to let, suffer, allow, permit*.

- sī-quīs** or **sī-quī**, **sīqua**, **sīquid** (subst.) or **sīquod**, indef. pron., *if any one; if anything* (246).
- sisto**, **sistere**, **stīti**, **stātum**, to set, place, stand.
- sī-ve** (seu), conj., or *if, whether, or*.
- sōbrius**, -a, -um, adj., not drunk, sober; sensible, moderate.
- sōcer**, -ērī, M., a father-in-law.
- sōl**, **sōlis**, M., the sun.
- sōleo**, **sōlere**, **sōlītus sum**, semi-dep. (283), to be wont.
- sōl-ītūdo**, -inis, F. (**sōlus**), loneliness, solitude; a desert.
- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj. (209), alone, only, single, lonely.
- solvo**, **solvere**, **solvi**, **sōlūtum**, to loose, unbind; cast off (from shore); pay, break up.
- sōn-ītus**, -tūs, M. (**sōno**), a noise, sound, din.
- sōror**, -ōris, F., a sister.
- sōrōr-ius**, -a, -um, adj. (**sōror**), of or belonging to a sister.
- sors**, **sortis**, F., a lot, luck, fate.
- spātium**, -iī, N., room, space; interval, period.
- spēcī-ēs**, -ēī, F. (gen. and dat. pl. not found), (**spēcio**), a show, appearance, form; view.
- specto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens. (**spēcio**, to see), to look at, observe.
- spēcūlor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (**spēcio**), dep., to spy out, watch, explore.
- spēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**spēs**), to hope, expect, trust.
- spēs**, **speī**, F. (**spēro**), hope.
- spīr-ītus**, -ūs, M. (**spīro**), a breath; the breath of life, life; pl., spirit, airs.
- splend-or**, -ōris, M. (**splendeo**, to shine), brightness, splendor; honor, dignity.
- spōlio**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**spōlium**), to strip; rob, plunder.
- spōlium**, -iī, N., booty, prey, spoil.
- spon-sus**, -ī, M. (**spondeo**), a betrothed, bridegroom.
- sponte**, abl.; gen., **spontis**, the only cases found, (**spondeo**), of free will, of one's own accord.
- stā-tim**, adv. (**sto**), forthwith, immediately, at once.
- stātuo**, **stātuere**, **stātui**, **stātūtum**, to put, place; station.
- stā-tūra**, -ae, F. (**sto**), a standing upright; height, size, statue.
- stel-la**, -ae, F. (**sterno**), (the strewer of light), a star.
- stercus**, -ōris, N., dung; filth.
- stīpendi-ārius**, -a, -um, adj. (**stīpendium**), tributary, liable to contribution.
- stīpendium**, -iī, N., a tax, contribution; pay; military service.
- sto**, **stāre**, **stēti**, **stātum**, to stand; to cost (with abl. of price, 303).
- strēnu-ē**, adv. (**strēnuus**), briskly, vigorously.
- strēp-ītus**, -ūs, M. (**strēpo**, to make a noise), a noise.
- stringo**, **stringere**, **strinxī**, **strictum**, to bind tight; grasp.
- stūdeo**, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., to be eager about; study.
- stūd-ium**, -iī, N. (**stūdeo**), zeal, devotion.
- suādeo**, **suādere**, **suāsī**, **suāsum**, to advise, exhort, urge.
- sub**, prep. with acc. and abl. (200.3), under, beneath, during; **sub monte**, at the foot of the mountain.
- sub-dūco**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, to draw up (especially on shore), withdraw.
- sūb-eo**, -ire, -iī, -itum, irr., to go under; enter; approach; sustain.
- sub-igo**, -igere, -ēgī, -actum (sub; āgo), to bring under; subdue; impel; force.
- sūbīt-ō**, adv. (**sūbītus**), suddenly.

**sūbī-tus, -a, -um, part.** (**sūbeo**), sudden, unexpected.

**sūb-īcio** (pronounced **sub-jicio**), **-īcere, -jēcī, -jectum** (**sub**; **jācio**), to throw under, place under, subject.

**sub-lēvo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, to lighten up, raise up, assist.

**sub-ōlēs, -is, f.** (**sub**; **ōlesco**) (a thing growing up from beneath); a sprout; posterity, race.

**sub-sēquor, -sēquī, -sēctūs sum, dep.,** to follow close after; follow.

**sub-sīd-ium, -ī, n.** (**sub**; **sēdeo**), a body sitting in reserve, auxiliary forces; assistance, aid; **subsīdiō mittere**, to send as support.

**sub-sisto, -sistere, -stītī, no p.p.,** to stop behind, stand still, stop.

**sub-sum, -esse, no perf.,** to be under; to be present.

**sub-ter, prep.** with acc. and abl. (**sub**), below, beneath, underneath, under; close by.

**sub-vēho, -vēhēre, -vēxī, -vēctum, to convey up** (up stream).

**sub-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come under, come to one's assistance; succor.**

**suc-cēdo, -cēdēre, -cēssī, -cessum** (**sub**, under, close upon; **cēdo**), to follow close upon; advance, succeed.

**suc-cēnseo, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -censum, to be angry at.**

**suc-curro, -currēre, -currī, -cursum** (**sūb**; **curro**), to run under; help, aid, succor.

**Suēvī** (or **Suēbī**), **-ōrum, m. pl.**, a powerful Germanic people in northern Germany; Swabians.

**suf-figo, -figēre, -fixī, -fixum** (**sūb**; **figo**), to fasten upon, affix.

**sui, sibi, se** or **sēsē**, reflexive personal pron. (for all genders

and numbers), of himself, herself, itself, themselves (230).

**Sulla, -ae, m.**, Lucius Cornelius Sulla Felix, the celebrated Roman Dictator, B.C. 138-78.

**sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irreg., to be; mihi est, etc., I have, etc.**

**summa, -ae, f.** (**f.** of **summus**, sc. **rēs**), the main thing; the top; the amount, sum, whole.

**summus, -a, -um, adj.** (superlative of **sūperus**), chief, top of.

**sūmo, sūmēre, sumpsī, sump-tum** (**sūb**; **ēmo**), to take away, assume; **supplicium** (inflict).

**sūper, adv., and prep.** with acc. and abl. (200. 3), above; moreover, besides; upon.

**sūperbē, adv., proudly, haughtily; comp., sūperbius; super., sūperbissimē.**

**sūpēr-ior, -ius, adj.** (comparative of **sūperus**; 150. 2), higher; superior.

**sūpēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (**sūper**), to overtop; hence, to overcome, conquer.

**sūper-sum, -esse, -fui, no p.p., to be left over, exist still; survive; be in abundance.**

**sūpēr-us, -a, -um, adj.** (**sūper**), being above, upper, on high (150. 2).

**sūper-vēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come upon; come up; follow.**

**sup-pēto, -pētēre, -pētīvī, -pētītum** (**sūb**; **pēto**), to be at hand, be in store, be sufficient.

**sup-plex, -īcis, adj.** (**sub**, under; **plico**, kneel), kneeling, and so entreating, suppliant. As noun, com. gen., a suppliant.

**supplic-iter, adv.** (**supplex**), humbly, suppliantly.

**supplic-ium, -ī.** (**supplicō**), a kneeling; hence a supplication; punishment.

**sup-porto**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (sūb; porto), to bring up, carry, convey.

**suprā**, adv., and prep. with acc., 1. adv., on the top, above; (of time), before, formerly; 2. prep., beyond, besides; over, above.

**sūprēmus**, -a, -um, adj. (superlative of sūperus; 150. 2), the highest, greatest, last.

**sur-go**, surgēre, surrēxī, sur-rectum (sub; rēgo), to raise, lift.

**sus-cipio**, -cīpēre, -cēpī, -cep-tum (sub; cāpio), to take up, undertake; inīmicitiās suscīpēre, to incur enmities.

**suspīc-iō**, -ōnis, f. (suspīcor), mistrust, distrust, suspicion.

**sus-tīneo**, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, -ten-tum (sub; tēneo), to hold up under, support, sustain.

**sustūlī**, perf. ind. of tollo.

**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron. (suī), his, her, their, their own, own (353).

### T.

**T.**, an abbreviation for **Titus**.

**tābern-āculum**, -ī, n. (tāberna), a tent.

**tābūla**, -ae, f., a board, plank; list (of proscribed persons); a will; writing tablet.

**tāceo**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to be silent.

**taedet**, **taedēre**, **taeduit**, or **tae-sum est**, impers. (314. 2), it disgusts, offends, wearies (one); **mē**, etc. — I (thou, he, etc.) am disgusted.

**tālentum**, -ī, n., a talent; a Greek weight, equal to about one-half a hundred weight; a sum of money, equal to about \$1080.

**tālis**, -e, adj., such, of that kind (the relative adj. corresponding to tālis is quālis).

**tam**, adv., so, so very; **tam . . . quam**, as . . . as.

**tāmen**, conj., nevertheless, yet, still. **tām-etsī**, conj. (tāmen; etsī), although, though (332. i).

**tam-quam** (tan-), adv. (of comparison), as much as, so as, like as, just as; as if, just as though.

**tan-dem**, adv. (tam-dem), at length, at last, finally; in interrogative clauses, pray, pray now, now, then.

**tango**, tangēre, tētīgī, tactum, to touch, affect.

**tantō**, see tantus.

**tantōpēre**, see tantus.

**tant-um**, adv. (tantus), so much, so greatly, to such a degree; only, alone, merely; **tantum nōn**, almost, all but; **tantum quod**, only, just then, but just.

**tan-tus**, -a, -um, adj. (tam), so great; **tantōpēre** (tantō opēre), as adv., so much, so greatly; **tantō** (abl. of degree of difference), by so much, so much the.

**taurus**, -ī, m., a bull.

**tec-tum**, -ī, n. (tēgo), (a thing that covers), a roof; a house, dwelling.

**tē-cum**, see tū.

**tēgo**, tēgēre, tēxī, tectum, to cover, conceal; protect, guard.

**tēgī-mentum**, -ī, n. (tēgo), covering, helmet.

**tēlum**, -ī, n., a dart, spear, javelin (offensive weapon).

**tēmēr-arius**, -a, -um, adj. (tēmērō), rash, indiscreet.

**tēmēr-itās**, -ātis, f. (tēmēro-), rashness, temerity.

**tempērant-ia**, -ae, f. (tempērāns), self-control, moderation, discreetness, temperance.

**tempēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to control, control one's self (with quīn), manage; restrain.

**tempēs-tās**, -ātis, f. (st. of tem-

- pus, ō weakened to e), a time, season, period; storm, tempest.
- templum**, -ī, N., a sanctuary, temple, shrine.
- tempus**, -ōris, N. (temno, cut), time; ad tempus, at a fitting time; ex tempore, off-hand, extempore; id tempōris, at that time (236); in pl., tempōra, the times, circumstances.
- tēn-āx**, -ācis, adj. (tēneo), holding fast, tenacious.
- tēnēbrae**, -ārum, F. pl., darkness.
- tēneo**, -ēre, -uī, -tum, to hold, possess.
- tēner**, -ēra, -ērum, adj., soft, delicate, tender.
- ten-to** (or tempto), -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intens. (tendo), to handle; attack; attempt, try.
- tēnus**, prep. with abl. (follows its word), as far as.
- tēr**, adv. num. (trēs), three times, thrice.
- tergum**, -ī, N., the back; terga dāre, to flee.
- ter-nī**, -ae, -a, num. distributive adj., three each, by threes.
- tēro**, tērēre, trīvī, trītum, to rub, grind, wear away.
- terra**, -ae, F., the earth, land.
- terr-ēnus**, -a, -um, adj. (terra), of earth, earthen.
- terreo**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to frighten, alarm.
- terr-or**, -ōris, M. (terreo), dread, alarm, terror.
- ter-tius**, -a, -um, adj. (tēr), the third.
- testā-mentum**, -ī, N. (testor, to bear witness), what is acknowledged before witnesses, so a will, testament.
- testis**, -is, com. gen., a witness.
- Teutōnēs**, -um (or Teutōnī, -ōrum, M. pl.), a people of Germany.
- Thessālia**, -ae, F., Thessaly.
- Tībēris**, -is, M. (acc. Tībērim, abl. Tībēri), the Tiber.
- tīgīl-lum**, -ī, N. dim. (tignum), a little beam.
- Tigurīnus** (pāgus), a district in Helvetia.
- tīmeo**, -ēre, -uī, no p.p., to fear; be afraid.
- tīm-īdus**, -a, -um, adj. (tīmeo), fearful, faint-hearted, timid.
- tīm-or**, -ōris, M. (tīmeo), fear, anxiety.
- tītūlus**, -ī, M., an inscription, title, motto; epūaph.
- Tītus**, M., Titus, a proper name.
- Tītus Lābiēnus**, -ī, M., legate of Caesar.
- tōlēro**, -āre, -āvi -ātum, to bear, endure; nourish.
- tollo**, tollēre, sustūli, sublātum, to lift up; carry (perf. and p.p. borrowed from sus-tollo).
- tormentum**, -ī, N. (torqueo, twist), engine for hurling stones; instrument for torture, torture.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, adj. (gen. sing., totū), the whole; all (209).
- trabs**, trābis, F., a beam; a timber.
- trā-do**, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum (trāns; do), to give over, deliver, hand down; surrender; trādītur, it is said; trādītum est, the tradition is.
- trā-dūco**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum (trāns; dūco), to lead across, transport over, transfer.
- trāho**, trāhēre, trāxī, tractum, to draw, drag, drag along; bellum trāhēre, to prolong the war.
- trā-īcio** (pronounced trā-jīcio), -jīcere, -jēcī, -jectum (trāns; jācio), to throw across; transport; pierce, stab.
- trāmes**, -ītis, M. (trāns), a path.
- trāns**, prep. with acc., across, over, beyond, on the other side of.
- trāns-dūco**, see trādūco.

**trāns-eo, -īre, -iī, -itum, irreg.,** to cross over; cross.

**trāns-figo, -figēre, -fixī, -fixum,** to thrust or pierce through; to transfix.

**trāns-grēdior, -grēdī, -gressus sum, dep. (trāns; grādior),** to step across.

**trān-silio or trans-silio, -silīre, -silivī, -siluī, no p.p. (trāns; silio),** to leap or jump across; leap or spring over.

**trāns-mitto, -mittēre, -misī, -missum,** to send across, throw across; cross over.

**trāns-no (or trāno), -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to swim across or over.

**trāns-porto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** to carry or convey across (with two acc.); transport.

**trē-centī, -ae, -a, num. adj. (trēs; centum),** three hundred.

**trē-dēcim, num. adj. indecl. (trēs; dēcem),** thirteen.

**trēs, tria, num. adj., three (213). Trēvirī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** a people of Gaul.

**trib-ūnus, -ī, M. (trēs, three; tri-bus, a tribe),** a tribune.

**tri-duum, -ul, N. (trēs; diēs),** the space of three days, three days.

**tri-gēminī, -ōrum, M. pl. (trēs; gēno = gigno),** three born at a birth, three brothers.

**tri-gintā, num. indecl. adj.,** thirty.

**tri-nī, -ae, -a, num. distributive adj. (trēs),** three each, three.

**tri-plex, -plīcis, adj. (trēs; plī-co),** threefold; — **āciēs, in three lines, or divisions.**

**tristis, -e, adj.,** sad, sorrowful, mournful.

**triumpho, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (tri-umphus),** to triumph; rejoice at.

**trū-cido, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (trux, savage; caedo),** to slaughter.

**tū, pers. pron.,** thou (229. 2).

**tūba, -ae, F.,** a trumpet.

**tūlī, see fēro.**

**Tūlingī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** Tulingi, a German tribe in Gaul.

**Tullia, -ae, F.,** Tullia, a Roman name.

**Tullius, -ī, M.,** Tullius, a Roman name.

**Tullus Hostilius, -ī, M.,** third king of Rome, B.C. 672-640.

**tum, adv.,** then, at that time; **cum (quum) . . . tum, both . . . and; not only . . . but also.**

**tūmultus, -tūs, M. (tūmeo),** a swelling; uprising; tumult, insurrection.

**tūm-ulus, -ī, M. (tūmeo, swell),** a mound, hillock, hill, tomb.

**tunc, adv.,** then, at that time; immediately.

**turba, -ae, F.,** a crowd; a disturbance.

**turma, -ae, F.,** a troop, squadron (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

**turpis, -e, adj.,** ugly; foul, filthy.

**turris, -is, F.,** a tower; castle.

**tuus, -a, -um, pos. adj. pron.,** your, yours.

## U.

**ūber, -ēris, N.,** a teat, udder, breast. **ūber, -ēris, adj.,** rich, fruitful, fertile.

**ūbī, adv.,** where, when; **ūbī primum, as soon as.**

**Ubī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** the Ubii (a German people on the right bank of the Rhine).

**ūbī-que, adv.,** wherever; everywhere.

**ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, dep.,** to punish (an injury or the doer), avenge (an injury).

**ultēr-ior, -ius, adj., gen. ōris** (comparative of **ultrā**) (150. 1), farther, ulterior.

**ultimus, -a, -um**, adj. (superl. of **ultrā**), *the farthest, most distant; last*.

**ultrā**, adv., and prep. with acc., *beyond; on the other side of; ultrā fidem, beyond belief*.

**ultrō**, adv., *beyond; besides, moreover; voluntarily*.

**ul-tus, -a, -um**, part. (**ulciscor**), *having avenged, punished*.

**umbra, -ae, F.**, *a shade, shadow; an image*.

**ūmērus (hūmērus), -ī, M.**, *the shoulder*.

**ūnā**, adv. (**ūnus**), *together, at the same time*.

**unde, -adv.**, *from which place, whence*.

**und-i-que**, adv. indef. (**unde; que**), *from all sides*.

**ūn-i-versus, -a, -um**, adj. (**ūnus; versus**), *all together, all (in a mass), universal*.

**un-quam (um-quam)**, adv., *ever*.

**ūnus, -a, -um**, num. adj. (gen. sing., **ūnūs**; dat., **ūnī**), *one, alone, sole, single (213)*.

**ūnus-quisque, ūnāquaeque, ūnumquodque**, indef. adj. pron., *each, every (246)*.

**urbs, urbis, F.**, *a city, esp. Rome*.

**usquam**, adv., *anywhere*.

**usque, -adv.**, *all the way, all the while, until; usque āb, all the way from; usque ad, even to, up to*.

**ūsu-rpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (ūsus; rāpio)**, *to use, employ*.

**ūsus, -ūs, M.** (**ūtor**), *use, advantage; experience*.

**ū-sus, -a, -um**, part. (**ūtor**), *having used*.

**ut or ūtī**, adv. and conj.; interrog., *how; rel., as, so, when, since; that, so that, in order that, that not (with words of fearing) (321 ff.)*.

**ut-cumque (-cunque)**, adv., *in what way soever, whenever*.

**ūter, ūtris, M.**, *a bag; skin*.

**ūter, ūtra, utrum**, adj. pron. (gen. sing., **ūtrīus**; dat., **ūtrī**), interrog., *which of the two; rel., which (209)*.

**ūter-que, ūtrāque, ūtrumque**, adj. pron., *each (of two), both; ex utrāque parte, on either side*.

**ūtī**, see **ut**.

**ūt-īlis, -e**, adj. (**ūtor**), *useful; advantageous; suitable*.

**ūtīl-ītās, -ātis, F.** (**ūtīlis**), *use, utility*.

**ūtī-nam**, adv., *oh that! I wish that, would that! (278 ff.)*.

**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**, dep., *to use (280)*.

**ūtrim-que (ūtrinque)**, adv. (**ūter; que**), *on both sides, from both sides*.

**ūtrum**, adv., *whether; see ūter*.

**uxor, -ōris, F.**, *a wife; dūcēre uxōrem, to marry*.

## V.

**vāco, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *to be empty or vacant; be free from; (of lands) lie unoccupied*.

**vād-um -ī, N.** (**vādo, to go**), *a shoal, ford (that through which one can go)*.

**vāgio, -īre, -īvī or -iī**, no p.p., *to cry; bray*.

**vāgi-tus, -ūs, M.** (**vāgio**), *a crying; braying*.

**vāgor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. (**vā-gus, to wander about**) (**279. 2**).

**vāleo, -ēre, -uī**, no p.p., *to be strong; to be well, healthy; to be able; vālē, farewell, adieu*.

**Vālērius, -iī, M.**, *Valerius (esp., Gaius Val. Proculus), a Roman name*.

**vālē-tūdō, -īnis, F.** (**vāleo**), *health; also ill-health*.

**vallum, -ī, N.**, *rampart (earthen*

- wall set with palisades), *wall, fortification.*
- vasto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (vastus),** to lay waste, ravage.
- vastus, -a, -um, adj.,** waste; huge, vast.
- vāticinā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (vāticī-nor),** a foretelling, prophecy, prediction.
- vectigal, -ālis, N.,** a toll, tax; pl., revenues (of state).
- vēg-ētus, -a, -um, adj. (vēgeo, to arouse),** vigorous, active.
- vēhēmēns, -entis, adj.,** eager, violent, vehement.
- vēhēmen-ter, adv. (vēhēmēns),** eagerly; forcibly, very, very much.
- vēho, vēhēre, vēxī, vectum, to bear, carry, convey; in pass., vēhī, to be carried, go, ride, sail.**
- vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; even, indeed, surely; the very (with superlatives).**
- vēl-ōx, -ōcis, adj. (vōlo, to fly),** swift, fleet, rapid.
- vēl-ut (vēl-ūtī), adv.,** just as; just as if, as if.
- vēnāt-icus, -a, -um, adj. (vēnā-tus, hunting),** for hunting.
- ven-do, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum (vēnum, a sale; do), to sell (304).**
- vēnērā-tiō, -ōnis, F. (vēnēror, to reverence),** reverence, veneration.
- vēnia, -ae, F.,** favor; forgiveness.
- vēnio, vēnīre, vēnī, ventum, to come, approach, draw near.**
- vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to hunt, chase, pursue.**
- vēr, vēris, N.,** spring.
- verbum, -ī, N.,** a word; **verba facēre, to speak, discourse; verbī causā, for example.**
- véreor, -ērī, -ītus sum, dep., to fear; be afraid of (283); vērītus, p.p., pres. in sense, fearing.**
- Vergilius, -īī, M.,** Publius Vergil-  
*ius Maro, the celebrated Roman poet; Eng. Vergil (not Virgil).*
- vergo, vergēre, no perf., no p.p.,** to bend, lie towards, be situated.
- vēr-ō, adv. (vērus),** in truth, in fact, verily; truly, yes; but.
- Verres, -is, M.,** Verres, a Roman name.
- ver-sus, -ūs, M. (verto),** a turning; verse; line.
- verto, vertēre, vertī, versum, to turn, change, revolve.**
- vērus, -a, -um, adj.,** true, real, actual. As noun, **vērum, -ī, N.,** the truth, reality.
- vescor, vescī, no perf., dep., to feed, eat; live on (280).**
- Vēsontiō, -ōnis, M.,** Vesontio, a city of Gallia, the chief town of the Sequāni (modern Besançon).
- vesper, -ēris and -ērī, M.,** the evening.
- Vesta, -ae, F.,** daughter of Saturn, goddess of flocks and herds, and of the household in general.
- ves-ter, -tra, -trum, possessive pron. (vōs),** your.
- vestig-ium, -īī, N. (vestīgo, to track),** a footstep, track, trace, step.
- vestis, -is, F.,** a garment, vestment; clothing.
- vēto, -āre, -uī, -ītum, to forbid.**
- vētus, -ērī, adj.,** old, veteran. As noun, **vētērēs, -um, M. pl.,** the ancients; ancestors.
- via, -ae, F.,** a way, road, street; journey.
- viā-tor, -ōris, M. (vio, to go),** a wayfarer, traveller.
- vic-tor, -ōris, M. (vinco),** conqueror, victor.
- victor-ia, -ae, F. (victor),** victory.
- vīcus, -ī, M.,** a village.
- vidē-licet, adv.,** it is manifest, of course, forsooth.
- videō, vidēre; vīdī, vīsum, to**



- see; look at; in pass., appear, seem.*  
**vidua**, -ae, F., a widow.  
**vigeo**, -ēre, no perf., no p.p., to thrive, flourish, be vigorous.  
**vigil-ia**, -ae, F. (**vigilo**), a watch, night-guard.  
**viginti**, num. adj. indecl., twenty.  
**vinco**, **vincere**, **vici**, **victum**, to conquer, defeat, vanquish.  
**vinc-ulum**, -i, N. (**vincio**), a bond, chain, fetter, prison.  
**vindico**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vindex**), to demand; punish, revenge.  
**vinum**, -i, N., wine.  
**vi-olo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vis**), to injure, violate.  
**vir**, **virī**, M., a man, husband.  
**vir-go**, -gīnis, F. (**vireo**, to bloom), a maid, virgin.  
**vir-tūs**, -ūtis, F. (**vir**), manliness, virtue, valor; worth.  
**vis**, **vis**, F. (121), strength, power; **vī et armis**, by armed force; **vim facere**, to do violence, offer violence; in pl., **virēs**, -ium, forces, troops.  
**Vistula**, -ae, F., Vistula, a river of Germany.  
**vis-us**, -a, -um, part. of **video**.  
**vi-ta**, -ae, F. (**vivo**), life.  
**vi-to**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to shun, avoid.  
**vivo**, **vivere**, **vixi**, **victum**, to live; (**lacte**) live on.  
**vix**, adv., with difficulty, hardly.  
**vōco**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to call by name, summon, invoke.  
**Vōcontii**, -ōrum, M. pl., the Vocontii, (a people of Gaul).  
**vōl-ito**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intens. (**vōlo**, to fly), to fly to and fro, flit, fly, hover.  
**vōlo**, **velle**, **vōlui**, no p.p., irr. (294), to will, wish, desire.  
**vōlo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to fly, hasten.  
**Volsi**, -ōrum, M. pl., Volscians, a people of Latium.  
**vōlun-tās**, -ātis, F. (**vōlēs**), willingness, wish; good feeling; **vōluntāte suā**, of one's own accord.  
**vōluptās**, -ātis, F., pleasure; in pl., sports, pleasure.  
**vōs**, pl. of **tū** (229. 2).  
**vōx**, **vōcis**, F. (**vōco**), a voice, sound, word.  
**vulgus**, -i, N. (rarely M.), the multitude, the common people, mob.  
**vulnēro**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (**vulnus**), to wound, hurt.  
**vulnus** (not **volgus**), -ēris, N., a wound, hurt.  
**vulpes**, -is, F., a fox.  
**vultur**, -ūris, M., a vulture.  
**vul-tus** (not **voltus**), -ūs, M. (**vōlo**), the expression (of countenance), countenance, face.

## II. — ENGLISH AND LATIN.

[For Numerals, see p. 184 ff.; for Pronouns, p. 200 ff.]

- a**, generally untranslated; **a certain**, *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quodam*; *unus*, -a, -um.  
**ability**, *ingēnium*, -ī, N.  
**able**, **be**, *possum*, *posse*, *pōtūi*.  
**about**, *dē* (prep. with abl.); *circūter* (prep. with acc.), in point of time, *circūter* (adv. and prep.); with numerals, *ad* (prep. with acc.); or *circūter*, *fērē*, (adv.).  
**abroad**, *fōris* (adv.); after verbs of motion, *fōrās* (adv.).  
**absent**, **be**, *absum*, -esse, -fuī.  
**abundance**, *cōpia*, -ae, F.  
**accomplish**, *cōnfīcio*, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fectum; *perfīcio*, -fīcēre, -fēcī, -fectum.  
**accuse**, *accūso*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (315. 2).  
**acquit**, *absolvo*, -solvēre, -solvi, -sōlūtum (315. 2).  
**across**, *trāns* (prep. with acc.).  
**actively**, *strēnuē* (adv.).  
**actuate**, *permōveo*, -mōvēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.  
**admire**, *admīror*, -ārī, -ātus sum (dep.).  
**admonish**, *admōneo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.  
**adorn**, *orno*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**advance**, *prōgrēdior*, -grēdī, -gressus sum; — against the enemy, *signa infēro*, -ēre, -tūlī, -lātum.  
**advise**, *mōneo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.  
**Æduli**, *Aedui*, -ōrum, M.  
**advantage**, **be**, *intersum*, -esse, -fuī (noun), *commōdum*, -ī, N.  
**after**, *post* (prep. with acc.), *postea*, prep. and adv.; or see 259; *postquam* (333).  
**against**, *contrā* (prep. with acc.); *in* (prep. with acc.); sign of dat. (203); *adversus* (prep. with acc.).  
**aid**, *auxilium*, -ī, N. (*ops*), *ōpis*, F. (verb); *adjūvo*, -jūvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum.  
**air**, *aer*, -ēris, M. (acc. *aëra* and *aërem*).  
**alarm**, *pāvor*, -ōris, M.  
**all** (every), *omnis*, -e; (whole), *tōtus*, -a, -um; (all things), *omnia* (neut. pl.).  
**alone**, *sōlus*, -a, -um (adj.); gen. *sōlius*.  
**almost**, *prōpe*, *fērē* (adv.).  
**alongside**, *praeter* (prep. with acc.).  
**Alps**, *Alpēs*, -ium, F. pl.  
**already**, *jam* (adv.).  
**also**, *etiam* (adv.), *quōque* (adv.).  
**although**, *quamquam*, *ut* (329); ab. abs. (259); *licet*, *cum* (340).  
**always**, *semper* (adv.).  
**ambassador**, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.  
**among**, *apud* (prep. with acc.); *inter* (prep. with acc.); *in* (prep. with abl.).  
**ancestors**, *mājorēs*, -um, M. (pl.).  
**and**, *et*, *atque*, -que (205).  
**angry**, **be**, *irascor*, *irascī*, *irātus sum* (dat.); *irātus*, -a, -um, P., act., angry; (noun), *ira*, -ae, F.; (adj.), *irātus*, -a, -um.  
**animal**, *animāl*, -ālis, N.  
**announce**, *ēnuntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**another**, *ālius*, -a, -ud; gen. -ius; (of two), *alter*, -tēra, -tērum; one —, *inter sē*.

**answer**, *respondeo*, -ēre, -spondi, -sponsum (with dat.).

**Antiochus**, *Antiochus*, -i, M.

**Antonius**, *Antōnius*, -i, M.

**any** (in neg. and condit. sentences), *ūllus*, -a, -um; (anybody you wish), *quivis*, *quilibet*; (interr.), *numquis*; (after *sī* or *nē*), *quī*, *quae* (*qua*), *quod*; -thing, *quicquam*, or *quidquam*.

**apiece**, distributive numeral.

**appeal** *prōvōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**appear**, *appāreo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

**apple**, *pōmum*, -i, N.

**appoint**, *dīco*, *dīcēre*, *dixī*, *dictum*; appoint the time of the elections, *cōmittis diēs dico*, *dīcēre*, *dixī*, *dictum*.

**approach**, *apprōpinquo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat. or *ad* with acc.); *aggrēdior*, -grēdī, -gressus sum; *adeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum; (noun), *adventus*, -ūs, M.

**Ariovistus**, *Ariovistus*, -i, M.

**arise**, *coōrior*, -ōrīrī, -ortus, dep.

**army**, *exercitus*, -ūs, M.; *āciēs*, -ēī, F.; *āgmen*, -inis, N.

**around**, *circā* (prep. with acc.).

**arrive**, *advēnio*, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

**arrow**, *sāgitta*, -ae, F.

**art**, *ars*, *artis*, F.

**as**, see 199; conj., *ut*; *as . . . as*, *tam . . . quam*; *such . . . as*, *tālis . . . quālis*; *as . . . if*, *vēlut . . . sī*.

**ashamed**, *be*, *pūdet*, -ēre, -uī, or -itum (314. 5, Obs. 1).

**Asia**, *Asia*, -ae, F.

**ask**, *rōgo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with two acc., 185); *for*, *pēto*, *pētēre*, *pētīvī*, *pētītum* (185. 2); *inter-rōgo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**assault**, *oppūgno*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**assemble**, *convēnio*, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

**assist**, *sublēvo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *adjūvo*, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtum.

**at**, *ad* (prep. with acc.); or locative (270); or (303); (at the house of), *apud* (with acc.).

**Athens**, *Athēnae*, -ārum, F. (pl.).

**attack** (subst.), *impētus*, -ūs, M.; *ādōrior*, -ōrīrī, -ortus sum (dep.).

**attempt**, *tento*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *cōnor*, -ārī, -ātus.

**attentive**, *attentus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**August** (month of), *Augustus*, -a, -um (adj. *mensis* being understood).

**Augustus**, *Augustus*, -i, M.

**auxiliaries**, *auxilia*, -ōrum, N. (pl.).

**avenge**, *vindīco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *ulciscor*, *ulciscī*, *ultus sum*.

**away from**, *ā* or *ab* with abl.

## B.

**bad**, *mālus*, -a, -um (adj.); (naughty), *imprōbus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**baggage**, *impēdimenta*, -ōrum, N. (pl.).

**bank** (of a river), *rīpa*, -ae, F.

**bark** (verb), *lātro*; (at), *allātro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (of a tree), *cortex*, -icis (outer), M.; (inner), *liber*, -brī, M.

**battle**, *pūgna*, -ae, F.; (engagement), *praelium*, -i, N.

**be**, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*.

**beam**, *trabs*, -is, F.

**bear**, *fēro*, *ferre*, *tūlī*, *lātum*; *forward*, *infēro*, *inferre*, *intūlī*, *illātum*.

**beautiful**, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.

**because**, *quod*, *quia* (conj., 332).

**become**, (be made), *fio*, *fiērī*, *factus sum*; (be becoming), *dēcel*, *dēcēre*, *dēcui*; (be appointed), *creor*, -ārī, -ātus sum.

**before** (prep. with acc.), *ante*;  
(conj.), *antēquam*, *priusquam*  
(336).

**begin**, *ineo*, -ire, -iī, -itum, *incipio*,  
-cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum; **begin-**  
**ning of** (see 260).

**Belgian**, *Belga*, -ae, M.

**believe**, *crēdo*, -dēre, -dīdi, -dītum  
(with dat. of person).

**belong**, *pertīneo*, -tīnēre, -tīnuī,  
no p.p.

**betake** (one's self), *sē confēro*,  
*conferre*, *contūli*, *collātum*.

**beyond**, *trāns* (prep. with acc.);  
*extrā* or *ultrā* (prep. with acc.).

**bird**, *avis*, -is, C.

**black**, *niger*, -gra, -grum (adj.).

**blame**, *culpo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**boat**, *linter*, -tris, M.

**bold**, *audāx* -ācis (adj.).

**bond**, *vinculum*, -i, N.

**book**, *liber*, -brī, M.

**born**, *be*, *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus*  
*sum*; *gigno*, *gignere*, *gēnuī*,  
*gēnītum*.

**both** (each of two), *ūterque*, *utrā-*  
*que*, *ūtrumque* (pron.); **both**  
... and, *et* ... *et*; (num. adj.),  
*ambo*.

**boundaries**, *finēs*, -ium, M. (pl.).

**boy**, *puer*, -ērī, M.

**brave**, *fortis*, -e (adj.).

**bravely**, *fortiter* (adv.).

**bridge**, *pōns*, -tis, M.

**bright**, *clārus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**broad**, *lātus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**brother**, *frāter*, -tris, M.

**build**, *aedifico*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**building**, *aedificium*, -i, N.

**burden**, *onus*, -eris, N.

**burn**, *crēmo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**business**, *nēgōtium*, -i, N.

**but**, *sed*, *autē* (205. 3); (only),  
*tantum*, *mōdo*; (unless), *nisi*  
(conj.); (except), *praeter*  
(prep. with acc.).

**by** (a person after a passive  
verb), *ā* or *ab*; by day, *inter-*

*diū* (adv.); by night, *noctū*  
(adv.) (256); dative agent  
(288); means, abl. (306);  
*per* (prep. with acc.).

## C.

**Cæsar**, *Caesar*, -āris, M.

**call**, *vōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; — out,  
*evōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; — to-  
gether, *convōco*, -āre, -āvī,  
-ātum; (name), *appello*, -āre,  
-āvī, -ātum.

**camp**, *castra*, -ōrum, N. (pl.).

**can**, *possum*, *posse*, *pōtui*; (= may),  
*licet*, impers. (314) with dat.

**candidly**, *āpertē* (adv.).

**care**, *cūra*, -ae, F.

**carefully**, *diligenter* (adv.).

**carry**, *porto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; carry  
on, *gēro*, *gērere*, *gessi*, *gestum*;  
— on war against, *bellum in-*  
*ferro*, -ferre, *intūli*, *illātum*  
(*inlātum*).

**Carthage**, *Carthāgō*, -inis, F.

**cast away**, *abicio*, -icere, -jēcī,  
-jectum.

**cavalry**, *equitēs*, -um, M. (pl.).

**cave**, *antrum*, -i, N.; *spēcus*, -ūs, F.

**central**, *mēdius*, -a, -um; central  
place (with respect to both of  
them), *lōcus mēdius*.

**century**, *centūria*, -ae, F.

**certain one**, *a*, *quidam*, *quaedam*,  
*quoddam*; and subst. (*quid-*  
*dam*); (fixed), *certus*, -a, -um.

**chief**, *princeps*, -cipis, M.; (adj.),  
*summus*, -a, -um.

**children**, *puērī*; (in relation to  
parents), *libērī*, -ōrum, M.; (of  
age), *infāns*, -antis, C.

**choose** (for a purpose), *dēligo*,  
-ligere, -lēxi, -lectum; (out of  
a number), *ēligo*, -ligere, -lēgi,  
-lectum.

**Cicero**, *Cicērō*, -ōnis.

**citizen**, *civis*, -is, C.

**city**, *urbs*, -is, F.  
**clerk**, *scriba*, -ae, M.  
**cloak**, *pālūdamentum*, -ī, N.  
**close**, *claudo*, -ēre, -sī, -sum.  
**cloud**, *nūbēs*, -is, F.  
**cohort**, *cōhors*, -tis, F.  
**cold**, *frīgīdus*, -a, -um (adj.); (noun), *frīgus*, -ōris, N.  
**collect**, *comporto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *cōnfēro*, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātum.  
**column**, *cōlumnā*, -ae, F.  
**come**, *vēnio*, -īre, *vēnī*, *ventum*.  
**command**, *impērium*, -ī, N.; (verb), *impēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (with dat., or ut with subj.).  
**commander**, *dux*, *dūcis*, C.; *impērātor*, -ōris, M.  
**common**, *commūnis*, -e (adj.).  
**company**, **with**, **in**, *cum* (prep. with abl.).  
**compel**, *cōgo*, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *coactum* (acc. with inf.).  
**complain**, *quēror*, *quērī*, *questus sum*.  
**conceal**, *cēlo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (185).  
**concerning**, *dē* (prep. with abl.).  
**concerns**, **it**, *intērest*, -esse, -fuit (315. 3 (2)).  
**condemn**, *damno*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (315. 2).  
**conference**, *conlōquium*, -ī, N.  
**confess**, *fāteor*, *fāterī*, *fassus*.  
**congratulate**, *grātūlor*, -ārī, -ātus (dep.).  
**conquer**, *vinco*, *vincēre*, *vīcī*, *vic-tum*.  
**conqueror**, *victor*, -ōris, M.  
**consequence**, **it is of**, *māgnī intērest* (334. 1).  
**consul**, *cōnsul*, -ūlis, M.  
**consulship**, *cōnsulātus*, -ūs, M., or ab. abs.; see 260.  
**consult**, *cōnsūlo*, -ēre, -uī, -tum, (with acc. or for noun dat.).  
**contend**, *contendo*, -dēre, -dī, -tum.  
**contention**, *contentiō*, -ōnis, F.  
**conversation**, *sermō*, -ōnis, M.  
**convey**, *porto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;

— **across**, *trādūco*, -ēre, -dīdī, -dītum.  
**Corinth**, *Corinthus*, -ī, F.  
**corn**, *frūmentum*, -ī, N.  
**cottage**, *cāsa*, -ae, F.  
**could**, past tenses of *possum* or subj.  
**country**, *terra*, -ae, F.; (native country), *patria*, -ae, F.; (opposed to town), *rūs*, *rūris*, N.; (commonwealth), *rēs publica*, *rei publicae*.  
**cowardly**, *ignāvus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**Crassus**, *Crassus*, -ī, M.  
**crime**, *scēlus*, -ēris, N.; *crimen*, -inis, N.; *fāctinus*, -ōris, N.  
**cross**, *transeo*, -īre, -īl, -ītum; *trans-mitto*, -mittēre, -mīlī, -missum.  
**crown**, *cōrōno*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**cruel**, *crūdēlis*, -e (adj.).  
**cruelty**, *crūdēlītās*, -ātis, F.  
**cultivate**, *cōlo*, *cōlēre*, *cōlūl, cultum*.  
**culture**, *cultus*, -ūs, M.  
**cut**, *sēco*, -āre, -uī, -tum; — **off** (from supplies), *prōhībeo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītum (with acc. and abl.).

## D.

**danger**, *pēricūlum*, -ī, N.  
**dare**, *audeo*, -ēre, *ausus sum* (283).  
**dark** (of color), *nīger*, -gra, -grum.  
**daughter**, *fīlia*, -ae, F.  
**day** (opposed to night), *dīes*, -ēī, M.; (opposed to darkness), *lūx*, *lūcis*, F.  
**dear**, *cārus*, -a, -um.  
**death**, *mors*, *mortis*, F.; (to sentence to death), *cāpūtis* (315. 2).  
**debt**, *aes āliēnum*.  
**declare** (war), *indico*, -dicēre, -dīxī, -dictum; *rēnuntio*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**deed**, *factum*, -ī, N.; (in a bad sense), *fāctinus*, -ōris, N.  
**deeds** (exploits), *rēs gestae*, *rērum gestārum*, F. (pl.).

**deep**, *altus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**defend**, *dēfendo*, -dēre, -dī, -sum.  
**deliberate**, *delibēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**deliberation**, often perf. part. neut. of *consūlo*.  
**delight**, *dēlecto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (trans.); *gaudeo*, -ēre, *gāvisus sum* (intrans.).  
**deliver**, *trādo*, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum; (what is due), *reddo*, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum; (free), *libēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (of a speech), *hābeo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.  
**demand**, *postūlo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (185. 2); *flāgīto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (noun), *postulātum*, -ī, N.  
**dense**, *densus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**depart**, *dēcēdo* (*discēdo*), -cēdēre, -cēssi, -cēssum; (set out), *prōficiscor*, -ficiscī, -fectus sum.  
**deserve**, *mēreor*, -ērī, -ītus sum; *dignus sum* (324. 1).  
**deserving**, *dignus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**desert**, *dēsēro*, -ēre, -uī, -tum.  
**deserter**, *perfūga*, -ae, M.  
**desire**, *cūpio*, -ēre, -ivī, -ītum.  
**desirous**, *appētēns*, -ntis; *cūpidus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**destroy** (ruin), *perdo*, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum; (annihilate), *dēleo*, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum.  
**detain**, *dētīneo*, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, no p.p.; *rētīneo*, -tīnēre, -tīnuī, no p.p.  
**determine**, *cōnstītuō*, -uēre, -uī, -ūtum.  
**devour**, *dēvoro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**dictator**, *dictātor*, -ōris, M.  
**die**, *mōrior*, -mōrī (or -īrī), -mortuus; *obeo*, -īre, -iī, -ītum.  
**differ**, *diffēro*, *differre*, no perf. nor p.p.; — from each other, *inter sē diffēro*.  
**differently**, *ālīter* (adv.).  
**difficult**, *difficilis*, -e (adj.).  
**diligence**, *diligētia*, -ae, F.  
**diligently**, *diligēter* (adv.).

**discipline**, *disciplīna*, -ae, F.  
**disorder**, *cōfusiō*, -ōnis, F.  
**displease**, *displiceo*, -plicēre, -plīcui, -plīcītum.  
**disposition**, *ingēnium*, -ī, N.  
**dissension**, *dissentīō*, -ōnis, F.  
**distance**, *spātium*, -ī, N.  
**distant**, *longinquus*, -a, -um (adj.); am distant, *disto*, -stāre (no perf., no p.p.).  
**distinguished**, *clārus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**divide**, *divīdo*, -vīdēre, -vīsi, -vīsum.  
**Divitiacus**, *Divitiācus*, -ī, M.  
**do** (auxiliary in questions or commands, not translated); *fācio*, *fācere*, *fēcī*, *factum*.  
**does**, see **do**.  
**dog**, *cānis*, -is, M.  
**door**, *jānuā*, -ae, F.  
**doubt**, *dūbīto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (noun), *dūbium*, -ī, N.; there is no —, *nōn est dūbium*, with *quīn* and subj. (333. 2).  
**doubtful**, *dūbīus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**draw up**, *instruo*, -struēre, -struxī, -strūctum.  
**drive**, *pello*, *pellēre*, *pēpuli*, *pulsus*; — back, *rēicio*, *rēicēre*, *rējēcī*, *rējectum*.  
**due**, *dēbeo*, -bēre, -buī, -bītum; partic., *dēbītus*, -a, -um.  
**duty**, *officium*, -ī, N.; or gen. (130. Obs.).  
**dwell**, *hābīto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *incōlo*, -ēre, -uī, no p.p.

## E.

**each** (one), *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (adj.), and *quidque*, or *quicque* (subst.); *ūnusquisque*; (of two), *ūterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*.  
**each other** (i.e. one another), *ālius* . . . *ālius*, *alter* . . . *alter*.

**eager**, *āvidus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**eagle**, *āquīla*, -ae, F.  
**earth**, *terra*, -ae, F.; (world), *orbis terrarum*.  
**easily**, *fācile* (adv.).  
**easy**, *fācilis*, -e (adj.).  
**educate**, *ēdūco*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**either** . . . **or**, *vel* . . . *vel*; **aut** . . . **aut**.  
**elect**, *fācio*, *fācere*, *fēcī*, *factum*; *creo*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**elephant**, *ēlēphantus*, -i, N.  
**eloquence**, *ēlōquentia*, -ae, F.  
**embroider**, *acū* (306) *pingo*, *pingere*, *pinxī*, *pictum*.  
**encompass**, *cingo*, *cingere*, *cinxi*, *cinctum*.  
**encourage**, *hortor*, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
**end**, *cōnficio*, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *fectum*; noun, *fīnis*, -is, M. (or sometimes in sing. F.).  
**endure**, *perfero*, -ferre, -tūli, *lātum*; *tōlō*, -āre, -āvi, *ātum*; *pātor*, -i, *passus*.  
**enemy**, *hostis*, -is, C.; the enemy (collectively), *hostēs*, -ium; (personal), *inimicus*, -i, M.  
**enjoy**, *fruo*, *frui*, *fructus* (306. 1).  
**enroll**, *cōnscribo*, -bēre, -psī, -ptum.  
**enter**, *intro*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *subeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum.  
**entrust**, *committo*, -mittere, -misi, -misum.  
**Ephesus**, *Ephēsus*, -i, F.  
**escape**, *effugio*, *fūgere*, *fūgi*, no p.p.  
**establish**, *cōfirmo*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *stātuo*, *stātuerē*, *stātui*, *stātutum*.  
**evening**, *vesper*, -eri, M.  
**every** (one), *quisque*, *quaque*, *quodque* (adj.), *quidque* or *quicque* (subst.); (adj.), *omnis*, -e; every tenth (man), *dēcimus quisque*.  
**excellent**, *excellēs*, -tis.  
**exercise**, *exerceo*, -ere, -ui, -itum.

**exhort**, *hortor* (or *cōhortor*), -ārī, -ātus sum (dep.).  
**expect**, *expecto*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
**experience**, *ūsus*, -ūs, M.  
**extreme**, *extrēmus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**eye**, *oculus*, -i, M.

## F.

**faithful**, *fīdēlis*, -e (adj.).  
**faithfulness**, *fīdēs*, -ei, F.  
**false**, *falsus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**family**, *fāmlia*, -ae, F.  
**far**, *longē prōcul* (adv.).  
**far and wide**, *lātē* (adv.).  
**farmer**, *agrīcōla*, -ae, M.  
**farther** (adj.), *ultērior*, -us (adj., 150. 7).  
**father**, *pāter*, -tris, M.  
**fault**, *culpa*, -ae, F.  
**fear**, *tīmeo*, -ēre, -ui (no p.p.) (321. 2); *mētuo*, *mētuerē*, *mētui*, no p.p.; *vēreor*, -ērī, -ītus sum (dep.); (noun), *tīmor*, -ōris, M.  
**February** (month of), *Februārius*, -a, -um (*mensis* being understood).  
**fellow-citizen**, *civis*, -is, M.  
**few**, *pauci*, -ae, -a, pl. (adj.); **a** — words, *pauca*, -ōrum, N.  
**fidelity**, *fīdēs*, -ei, F.  
**field**, *āger*, *agrī*, M.  
**fierce**, *atrōx*, *atrōcis* (adj.).  
**fiercely**, *acrūtē* (adv.).  
**fifth**, *quintus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**fight**, *dimīco*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *pugno*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (subst.), *pūgna*, -ae, F.  
**fill**, *compleo*, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum; *repleo*, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum.  
**find** (by search or inquiry), *rēpērio*, *rēpērire*, *rēpēri*, *rēpertum*; *invēnio*, -vēnire, -vēni, -ventum.  
**finish**, *fīnio*, -ire, -iui, -itum; *cōnficio*, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *fectum*.

**fire**, *ignis*, -is, M.  
**first**, *primus*, -a, -um (adj.); (adv.), *primum* and *primō*.  
**fish**, *piscis*, -is, M.  
**flee**, *fūgio*, *fūgere*, *fūgi*, *fūgitum*.  
**fleet**, *classis*, -is, F.  
**flight**, *fūga*, -ae, F.  
**flow**, *fluo*, -ēre, -xī, -xum.  
**fly**, *volo*, -āre, -avi, -atum.  
**following** (day), *posterus*, -a, -um (adj., 150. 2).  
**folly**, *stultitia*, -ae, F.  
**foot**, *pēs*, *pēdis*, M.  
**foot-soldier**, *pēdes*, -is, M.  
**for** (see 303); conj., *nam*, *enim* (follows the first word or words), *et enim* (205. 5); prep., *dē* or *prō* with abl.; (sign of dat.).  
**forage**, *pābulor*, -ārī, -ātus sum (dep.).  
**forbid**, *veto*, -āre, -ui, -itum.  
**force**, *cōgo*, -ēre, -ēgi, -actum.  
**forces**, *cōpiae*, -ārum, F. (pl.).  
**foresight**, *prudentia*, -ae, F.  
**forest**, *silva*, -ae, F.  
**forget**, *obliscor*, *obliscī*, *oblitus sum*, dep. (315. 1).  
**form a plan**, *cōnsilium in eo*, -āre, -iī, -itum.  
**fortify**, *mūnio*, -ire, -ivi, -itum.  
**fortunate**, *fortunātus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**fortune**, *fortūna*, -ae, F.  
**found**, *condo*, -dēre, -didi, -ditum.  
**free**, *liber*, -era, -erum (86. 2); be free from, *vāco*, -āre, -avi, -atum; set free, *libero*, -āre, -avi, -atum; of a slave, *mānūmitto*, -mittēre, -misi, -misum.  
**friend**, *amicus*, -i, M.  
**friendship**, *amicitia*, -ae, F.  
**frog**, *rāna*, -ae, F.  
**from** (away from), *ā*, *ab*; (out of), *ē*, *ex*; (denoting cause), *abl.*, see 248.  
**fruit** (of trees), *fructus*, -ūs, M.; (of fields), *frūgēs*, -um, F. (pl.).

**fugitive**, *fūgiens*, part. of *fūgio*.  
**full**, *plenus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**further**, adj., *ulterior*, -us (adj., 150. 1); (furthermore), *autem*, conj. (placed after one or more words).  
**fury**, *fūror*, -ōris, M.

## G.

**gain**, *lucrum*, -i, N.  
**games**, *ludi*, -ōrum, M. (pl.).  
**garden**, *hortus*, -i, M.  
**gate**, *jānuā*, -ae, F.; *porta*, -ae, F.  
**Gaul** (the country), *Gallia*, -ae, F.  
**Gaul** (an inhabitant), *Gallus*, -i, M.  
**general**, *dux*, *dūcis*, M.; *impērator*, -tōris, M.  
**German**, *Germānus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**get**, *acquiro*, -ēre, -sivi, -situm; *assēquor*, -sēquī, -cūtus sum (dep.).  
**gift**, *dōnum*, -i, N.  
**girl**, *puella*, -ae, F.  
**give**, *do*, *dāre*, *dēdi*, *dātum*; give up, *trādo*, -dēre, -didi, -ditum; — what is due, *tribuo*, -uēre, -ui, -itum.  
**glad**, *laetus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**glory**, *glōria*, -ae, F.  
**go**, *eo*, -ire, -ii (ivi), -itum (298); go on, pass. of *gēro*, *gērēre*, *gessi*, *gestum*; — forth, *exeo*, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itum; — through (permeate), *permeo*, -āre, -avi, -atum.  
**god**, *deus*, -i, M.  
**going to** (fut. act. part.).  
**gold**, *aurum*, -i, N.  
**good**, *bōnus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**goods**, *merx*, *mercis*, F.  
**govern**, *rēgo*, *rēgere*, *rēxi*, *rectum*; *gubernō*, -āre, -avi, -atum; *prae-sum*, -esse, -fui (202).  
**grain**, *frūmentum*, -i, N.  
**grandfather**, *avus*, -i, M.



**great**, *māgnus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**Greek**, *Graecus*, -a, -um (adj.);  
 (noun), *Graecus*, -ī, M.  
**ground**, *hūmus*, -ī, F.; *solum*, -ī, N.  
**grow weak**, *languēscō*, *languēs-*  
*cēre*, *languī*, no p.p.  
**guardian**, *custōs*, -ōdis, M.  
**guide** (subst.), *dux*, *dūcis*, M.

## H.

**hall**, *aula*, -ae, F.  
**Hannibal**, *Hannibal*, -ālis, M.  
**happens**, *it*, *accidit*, -cidēre, -cidit.  
**happy**, *fēlix*, -icis (adj.); *beātus*,  
 -a, -um (adj.).  
**harbor**, *portus*, -ūs, M. (174. 2).  
**hard**, *dūrus*, -a, um (adj.); — to  
 do, *difficilis*, -e.  
**hardship**, *dūrum*, -ī, N.  
**hasten**, *mātūro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
*festino*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *prō-*  
*pēro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**hatred**, *ōdium*, -ī, N.  
**have**, *hābeo*, *hābere*, *hābui*, *hāb-*  
*tum*; *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, with dat.  
 (274).  
**he**, *is*; *ille*; *hic*; or implied in the  
 third person of the verb; in  
 indir. disc. referring to the  
 principal subject, *sē* (353. 1).  
**heal**, *mēdeor*, -ērī, no perf.  
**hear**, *audio*, -ire -ivī, -itum.  
**heavy**, *grāvis*, -e.  
**help**, *jūvo*, -āre, *jūvī*, *jūtum*;  
 (noun), *auxilium*, -ī, N.  
**Helvetians**, *Helvētīi*, -ōrum, M.  
**hem** in, *continēo*, -tīnērī, -tīnui,  
 -tentum (with acc.).  
**hence**, *proinde*; *hinc* (adv.).  
**her**, *ējus*; her own (refl.), *suus*,  
 -a, -um; emph., *ipsius*.  
**herald**, *praecō*, -ōnis, M.  
**here**, *be*, *adsum*, -esse, -fuī.  
**high**, *altus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**highest interests**, *summae res*.  
**highly**, *māgnī* (304).  
**hill**, *mōns*, *montis*, M.; *collis*, -is, M.

**him**, see **he**; see 271. Obs. 6.  
**himself**, *ipse* (reflex. *sē*).  
**hinder**, *impēdio*, -ire, -ivī -itum;  
*obsto*, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum.  
**his**, *ējus* (gen. of *is*); his own,  
*suus*, -a, -um; referring to sub-  
 ject, *suus*, -a, -um (emph.),  
*ipsius* (gen.); omitted when  
 implied from the context.  
**hither** (adj.), *cūterior*, -us (adj.,  
 150. 1).  
**hold**, *tēneo*, *tēnēre*, *tēnuī*, *tentum*.  
**home** (to), *dōmum*; (at), at —  
*dōmī* (270. 1).  
**Homer**, *Hōmērus*, -ī, M.  
**honor**, *hōnor*, -ōris, M.  
**hope**, *spēs*, -eī, F.; (verb) *spēro*,  
 -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**horse**, *ēquus*, -ī, M.  
**horseman**, *ēques*, -ītis, M.  
**hostage**, *obses*, -īdis, C.  
**hour**, *hōra*, -ae, F.  
**house**, *dōmus*, -ūs, F.  
**hundred** (one), *centum*.  
**hunger**, *fāmēs*, -is, F.

## I.

**I**, *ēgo* (326).  
**if**, *sī*; — not, *sī nōn*; unless, *nisi*  
 (326).  
**imitate**, *īmītor*, -ārī, -ātus *sum*  
*dep.*  
**immediately**, *stātīm*, *cōnfestim*  
 (adv.).  
**immortal**, *immortālis*, -e.  
**implore**, *implōro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**in**, *in* (prep. with abl.); in com-  
 pany with, *cum* (prep. with  
 abl.); in the power of, *pēnes*  
 (prep. with acc.); in turn,  
*invicem* (adv. or abl. alone);  
 in order that, *ut*, *nē*, etc. (see  
 321, 322).  
**increase**, *augeo*, *augēre*, *auxī*,  
*auctum*.  
**inform**, *certum* [*certiōrem*] *fācio*,  
*fūcēre*, *fēcī*, *factum*.

**inhabitant**, *incōla*, -ae, M.  
**injure**, *nōceo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (with dat.); *obsum*, -esse, -fui (203).  
**injury**, *injūria*, -ae, F.  
**inquire**, *quaero*, *quaerere*, *quaesivī*, *quaesitum* (185. 2).  
**insist on**, *flāgito*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**instruct**, *ērudio*, -ire, -īvī or -iī, -itum.  
**interests**, *it*, *interest*, -esse, -fui (315. 3 (2)).  
**into**, *in* (prep. with acc.).  
**island**, *insūla*, -ae, F.  
**it**, see **he**.  
**Italy**, *Itālia*, -ae, F.  
**it is**, *est* (see 127, sign of passive voice).  
**its** (referring to the subject), *suus*, -a, -um; omitted if implied from the context.

## J.

**January** (month of, *mensis* being understood), *Jānuārius*, -a, -um.  
**javelin**, *tēlum*, -ī, N.  
**join**, *jungo*, *jungere*, *junxi*, *junctum*.  
**journey**, *iter*, *itinēris*, N.  
**joy**, *gaudium*, -ī, N.  
**joyful**, *laetus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**judge**, *jūdex*, -dīcis, M.  
**judgment**, *judicium*, -ī, N.; to pass — upon, *sentio*, -ire, *sensī*, *sensus* (with *dē* and *abl.*).  
**June** (month of) *Julius*, -iī, M.  
**just**, *justus*, -a, -um (adv.).  
**justice**, *justitia*, -ae, F.

## K.

**keep off**, *prōhibeo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
**kill**, *interficiō*, -ficere, -fēcī, -fecitum; (by cutting down), *occido*, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum.  
**kind**, *bēnignus*, -a, -um (adj.); (noun), *gēnus*, -ēris, N.

**king**, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.  
**kingdom**, *rēgnum*, -ī, N.  
**know** (of things), *scio*, *scire*, *scivī*, *scitum*; *nōsco*, *nōscere*, *nōvī*, *nōtum*; (become acquainted with), *cōgnōsco*, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum; (not to know), *nescio*, -scire, -scivī or -sciī, -scitum; *ignorō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (understand), *intellēgo*, -lēgere, -lēxī, -lectum.  
**knowledge**, *scientia*, -ae, F.

## L.

**Labienus**, *Lābiēnus*, -ī, M.  
**Lacedæmonian**, *Lācēdæmōnius*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**lake**, *lācus*, -ūs, M. (174. 2).  
**lame**, *claudus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**land** (a country), *terra*, -ae, F.; (native land), *pātria*, -ae, F.; (by — and sea), *terrā mārīque*.  
**language**, *lingua*, -ae, F.  
**large**, *māgnus*, -a, -um (adj.); *amplus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**last**, *ultimū*, -a, -um (150. 1); (nearest, as last night), *prōximū*, -a, -um (150. 1); (most remote), *extrēmū*, -a, -um (150. 2); (at last), *dēmum* (adv.).  
**Latin**, *Lātinus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**law** (statute), *lēx*, *lēgis*, F.  
**lawful**, *justus*, -a, -um (adj.); (it is —), *licet* (314. 2); *fās* (indecl.).  
**lay before**, *prōpōno*, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitum.  
**lay down** (place), *pōno*, *pōnere*, *pōsuī*, *pōsitum*; — arms, *ab armīs discēdo*, -ēre, -cēssī, -cessum; lay waste, *vasto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**lead**, *dūco*, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *dūctum*; (over), *trānsdūco*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum; (out or from), *ēdūco*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum.

**leader**, *dux, dūcis*, c.  
**leap**, *sālio, -ire, -uī, or -iī, -tum*;  
 (over), *translīo, -sillire, -sillut*,  
 no p.p.  
**learn**, *disco, discere, didici*, no  
 p.p.; *cōgnōsco, -gnōscere, -gnōvī,*  
*-gnitum*.  
**learned**, *doctus, -a, -um*.  
**leave**, *relinquo, -linquere, -liqui,*  
*-lictum*.  
**legate**, *lēgātus, -ī, M.*  
**legion**, *lēgiō, -ōnis, F.*  
**less** (adj.), *mīnor, -us* (adj.); adv.,  
*mīnus*.  
**lest**, *nē*, etc. (see 321 and 322).  
**let**, *permitto, -mittere, -misi, -mis-*  
*sum*; *sino, sinere, sivi, situm*;  
 in commands and prohibi-  
 tions (278).  
**letter** (of alphabet), *littera, -ae, F.*;  
 (an epistle), *litterae, -arum, F.*;  
 pl., or *epistula, -ae, F.*  
**levy**, *cōscribo, -scribere, -scripsi,*  
*-scriptum*.  
**liberate**, *libero, -are, -avi, -atum*.  
**liberty**, *libertās, -ātis, F.*  
**lie**, *jaceo, -ere, -ui, -itum*; (speak  
 falsely), *mentior, -iri, -itus sum*  
 (dep.).  
**lieutenant**, *lēgātus, -ī, M.*  
**life**, *vita, -ae, F.* (with reference  
 to its several stages, as boy-  
 hood, youth, etc.), *aetās, -ātis,*  
*F.*; (manner of living), *victus,*  
*ūs, M.*  
**light**, *lux, lucis, F.*; (be light),  
*luceo, lucere, luxi*, no p.p.;  
 light, *lēvis, -e* (adj.).  
**lightning** (flash of), *fulgur, -ūris*;  
 (stroke of), *fulmen, -inis, N.*  
**like**, *similis, -e* (adj.).  
**limb**, *artus, -ūs, M.*  
**line** (of battle), *aciēs, -eī, F.*  
**lion**, *leō, -ōnis, M.*  
**literature**, *litterae, -arum, F.* (pl.).  
**live**, *vivo, vivere, vixi, victum*;  
 (dwell), *habito, -are, -avi,*  
*-atum*.

**lofty**, *excessus, -a, -um* (adj.);  
 (for a long time), *diū* (adv.).  
**long**, *longus, -a, -um*.  
**look at**, *specto, -are, -avi, -atum, or*  
*adspicio, -ere, -exi, -ectum*.  
**lose**, *amitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum*.  
**love**, *amo, -are, -avi, -atum*; (like,  
 esteem), *dūlgo, -ligere, -lēxi,*  
*-lectum*; (subst.), *amor, -oris,*  
*M.*

## M.

**make**, *fācio, -facere, -feci, factum*;  
 (a magistrate), *creo, -are, -avi,*  
*-atum*; (war upon), *infēro, in-*  
*ferre, intuli, illatum*; (cloak),  
*cōficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum*;  
 (attack), *aggrēdior, -grēdi,*  
*-gressus sum*.  
**maker**, *fāber, -brī, M.*  
**man**, *vir, viri, M.* (an adult male  
 person, opp. to *mūlier*, wo-  
 man); *hōmo, -inis, c.* (a hu-  
 man being).  
**maniple**, *mānipūlus, -ī, N.*  
**many**, *multi, -ae, -a* (adj.).  
**march**, *īer, ītinēris, N.* (subst.);  
 (verb), *īer fācio, -facere, -feci,*  
*factum*.  
**marry** (of the man), *uxōrem*  
*dūco, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum*;  
 (of the woman), *virō nūbo,*  
*nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum*.  
**master** (of boys), *māgister, -trī*;  
 (of slaves), *dōmīnus, -ī, M.*  
**may**, *licet, -licere, licuit or licitum*  
*est* (impers., 314. 2); *possum,*  
*posse, pōtūi* (293. 2); in final  
 clause, *ut*; of wish (278).  
**May** (month of), *Māius, -a, -um*  
 (adj.), (*mensis* being under-  
 stood).  
**measure**, *mētor, mētiri, mensus*  
*sum* (dep.).  
**meet** (death), *obeo, -ire, -iī, -itum*.  
**memory**, *mēmōria, -ae, F.*  
**men** (with poss. pron.), omitted,  
 as our —, *nōstrī, -ōrum, M.*

**merchant**, *mercātor*, -ōris, M.  
**messenger**, *nuntius*, -ī, M.  
**midday**, *mēridiēs*, -ēī, M.  
**midnight**, *mēdia nox*.  
**midst of, in**, *mēdius*, -a, -um.  
**might**, see **may**.  
**migrate**, *mīgro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
**mile**, *mille passuum*.  
**Miletus**, *Milētus*, -ī, F.  
**military affairs**, *rēs militāris*.  
**mind**, *ānimus*, -ī, M.  
**mine**, *meus*, -a, -um.  
**mistaken, be**, *erro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *fallor*, *falli*, *falsum* (pass. of *fallo*).  
**money**, *pēcūnia*, -ae, F.  
**monster**, *monstrum*, -ī, N.  
**month**, *mensis*, -is, M.  
**moon**, *lūna*, -ae, F.  
**more** (sign of comp. degree), *māgis*; (of quantity), *plūs* (with expressions of number), *amplius*.  
**morrow** (on the), *postērō diē*.  
**most** (sign of superl. degree), *māximē*.  
**mother**, *māter*, *mātris*, F.  
**mountain**, *mōns*, -tis, M.  
**mourn**, *lūgeo*, *lūgēre*, *lūxī*, *lūctum*.  
**move**, *mōveo*, *mōvēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*.  
**music**, *mūsica*, -ae, F.  
**must**, *oportet*, or *gerundive* (286).  
**my**, *meus*, -a, -um.  
**myself**, *egōmet* (230. 1); *ipse*, -a, -um; agreeing with *egō*, expressed or understood.

## N.

**name**, *nōmen*, -inis, N.  
**narrow**, *angustus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**naturally**, *nātūrā* (abl.).  
**nature**, *nātūra*, -ae, F.  
**near**, *prōpe*, *ad* (prep. with acc.).  
**nearest**, *prōximus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**need**, *opus* (308. Obs. 2); *ēgeo* (*indīgeo*), -ēre, -uī, no p.p. (308. Obs. 1).

**neither** (of two), *neuter*, -tra, -trum; *neither . . . nor*, *nēque . . . nēque* (205. 1).  
**never**, *nunquam* (adv.).  
**nevertheless**, *nihilōmīnus* (adv.); *tāmen* (conj.).  
**new** (opp. to *antīquus*), *nōvus*, -a, -um; *fresh* (opp. to *vētus*), *rēcens*, -entis; *news*, *nuntius*, -a, -um; *nuntium mittere*, to send word; or *aliquid nōvī*.  
**next**, *prōximus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**night**, *nox*, *noctis*, F.; *by night*, *noctū*.  
**no**, adj., *nullus*, -a, -um; *no one*, *nēmō*, -inis (for gen. *nullius* is used).  
**noble**, *dēcōrus*, -a, -um; *nōbīlis*, -e (adj.).  
**none**, *nullus*, -a, -um (adj.).  
**nor**, *nēque*, *nec*, (conj.); *neither . . . nor*, *nec . . . nec* (*nēque*) (205. 1).  
**not**, *nōn* (adv.); *haud*, used with adverbs and with *scio*; *nōnne*, interrog. particle; *that . . . not* (in final, hortatory, imperative, and optative clauses), *nē*.  
**nothing**, *nihil*, N. (indecl.).  
**nourish**, *nūtrio*, -īri, -īvi, -ītum; *ālo*, -ēre, -uī, *ālītum* and *altum*.  
**now**, *nunc* (adv.).  
**nowhere**, *nusquam* (adv.).  
**number**, *nūmērus*, -ī, M.  
**Numitor**, *Nūmītor*, -ōris, M.

## O.

**oak-tree**, *quercus*, -ūs, F.  
**obey**, *pāreo*, -ēre, -uī, no p.p.; *obēdio*, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītum.  
**object**, *obsto*, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum.  
**obtain**, *adīpīscor*, -īpīscī, -eptus sum (dep.); (possession), *pōtior*, -īri, -ītus sum, dep. (306. 2).  
**of**, gen. or abl. case; see 292; *dē* (prep. with abl.).

**often**, *saepe* (adv.).  
**old** (**man**), *sēnex*, *sēnis*, M.; (adj.), *grandis nātū*; *vētus*, -*ēris*.  
**older** (comp.), *māior nātū*.  
**on**, *in* (prep. with abl.); on this side, *citrā* (prep. with acc.); of time or instrument, abl.; — this account, *eō* (adv.) or *ob eam causam*; — the ground that, *quod*, conj. (332).  
**once** (for all), *sēmel*; — on a time, *ōlim*; (of time), abl.  
**one**, *ūnus*, -*a*, -*um*; gen. -*ius*; one . . . another, *ālius* . . . *ālius*; one . . . the other, *alter* . . . *alter*; no —, *nēmō*, -*inis*; any one, *quīvīs*; one of two, *alter*, -*ēra*, -*ērum*; the — who, *is quī*; — by —, *singulī*, -*ae*, -*a*, (with nouns pl. in form but sing. in meaning, 213. 1), *ūnī*, -*ae*, -*a*.  
**only** (adv.), *tantum*; (altogether), *omnīnō* (adv.); if —, *dum* (conj.) with subj.  
**opinion**, *sententia*, -*ae*, F.  
**oppress**, *opprīmo*, -*prīmēre*, -*pressī*, -*pressum*.  
**or** (conj.), *aut*, *vel* (205. 1).  
**orator**, *ōrātor*, -*ōris*, M.  
**order**, or **give orders**, *jūbeo*, *jūbēre*, *jussī*, *jussum* (acc. and inf., 342. (2)); order special religious services, *supplicātiōnēs dēcerno*, -*cernēre*, -*crēvī*, -*crētum*; in order that or to, *ut*, see 321; (with comp.), *quō* (with subj., 321, Obs. 2).  
**other**, *ālius*, -*a*, -*ud*, gen., -*ius*; (of two), *alter*, -*tēra*, -*tērum*; with each —, *inter sē* or *sēsē*.  
**ought**, *dēbeo*, -*hēre*, -*buī*, -*bitum*; (or, see 286); *oportet*, -*ēre*, -*uī*, impers. (with acc. and inf. as subject, or with subst. subj. clause, 343. 3).  
**our**, *nōster*, -*tra*, -*trum*.  
**ourselves**, *ipsī*, with 1st person pl. of the verb; reflex., *nōs*.

**out of**, *ē*, *ex* (prep. with abl.).  
**outside of**, *extrā* (prep. with acc.).  
**over**, *sūper* (prep. with acc.).  
**own** (his, their, etc.), *suus*, -*a*, -*um*; (our —), *nōster*, -*tra*, -*trum*; (my —), *meus*, -*a*, -*um*; *prōprius*, -*a*, -*um*.  
**ox**, *būs*, *bōvis*, C.

## P.

**part**, *pars*, -*is*, F.; or gen. (237).  
**pass**, *exīgo*, -*igēre*, -*ēgī*, -*actum*; — over, *trānseo*, -*ire*, -*ī*, -*itum*; — by, *praetēreo*, -*ire*, -*ī*, -*itum*.  
**patiently**, *pātēter* (adv.).  
**pay**, *pendo*, *pendēre*, *pēpendi*, *pen-sum*; (subst.), *mercēs*, -*cēdis*, F.  
**peace**, *pāx*, *pācis*, F.  
**people**, *pōpulus*, -*i*, M.  
**perceive**, *sentio*, *sentīre*, *sensī*, *sen-sum*; *ānimadverto*, -*ēre*, -*ī*, -*versus* (with acc.).  
**perform**, *fācio*, *fācēre*, *fēcī*, *fac-tum*; *cōnficio*, -*ficēre*, -*fēcī*, *fec-tum*; — duties, *fungor*, *fungī*, *functus sum*, dep. (306. 1).  
**perish**, *pereo*, -*ire*, -*ī*, no p.p.  
**person**, see 290.  
**pine-tree**, *pinus*, -*ūs* or -*i*, F.  
**pity**, *miseret*, *miserere*, *miseruit* (314. 2); *miseretor*, -*ērī*, -*ērītus* or -*ertus* (315. 3).  
**place** (subst.), *lōcus*, -*i*, M.; (verb), *pōno*, *pōnēre*, *pōsuī*, *pōsitum*; place around, *circumdo*, -*dāre*, -*dēdī*, *dātum*; take place, pass. of *gēro*, *gērēre*, *gēssī*, *gēstum*.  
**plain**, *plānitēs*, -*ēī*, F.  
**plan**, *cōnsilium*, -*i*, N.; (system), *rātīō*, -*ōnis*, F.  
**Plato**, *Platō*, -*ōnis*, M.  
**play**, *lūdo*, -*dēre*, -*sī*, -*sum*.  
**please** (give satisfaction), *plāceo*, -*ēre*, -*uī*, -*itum* (dat.).  
**pleasing**, *acceptus*, -*a*, -*um* (adj.); *grātus*, -*a*, -*um* (adj.).

pleasure, *vōluptās, -ātis*, F.; with pleasure, *libenter* (adv.).  
 plough, *āro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; (noun), *ārātrum, -ī*, N.  
 Po, *Pādus, -ī*, M.  
 poet, *pōeta, -ae*, M.  
 point out, *monstro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
 Pompey, *Pompēius, -ī*, M.  
 poor, *paupēr, -ēris* (adj.).  
 possession, obtain, *pōtior, -iri, -itus sum* (306. 2).  
 postman, *tābellārius, -ī*, M.  
 power (in . . . of), *pēnes* (prep. with acc.).  
 powerful, *pōtēns, -tis* (adj.).  
 praise (subst.), *laus, laudis*, F.; (act of praising), *laudātiō, -ōnis*, F.; (verb), *laudo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
 prefer (wish rather), *mālo, malle, mālui*, no p.p. (294); *antēpōno, -pōnēre, -pōsui, -pōsitum* (with acc. and dat.); *praefēro, ferre, -tuli, -lātum* (with dat.).  
 prepare, *pāro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
 present, be, *adsum, -esse, -fui*; — at or in, *intersum, -esse, -fui*.  
 preserve, *cōservo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
 pretend, *simūlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *dissimūlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
 prevent, *prōhibeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum* (323. 1).  
 price, *prētium, -ī*, N.; 304.  
 prisoner of war, *captivus, -ī*, M.  
 produce, *frūgēs, -um*, F. (pl.); *fructus, -ūs*, M.  
 profit, *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui* (with dat., 203).  
 promise, *prōmissum, -ī*, N.; (verb), *prōmittō, mittēre, misi, missum*; *pollicēor, -icēri, -icētus sum*.  
 property, *bōna, -ōrum* (N. pl.).  
 prosper, *sēcundo, -āre*, no perf., no p.p.  
 protection, *praesidium, -ī*, N.  
 provided, *dum, dummodo* (327).

providence, *prōvidentia, -ae*, F.  
 province, *prōvincia, -ae*, F.  
 prowess, *virtūs, -ūtis*, F.  
 public thanksgiving, *supplicātiō, -ōnis*, F.  
 punish, *pūnio, -ire, -ivi, -itum*.  
 punishment (penalty), *poena, -ae*, F.; *supplicium, -iī*, N.  
 pupil, *discipulus, -ī*, M.  
 put (place), *pōno, pōnēre, pōsui, pōsitum*; (— to flight), *in fūgam cōnicio, -icēre, -jēcī, -jectum*.

## Q.

quæstor, *quaestor, -ōris*, M.  
 queen, *rēgina, -ae*, F.  
 quiet, *quiētus, -a, -um* (adj.).

## R.

rapacious, *rāpāx, -ācis* (adj.).  
 rapidly, *cēlērīter* (adv.).  
 rather (had), *mālo, malle, mālui*, no p.p. (294); *pōtius* (adv.); compar. (151, Obs. 1).  
 reach (come to), *vēnio, vēnīre, vēnī, ventum* (with in and acc.); *pervēnio, -vēnīre, -vēnī, -ventum*.  
 read, *lēgo, lēgēre, lēgī, lectum*.  
 receive, *accipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum*.  
 recognize, *agnosco, -nōscēre, -nōvī, -nītum* (or *cōg-*).  
 recover (to —, intr.), *sē rēcīpio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum*; *rēcīpero* (*-cūpero*), *-āre, -āvī, -ātum*; — from disease, *convālesco, -ēscēre, -luī*, no p.p.  
 refresh, *rēficio, -ficere, fēcī, -fectum*.  
 reign, *rēgno, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; in the — of, ab. abs. (260).  
 rejoice, *gaudeo, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum* (semi-dep., 283).  
 relate, *narro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
 relying, *frētus, -a, -um* (248. 2, Obs. 3).

**remain** (wait), *māneo, mānēre, mansī, mansum*; (stay behind), *rēmāneo, -ēre, -mansī, -mansum*.  
**remember** (call to mind), *rēmīnis-cor, -isci*, on perf. (dep.); *mēmīnī, -isse* (with gen. or acc., 313).  
**remind**, *admōneo, -ēre, -uī, -itum* (with acc. pers. and gen. of thing, also *dē* with abl.).  
**remove**, *aufēro, -ferre, abstūli, ablātum*; (— to a distance), *rēmōveo, -ēre, -vī, -tum* (or *ā-*).  
**render**, *reddo, -ēre, -idi, -itum*.  
**renew**, *rēdintēgro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**renowned**, *clārus, -a, -um* (adj.).  
**repent**, *poenitet, poenitēre, poenitūit*, no p.p. (impers.) (315.3 (3)).  
**reply**, *rēpsonsum, -ī, N.*  
**report** (noun), *fāma, -ae, F.*; (verb), *ēnuntio* (or *rē-*), *-āre, -āvī, -ātum*; (divulge); *rēfēro, -ferre, -tūli, lātum* (report).  
**republic**, *rēs, rei, publica, -ae, F.*  
**repulse**, *rēpello rēpellēre, rēpūli, rēpulsum*.  
**restrain**, *tempēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; *coerceo, -ēre, -uī, -itum*.  
**retreat**, *sē rācipio, -cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum*; *pēdem, rēfēro, -ferre, -tūli, -lātum*.  
**return**, *rēvertor, -verti, -versus sum* dep. (intr.); *rēdeo, -ire, -iī, -itum* (inst.); *reddo, -dēre, -didī, -dītum* (trans.).  
**revolution**, *nōvae rēs, F.* (pl.).  
**reward**, *praemium, -ī, N.*  
**Rhine**, *Rhēnus, -ī, M.*  
**rich**, *dives, divitēs* (149. 4).  
**rise**, *ōrior, ōriri* or *ōri, ortus sum* (dep.); *surgo, surgēre, surrēxi, surrēctum*.  
**river**, *flūvius, -ī, M.*; *flūmen, -inis, N.*  
**river-bank**, *ripa, -ae, F.*  
**road** (traveled road), *via, -ae, F.*; (journey), *iter, itinēris, N.*  
**rob**, *spōlio* (or *ex-*), *-āre, -āvī, -ātum* (with acc. and abl.).  
**rock**, *saxum, -ī, N.*

**roll**, *volvo, volvēre, volvi, vōlūtum*.  
**Roman**, *Rōmānus, -a, -um*.  
**Rome**, *Rōma, -ae, F.*  
**rugged**, *asper, -ēra, -ērum* (adj.).  
**rule**, *rēgo, -ēre, rēxi, rectum* (acc.); (— the republic), *gēro, gērēre, gessi, gestum*; *impēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum* (with dat.); *prōsum, -esse, -fuī, no p.p.* (dat.).  
**run**, *curro, currēre, cūcurri, cursum*; (flee), *fūgio, fūgēre, fūgī, fūgītum*.

## S.

**sad**, *tristis, -e* (adj.).  
**safe**, *tūtus, -a, -um*; *salvus, -a, -um* (adj.).  
**safety**, *sālūs, -ūtis, F.*  
**sailor**, *nauta, -ae, M.*  
**sake, for the**, *causā* or *grātiā* (abl. followed by gen.).  
**same**, *idem, eadem, idem*.  
**satisfy**, *sātisfācio, -fācēre, -fēcī, -factum* (with dat.).  
**say**, *dico, dicēre, dixī, dictum*; (report), *fēro, -ferre, -tūli, lātum*; (says he), *inquit* (placed after one or more words of a direct quotation).  
**scholar**, *discipūlus, -ī, M.*  
**school**, *lūdus, -ī, M.*  
**Scipio**, *Scipiō, -ōnis, M.*  
**sea**, *māre, -is, N.*  
**sea-shore**, *ōra mārīlīma*.  
**seated**, *be, cōnsido, -dēre, -sēdī, -sessum*.  
**see**, *video, vidēre, vidī, visum*.  
**seek**, *pēto, pētēre, pētīvi pētītum*; *quaero, quaerēre, quaesivī, quaesitum*.  
**seem**, *videor, vidērī, visus sum* (pass. of *video*).  
**seize** (take possession of), *occūpo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.  
**select**, *dēligo, -ēre, dēlēgī, dēlectum*.  
**self**, *ipse, -a, -um*; (reflex. *sē* or pers. pron.).

- sell**, *vendo*, -dēre, -dīdī, -dītum; be sold, *vēneo*, -īre, -īī -ītum.
- senate**, *sēnātus*, -ūs, M.
- send**, *mīto*, *mittēre*, *mīsī*, *missum*; (— forward), *praemitto*, -ēre, -mīsī, -mīsum.
- sense**, *sēnsus*, -ūs, M.
- September** (month of), *Septem-ber*, -bris -bre (adj.) (*mensis* being understood).
- servant**, *servus*, -ī, M.; man servant, *fāmulus*, -ī, M.; maid servant, *ancilla*, -ae, F.
- serviceable**, *ūtilis*, -e (adj.).
- sesterce**, *sestertius*, -ī, M.; one thousand —, *sestertium*, -ī, N.
- set out**, *prōfisciscor*, -fisciscī, -fectus sum, dep.
- severe**, *grāvis*, -e (adj.).
- severely**, *grāviter* (adv.).
- shade**, *umbra*, -ae, F.
- shall**, sign of fut. tense or subj.
- sharp**, *acer*, -cris, -cre (adj.).
- she**, see **he**.
- sheep**, *ovis*, -is, F.
- ship**, *nāvis*, -is, F.
- shore**, *ōra*, -ae, F.; (of the sea), *litus*, -ōris, N.
- short** (adj.), *brēvis*, -e; *parvus*, -a, -um; (scanty), *exiguus*, -a, -um.
- should** (implying duty), *oportet*, -ēre, -uī (impers.); otherwise by subj. (278, 326).
- shoulder**, *ūmerus*, -ī, M.
- show**, *monstro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *ostendo*, -ēre, -tendī, -tentum; (subst.), *spēcīēs*, -ēī, F.
- shudder**, *horreo*, *horrēre*, no perf., no p.p.; — at, *perhorrēscō*, etc.
- Sicily**, *Sicilia*, -ae, F.
- side**, *lātus*, -ēris, N.; (on this —), *citrā* (prep. with acc.); on all sides, *undīque* (adv.).
- signal**, *signum*, -ī, N.
- silent**, *be*, *tāceo*, -ēre, -uī, -ītum.
- silver**, *argentum*, -ī, N.
- since**, *quōniam*, *cum*, conj. (332); abl. abs.
- singing**, *cantus*, -ūs, M.
- sister**, *sōror*, -ōris, F.
- sit**, *sēdeo*, *sēdēre*, *sēdī*, *sessum*.
- six**, *sex*; (six hundred), *sescentī*, -ae, -a.
- sixteen**, *sēdēcim*.
- skilled**, *pēritus*, -a, -um (148).
- sky**, *caelum*, -ī, N.
- slaughter**, *clādēs*, -is, F.
- slave** (male), *servus*, -ī, M.; (female), *serva*, -ae, F.
- sleep**, *dormio*, -īre, -īvī or -īī, -ītum.
- small**, *parvus*, -a, -um (adj.).
- snow**, *nix*, *nivis*, F.
- so**, *ita*, *sic* (adv.); (so great), *tantus*, -a, -um; (so many), *tot*, *tam*; *multī*.
- soldier**, *miles*, -itis, C.
- some one**, *quidam*, *āliquis*; **some**, *āliquantum* (236); *nōnnūllī*; (somebody), *quispiam*; (something), *āliquid*; see 237.
- some . . . other**, *ālius . . . ālius*.
- son**, *filius*, -ī, M.
- soon**, *mox* (adv.); *cūto* (adv.).
- soul**, *ānīmus*, -ī, M.
- sovereignty**, *rēgnum*, -ī, N.
- Spain**, *Hispania*, -ae, F.
- spare**, *parco*, *parcere*, *pēperci*; no p.p.
- speak**, *loquor*, *loquī*, *locūtus sum* (dep.); (of an orator), *dico*, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictum*.
- spear**, *sāgitta*, -ae, F.
- speech**, *orātiō*, -ōnis, F.
- spring**, *vēr*, *vēris*, N.
- stable**, *stābilis*, -e (adj.).
- stand**, *sto*, *stāre*, *stētī*, *stātum*.
- standard**, *signum*, -ī, N.
- star**, *stella*, -ae, F.
- state**, *civītas*, -ātis, F.; *rēs publica*, gen.; *rei publicae*, F.
- stone**, *lāpis*, -īdis, M.; *saxum*, -ī, N.
- stork**, *cicōnia*, -ae, F.
- storm** (assault), *expūgno*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **storm** (noun), *tempestās*, -ātis, F.
- story**, *fābula*, -ae, F.



**strange** (new), *nōvus*, -a, -um (adj.); (wonderful), *mīrus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**stream**, *rīvus*, -ī, M.

**strip**, *spōlio*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (abl.).

**strive** (to do a thing), *nītor*, *nīti*, *nīsus* or *nīxus*, dep.

**strong**, *vālīdus*, -a, -um (adj.); *fīrmus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**strongly**, *vālīdē*; *fīrmīter*; *fortīter* (adv.).

**study**, *stūdeo*, -ēre, -uī, no p.p.

**subdue**, *subīgo*, -īgēre, -ēgī, -actum.

**Suessiōnes**, *Suessiōnēs*, -um, M. (pl.).

**suitable** (fit), *aptus*, -a, -um (adj.); *īdōneus*, -a, -um, adj. with *ad* and acc., or with *dat.* (147. 1); also with rel. clause (324. 1).

**summer**, *aestās*, -ātis, F.; mid—, *mēdia aestās*.

**summon**, *vōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; or, *evōco*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**sun**, *sōl*, *sōlis*, M.

**sure**, *certus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**surrender** (noun), *dēditiō*, -ōnis, F.; (verb), *dēdo*, -dēre, -didi, -ditum; *trādo*, -ēre, -dēdi, -ditum.

**surround**, *cingo*, *cingere*, *cinxi*, *cinctum*; *circumsto*, -stāre, -stēti, no p.p.; *circumeo*, -ire, -iī, -itum.

**sustain**, *sustīneo*, -tīnere, -tīnuī, -tentum.

**swift** (rivers), *rāpīdus*, -a, -um (adj.); (persons, etc.), *vēlōx*, -ōcis (adj.).

**swiftness**, *cēlēritās*, -ātis, F.

**swim**, *nāto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**sword**, *ferrum*, -ī, N.; *glādius*, -ī, M.

## T.

**take**, *cāpio*, *cāpere*, *cēpi*, *captum*; (possession of), *occūpo*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (place), passive of *gēro*, *gērere*, *gēssi*, *gēstum*; (care), *cūro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**talent**, *tālentum*, -ī, N.; (ability), *ingēnium*, -ī, N.

**teach**, *dōceo*, -ēre, -uī, -tum, with two acc. (185).

**teacher**, *doctor*, -ōris, M.; *māgister*, -trī, M.

**tell**, *narro*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *dīco*, *dīcere*, *dixī*, *dictum*.

**temper**, *ānīmus*, -ī, M.

**ten**, *dēcem*.

**tenacious**, *tēnāx*, -ācis (adj.).

**tenth**, *dēcīmus*, -a, -um (num. adj.).

**Tarentine**, *Tārentīnus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**territory** or **territories**, *fīnēs*, -ium, M. (pl.).

**than**, *quam*, or abl. case (143).

**that**, *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (234); *is*, *ea*, *id* (238); *iste*, *ista*, *istud* (234 and 235, Obs. 1); (rel.) *quī*, *quae*, *quod* (240); (in final clauses), *ut* (*utī*) (321); (with comp.), *quō* (321, Obs. 2); — not, *nē* (Obs. before 321); (in consecutive clauses) (322); (after negatives, etc.), *quīn* (323, Obs. 2; 321. 3); (after verbs of fearing), *nē* (321. 2); would — (278. 1 (1)) (321 and 322).

**theatre**, *theātrum*, -ī, N.

**their** (referring to subject), *suus*, -a, -um; *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*; (of them, of these), gen. pl. of *is* (238); omitted when implied from context and not emphatic.

**themselves**, *ipsī*, -ae, -a (intens., 238. 3); (reflex., *suī*, *sibi*, *sē* or *sēsē*), (230).

**then** (of time), *tum* (adv.); (secondly), *deinde* (adv.); *tunc* (adv.).

**there**, *ibi*, *illīc* (adv.); (thither), *eō* (adv.); (there is), *est*; (is there), *estne*; (there are some), see 324.

**therefore**, *itāque*, *īgitur* (usually following the first word of the sentence).

**these**, see **this**; (these things), *haec* (234).

**they**, see **he**; dat. pl. of the, demon. (288).

**thick**, *densus*, -a, -um; (wall), *lātus*, -a, -um.

**thing**, *rēs*, *rei*, F.; neut. sing. adj. (83. 4).

**think**, *pūto*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (form an idea), *cōgito*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (judge), *iūdicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (as a view, be sensible of), *sentio*, -īre, -ī, -sum; (estimate, or an official opinion as a senator), *cēnseo*, -ēre, -uī, -um; (an individual opinion), *ōpinor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.

**third**, *tertius*, -a, -um (ord. num. adj.).

**thirst** (noun), *sītis*, -is, F.; (verb), *sītio*, -īre, -īvī or -ī, no p.p.

**thirteen**, *trēdecim*.

**this**, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (234); something to be mentioned, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*.

**this side of**, *citrā* (prep. with acc.).

**thoroughly**, *prōbē* (adv.).

**those**, *illī*, -ae, -a (234), antec. of rel., pl. of *is*; these . . . those, *hī* . . . *illī*.

**though**, *quāmvīs* (331); *licet* (331); even — (*d* before 331).

**thousand**, *mille* (213. 2).

**three**, *trēs*, *tria* (num. adj.).

**through**, *per* (prep. with acc.); (cause), abl.

**throw**, *iācio*, *iācere*, *iēcī*, *jactum*; — to, *adīcio*, -ēre, *iēcī*, -jectum.

**Tiber**, *Tibēris*, -is, M.; (acc. -im).

**time**, *tempus*, -ōris, N.; (season), *tempestās*, -ātis, F.; (times), num. adv.

**timid**, *tīmīdus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**Titus**, *Tītus*, -ī, M.

**to** (of motion), *ad*, or *in*, prep. with acc. (200. 3); (of relation), dat., or by the infin. before a verb; denoting pur-

pose (321, and Obs. 2 and 3).

**to-day**, *hōdiē* (adv.).

**together** (in company with), *unā* (adv.); (at once), *stīmul* (adv.).

**to-morrow**, *crās* (adv.).

**top** (of), *summus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**towards**, *ad* (prep. with acc.); (of time), *sub* (prep. with acc., or abl.); (into or against), *in* (with acc.).

**tower**, *turris*, -is, F.

**town**, *oppīdum*, -ī, N.

**train**, *exerceo*, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

**transfer**, *trāsfēro*, -fēre, -tūli, -lātum.

**treachery**, *prōditiō*, -ōnis, F.

**treason**, *prōditiō*, -ōnis, F.

**treat**, *āgo*, *āgere*, *ēgī*, actum.

**tremble**, *contrēmisco*, -iscēre, -muī.

**tribune**, *tribūnus*, -ī, M.

**tribuneship**, *tribūnātus*, -ūs, M.

**tribute**, *stīpendium*, -ī, N.

**triumph**, *trīumpho*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (noun), *trīumphus*, -ī, M.

**troops**, *cōpiae*, -ārum, F. (pl.).

**troublesome**, *mōlestus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**true**, *vērū*, -a, -um (adj.).

**trust**, *crēdo*, -dēre, -didī, -dītum; *fido*, *fidēre*, *fisus sum* (semi-dep., 283).

**truth** (true things), *vēra*, N. (pl.), *vērītās*, -ātis, F.

**tumult**, *tūmultus*, -ūs, M.

**turn** (verb), *verto*, *vertēre*, *vertī*, *ver-sum*; (adv., by turn), *invicem*.

**Tuscans**, *Tuscī*, -ōrum, M. (pl.).

**two**, *duo*, -ae, -o (num. adj.); (with nouns pl. in form, but sing. in meaning), *binī*, -ae, -a (213. 3).

## U.

**uncertain**, *incertus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**under**, *sub* (with verbs of motion) with acc.; (with verbs of rest) with abl., or see 259.

**understanding**, *intellectus*, -ūs, M.  
**undertake**, *suscipio*, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum.

**undertaking**, *inceptum*, -ī, N.; (work), *opus*, -eris, N.

**unequal**, *impar*, -āris (adj.).

**unfriendly**, *inimicus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**unless**, *nisi* (conj.; with subj. 326).

**unlike**, *dissimilis*, -e (adj.).

**until** (= up to), *ad*, prep. with acc.; *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, conj. (334); (before), *antēquam*, *priusquam*, (336).

**unwilling**, *be*, *nōlo*, *nolle*, *nōlui* (294).

**unwilling**, *invitus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**unworthy**, *indignus*, -a, -um (307. Obs. 4).

**upon**, *in*, *sūper* (200); or see verb or other word of a phrase, as *wait for*; see **wait**.

**us**, objective of **we**, see 229. 1; 278.

**use** (verb), *utor*, *ūti*, *usus sum* dep. (306. 1); (noun), *usus*, -ūs, M.; to — force, *vim facere*.

## V.

**valor**, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.

**value**, *aestimo*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *existimo*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (noun), *pretium*, -ī, N.

**Verres**, *Verrēs*, -is, M.

**very** (superlative degree); *valde* (adv.); *māgnopere* (adv.); — easily (after neg.), *satis commode*; (self), see 238, 239, Ex. 3.

**vessel**, *nāvis*, -is, F.; *vās*, *vāsis*, N.

**vexed at**, *be*, *piget*, *pigere*, *piguit* and *pigūtum est* (impers., 314).

**victory**, *victoria*, -ae, F.

**villa**, *villa*, -ae, F.

**Volsinii**, *Volstini*, -ōrum, M.

**vulture**, *vultur*, -ūris, M.

## W.

**wage**, *gero*, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*; (upon or against), *infero*, *inferre*, *intuli*, *illatum* (with dat. and acc.).

**wait**, — for, *expecto*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (remain), *maneo*, *manere*, *mansi*, *mansum*.

**walk**, or take a walk, *ambulo*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**wall** (general term), *murus*, -ī, M.; (of a city), *moenia*, -ium, N. (pl.); (of a house), *pāriēs*, -ētis, M.; (rampart about a camp), *vallum*, -ī, N.

**wander**, *erro*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; (about), *vāgor*, -ārī, -ātus sum (dep.).

**want**, *cāreo*, -ēre, -ui, -itum; (to be wanting), *dēsum*, -esse, -fui.

**war**, *bellum*, -ī, N.; (wage — against), *infero*, *inferre*, *intuli*, *illatum*; (in —), *belli* (271. 1).

**warn**, *mōneo*, -ēre, -ui, -itum.

**waste**, *lay*, *vasto*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; *pōpūlor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.

**watch**, *vigilia*, -ae, F.; — men, *vigiliae*, -arum, M.; (verb), *vigilo*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**water**, *aqua*, -ae, F.

**wave**, *fluctus*, -ūs, M.

**way**, *via*, -ae, F.

**we**, *nōs*, see I.

**weak**, *grow*, *languesco*, -uēscere, -ui (no p.p.).

**weapon**, *telum*, -ī, N.

**wearied**, *fessus*, -a, -um; (be weary, pained), (verb), *taedet*, *taedere*, *taeduit* or *taesum est* impers. (314).

**weeping**, *flens*, *flentis* (pres. part.)

**well**, *bene* (adv.); (adj., in good health), *sānus*, -a, -um (adj.).

**went**, see **go**.

**what**, interrog., *quā*, *quae*, *quod* (adj.) and *quid* (subst.); — rel., *id quod*; see 240 and 245.

**whatever**, *quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque* (indef. rel. pron.); any —, *quivis, quaevis, quodvis* (adj.), and *quidvis* (subst.) indef. pron.

**what o'clock**, *quōta hōra*.

**when**, *cum* (338 and 339), *ubi* (or an appositive); or 259; (when?), *quando?* (adv.), *postquam, postea*, etc. (333).

**where**, *ubi* (interrog. & rel. adv.).

**wherefore**, *quamobrem, quāre, unde*.

**whether**, *num, nē* (91. 1, a, b, c).

**which** (of two), *uter*; (rel.), see **who**.

**while**, *dum* (334).

**white**, *albus, -a, -um* (adj.).

**who** (which), relative, *qui, quae, quod* (321, 324); **who** (what), interrog., *quis (quī), quae, quod (quid)* (245).

**whoever**, *quicumque, (adj.) quaecumque, quodcumque* (indef. rel. pron.); — you please, *quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet*, and (subst.), *quidlibet*, indef. pron.

**whose**, rel., see **who**.

**why**, *cūr* (adv.); *quid* (neut. acc. used adv.); (for what reason), *quā dē causā*.

**wide**, *lātus, -a, -um* (adj.).

**will**, *vōlo*, or (subj. or sign of future tense); (noun), *vōluntās, -ātis*, F.; *testāmentum, -i*, N.

**wind**, *ventus, -i*, M.

**winter**, *hiems, -is*, F.; (winter quarters), *hiberna, -ōrum*, N. (pl.) (to winter or pass —), *hiemo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.

**wise**, *sāpiens, -ntis* (adj.).

**wish**, *vōlo, velle, vōlū* (no p.p., 294); (— well to), *cūpio, -ēre, -ivī, -itum* (with dat.).

**with**, abl. case (309); (in company —), *cum* (prep., 81. Obs., or 259); — each other, *inter sē* or *sēsē*.

**within**, *intrā* (prep. with acc.); sign of abl. of time (196).

**without**, *sine* (prep. with abl.); or 261. N. 5 (with partic. noun after neg. expressions) *quān* (323. 2).

**wolf**, *lūpus, -i*, M.

**woman**, *mūlier, mūliēris*, F.

**wood** (forest), *silva, -ae*, F.; (fuel), *lignum, -i*, N.; (building-wood), *māteria, -ae*, F.

**worthy**, *dignus, -a, -um* (adj., 307. Obs. 4); with rel. clause with subj. (324. 1).

**would** (subj., would that, 278, 326), *utnam*.

**wound**, *vulnēro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*; (noun), *vulnus, -eris*, N.

**write**, *scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum*.

## Y.

**year**, *annus, -i*, M.; (be in the year, to be — old), *annum — āgo, āgēre, ēgī, actum*; the — after, *annō post* (307. Obs. 6).

**yearly**, *quōtannis* (adv.).

**yes**, repeat the verb with or without *etiā*, *vērū*, etc. (347).

**yesterday**, *hērī*.

**yet** (nevertheless), *tāmen*; (not yet), *nōndum* (adv.).

**you**, sing., *tū*; pl., *vōs*; to — (i.e. where you are), *istū*, c. (adv.).

**your**, sing., *tuus, -a, -um*; (of more than one), *vester, -tra, -trum*.

**yourself**, *tuī, tibi, tē*, pers. pron. used, reflex (230 and 1).

**youth** (young man), *adūlescēns, -entis*, c.; *juvēnis, -is*, c.; (younger), *minor nātū* (adj.); (abst. n.), *adūlescentia, -ae*, F.

## Z.

**Zeno**, *Zēnō, -ōnis*, M.

# Latin Text-Books.

---

## Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar.

A Latin Grammar for schools and colleges, founded on Comparative Grammar. By J. H. ALLEN, Lecturer at Harvard University, and J. B. GREENOUGH, Professor of Latin at Harvard University. 12mo. Half morocco. 348 pages. With new and greatly enlarged Index. Mailing price, \$1.25; Introduction, \$1.12; Allowance for old book, 45 cts.

The standing of this Grammar is now so well established that no extended comments or description need be given.

1. It has been used and recommended by teachers of Latin everywhere,—particularly in the large and in the distinctively classical schools, where an independent judgment might be expected.

2. Its firmest friends are those who have used it longest.

3. The clearness, simplicity, conciseness, convenience of size and arrangement, and economy of matter, essential in a class-room manual, have been secured without sacrifice of rigid scholarship, as is shown by the emphatic endorsements of eminent authorities.

4. To place before the public in authentic form the exact status of the question, the publishers print a series of testimonials from prominent professors and teachers, representing 132 colleges and 452 schools. The latter include about 72,000 students. These letters, which have a judicial value as the independent judgments of competent and disinterested men, pronounce the grammar

“Especially suited to beginners.” “Brief and concise.”

“Broad, comprehensive, and complete.” “Simple and clear.”

“Thorough, accurate, and scholarly.”

“Systematic, scientific, and philosophical.”

“Practical, and satisfactory to teachers and to students.”

“**The best extant.**” [*Send for the circular.*]

At the present time, inasmuch as the grammar has no longer against it the natural conservatism of the schools, and the no less natural prejudice of an entire corps of teachers trained in the methods of other books, its continued and increased success is not surprising.

## *Allen & Greenough's New Cæsar.*

Seven books. Illustrated. Edited by Prof. W. F. ALLEN, of the University of Wisconsin, J. H. ALLEN, of Cambridge, and H. P. JUDSON, Prof. of History, University of Minnesota, with a special vocabulary by Prof. J. B. GREENOUGH, of Harvard College. 556 pages, red edges, bound in half morocco. Mailing price, \$1.35; for Introduction, \$1.25; Allowance for an old book in exchange, 50 cents.



The publication of the new Cæsar was the third step toward the perfecting of a series which, even in its first draft, was received by eminent authorities as marking a new era in the study of Latin; and, like the first two steps, — the new grammar (revised in 1877), and Greenough's Virgil (issued in 1881), — it has been most cordially approved by scholars and teachers, as the opinions quoted below will indicate.

The prime object of this edition is to help the student with each sentence, to put before his mind the same picture which that sentence suggested to the intelligent Roman reader.

The Commentaries are simply a *military history*, — a story of battle and siege. Hence it is clear that to read the book understandingly the student should have a definite notion of a Roman army and its methods. So that while the annotation has been most faithfully done in all respects, special care has been taken with the **military notes** contributed by Professor Judson.

It is attempted to give, in the light of the latest scholarship, a picture of the Roman soldier of Cæsar, — his dress, his arms, his food. We study the tactics of the legions, and see their evolutions on the march and in battle, their work and life in camp. These

points are illustrated by **forty-five cuts and diagrams**, **twelve elaborate plans** of the most important battles and sieges, and a double-page colored **map of Gaul**, revised according to the most recent investigations, — features not in any other English edition.

The **Vocabulary** attempts to give, first, the etymological meaning of each word so far as is possible; second, the general meanings of the words, representing the conceptions as they appeared to the Romans; third, such renderings as may be necessary to present the thought in a suitable English form. In the last case care is taken to indicate by the use of phrases and by notes the difference between the Roman and the English conceptions.

In giving the etymologies, the actual mode of formation in each case, so far as it is known, is shown, and all the elements which have entered into the formation are noted.

This edition follows, with slight change of orthography, the **text** of Nipperdey, the more important various readings being given in the notes. **References** are given to the Grammars of Allen & Greenough, Gildersleeve, and Harkness.

Though the *Cæsar* was not placed in the hands of teachers for examination until the middle of August, 1885, when in many cases books had been selected and ordered, it was almost immediately adopted by about 500 institutions. The indications are that the fall of 1886 will find it in nearly or quite 1000 schools.

Letters received by the publishers specify among others these

#### POINTS OF EXCELLENCE.

**FIRST.** The judicious **notes**, — their full grammatical references, crisp idiomatic renderings, scholarly interpretations of difficult passages, clear treatment of indirect discourse, the helpful maps, diagrams, and pictures; in particular, the **military notes**, throwing light on the text, and giving life and reality to the narrative.

**SECOND.** The **vocabulary**, — convenient, comprehensive; and scholarly, combining the benefits of the full lexicon with the advantages of the special vocabulary.

**THIRD.** The mechanical features of the volume, its clear type, convenient size and shape, superior paper, and attractive binding.

**FOURTH.** In general, **this edition supplies all that a book can supply, leaving the teacher time and strength for his proper work of instruction**, — the work that a book cannot do.

## Greenough's Virgil.

Containing Life of the Poet, Introductions, a Synopsis preceding each Book, and an Index of Plants. Also full illustrations from ancient objects of art. Fully annotated, for School and College Use, by J. B. GREENOUGH of Harvard University.

The text follows Ribbeck in the main, variations being noted in the margin; and the references are to Allen & Greenough's, Gildersleeve's, and Harkness's Latin Grammars. Supplied in the following editions:

	Mail. Price.	Intro. Price.	Allow. Old Book.
Bucolics and Six Books of <i>Æneid</i> , with Vocab. . . .	\$1.75	\$1.60	\$0.40
Bucolics and Six Books of <i>Æneid</i> , without Vocab. . . .	1.25	1.12	
Bucolics, Georgics, and the <i>Æneid</i> complete, with Notes . . .	1.75	1.60	
Georgics, and last Six Books of <i>Æneid</i> , with Notes . . .	1.25	1.12	
Vocabulary to Virgil's Complete Works . . . . .	1.10	1.00	
Complete Text of Virgil . . . . .	.85	.75	

The notes are designed to give not only what may serve the learner in the bare understanding of the text, but, along with it, some hint of that wealth of traditional interpretation which is more important, perhaps, in the study of Virgil than in that of any other ancient poet.

The many wood-cuts, taken from ancient objects of art, will serve to illustrate the poet's conception better than annotations alone could do.

In preparing the Vocabulary to accompany his Virgil, or for use with other editions, the author has had two things in view: first, to supply as much information as was possible in regard to the history and uses of the Latin words, so that the book should not be a mere key to translate by, but should also furnish means for the study of the language itself; and, secondly, at the same time to give or suggest a suitable English expression for every passage.

The actual quantity of vowels, where known, has been indicated, irrespective of syllabic quantity, in order to aid the proper pronunciation of Latin words.

**Tracy Peck**, *Professor of Latin, Yale College*: The Vocabulary, both in plan and execution, is superior to any school-book vocabulary known to me. (*March 1, 1883.*)

**Henry Preble**, *Tutor in Latin, Har-*

*vard College*: I am much pleased with it. The notes seem to be full of valuable suggestion, and the Vocabulary is a real improvement upon anything of the kind which I have seen before. (*Feb. 11, 1883.*)



## *A Hand-Book of Latin Synonymes.*

Based on "*Meissner's Kurzgefasste Lateinische Synonymik.*" By EDGAR S. SHUMWAY, A.M., Adjunct Professor (in charge) of Latin, Rutgers College; Principal of the Chautauqua *Academia*; Editor of *Latine*. Sq. 16mo. Leatherette, flexible. 60 pp. Introd. price, 30 cts.

The aim in this compendium is to mark clearly and concisely the distinctions between synonymes used by the classical authors. These are arranged in some two hundred lists. Each list is based on the English word which most fully expresses the general meaning of words in the list. Each synonyme is printed in heavy type, to catch the eye. These lists are arranged and numbered alphabetically, so that the student who wishes the Latin synonymes for an English word can find them readily. A carefully-prepared Latin index renders it just as easy to find synonymes for the Latin word. In marking distinctions, especial use is made of derivations. Directions are often given to prevent incorrect use of terms by the student of Latin composition. A list of simpler synonymes is indicated (by stars) for the use of elementary students. The hand-book will be found invaluable in not only preparatory but also college work.

**M. Warren, Prof. of Latin, Johns Hopkins Univ.:** A book of this sort, conveniently arranged, was much needed, and it will, I think, serve a very good purpose.

**Henry S. Frieze, Prof. of Latin, Univ. of Mich.:** It is a very attractive little book, containing *multum in parvo*, and will be of great assistance, especially to students who are entering the upper classes in school and the first classes in college. I shall recommend its use to students here.

**Merrill E. Gates, Pres. Rutgers Coll.:** The terse suggestiveness of the book in arrangement, definitions, and warnings, is its distinctive merit. Precisely what the admirable little preface promises is done. I believe it will do much to promote the careful, loving, intelligent study of Latin.

**T. B. Lindsay, Prof. of Latin, Boston Univ.:** It is a good book, and I shall recommend it to my students.

**Edwin Post, Prof. of Latin, De Pauw Univ., Ind.:** I must again express my approbation of it. It has the great merit of being clear—a point in which the larger and more pretentious books too often lamentably fail. I have used it with fifty or sixty students during the term, and with eminent satisfaction.

**Geo. P. Hopson, Prof. of Latin, St. Stephen's College:** It is admirably done, and will, I am sure, prove of great service to students.

**C. J. Hinkel, Prof. of Latin, Vassar College:** I shall cordially recommend it to our students.

**Samuel Hart, Prof. of Latin, Trinity College:** It seems to be just

---

## *Ginn & Heath's Classical Atlas.*

By A. KEITH JOHNSTON, LL.D., F.R.G.S., aided by W. E. GLADSTONE, Prime Minister of England. Contains also a **Geography of the Ancient World**, prepared by W. F. ALLEN of the Univ. of Wisconsin. Bound in full cloth, with guards, similar to Long's Classical Atlas (7½ X 12 inches). Mailing price, \$2.30; Introduction, \$2.00.

*We would call special attention to the binding of the cloth edition. It is mounted on guards, the binding thus costing about twice as much as that of the English edition, and yet we do not increase the price to the purchaser. As a book of this kind is in constant use, the stronger binding very much enhances its value.*

Comprising in Twenty-three Plates, Colored Maps and Plans of all the important countries and localities referred to by Classical Authors. Embodies the results of the most recent investigations. Has a full **Index of Places**, in which the proper quantities of the syllables are marked by T. HARVEY and E. WORSLEY, M.M.A., Oxon, Classical Masters in Edinburgh Academy. Also containing ALLEN'S **Geography of the Ancient World**, which is designed to bring the leading epochs and events of ancient history into connection with the geography of the ancient world. Brief suggestions to teachers are added, to assist in the work of the class-room.

"It has the special attraction of Mr. Gladstone's coöperation, who not only placed at the editor's disposal the illustrations to his work on Homer, but enhanced the favor by revising the proof-sheets of the plates and text, as adapted for this Atlas."—*Spectator*.

### CONTENTS.

#### *Map.*

1. Plan of Rome, and Illustrations of Classical Sites.
2. The World as known to the Ancients.
3. Map of the outer Geography of the Odyssey.
4. Orbis Terrarum (et Orb. Homeri, Herodoti, Democriti, Strabonis, Ptolemæi).
5. Hispania.
6. Gallia.
7. Insulæ Britannicæ (et Brit. Strabonis, Brit. Ptolemæi, etc.).
8. Germania, Vindelicia, Rhætia, et Noricum.
9. Pannonia, Dacia, Illyricum, Mœsia, Macedonia, et Thracia.
10. Italia Superior et Corsica.
11. Italia Inferior, Sicilia, et Sardinia (et Campania, Syracusæ, Roma).

12. Imperium Romanum (et Imp. Rom. Orient. et Occid.).
13. Græcia (et Athenæ, Marathon, Thermopylæ).
14. Peloponnesus, Attica, Bœotia, Phocis, Ætolia, et Acarnania.
15. Græcia a Bello Peloponnesiaco, usque ad Philippum II. (et Mantinea Leuctra, Platæa).
16. Asia Minor (et Campus Trojæ, Bosporos, Troas, Ionia, etc.).
17. Syria et Palestina (et Hierosolyma, etc.).
18. Armenia, Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Assyria (et Iter Xenophontis).
19. Regnum Alexandri Magni (et Granicus, Issus, Arbela).
20. Persia et India (et India Ptolemæi).
21. Ægyptus, Arabia, et Æthiopia (et Ægyptus Inferior).
22. Africa (et Carthago, Alexandria, Numidia et Africa Propria).
23. Europe, showing the general direction of the Barbarian Inroads during the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.

### Index.

Allen's Geography of the Ancient World.

Used at Eton, Harrow, Rugby, and other Prominent English Preparatory Schools and Academies. Also used and recommended by such Colleges and Preparatory Schools as:—

Harvard,	Trinity, Conn.,	Hillsdale,
Yale,	Trinity, N.C.,	Dickinson,
Lafayette,	N. W. University,	Wesleyan, Conn.,
Rutgers,	Wesleyan, Ill.,	Princeton,
Oberlin,	Lake Forest,	Bates,
Marietta,	Wisconsin,	Grinnell,
Worcester Univ.,	Beloit,	Colby,
Ohio Wesleyan,	Lawrence, Wis.,	Kentucky Univ.,
Hiram,	Olivet,	Vanderbilt.
Phillips Exeter Academy,	Phillips Andover Academy,	
Williston Seminary,	Boston Latin Schools, etc.	

W. W. Goodwin, *Prof. of Greek, Harvard Univ.*: It is a most beautiful and highly useful work, and I am glad to see what used to be an expensive luxury brought within the means of all students of the classics. (*Dec. 2, 1880.*)

Elisha Jones, *Asst. Prof. of Latin, Univ. of Mich.*: From my cursory acquaintance I have recommended it to our teachers. The map of the Homeric Geography is a feature not contained in either of my other atlases, and will aid Homeric students greatly.

Tracy Peck, *Prof. of Latin, Yale Coll.*: I have heretofore known the Atlas sufficiently well to feel justified in recommending it to inquiring students. (*May 9, 1881.*)

S. R. Winans, *Tutor in Greek, Princeton Coll., N.Y.*: It is superb: nothing to criticise, and everything to commend. Every student of the classics needs something of the sort, and this is by all odds the best of its kind. (*Oct. 4, 1880.*)

# Latin Text-Books.

	INTROD. PRICE.
ALLEN & GREENOUGH: Latin Grammar . . . . .	\$1.12
Latin Composition . . . . .	1.12
Caesar (four books, with vocabulary) . . . . .	1.12
Sallust's Catiline . . . . .	.60
Cicero, 13 orations (or 8 orations with vocabulary) . . . . .	1.12
Cicero de Senectute . . . . .	.50
Ovid (with vocabulary) . . . . .	1.40
Virgil (Bucolics and 6 Books of the Æneid) . . . . .	1.12
Preparatory Course of Latin Prose . . . . .	1.40
ALLEN . . . . .	
Latin Primer . . . . .	.90
New Latin Method . . . . .	.90
Introduction to Latin Composition . . . . .	.90
Latin Reader . . . . .	1.40
Latin Lexicon . . . . .	.90
Remnants of Early Latin . . . . .	.75
Germania and Agricola of Tacitus . . . . .	1.00
BLACKBURN . . . . .	
Essentials of Latin Grammar . . . . .	.70
Latin Exercises . . . . .	.60
Latin Grammar and Exercises (in one volume) . . . . .	1.00
CROWELL . . . . .	
Selections from the Latin Poets . . . . .	1.40
CROWELL & RICHARDSON: Brief History of Roman Lit. (BENDER) . . . . .	1.00
GREENOUGH . . . . .	
Virgil:—	
Bucolics and 6 Books of Æneid (with Vocab.) . . . . .	1.60
Bucolics and 6 Books of Æneid (without Vocab.) . . . . .	1.12
Last 6 Books of Æneid, and Georgics (with notes) . . . . .	1.12
Bucolics, Æneid, & Georgics (complete, with notes) . . . . .	1.60
Text of Virgil (complete) . . . . .	.75
Vocabulary to the whole of Virgil . . . . .	1.00
GINN & HEATH: Classical Atlas and Geography (cloth) . . . . .	2.00
HALSEY . . . . .	
Etymology of Latin and Greek . . . . .	1.12
Classical Wall Maps (three or more), each . . . . .	3.50
KEEP . . . . .	
Essential Uses of the Moods in Greek and Latin . . . . .	.25
KING . . . . .	
Latin Pronunciation . . . . .	.25
LEIGHTON . . . . .	
Latin Lessons . . . . .	1.12
MADVIG . . . . .	
Latin Grammar (by Thacher) . . . . .	2.25
PARKHURST . . . . .	
Latin Verb . . . . .	.35
PARKER & PREBLE: Handbook of Latin Writing . . . . .	.50
SHUMWAY . . . . .	
Latin Synonymes . . . . .	.30
STICKNEY . . . . .	
Cicero de Natura Deorum . . . . .	1.40
TETLOW . . . . .	
Inductive Latin Lessons . . . . .	1.12
TOMLINSON . . . . .	
Manual for the Study of Latin Grammar . . . . .	.20
WHITE (J. W.) . . . . .	
Schmidt's Rhythmic and Metric . . . . .	2.50
WHITE (J. T.) . . . . .	
Junior Students' Latin-English Lexicon (mor.) . . . . .	1.75
English-Latin Lexicon (sheep) . . . . .	1.50
Latin-English and English-Latin Lexicon (sheep) . . . . .	3.00
WHITON . . . . .	
Auxilia Vergiliana; or, First Steps in Latin Prosody . . . . .	.15
Six Weeks' Preparation for Reading Cæsar . . . . .	.35

*Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to Introduction,  
on receipt of Introduction Price.*

*Send for description of our new Illustrated Caesar (seven books).*

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

BOSTON, NEW YORK, AND CHICAGO.

[illegible]

2500;

